ORACLE
PeopleSoft

PeopleSoft 9.2 Application Installation for Microsoft SQL Server (PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.62)

November 2025

ORACLE

PeopleSoft 9.2 Application Installation for Microsoft SQL Server (PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.62)

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish, or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

If this is software, software documentation, data (as defined in the Federal Acquisition Regulation), or related documentation that is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, then the following notice is applicable:

U.S. GOVERNMENT END USERS: Oracle programs (including any operating system, integrated software, any programs embedded, installed, or activated on delivered hardware, and modifications of such programs) and Oracle computer documentation or other Oracle data delivered to or accessed by U.S. Government end users are "commercial computer software," "commercial computer software documentation," or "limited rights data" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, the use, reproduction, duplication, release, display, disclosure, modification, preparation of derivative works, and/or adaptation of i) Oracle programs (including any operating system, integrated software, any programs embedded, installed, or activated on delivered hardware, and modifications of such programs), ii) Oracle computer documentation and/or iii) other Oracle data, is subject to the rights and limitations specified in the license contained in the applicable contract. The terms governing the U.S. Government's use of Oracle cloud services are defined by the applicable contract for such services. No other rights are granted to the U.S. Government.

This software or hardware is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications that may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software or hardware in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure its safe use. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software or hardware in dangerous applications.

Oracle®, Java, MySQL, and NetSuite are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Intel and Intel Inside are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation. All SPARC trademarks are used under license and are trademarks or registered trademarks of SPARC International, Inc. AMD, Epyc, and the AMD logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Advanced Micro Devices. UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

This software or hardware and documentation may provide access to or information about content, products, and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third-party content, products, and services unless otherwise set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third-party content, products, or services, except as set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle.

Documentation Accessibility

For information about Oracle's commitment to accessibility, visit the Oracle Accessibility Program website at https://docs.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=docacc.

Access to Oracle Support

Oracle customers that have purchased support have access to electronic support through My Oracle Support. For information, visit https://docs.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=info or visit https://docs.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=trs if you are hearing impaired.

Contents

Preface
About This Documentation 15
Understanding This Documentation 15
Audience 15
Typographical Conventions 16
Products 17
Related Information 18
Comments and Suggestions 19

Part I 21
Mandatory Installation 21

Chapter 1
Preparing for Installation 23
Reviewing the PeopleSoft DPKs Uses and Contents 23
Understanding the PeopleSoft Installation 24
Understanding the PeopleSoft Installation Using Deployment Packages 26
Understanding the PeopleSoft Deployment Packages Required for Installation 26
Reviewing the PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs 27
Reviewing the PeopleSoft Application Images 28
Reviewing the Installation Choices 30
Reviewing the DPK Installation Process (Microsoft Windows) 30
Reviewing Hardware Requirements 31
Reviewing Hardware Requirements for Microsoft Windows 31
Reviewing Software Requirements 32
Reviewing Software Requirements on Microsoft Windows 32
Using the Correct PeopleTools DPKs 34
Using Oracle Software Delivery Cloud to Obtain Installation Files 34
Considering Project Planning 34
Planning Your Initial Configuration 35
Understanding Workstations 35
Understanding PeopleSoft Servers and Clients 36
Defining the PeopleTools Client 36
Defining the File Server 37

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Defining the Database Server 37
Defining the Application Server 38
Defining the Process Scheduler (Batch) Server 38
Defining Installation Locations 38
Defining the Web Server 41
Planning Database Creation 42
Understanding Database Creation 42
Determining Databases and Database Names 42
Defining Microsoft SQL Server and PeopleSoft Databases 42
Planning Multilingual Strategy 43
Understanding Multilingual Issues 43
Choosing a Base Language 45
Selecting Additional Languages 47
Selecting a Database Collation 47
Installing Supporting Applications 48
Deploying PeopleSoft Environments in Containers 50
Installing Microsoft SQL Server Software 50
Increasing the Size of Tempdb 50
Performing Backups 50

Chapter 2
Installing the PeopleSoft Homes 53
Obtaining the PeopleSoft Application Images and PeopleTools DPKs 53
Using the PT-INFRA DPK for Additional Component Software 54
Reviewing the DPK Setup Script Options 54
Using the DPK Setup Script Options 55
Preparing to Run the DPK Setup Script 58
Running the DPK Setup Script to Install PS_HOME and PS_APP_HOME 59
Understanding the PS_HOME and PS_APP_HOME Installation 60
Installing PS_HOME and PS_APP_HOME on Microsoft Windows 60
Reviewing the Deployment Results 63
Running the DPK Setup Script to Install All Software 64
Understanding the DPK Setup Deploying All Software 64
Installing on Microsoft Windows 64
Reviewing the Installed Software 67
Removing a Deployed PeopleSoft Environment 68
Understanding the Removal Process 68
Using the DPK Setup Script to Remove the PeopleSoft Environment on Microsoft Windows 68
Using the psft_puppet_apply.cmd Script to Remove the PeopleSoft Environment on Microsoft Windows ... 69
Manually Removing the PeopleSoft Environment on Microsoft Windows 70

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 3
Deploying the PeopleSoft Deployment Packages in Silent Mode 73
Understanding Silent Mode Installation 73
Reviewing the Response File Sample for Mid-tier Installation 76
Reviewing the Response File Sample for Mid-tier Installation on Microsoft Windows 76
Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy an Application Server Domain 76
Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy an Application Server Domain on Microsoft Windows 76
Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy a Process Scheduler Domain 77
Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy a Process Scheduler Domain on Microsoft Windows 77
Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy an Application Server and a Process Scheduler Domain 77
Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy an Application Server and a Process Scheduler Domain on Microsoft Windows 78
Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy a PIA Domain 78
Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy a PIA Domain on Microsoft Windows 78
Reviewing the Response File Sample to Install PS_HOME Only 79
Reviewing the Response File Sample to Install PS_HOME Only on Microsoft Windows 79
Reviewing the Response File Sample to Install PS_APP_HOME Only 79
Reviewing the Response File Sample to Install PS_APP_HOME Only on Microsoft Windows 79
Running the DPK Setup Script in Silent Mode for Default Initialization 80
Running the DPK Setup Script in Silent Mode with Customizations 80

Chapter 4
Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations 83
Understanding PeopleSoft Environment Customizations 83
Preparing the Customization File for PeopleSoft Domain Definitions 87
Preparing the psft_customizations.yaml File 87
Reviewing the Domain Definitions in psft_configuration.yaml 88
Reviewing the Customization File for a Single Application Server Domain 92
Reviewing the Customization File for a Single Process Scheduler Domain 94
Reviewing the Customization File for a Single PIA Domain 95
Reviewing the Customization File for a PIA Domain on a Separate Host 96
Reviewing the Customization File for Multiple Web Sites in a Single Web Domain 98
Reviewing the Customization File for Multiple Domains 100
Preparing the Customization File to Create PeopleSoft Domains Without Configuration 105
Preparing the Customization File for Component Software Locations 106
Preparing the Customization File for Unicode 107
Preparing the Customization Files for the PeopleSoft Homes 108
Preparing the Customization File for the PS_HOME Location 109
Preparing the Customization File for the PS_APP_HOME Location 109
Preparing the Customization File for the PS_CFG_HOME Location 111

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Preparing the Customization File for the PS_CUST_HOME Location 111
Preparing the Customization File for Jolt SSL and WSL SSL Ports 112
Completing the Customized Deployment 114

Chapter 5
Setting Up the Install Workstation 117
Understanding the Install Workstation 117
Prerequisites 117
Starting Configuration Manager 118
Setting Startup Options 118
Editing the Default Profile 119
Running Client Setup 122

Chapter 6A
Creating a Database 123
Understanding the Database Configuration Wizard 123
Fulfilling PeopleSoft Database Configuration Wizard Prerequisites 123
Installing the PeopleSoft Database Server Components on the Database Server 124
Obtaining Windows Administrator Authority 124
Setting Up the Collation 124
Using the Database Configuration Wizard in Silent Mode 125
Understanding the Database Configuration Wizard 125
Preparing the Response File 125
Running the Silent Mode Database Creation 129
Cleaning Up Orphaned Language Data 130
Checking the Log Files and Troubleshooting 130
Checking the Log Files 130
Running Data Mover 130
Troubleshooting 131
Improving Performance 133

Chapter 6B
Creating a Database Manually 135
Understanding Database Creation 135
Preparing for Manual Database Creation 136
Using createdb.sql to Create a Database 136
Setting Collation and Sort Order 137
Setting Database Options 137
Setting Maximum File Size 138

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Configuring an ODBC Data Source 138
Understanding the ODBC Connectivity Drivers 138
Understanding ODBC Driver 17 and ODBC Driver 18 Settings 139
Configuring an ODBC Data Source with the ODBC Data Source Administrator 140
Running ADDOBJ.SQL 145
Setting Up the CONNECTID 146
Understanding the CONNECTID 146
Defining the CONNECTID 146
Creating the CONNECTID 147
Creating the ACCESSID 147
Creating Data Mover Import Scripts 148
Understanding Data Mover Import Scripts 148
Working with Multilingual Databases 148
Running Database Setup to Create Data Mover Import Scripts 149
Running Data Mover Import Scripts 157
Understanding Data Mover Import Scripts 157
Populating Tables in the PeopleSoft Database 157
Cleaning Up Orphaned Language Data 158
Checking the Log Files and Troubleshooting 158
Checking the Log Files 159
Running Data Mover 159
Troubleshooting 159
Improving Performance 161
Changing the Base Language 161

Chapter 7
Completing the Database Setup 163
Selecting the Necessary Tasks to Complete the Database Setup 163
Running Additional Data Mover Scripts 163
Running SQR Reports 163
Understanding Running SQR Reports 164
Running SQRs on the Client Workstation 164
Creating a Shortcut to Run SQRs 166
Checking the Database 167
Cleaning and Backing Up the Database 167

Chapter 8
Deploying Mid-Tier Components 169
Understanding the Mid-Tier Deployment 169
Running the DPK Setup Script for Mid-Tier Deployment 169

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Understanding the Mid-Tier Deployment 169
Prerequisites 170
Running with the Mid-Tier Option on Microsoft Windows 171
Completing Installation Tasks 176

Chapter 9
Completing the Installation 177
Accessing the PeopleSoft Environment 177
Accessing the Environment in a Browser 177
Using Fluid User Interface 177
Completing Post-Installation Steps 180
Updating the Installation Table 181
Setting Options for Multilingual Databases 181
Updating PeopleTools Options 182
Updating Time Zone Information 182
Updating Database Information 182
Building a New Encryption Key and Re-encrypting Passwords 182
Installing the fontconfig Package for Download to Excel 183
Reviewing the Deployed File System and Users 184
Reviewing the Deployment File System 184

Chapter 10
Deploying the PeopleTools Client DPK 187
Deploying the PeopleTools Client DPK 187
Understanding the Standalone Mode Deployment 187
Preparing for the PeopleTools Client DPK Deployment 188
Deploying in Standalone Mode 188

Part II 195
Discretionary Installation 195

Chapter 11
Installing and Compiling COBOL on Windows 197
Understanding COBOL 197
Prerequisites 197
Preparing COBOL for a PeopleTools-only Upgrade 198
Installing Visual COBOL on Microsoft Windows 199
Understanding Visual COBOL for Microsoft Windows 199

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Obtaining Visual COBOL Files from Oracle Software Delivery Cloud 201
Managing Licenses for Visual COBOL V7.0 for Microsoft Windows 201
Managing Licenses for Visual COBOL V9.0 for Microsoft Windows 202
Installing Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2017 V7.0 203
Installing Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2019 V7.0 203
Installing Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2022 V9.0 204
Installing Visual COBOL for Eclipse on Windows V7.0 204
Installing Visual COBOL for Eclipse on Windows V9.0 205
Installing Visual COBOL Build Tools for Windows (V7.0) 205
Installing Visual COBOL Build Tools for Windows (V9.0) 206
Installing COBOL Server for Windows V7.0 206
Installing COBOL Server for Windows V9.0 207
Using the Visual COBOL Compiler on Microsoft Windows 207
Understanding Visual COBOL Compilation 208
Compiling Visual COBOL on Microsoft Windows with PS_HOME and PS_APP_HOME 208
Compiling Visual COBOL on Microsoft Windows with PS_HOME, PS_APP_HOME, and PS_CUST_HOME Setup 213
Recompiling Visual COBOL on Microsoft Windows 218
Setting Up the COBOL Server for Windows Runtime 219
Defining the GNT and INT Files 220
Distributing Visual COBOL Binaries 220

Chapter 12
Installing Web Server Products 223
Installing Oracle WebLogic Server 223
Understanding the Oracle WebLogic Installation 223
Reviewing Troubleshooting Tips 224
Obtaining Oracle WebLogic Installation Files from Oracle Software Delivery Cloud 225
Installing JDK 225
Installing Oracle WebLogic on Microsoft Windows 226
Configuring JDK for Daylight Savings Time Change 234
Removing the Oracle WebLogic Installation on Microsoft Windows 235

Chapter 13
Installing Oracle Tuxedo 241
Preparing to Install Oracle Tuxedo 241
Understanding Oracle Tuxedo 241
Prerequisites 242
Reviewing Oracle Tuxedo Installation Errors 242
Obtaining Oracle Tuxedo 243
Obtaining the Oracle Tuxedo Installation Files from Oracle Software Delivery 243

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Obtaining the Oracle Tuxedo Patches from My Oracle Support 244
Installing Oracle Tuxedo on Microsoft Windows 244
Removing Existing Oracle Tuxedo Installations from Microsoft Windows (Optional) 245
Designating the Application Server Administrator on Microsoft Windows 246
Installing Oracle Tuxedo on Microsoft Windows in GUI Mode 247
Installing Oracle Tuxedo on Microsoft Windows in Silent Mode 247
Installing Oracle Tuxedo Patch on Microsoft Windows 248
Uninstalling the Oracle Tuxedo Patch on Microsoft Windows 248
Uninstalling Oracle Tuxedo in GUI Mode 248
Checking the Windows Service Account 249
Restricting Domain Process Privileges 249
Setting Up the Windows Services for Oracle Tuxedo 250
Verifying the Server Installation on Microsoft Windows 253

Chapter 14
Configuring the Application Server on Windows 255
Understanding the Application Server 255
Prerequisites 256
Creating a Wallet for the SSL/TLS Setup 257
Understanding Wallets 257
Creating a Wallet with OpenSSL 257
Setting Up COBOL for Remote Call 261
Verifying Database Connectivity 261
Creating, Configuring, and Starting an Initial Application Server Domain 261
Creating, Configuring, and Starting the Application Server Domain 261
Testing the Three-Tier Connection 269
Importing an Existing Application Server Domain Configuration 271
Setting Up a Custom Application Server Domain Configuration 273
Troubleshooting Common Errors 276

Chapter 15
Setting Up the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture in Silent Mode 277
Understanding PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture 277
Using Authentication Domains in the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture Installation 279
Installing the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture in Silent Mode 279
Understanding the Silent Installation and the Response File 280
Editing the Response File 280
Running the Silent Mode Installation 284
Configuring the SSL/TLS Port for JSL 285
Testing and Administering the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture Installation 285

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Verifying the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture Installation 286
Starting and Stopping Oracle WebLogic 286
Using PSADMIN to Start and Stop Web Servers 286
Accessing the PeopleSoft Signon 288
Completing Post-Installation Steps 290
Updating the Installation Table 290
Setting Options for Multilingual Databases 290
Updating PeopleTools Options 291
Updating Time Zone Information 291
Updating Database Information 291
Building a New Encryption Key and Re-encrypting Passwords 292
Installing the fontconfig Package for Download to Excel 293

Chapter 16
Setting Up Process Scheduler on Windows 295
Prerequisites 295
Setting Up Process Scheduler Security 296
Understanding Process Scheduler Security 296
Changing User Account to Start ORACLE ProcMGR V22.1.0.0.0 296
Granting Process Scheduler Administrative Rights 299
Setting Up Process Scheduler to Transfer Reports and Logs to the Report Repository 301
Understanding Report Distribution 301
Setting Up Single Signon to Navigate from PIA to Report Repository 303
Determining the Transfer Protocol 303
Starting the Distribution Agent 304
Setting Up the Report Repository 304
Setting Up the Distribution for Your Process Scheduler Server 320
Setting Up Sending and Receiving of Report Folders in the Report Manager 321
Setting Environment Variables 322
Setting Up Process Scheduler Server Agent 322
Understanding Process Scheduler Server Agent 322
Creating and Configuring a Process Scheduler Server 322
Reconfiguring a Process Scheduler Server 329
Verifying the Process Scheduler Server Status 331
Starting Process Scheduler as a Windows Service (Optional) 332
Configuring the Process Scheduler for Microsoft Word (Optional) 335
Configuring Process Scheduler 335
Executing Winword on Mapped Drive 336
Installing Products for PS/nVision 338
Understanding the PS/nVision Setup 338
Installing Products for PS/nVision in Excel Automation Mode 339

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 17
Installing PeopleSoft Change Assistant 341
Understanding PeopleSoft Change Assistant 341
Using the Change Assistant Setup Script to Install, Upgrade, or Uninstall 342
Running the Change Assistant Setup Script with Command-Line Parameters 343
Running the Change Assistant Setup Script with a Response File 344
Running the Change Assistant Setup Script Interactively to Install 344
Running the Change Assistant Setup Script Interactively to Upgrade 345
Running the Change Assistant Setup Script Interactively to Uninstall 346
Configuring and Using PeopleSoft Change Assistant 347
Verifying the Path Variable 347
Specifying Options 347
Scanning the Workstation 347
Exporting Jobs to XML, HTML, or Microsoft Excel Format 347
Validating Change Assistant Settings 348

Chapter 18
Installing PeopleSoft Change Impact Analyzer 351
Understanding PeopleSoft Change Impact Analyzer 351
Using the PeopleSoft Change Impact Analyzer Script to Install or Uninstall 352
Installing PeopleSoft Change Impact Analyzer 352
Removing PeopleSoft Change Impact Analyzer 352

Chapter 19
Adding New Product Modules 353
Adding New Modules to PeopleSoft Installations 353

Chapter 20
Using PeopleSoft Online Help 355
Understanding PeopleSoft Online Help (PeopleBooks) 355
Installing PeopleSoft Online Help Locally 356
Understanding the PeopleSoft Online Help Local Installation 356
Prerequisites 356
Obtaining the PeopleSoft Documentation Files from Oracle Software Delivery Cloud 357
Installing the PeopleSoft Online Help on a Web Server 357
Installing the PeopleSoft Online Help and the Search Utility 359
Removing the PeopleSoft Online Help Deployment 368

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Setting Up Help for Multiple Product Lines on the Same Machine 369

Chapter 21
Installing Software for PS/nVision Drilldowns 371
Understanding PS/nVision DrillDown Add-ins 371
Installing the DrillToPIA Add-In 372
Understanding Drilldown with DrillToPIA Add-in 372
Installing the DrillToPIA Add-in on the Microsoft Excel Environment 372
Installing the nVisionDrill Add-In 373
Understanding PS/nVision DrillDown Using Web Services 373
Understanding Security for DrillDown Using nVisionDrill VSTO Add-in 373
Installing the nVisionDrill Add-in for Microsoft Excel 374
Installing the nVisionDrill Add-Ins for Multi-Language Installations 374
Setting Up PeopleSoft Integration Broker for Using Web Service Capability with nVision Drill Add-in 374

Chapter 22
Synchronizing the ACCESSID User 379
Understanding the ACCESSID User Synchronization 379
Creating the ACCESSID 379
Updating the ACCESSID Information 379

Chapter 23
Installing Microsoft SQL Server 2022 381
Understanding the Microsoft SQL Server 2022 Installation 381
Installing Microsoft SQL Server 2022 on the Database Server 381
Starting and Stopping Microsoft SQL Server 2022 402
Configuring the Connection to Use ODBC Driver for Microsoft SQL Server 2022 403

Chapter 24
Upgrading to Microsoft SQL Server 2022 405
Understanding the Upgrade to Microsoft SQL Server 2022 405
Preparing to Migrate 405
Upgrading a PeopleSoft Database from Microsoft SQL Server 2019 to Microsoft SQL Server 2022 406
Setting Up the Migrated Database 406

Appendix A
Deploying PeopleSoft DPKs in Containers 409

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Understanding Container Support for PeopleSoft DPKs 409
Prerequisites for Container Deployment 410
Installing PS_HOME for the Container File System 410
Obtaining the DPKs for Mid-tier Deployment 411
Obtaining the DPK for Search Components 411
Installing PS_HOME 411
Locating the Container Directory and Setting Environment Variable 414
Using the README.md Files for Deployment 414

Appendix B
Deploying PeopleSoft Containers on Oracle Kubernetes Engine 415
Understanding the Oracle Kubernetes Engine Deployment 415
Prerequisites for the OKE Deployment 415
Installing PS_HOME and Deploying on OKE 416

Appendix C
Encrypting Passwords for Customization Files 417
Encrypting Passwords for Customization Files on Microsoft Windows 417

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

About This Documentation

This preface discusses:

- Understanding This Documentation
- Audience
- Typographical Conventions
- Products
- Related Information
- Comments and Suggestions

Understanding This Documentation

This documentation is designed to direct you through a basic PeopleSoft installation. It is not a substitute for the database administration documentation provided by your relational database management system (RDBMS) vendor, the network administration documentation provided by your network vendor, or the installation and configuration documentation for additional software components that are used with PeopleSoft products.

This documentation is divided into two parts. The chapters in Part 1 include the information that is required to complete a basic PeopleSoft installation. The chapters and appendices in Part 2 include information for less common or optional tasks.

Addenda to the recent PeopleTools installation guides are periodically posted in My Oracle Support on the same page as the initial posting.

This documentation includes the instructions for installing Oracle's PeopleSoft PeopleTools and PeopleSoft applications. You also need the installation instructions that are specific to your PeopleSoft application, which are provided in a separate document for the PeopleSoft application. For instance, if you are installing Oracle's PeopleSoft Customer Relationship Management (CRM), you need both this installation guide and the additional instructions provided for installing PeopleSoft CRM.

To find the installation documentation for PeopleSoft PeopleTools or for your PeopleSoft application, go to My Oracle Support or Oracle Help Center and search for the installation guide for your product and release.

Note. Before proceeding with your installation, check My Oracle Support and Oracle Help Center to ensure that you have the latest version of this installation guide for the correct release of the PeopleSoft product that you are installing.

Audience

This documentation is written for the individuals responsible for installing and administering the PeopleSoft environment. This documentation assumes that you have a basic understanding of the PeopleSoft system. One of the most important components in the installation and maintenance of your PeopleSoft system is your on-site expertise.

You should be familiar with your environment, including operating system, hardware, and RDBMS, and have the necessary skills, permissions, and access to support that environment. You should also have a working knowledge of:

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- SQL and SQL command syntax.
- PeopleSoft system navigation.
- PeopleSoft windows, menus, and pages, and how to modify them.
- Microsoft Windows, Linux or UNIX

Oracle recommends that you complete training, particularly a PeopleSoft administration and installation course, before performing an installation.

The PeopleSoft Training Center includes various choices for training, including instructor-led training offered by Oracle partners.

See PeopleSoft Information Portal, https://docs.oracle.com/cd/E52319_01/infoportal/training.html.

Typographical Conventions

To help you locate and understand information easily, the following conventions are used in this documentation:

Convention	Description
`Monospace`	Indicates a PeopleCode program or other code, such as scripts that you run during the install. Monospace is also used for messages that you may receive during the install process.
Italics	Indicates field values, emphasis, and book-length publication titles. Italics is also used to refer to words as words or letters as letters, as in the following example: Enter the letter *O*. Italics are also used to indicate user-supplied information. For example, the term *domain* is used as a placeholder for the actual domain name in the user's environment. When two such placeholders are used together, they may be set apart with angle brackets. For example, the path <*PS_CFG_HOME*>/appserv/<*domain*> includes two placeholders that require user-supplied information.
Initial Caps	Field names, commands, and processes are represented as they appear on the window, menu, or page.
lower case	File or directory names are represented in lower case, unless they appear otherwise on the interface.
Menu, Page	A comma (,) between menu and page references indicates that the page exists on the menu. For example, "Select Use, Process Definitions" indicates that you can select the Process Definitions page from the Use menu.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Convention	Description
Cross-references	Cross-references that begin with *See* refer you to additional documentation that will help you implement the task at hand. We highly recommend that you reference this documentation. Cross-references under the heading *See Also* refer you to additional documentation that has more information regarding the subject.
⇒ (line-continuation arrow)	A line-continuation arrow inserted at the end of a line of code indicates that the line of code has been wrapped at the page margin. The code should be viewed or entered as a continuous line of code, without the line-continuation arrow.
" " (quotation marks)	Indicate chapter titles in cross-references and words that are used differently from their intended meaning.
Note. Note text.	Text that begins with *Note.* indicates information that you should pay particular attention to as you work with your PeopleSoft system.
Important! Important note text.	A note that begins with *Important!* is crucial and includes information about what you need to do for the system to function properly.
Warning! Warning text.	A note that begins with *Warning!* contains critical configuration information or implementation considerations; for example, if there is a chance of losing or corrupting data. Pay close attention to warning messages.

Products

This documentation may refer to these products and product families:

- Oracle® Enterprise Manager
- Oracle® Tuxedo
- Oracle® WebLogic Server
- Oracle's PeopleSoft Application Designer
- Oracle's PeopleSoft Change Assistant
- Oracle's PeopleSoft Change Impact Analyzer
- Oracle's PeopleSoft Data Mover
- Oracle's PeopleSoft Process Scheduler
- Oracle's PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture
- Oracle's PeopleSoft Customer Relationship Management
- Oracle's PeopleSoft Enterprise Learning Management
- Oracle's PeopleSoft Enterprise Performance Management

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Oracle's PeopleSoft Financial Management
- Oracle's PeopleSoft Human Capital Management
- Oracle's PeopleSoft Interaction Hub
- Oracle's PeopleSoft Pay/Bill Management
- Oracle's PeopleSoft PeopleTools
- Oracle's PeopleSoft Staffing Front Office
- Oracle's PeopleSoft Supply Chain Management

See the Products area on the Oracle web site, https://www.oracle.com/products/oracle-a-z.html.

Related Information

Oracle provides reference information about PeopleSoft PeopleTools and your particular PeopleSoft Application. You can access documentation for recent releases of PeopleSoft PeopleTools and PeopleSoft Applications at the PeopleSoft page in the Oracle Help Center. You can also find documentation by searching for the product name on My Oracle Support.

- PeopleSoft on the Oracle Help Center

  You can access PeopleSoft Online Help, or download the PeopleBooks PDFs, from the PeopleSoft page in the Oracle Help Center. Select PeopleTools or your PeopleSoft application from the navigation list on the left. On the page for the selected product application, select the PeopleTools release or image number at the top and go to the Online Help and PeopleBooks section.

  See Oracle Help Center, https://docs.oracle.com/en/applications/peoplesoft/index.html.

- *PeopleTools: Getting Started with PeopleTools* for your release.

  This documentation provides a high-level introduction to PeopleTools technology and usage.

  See PeopleTools on the Oracle Help Center, https://docs.oracle.com/en/applications/peoplesoft/peopletools/index.html.

- PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals for your PeopleSoft Application and release

  This documentation provides essential information about the setup, design, and implementation of your PeopleSoft Application.

  See Oracle Help Center, https://docs.oracle.com/en/applications/peoplesoft/index.html.

- Installation guides

  You can find the installation guides for PeopleSoft PeopleTools and your PeopleSoft application on the appropriate Oracle Help Center page. Select your release or update image at the top and then go to the Install and Upgrade section.

- My Oracle Support

  This support platform requires a user account to log in. Contact your PeopleSoft representative for information.

  See My Oracle Support, https://support.oracle.com.

  You can find several pages which compile documentation, links, and known issues for various PeopleSoft product areas. For a list of many of the PeopleSoft pages, select the PeopleSoft tab on the Oracle Information Center Catalog.

  See Oracle Information Center Catalog, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 50.2.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

To install additional component software products for use with PeopleSoft products, including those products that are packaged with your PeopleSoft products as well as products from other vendors, you should refer to the documentation provided with those products, as well as this documentation. For those additional components that are offered by Oracle, such as Oracle Middleware products, see the documentation on the Oracle Help Center.

See Oracle Help Center, https://docs.oracle.com/en/.

Comments and Suggestions

Your comments are important to us. We encourage you to tell us what you like, or what you would like changed about PeopleSoft documentation and other Oracle reference and training materials. Please send your suggestions to:

PSOFT-Infodev_US@oracle.com

While we cannot guarantee to answer every email message, we will pay careful attention to your comments and suggestions. We are always improving our product communications for you.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Part I

Mandatory Installation

The chapters in the first part of this installation guide cover only those tasks that are required for a basic PeopleSoft installation. Everyone carrying out an installation should use the tasks in Part I. After setting up the Application Server, PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture, and Process Scheduler Server, you verify that you can sign into the PeopleSoft installation in a browser.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 1

Preparing for Installation

This chapter discusses:

- Reviewing the PeopleSoft DPKs Uses and Contents
- Understanding the PeopleSoft Installation
- Understanding the PeopleSoft Installation Using Deployment Packages
- Reviewing Hardware Requirements
- Reviewing Software Requirements
- Using Oracle Software Delivery Cloud to Obtain Installation Files
- Considering Project Planning
- Planning Your Initial Configuration
- Planning Database Creation
- Planning Multilingual Strategy
- Installing Supporting Applications
- Deploying PeopleSoft Environments in Containers
- Installing Microsoft SQL Server Software
- Increasing the Size of Tempdb
- Performing Backups

Reviewing the PeopleSoft DPKs Uses and Contents

The PeopleSoft Deployment Packages (DPKs) are the delivery method for many PeopleSoft installation and maintenance products. Here is a summary of the available DPKs.

DPKs	Description	References
PeopleTools Patches	Update the PeopleSoft PeopleTools software or install mid-tier components for an existing database. Comprised of four zip files. Available for Linux, IBM AIX, Oracle Solaris, and Microsoft Windows.	PeopleTools 8.62 Deployment Packages Installation (this documentation), PeopleSoft PeopleTools on Oracle Help Center. PeopleSoft PeopleTools Patches Home Page, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2062712.2.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

DPKs	Description	References
PeopleSoft Update Images (PIs)	Apply maintenance or perform a fresh installation. Comprised of eleven or twelve zip files. Available for Linux, Microsoft Windows, and VirtualBox.	PeopleSoft Deployment Packages for Update Images Installation, PeopleSoft application pages (HCM, FSCM, CS, CRM, ELM, IH) on Oracle Help Center. PeopleSoft Update Manager (PUM) Home Page, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 1641843.2. PeopleSoft 9.2 Application Installation, PeopleSoft application pages (HCM, FSCM, CS, CRM, ELM, IH) on Oracle Help Center. PeopleSoft 8.62 Home Page, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 3076202.2.
OpenSearch, OpenSearch Dashboards, and Logstash DPK	Install software used for the PeopleSoft Search Framework, as well as monitoring and analytics. One zip file. Available for Linux and Microsoft Windows.	PeopleSoft Deployment Packages Installation for Search Components, PeopleSoft PeopleTools on Oracle Help Center. PeopleSoft Search and Insights Home Page, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2205540.2.
Infrastructure (PT-INFRA) DPK	Install up-to-date critical patch updates (CPUs) for Oracle WebLogic, Oracle Tuxedo, Java, and Oracle Database Client, for new or existing installations. Comprised of two zip files. Available for Linux, IBM AIX, Oracle Solaris, and Microsoft Windows.	PT-INFRA Deployment Package Installation, PeopleSoft PeopleTools on Oracle Help Center
Db2 z/OS DPK	Install the utilities required to set up the optional, manual batch environment for Db z/OS on Microsoft Windows. One zip file. Available for Microsoft Windows.	PeopleSoft Deployment Packages for DB z/OS Batch Setup, PeopleSoft PeopleTools on Oracle Help Center

See Oracle's PeopleSoft Virtualization Products, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 1538142.1

Understanding the PeopleSoft Installation

This chapter will help you plan and prepare for a basic PeopleSoft installation. Before you begin the installation, please note:

- Before you begin your PeopleSoft installation, use the PeopleSoft hardware and software requirements information in the My Oracle Support Certifications area to verify that you have the correct hardware and software in place to support a successful installation. In addition to the information in the Certifications area, review the application-specific hardware and software documentation available on My Oracle Support.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

See hardware and software requirements for PeopleSoft PeopleTools and your PeopleSoft application on My Oracle Support.

See My Oracle Support, Certifications.

Warning! If you are unable to meet any of the criteria outlined in the hardware and software requirements and certification information on My Oracle Support, contact Oracle before going forward with the installation. Attempting to complete an installation on an unsupported configuration can be a very costly decision, and Oracle will not provide support for such PeopleSoft installations.

- The installation of the PeopleSoft deployment packages (DPKs) includes the necessary additional component software, such as Oracle Tuxedo and Oracle WebLogic. If you must install the additional component software manually, without using the DPKs, use the My Oracle Support Certifications area to determine the latest certified versions of additional components, such as Oracle Tuxedo, which are supported for the PeopleSoft PeopleTools release you are installing.
- If you will be upgrading your current release after you perform this installation, you also need to install Change Assistant. The page on My Oracle Support containing your upgrade documentation and files includes information.
- For critical issues related to the installation process, see the My Oracle Support web site.
- You will use the PeopleSoft application deployment packages (DPKs) for your PeopleSoft installation. The DPKs deliver pre-installed PeopleSoft components, which can be installed on virtualization platforms as well as directly on traditional, non-virtual machines ("bare-metal").

  Review the known issues on the PeopleSoft Update Manager (PUM) Home Page, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 1641843.2, for any issues related to the PeopleSoft application DPK installation.
- For online technical support information, use the My Oracle Support web site. My Oracle Support includes tools for self-directed searches of information including reference documents and problem resolutions, as well as service request management tools.

  See My Oracle Support, https://support.oracle.com.
- To download software and documentation, use the Oracle Software Delivery Cloud portal, and My Oracle Support.

  See Oracle Software Delivery Cloud, https://edelivery.oracle.com.

  See My Oracle Support, https://support.oracle.com.
- Be aware that not all application releases are certified and supported to run on all PeopleSoft PeopleTools releases. Check the PeopleSoft policy information on My Oracle Support for further details on the support policy for your particular application. If you are planning to do a PeopleTools-only upgrade, do not continue until you have verified that your application is supported on the target PeopleSoft PeopleTools release.

  See Lifetime Support Summary for PeopleSoft Releases, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2238983.2.
- This installation guide may refer you to other PeopleSoft documentation resources for more information or instructions. You can access Oracle's PeopleSoft Hosted Documentation online during the installation process. For PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.53 and later, you also have the option to install PeopleSoft Online Help documentation, a dynamic, interactive, accessible HTML version of the documentation known as "PeopleBooks."
- See the PeopleSoft Tech Updates for news about new certifications, end of support or third party retirement notices as well as any other platform related information.

  See Tech Update - Main Page, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 764222.1.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

See Also

Oracle PeopleSoft on Oracle Help Center, https://docs.oracle.com/en/applications/peoplesoft/index.html

"Installing PeopleSoft Online Help"

"Installing PeopleSoft Change Assistant"

Understanding the PeopleSoft Installation Using Deployment Packages

This section discusses:

- Understanding the PeopleSoft Deployment Packages Required for Installation
- Reviewing the PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs
- Reviewing the PeopleSoft Application Images
- Reviewing the Installation Choices
- Reviewing the DPK Installation Process (Microsoft Windows)

Understanding the PeopleSoft Deployment Packages Required for Installation

To install PeopleSoft applications built on PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.62 (PeopleSoft 9.2 applications as well as PeopleSoft Interaction Hub 9.1), you will use the PeopleSoft Application Images, which are comprised of deployment packages (DPKs). For most installation scenarios, you will also download the PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs separately.

The PeopleSoft DPKs are the delivery method for many PeopleSoft installation, upgrade, and maintenance products. This documentation refers to the set of DPKs that are used for a fresh installation of a PeopleSoft application environment as PeopleSoft Application Images. These images can also be deployed differently, and used for applying maintenance for PeopleSoft applications. In that use case, they are typically referred to as PeopleSoft Update Images, or PIs.

See PeopleSoft Update Manager (PUM) Home Page, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 1641843.2, for information on applying maintenance updates with the PIs.

See *PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.62 Deployment Packages Installation,* "Learning About the PeopleSoft Deployment Process."

See Oracle's PeopleSoft Virtualization Products, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 1538142.1.

The PeopleSoft DPKs deliver pre-installed PeopleSoft components that can be deployed onto your environment. The PeopleSoft DPKs offer the flexibility of deployment on supported operating system platforms, both directly on physical machines, and on virtualization platforms. The DPKs are available on My Oracle Support and Oracle Software Delivery Cloud as zip files, and are delivered with a setup script that automates the procedure to set up a PeopleSoft environment. The script is an interactive script that verifies that the downloaded DPKs are correct, and prompts the user for the information required to set up the environment. The script also enables a user to choose various types of environments, such as a full tier, including a PeopleSoft database, or a mid-tier, with Application Server, web server and Process Scheduler, that connects to an existing database.

See "Installing the PeopleSoft Homes," Reviewing the DPK Setup Script Options.

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

The DPKs are delivered with the PeopleSoft Puppet modules, which are initialization and management scripts based upon the open-source Puppet software. In addition to the convenience of using the interactive DPK setup script, you can take advantage of the Puppet Hiera functionality to customize and control the installation. Note that some installation scenarios require customizations to complete the deployment.

See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations."

This section describes the DPKs used in the PeopleSoft installation and overviews of the installation process for various scenarios. The PeopleSoft Application Images are available as Microsoft Windows, Linux, and Oracle VM VirtualBox DPKs. The VirtualBox DPKs are used for PUM maintenance, and are not covered in this documentation. The PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.62 DPKs are available for IBM AIX, Linux, Microsoft Windows, and Oracle Solaris on SPARC operating systems. For information on operation system support for your database platform, see the Certification information on My Oracle Support.

See Reviewing the Installation Choices.

Note. Oracle recommends that you use the Native OS for Linux or Native OS for Windows DPKs for a fresh installation, not the VirtualBox DPKs.

Reviewing the PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs

The PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs are delivered for each PeopleTools patch. The files are double-zipped. This table describes the downloaded zip files and the embedded zip files. When you follow the instructions provided in this documentation you will extract the first zip file to get the DPK setup script. When you run the setup script, it takes care of extracting the remaining zip files. Do not unzip before reading the instructions.

Downloaded Zip Files	Embedded Zip Files	Description
PEOPLETOOLS-<*OS*>-8.62.*xx*_1of4.zip	The setup folder and other files	Setup DPK
PEOPLETOOLS-<*OS*>-8.62.*xx*_2of4.zip	PT-DPK-<*OS*>-8.62.*xx*-1of2.zip	PeopleTools server, Part 1
PEOPLETOOLS-<*OS*>-8.62.*xx*_3of4.zip	PT-DPK-<*OS*>-8.62.*xx*-2of2.zip	PeopleTools server, Part 2
PEOPLETOOLS-<*OS*>-8.62.*xx*_4of4.zip	PTC-DPK-<*OS*>-8.62.*xx*-1of1.zip	PeopleTools Client for 8.62

The filenames include the following:

- <*OS*> is one of these operating systems:

  Note. This includes the available DPKs. Check My Oracle Support Certifications for support information for your environment.

  - AIX for IBM AIX
  - LNX for Linux
  - WIN for Microsoft Windows
  - SOL for Oracle Solaris
- *xx* refers to the patch number.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Reviewing the PeopleSoft Application Images

The PeopleSoft application software is delivered in the PeopleSoft Application Images posted on My Oracle Support. The DPKs that comprise the PeopleSoft Application Images are double-zipped. When you follow the instructions provided in this documentation you will extract the first zip file to get the DPK setup script. When you run the setup script, it takes care of extracting the remaining zip files. Do not unzip before reading the instructions.

The first four zip files in the PeopleSoft Application Images are the same type as the four zip files in the PeopleTools patches; that is, two PeopleTools server DPKs, a PeopleTools client DPK, and a setup DPK. However, because the PeopleSoft Application Images and the PeopleTools patches follow different schedules, the patch releases will not be the same.

Note. The PeopleTools Client DPKs are specific to Microsoft Windows operating systems. The operating system for the PeopleTools server DPKs that are packaged with the PeopleSoft Application Image is the same as the other DPKs that make up the PeopleSoft Application Image.

This table describes the zip files that you download for the Native Linux and Windows DPKs, and the embedded zip files. Note that the content description is also available in the manifest that is posted on the same pages where you can find links to the most current image. On the PeopleSoft Update Manager (PUM) Home Page, select the PeopleSoft Update Images tab, and then select the update image home page for your PeopleSoft application. The links and manifest are located in the Update Image Link section.

See *PeopleSoft Deployment Packages for Update Images Installation (PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.62),* PeopleSoft Update Manager (PUM) Home Page, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 1641843.2.

Downloaded Zip Files	Files After First Extraction[1]	Description
<*Product*>-920-UPD-<*PI_Number*>-<*OS*>_1of11.zip	The setup folder and other files	Setup DPK
<*Product*>-920-UPD-<*PI_Number*>-<*OS*>_2of11.zip	PT-DPK-<*OS*>-8.62.*xx*-1of2.zip	PeopleTools server, Part 1
<*Product*>-920-UPD-<*PI_Number*>-<*OS*>_3of11.zip	PT-DPK-<*OS*>-8.62.*xx*-2of2.zip	PeopleTools server, Part 2
<*Product*>-920-UPD-<*PI_Number*>-<*OS*>_4of11.zip	PTC-DPK-WIN8.60.*xx*-1of1.zip	PeopleTools Client for 8.60
<*Product*>-920-UPD-<*PI_Number*>-<*OS*>_5of11.zip	PTC-DPK-WIN8.61.*xx*-1of1.zip	PeopleTools Client for 8.61
<*Product*>-920-UPD-<*PI_Number*>-<*OS*>_6of11.zip	PTC-DPK-WIN8.62.*xx*-1of1.zip	PeopleTools Client for 8.62
<*Product*>-920-UPD-<*PI_Number*>-<*OS*>_7of11.zip	ODC-DPK-WIN-19.3.0.0-*xxxxxx*-1of1.zip	Oracle Database client
<*Product*>-920-UPD-<*PI_Number*>-<*OS*>_8of11.zip	ODS-DPK-<*OS*>-19.3.0.0-*xxxxxx*-1of1.zip	Oracle Database server

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Downloaded Zip Files	Files After First Extraction[1]	Description
<*Product*>-920-UPD-<*PI_Number*>-<*OS*>_9of11.zip	APP-DPK-<*OS*>-<*Product_Name*> 92-8.62.*xx*-1of3.zip	PeopleSoft Application DPK, Part 1
<*Product*>-920-UPD-<*PI_Number*>-<*OS*>_10of11.zip	APP-DPK-<*OS*>-<*Product_Name*> 92-8.62.*xx*-2of3.zip	PeopleSoft Application DPK, Part 2
<*Product*>-920-UPD-<*PI_Number*>-<*OS*>_11of11.zip	APP-DPK-<*OS*>-<*Product_Name*> 92-8.62.*xx*-3of3.zip	PeopleSoft Application DPK, Part 3

[1] The filenames will vary depending upon the date posted or the associated release and patch. Note that the DPK setup script will carry out the first extraction. The names are given here for information.

The filenames for the downloaded zip files have the following format:

<*Product*>-920-UPD-<*PI_Number*>-<*OS*>_#of*n*.zip

For example:

HCM-920-UPD-047-LNX_1of11.zip

HCM-920-UPD-047-LNX_2of11.zip

[...]

HCM-920-UPD-047-LNX_11of11.zip

The files names are comprised of the following parts:

- <*Product*> is an abbreviation that represents the PeopleSoft application name, as described in the following table.

PeopleSoft Application	Product Name Abbreviation
PeopleSoft Customer Relationship Management	CRM
PeopleSoft Campus Solutions	CS
PeopleSoft Enterprise Learning Management	ELM
PeopleSoft Financials and Supply Chain Management	FSCM
PeopleSoft Human Capital Management	HCM
PeopleSoft Interaction Hub	IH

- <*PI_Number*> is the PI image number, such as 047.
- <*OS*> is one of these operating systems:
  - LNX for the Native OS DPKs for Oracle Linux
  - WIN for the Native OS DPKs for Microsoft Windows
  - OVA for the VirtualBox DPKs
- *n* represents the total number of zip files.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Reviewing the Installation Choices

This section includes overviews of the methods to install the PeopleSoft Application Images, depending upon your operating system and other components.

If you want to use the PeopleSoft 9.2 Application PIs to create a PeopleSoft Update Manager (PUM) source for applying updates and fixes, see *PeopleSoft Deployment Packages for Update Images Installation.*

See PeopleSoft Update Manager (PUM) Home Page, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 1641843.2.

You can deploy mid-tier components in containers for use with an existing database.

See "Deploying PeopleSoft DPKs in Containers."

Reviewing the DPK Installation Process (Microsoft Windows)

These are the high-level steps for using the PeopleSoft Application Images to perform a fresh installation (that is, you are not upgrading or updating an existing environment):

1. Locate the Native OS DPKs for your PeopleSoft 9.2 application, and download the PeopleSoft Application DPK, Part 1.

   Download the Native OS DPK for Windows. Do not unzip the file. If you need to FTP the file, use binary mode.

   See "Installing the PeopleSoft Homes," Obtaining the PeopleSoft Application and PeopleTools DPKs.
2. Download the PeopleTools 8.62 DPKs for Windows.

   Select the PeopleTools patch release specified for the PeopleSoft 9.2 application.
3. Before running the DPK setup script, review the setup script options. Certain installation situations require a customized procedure.

   See "Installing the PeopleSoft Homes," Reviewing the DPK Setup Script Options.
4. Use the DPK setup script from the PeopleTools DPKs to carry out one of these steps:

   See "Installing the PeopleSoft Homes," Reviewing the DPK Setup Script Options.

   - Install *PS_HOME* and *PS_APP_HOME* only.

     PS_HOME includes the PeopleTools utilities that you use in the next step. *PS_APP_HOME* includes the files needed to create an application database.
   - Alternatively, use the script to install only the mid-tier software.

     Install *PS_HOME*, *PS_APP_HOME*, Oracle Tuxedo, Oracle WebLogic, and JDK without setting up the PeopleSoft domains.
5. Create a DEMO or SYS database.
6. Use the PeopleTools DPK setup script to complete the setup of the PeopleSoft domains.
   a. If you did not install Oracle Tuxedo, Oracle WebLogic in step 4, use the DPK setup script to perform a mid-tier deployment.

      The mid-tier deployment installs Oracle Tuxedo, Oracle WebLogic, and JDK, as well as deploying and setting up the PeopleSoft domains.

      Note. Because you already installed *PS_HOME* and *PS_APP_HOME,* the script skips those installations.

   b. If you installed Oracle Tuxedo, Oracle WebLogic, and JDK in step 4, configure the application server, PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture (PIA) and Process Scheduler domains.

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Use the DPK setup script to deploy and set up the application server, Process Scheduler and PIA domains.

See "Installing the PeopleSoft Homes," Reviewing the DPK Setup Script Options.

Alternatively, use PSADMIN and the PIA silent installation process to set up the domains.

See "Configuring the Application Server on Windows."

See "Setting Up the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture in Silent Mode."

See "Setting Up Process Scheduler on Windows."

7. Complete optional tasks, such as installing and compiling COBOL.

Task 1-1: Reviewing Hardware Requirements

This section discusses:

- Reviewing Hardware Requirements for Microsoft Windows

Task 1-1-1: Reviewing Hardware Requirements for Microsoft Windows

You can install the PeopleSoft Update Image deployment packages (DPKs) or PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs directly on a system running a Microsoft Windows operating system. The PeopleSoft Update Images and PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs are certified to run on those Microsoft Windows operating systems that are certified for the current PeopleSoft PeopleTools release. The Microsoft Windows system can be a physical computer (sometimes called "bare-metal") or a virtual machine.

Oracle strongly recommends that you dedicate a Microsoft Windows machine for the PeopleTools client. This should be a machine that is not used for other PeopleSoft purposes.

See "Deploying the PeopleTools Client DPK," Deploying the PeopleTools Client DPK in Standalone Mode, for information on installing the PeopleTools client utilities.

- *Host computer*: The PeopleSoft DPKs can be deployed directly on any supported Microsoft Windows host, bare-metal or virtual.

  If you deploy on a virtual host computer, you are responsible for provisioning the virtual machine before beginning the deployment.

- *Host operating system*: The host operating system (OS) must be a 64-bit platform that is certified by Oracle for PeopleSoft systems.

  Note. My Oracle Support Certification notes include information about the PeopleSoft PeopleTools components that are certified for each operating system. Some OSs are certified only for browsers and clients. If you want to deploy a full PeopleSoft environment, verify that the OS you want to use is certified for server installation.

  See My Oracle Support, Certifications.

  See PeopleSoft PeopleTools Certifications, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 747587.1, for help searching PeopleSoft Certifications.

- *RAM (Memory)*: A minimum of 8 GB RAM is required to run a PeopleSoft environment.
- *CPU Capabilities for the PeopleTools Client*: To run Change Assistant on a Microsoft Windows server requires a virtual machine with a 4-core CPU or a physical machine with a 2-core CPU.
- *Disk space*: The disk space requirements vary depending upon the type of environment you set up.

  See "Preparing to Deploy," Understanding PeopleSoft Components.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- 25–35 GB free disk space for the downloaded DPK zip files

  You may remove these files after you have successfully initialized your PeopleSoft environment.
- 150 GB free disk space is required to deploy and set up a full tier PeopleSoft environment.
- 25 GB free disk space is required to deploy and set up a mid-tier PeopleSoft environment.

Note. You may remove some of the downloaded DPK zip files after you have successfully initialized your PeopleSoft environment. This documentation uses *DPK_INSTALL* to refer to the directory holding the downloaded DPK zip files. It is important that you retain the *DPK_INSTALL*\setup directory because it holds all the scripts required when you use the DPK setup script commands to deploy a PeopleSoft environment and when you remove a deployed PeopleSoft environment using the DPK setup script with the cleanup option.

See Also

Tech Update - Main Page, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 764222.1

Task 1-2: Reviewing Software Requirements

This section discusses:

- Reviewing Software Requirements on Microsoft Windows
- Using the Correct PeopleTools DPKs

Task 1-2-1: Reviewing Software Requirements on Microsoft Windows

Here are the software requirements for using the PeopleSoft Deployment Packages on a Microsoft Windows machine:

- Administrative permission
- Read, write, and execute permission on the default temporary folder.

  The deployment of a PeopleSoft environment by the DPKs installs required supporting software, such as Oracle WebLogic and Oracle Tuxedo. The DPK process to install this software uses the default temporary folders, as specified by the environment variable for the operating system. The user running the DPK setup script must have read/write/execute permission to these default temporary folders for successful DPK installation, or the deployment steps that install these components will fail.
- The DPK setup script can be run from any drive, regardless of the drive where the Windows operating system is installed.

  If you run the DPK setup script from one drive and specify the installation location in another drive, it is a good idea to also specify where to save the installation log.

  By default, the DPK setup script generates an installation log under the directory where the DPKs reside. If you want the log to be saved in a different location, use the DPK setup script `log_file` option. For example, if you stage the DPKs in the directory DPK_INSTALL, and use the same set of DPKs for different deployments to different installation locations, the log files for all the deployments will be generated in the same place, DPK_INSTALL\setup, and will overwrite each other. To avoid this, direct the log files for each deployment to different locations, such as the deployment directory. For example:

  ```
  Run 1: psft-dpk-setup.bat --env_type midtier --log_file d:\psft_run1\logs
  Run 2: psft-dpk-setup.bat --env_type midtier --log_file e:\psft_run2\logs
  ```

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

See "Installing the PeopleSoft Homes," Reviewing the DPK setup Script Options.

- Web Browser

  You need a version certified for the current PeopleSoft PeopleTools release for end-users.

  See PeopleSoft Update Manager (PUM) Home Page, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 1641843.2.

  See My Oracle Support, Certifications.

- Zip utility

  You need a utility that is able to extract (unzip) the DPK zip files. Use the extraction utility provided with your operating system.

- Verify that the PATHEXT environment variable includes the extension .bat.

  This is a requirement for running Puppet. For example:

  ```
  PATHEXT=.COM;.EXE;.BAT;.CMD;.VBS;.VBE;.JS;.JSE;.WSF;.WSH;.MSC
  ```

- Check for the USERPROFILE environment variable.

  If USERPROFILE is set, verify that there is full access to the location set by this environment variable.

- These Puppet components are included with the DPKs.

  The DPK setup script installs open-source Puppet software that has been modified for the PeopleSoft installation. This modification allows the Puppet software to be installed in the location specified by the DPK setup script. You may see this referred to as the "Relocatable Puppet."

  - Puppet Agent 8.3.1 (open source, and stand-alone architecture)
  - Facter 4.5.1
  - Hiera 5
  - Ruby 3.2.4

- Python 3.12.3 is included with the DPKs.

- Microsoft Visual C++ Redistributable files

  The current PeopleSoft PeopleTools release was developed using Microsoft Visual Studio 2022. PeopleSoft PeopleTools programs require Microsoft Visual C++ Redistributable for Visual Studio 2022 files to be present or the programs will not run. The required Visual C++ Redistributable for Visual Studio 2022 packages are installed by the DPK setup script. After you have completed the PeopleSoft installation, if necessary, you can install the files from *PS_HOME*\setup\psvccrt.

- Java JDK 21 is included with the DPKs.

  JDK 21 is used by the application server, Process Scheduler, web server, and life-cycle management processes. Note that Java 21 includes only JDK, not JRE.

- Specifying PS_APP_HOME

  The DPK setup script creates the installation location for the PeopleSoft application files, *PS_APP_HOME*, in a default location. If you want to use an existing *PS_APP_HOME*, or specify a non-default location, follow the instructions to perform the deployment using the DPK customizations.

  See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations," Preparing the Customization File for the PeopleSoft Homes.

- Specifying PS_CUST_HOME

  If you wish to use a *PS_CUST_HOME* location to store your site's custom files, you must perform the deployment using the DPK customizations, and specify the *PS_CUST_HOME* location.

  See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations," Preparing the Customization File for the PeopleSoft Homes.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Task 1-2-2: Using the Correct PeopleTools DPKs

The DPKs are based on a specific PeopleTools release and patch number. Ensure that the entire set of downloaded DPKs you use for deployment is on the same PeopleTools patch release. The DPK zip file names include the PeopleTools release and patch number. For example, the "8.62.05" in the zip file name PEOPLETOOLS-WIN-8.62.05_1of4.zip refers to release 8.62 and patch 5.

See "Preparing for Installation," Reviewing the PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs.

It is necessary to use downloaded DPKs with the same PeopleTools release and patch. If you mix DPKs with different PeopleTools release and patch, there may be issues with environment deployment or cleanup of a deployed environment.

Task 1-3: Using Oracle Software Delivery Cloud to Obtain Installation Files

Before beginning the installation, you should have obtained the PeopleSoft installation software by downloading the necessary zip files from the Oracle Software Delivery Cloud portal or My Oracle Support. Use the information available in the PeopleSoft documentation and My Oracle Support Certifications to be sure that you obtain all the zip files required for your environment.

See Oracle Software Delivery Cloud, https://edelivery.oracle.com.

See My Oracle Support, https://support.oracle.com.

In case you have not yet obtained the necessary files, this documentation includes sections on obtaining the files at appropriate points during the installation process.

Note. If your PeopleSoft installation uses Oracle SOA Suite, note that the 32-bit versions of the Oracle SOA Suite 10g media components on the Oracle Software Delivery Cloud portal are certified to run on the Linux x86-64 and the Microsoft Windows 64-bit operating system platforms.

See Also

Downloading Software from Oracle Software Delivery Cloud, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2098595.1

Task 1-4: Considering Project Planning

Identify the maintenance schedule for upcoming PeopleSoft PeopleTools and PeopleSoft application releases. These releases are typically on a regular schedule (for example, quarterly, biannually) and should be included in your project planning and budgeting processes. Maintenance schedules are posted on My Oracle Support. It is important to plan regular maintenance in your overall project plans. For example, for a year-long enterprise upgrade, development, and conversion project, make sure to set aside time for applying the PeopleSoft PeopleTools minor releases that ship during that time frame. Otherwise, if you fall behind, you may find that you need a fix shipped with one of the minor releases that cannot be backported as a patch.

Search for the term "maintenance schedules" on My Oracle Support. You can find schedules by year and quarter for PeopleSoft PeopleTools and PeopleSoft applications. The schedules include lists of bundles and maintenance packs for individual products.

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Task 1-5: Planning Your Initial Configuration

This section discusses:

- Understanding Workstations
- Understanding PeopleSoft Servers and Clients
- Defining the PeopleTools Client
- Defining the File Server
- Defining the Database Server
- Defining the Application Server
- Defining the Process Scheduler (Batch) Server
- Defining Installation Locations
- Defining the Web Server

Understanding Workstations

Using the PeopleTools Development Environment (Microsoft Windows-Based Clients)

Microsoft Windows-based clients are referred to as the PeopleTools Development Environment. These clients—which run on supported Microsoft Windows platforms—can connect to the PeopleSoft database directly using client connectivity software (a two-tier connection) or through a PeopleSoft application server (a three-tier connection).

Three-tier connectivity offers great performance advantages over two-tier (especially over a WAN), reduces network traffic, and generally does not require that you install database connectivity on the client. However, any Microsoft Windows-based clients that will be running Data Mover scripts against the database, or running COBOL or Structured Query Report (SQR) batch processes on the client, must have database connectivity installed.

Note. COBOL is not needed for PeopleTools or for applications that contain no COBOL programs. Check My Oracle Support for details about whether your application requires COBOL.

See Installing Supporting Applications.

You need to have the PeopleTools Development Environment set up to create your database. For more information on setting up the PeopleTools Development Environment, refer to the product documentation for PeopleSoft Configuration Manager.

See the *PeopleTools: System and Server Administration* product documentation for more information about using PeopleSoft Configuration Manager.

For installation purposes, you must set up at least one Microsoft Windows-based client for sign-on using a two-tier connection to the database, so that it can create and populate the PeopleSoft database. This documentation refers to this client as the install workstation. Depending on your installation plan, you may want to set up more than one install workstation so that you can perform asynchronous installation tasks in parallel.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Note. The Microsoft Windows machine that you use to perform your PeopleSoft PeopleTools installation must be running in 256-color mode or higher when running the PeopleSoft installation and database configuration on Microsoft Windows. This is not necessary for UNIX or console mode.

Using Workstations Equipped with Supported Web Browsers

To run the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture, the client workstation only needs a web browser that is HTML 4.0 compliant. You may need an additional workstation for demonstration and testing purposes if you plan to use a browser running on a platform other than Microsoft Windows—such as Macintosh or UNIX.

See *PeopleTools: Portal Technology.*

See My Oracle Support, Certifications.

Understanding PeopleSoft Servers and Clients

Here is a summary of the functionality included in the PeopleSoft servers and clients:

- *File Server*

  All Client executables (such as PeopleSoft Application Designer and Configuration Manager), PS/nVision, Change Assistant, files and directories necessary to perform upgrade, and Client SQR.

  See Defining the File Server

- *PeopleTools Client*

  All Client executables (such as PeopleSoft Application Designer and Configuration Manager), PS/nVision, Change Assistant, Change Impact Analyzer, PeopleSoft Test Framework, PSEM Agent, and Client SQR.

  See Defining the PeopleTools Client.

- *Application Server*

  PSADMIN and COBOL for remote call

- *Database Server*

  Scripts and data directories, files necessary to run Data Mover.

- *Process Scheduler Server*

  PSADMIN, COBOL, and SQR.

- *Web Server*

  The Web Server contains all the scripts file, Portal Search data files, and PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture (PIA) installation tools that can assist in setting up a web server domain. However, to run the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture, the client workstation only needs a web browser that is HTML 4.0 compliant.

Task 1-5-1: Defining the PeopleTools Client

The PeopleTools Client is the environment repository for the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Development environment. The PeopleTools Client provides two-tier and three-tier connectivity to PeopleSoft applications.

To install the PeopleTools Client, use the script included with the PeopleTools Client DPK. Keep in mind that the PeopleTools Client can be installed *only* on supported Microsoft Windows operating systems.

Note. The client may be referred to as the PeopleTools Client, PT Client, or PeopleSoft Microsoft Windows client in this documentation.

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

See "Deploying the PeopleTools Client DPK."

Task 1-5-2: Defining the File Server

The file server is the environment (or file) repository for the PeopleTools Development Environment, which is needed for the Database Configuration Wizard. The file server is also the repository for the files necessary to perform an upgrade. This includes Change Assistant and all of the executables and scripts that are necessary to perform an upgrade. You will apply patches and updates from My Oracle Support directly to the file server and then copy the updated files to your other servers. In addition, the file server is a source repository for COBOL and SQR.

Important! Remember, a COBOL compiler is not needed for PeopleSoft PeopleTools unless your application contains COBOL programs. If your application requires COBOL and you are running on Microsoft Windows, we require that you maintain a central repository of your COBOL source code on the Windows file server. See the task Installing Supporting Applications later in this chapter for details on where you should install your COBOL compiler.

If you follow the default procedures recommended in this documentation, the install workstations, Microsoft Windows batch servers, and Microsoft Windows report servers will access the PeopleSoft files on the file server by pointing to a directory referred to in this documentation as *PS_HOME* on a shared network drive. You can install SQR on the file server, or install them locally on Microsoft Windows batch servers and on Microsoft Windows-based clients that will be running these processes locally.

If you are working only on Microsoft Windows, and you install the file server along with the other servers, you do not need to repeat the file server setup.

If you need to set up the file server on a separate Microsoft Windows machine, you should install PeopleSoft PeopleTools, any PeopleSoft applications, and the Multilanguage files.

In some cases you may choose to set up local copies of the PeopleSoft executables on the PeopleTools Development Environment and Windows batch servers, rather than mapping to a shared directory on the file server.

Task 1-5-3: Defining the Database Server

The servers that host your PeopleSoft databases need sufficient processing, storage, and networking resources to process the database requests, store the data and transaction logs, and communicate freely to the clients of this data. These databases will include your own PeopleSoft database prototypes as well as any system and demonstration databases delivered directly from Oracle with the PeopleSoft installation media.

See Planning Database Creation.

Database sizes vary depending on the applications that you install. The size of your prototype PeopleSoft database will also depend on the amount of data to be converted from your legacy system. A good rule of thumb for estimating the size of your prototype PeopleSoft database is to estimate the amount of disk space needed for the data to be converted from your legacy system, add to this the size required for the PeopleSoft System database, and then add an additional 50 percent of this combined figure to allow for growth.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Task 1-5-4: Defining the Application Server

The application server is the centerpiece of the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture. It connects to the PeopleSoft database and handles almost all SQL-intensive interactions with the database server required during online transaction processing. Microsoft Windows-based clients, in three-tier, communicate with the application server using Oracle Tuxedo messages. In the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture, the application server interacts with user workstations through a web server.

The application server also provides functionality required for application messaging and for implementing the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture. An application server is required in all PeopleSoft installations.

For Microsoft SQL Server the application server will run on a Windows-based server too. Oracle recommends a physical three-tier configuration for the PeopleSoft installation, which means the application server will reside on a separate server than the database server. If performance for both the database server and the application server is not an issue, you can run both on the same server—a logical three-tier configuration.

See SQL Server books online.

All application servers require database connectivity to the database server. Before beginning your installation, make sure that you can connect from the application server machine to the database server using a SQL tool. This topic will be addressed later in this chapter.

See Also

PeopleTools: Portal Technology

Task 1-5-5: Defining the Process Scheduler (Batch) Server

The term *batch server* is equivalent to the term *Process Scheduler server.* PeopleSoft batch processes, such as COBOL and SQR, are scheduled and invoked by a Process Scheduler server. In almost all configurations, batch server SQR and COBOL files are located and executed on the same computer as the database server.

For Microsoft SQL Server databases, a Process Scheduler located on the batch server can point to and invoke files that are physically located on the file server.

Oracle supports setting up the batch environments on a dedicated server, an application server, or even on the database server.

Any computer operating as a batch server must have database connectivity installed so that it can make a two-tier connection to the PeopleSoft database.

See Also

PeopleTools: Process Scheduler

Task 1-5-6: Defining Installation Locations

Understanding Installation Locations

As you proceed through the PeopleSoft PeopleTools installation, you are asked to specify several installation locations. Use the information in this section to choose how to specify the installation locations for the various components in a PeopleSoft installation.

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

In addition to these installation locations, there are home directories for the various supporting software, such as Oracle WebLogic, which are described in the appropriate chapters.

Defining the DPK Base Directory

When you use the PeopleSoft DPKs to install a PeopleSoft environment, you specify a base directory, referred to in this documentation as *BASE_DIR.* The DPK setup script creates the following directories under *BASE_DIR*:

- *BASE_DIR*/db

  This directory is used for an Oracle RDBMS full-tier installation. It is empty in other installations.

  - Oracle database server software is installed by default in *BASE_DIR*/db/oracle-server.
  - For a full-tier installation, Oracle container database (CDB) and pluggable database (PDB) files and tables for the PeopleSoft application are installed by default in *BASE_DIR*/db/oradata.
- *BASE_DIR*/dpk
  - The script uses this directory to extract the archives from the PeopleSoft DPKs.
  - The Puppet YAML files for the installation configuration are installed in *BASE_DIR*/dpk/puppet/production.
- *BASE_DIR*/lcm

  The script uses this directory to install Change Assistant and directories used for PeopleSoft Automated Updates.

  See *PeopleTools Change Assistant and Update Manager,* "Using PeopleSoft Automated Updates."
- *BASE_DIR*/psft_puppet_agent

  The script uses this directory to install Puppet software.

  See Reviewing Software Requirements.
- *BASE_DIR*/pt

  The script deploys the PeopleSoft components to the following installation locations:

  - *PS_HOME* is installed by default in <*BASE_DIR*>/pt/ps_home<*peopletools_patch_version*>, where <peopletools_patch_version> is the full release; for example, ps_home8.62.12.
  - *PS_APP_HOME* is installed by default in <*BASE_DIR*>/pt/<*app*>_app_home, where <app> is the PeopleSoft product, such as fscm_app_home.
  - The Oracle Tuxedo software is installed by default in *BASE_DIR*/pt/bea/tuxedo.
  - The Oracle WebLogic software is installed by default in *BASE_DIR*/pt/bea/wlserver.
  - The supported JDK software is installed by default in *BASE_DIR*/pt/jdk.
  - If you perform a full-tier installation in which you specify install type PUM, the files needed to install the supported versions of the PeopleSoft PeopleTools client software are installed in *BASE_DIR*/pt/tools_client.

    Use the *BASE_DIR*/pt/tools_client files to install the PeopleTools Client in Update Manager mode.

Defining PS_HOME

The *PS_HOME* directory holds the PeopleSoft PeopleTools files. For information on setting up *PS_HOME* as a read-only environment, see the *PeopleTools: System and Server Administration* product documentation on securing PS_HOME and PS_CFG_HOME.

PS_HOME can be used in the following ways:

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Multiple hosts can access *PS_HOME* on a shared (Microsoft Windows) or mounted (UNIX) location.
- Several Application Server, PIA, and Process Scheduler domains can use the same *PS_HOME*.

Defining PS_APP_HOME

The *PS_APP_HOME* location holds the PeopleSoft application files, in a location that is separate from *PS_HOME*. The *PS_APP_HOME* location is sometimes referred to as "Application Home."

Note. The PeopleSoft DPK setup requires that *PS_APP_HOME* be installed to a different location than *PS_HOME*. In earlier PeopleSoft releases, it was possible to set up an environment with the *PS_APP_HOME* location the same as the *PS_HOME* location. This configuration is not supported for the DPK installations.

Defining PS_CFG_HOME

The *PS_CFG_HOME* location holds the configuration files for the application server, batch server, web server (PIA), and search server domains. This location is sometimes referred to as "Config Home."

When you install PeopleSoft PeopleTools and the PeopleSoft application software, the DPK deployment process places the required files into the specified *PS_HOME* directory. When you create an application server, batch server, web server (PIA) or search server domain, the configuration files associated with that domain are installed into a directory referred to as *PS_CFG_HOME*.

By default, the system separates the binary files (executables and libraries) stored in *PS_HOME* from the ASCII files (configuration and log files) associated with a domain stored in *PS_CFG_HOME*. This separation applies only to these servers:

- PeopleSoft Application Server
- PeopleSoft Process Scheduler Server
- PeopleSoft Search Server

The DPK deployment creates the *PS_CFG_HOME* directory in the following location. The configuration and log files for the application server, Process Scheduler server, and search server are installed below this location.

%USERPROFILE%\psft\pt\<*peopletools_major_version*>. For example, C:\Users\psftuser\psft\pt\8.62.

Note. The *PS_CFG_HOME* directory is associated with the *PS_HOME* from which it was originally generated. The DPK deployment process supports a single *PS_CFG_HOME* to be used for all domains for a given environment.

This server domain configuration allows for a more flexible installation. You also have the opportunity to place different security restrictions on the binary and configuration files. For installations using DPKs, use the Puppet customizations to change *PS_CFG_HOME*.

Defining PS_CUST_HOME

The *PS_CUST_HOME* location holds customized file system objects (that is, objects you provide as opposed to being installed with the software).

Anything that is changed from the file system objects that are delivered with the PeopleSoft application installation should be placed here. The sub-directory structure must mirror the *PS_APP_HOME* upon which it is based. For example, when you install your PeopleSoft application, the directory structure includes SQR scripts in *PS_APP_HOME*/sqr. If you have customized SQR scripts, you would place them in *PS_CUST_HOME*/sqr.

To define a PS_CUST_HOME location, use the Puppet customizations.

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Defining PIA_HOME

When you install the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture, the files are installed in the *PIA_HOME* directory. The *PIA_HOME* location holds the webserv directory, and the files for the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture installation. The directory where you install PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture under *PS_CFG_HOME* is not the same as the location where you install PeopleSoft PeopleTools and the PeopleSoft application software, *PS_HOME.* You have the option to specify the installation location for the *PS_CFG_HOME* and the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture by using the Puppet customizations.

The *PS_CFG_HOME* directory is created the first time that the PSADMIN utility starts. PSADMIN recognizes that *PS_CFG_HOME* is not present and creates it when necessary. This is done before any domains are created. When you invoke PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture, the installer checks your environment to determine the *PS_CFG_HOME.* If the environment variable PS_CFG_HOME is defined, the *PS_CFG_HOME* location is seen as the directory to which that environment variable points. If PS_CFG_HOME is not defined the default value is used.

See the product documentation for using the %V Meta variable in *PeopleTools: System and Server Administration* product documentation for more information about setting the PS_CFG_HOME environment variable.

Task 1-5-7: Defining the Web Server

A web server is required to run the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture. The PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture is certified to work with the Oracle WebLogic Server J2EE web application servers (also commonly referred to as web servers).

Refer to the Certifications page on My Oracle Support for web server support information.

To find support information for the HTTP servers that can be used as reverse proxy servers (RPS), see the Oracle WebLogic documentation, included with Oracle Fusion Middleware.

See Oracle Help Center, Middleware Documentation, https://docs.oracle.com/en/middleware/index.html.

Oracle WebLogic and the supported reverse proxy server will provide out-of-the-box SSL support across all supported operating systems. Oracle WebLogic provides demo digital certificates, but for production grade SSL you must purchase digital certificates from a Certificate Authority supported by the web server that you are using (for example, Verisign, Baltimore, Entrust, and so on).

When you use the DPK setup script to install a PeopleSoft environment, default initialization installs a single web server domain with a single web site. You can also use the following methods to create and manage web server domains:

- Use the DPK customizations to create a non-default PIA domain, or to create more than one web site.

  See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations," Preparing the Customization File for PeopleSoft Domain Definitions.
- After you have installed an environment, use the PSADMIN utility to create additional domains or manage existing domains.

  Note that you cannot use PSADMIN to create a multi-server domain.

  See *PeopleTools: System and Server Administration,* "Using the Web (PIA) Server Menu."
- Use the silent mode installation to install and configure a web server domain.

  You must use the silent mode installation to create a multi-server domain.

  See "Setting Up the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture in Silent Mode."

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Task 1-6: Planning Database Creation

This section discusses:

- Understanding Database Creation
- Determining Databases and Database Names
- Defining Microsoft SQL Server and PeopleSoft Databases

Understanding Database Creation

When performing a PeopleSoft installation, you will create these types of PeopleSoft databases:

- System (also called SYS) databases, which contain the PeopleSoft PeopleTools and product-specific metadata required for development of a production database.
- Demo (DMO) databases, which are populated with sample data for study, demonstration, or training purposes.

Task 1-6-1: Determining Databases and Database Names

Before you begin the installation process, you should determine how many PeopleSoft databases (System or Demo) of which type you need and how you intend to use them. You should also determine the names of the databases at this point, using database names that:

- Are limited to eight characters, all UPPERCASE.
- Capture information about the PeopleSoft product line and the type of database.

  For example, you may want to create two databases with the names PSHRDMO and PSHRSYS, using the two characters HR (for Human Resources) to indicate the product line.

Note. Microsoft SQL Server allows you to create database names that begin with a number (as in 8PTDMO). However, database names that begin with a number are not valid PeopleSoft database names and will result in errors.

Task 1-6-2: Defining Microsoft SQL Server and PeopleSoft Databases

The terms "Microsoft SQL Server database" and "PeopleSoft database" have essentially the same meaning. A PeopleSoft database is a set of SQL objects defined as having the same owner ID. These objects are always within a single Microsoft SQL Server database. A Microsoft SQL Server may hold more than one PeopleSoft database, but only one PeopleSoft database may reside in a Microsoft SQL Server database. A PeopleSoft database includes the PeopleSoft objects and application data for one or more products in a PeopleSoft product line. Each PeopleSoft database has a database owner, known as the access ID. Make sure that the access ID does not exceed eight characters in length. These are PeopleSoft requirements for the access ID.

Note. When installing the PeopleSoft database do not use *sa* as your access ID. Instead use a login which does not have system administration privileges.

Refer to your Microsoft SQL Server database platform documentation for information about access ID and password length requirements, and work with your database administrator to set the password.

If you are upgrading your database from pre-8.50 PeopleSoft PeopleTools to release 8.51 or later, see the appendix "Synchronizing the ACCESSID User" for instructions on configuring your access ID.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

The levels of security provided by Microsoft are:

- The operating system
- The Microsoft SQL Server
- The server's databases
- The database's objects

All of the objects in a PeopleSoft database will be owned by the owner ID. Only the connect ID will be granted SELECT access to the signon tables. SELECT access will be granted on three tables—PSSTATUS, PSACCESSPROFILE, and PSOPRDEFN—for the PeopleSoft connect ID.

Note. The connect ID is explained in "Creating a Database," Running the Database Configuration Wizard.

Task 1-7: Planning Multilingual Strategy

This section discusses:

- Understanding Multilingual Issues
- Choosing a Base Language
- Selecting Additional Languages
- Selecting a Database Collation

Understanding Multilingual Issues

Before beginning your installation, you should determine which languages your PeopleSoft system will need to support. If multiple languages are required, determine which language will be used most often. These decisions will affect tasks at various stages of the installation, including file server setup, database creation, and the ability to change the base language of the PeopleSoft database after it is created. Even if you do not plan on running your system in more than one language, you should decide the following information before completing this task:

- Database base language
- Additional languages (if any)
- Database character set (Unicode recommended)

The current languages provided by Oracle and their language codes are listed in the following table, as well as the corresponding database character sets for that language. These are the languages for which Oracle provides pre-translated products. If you plan to provide users access to your applications in these languages, Oracle recommends that you install the translations during your initial installation. This approach will keep you from having to perform an upgrade if you decide to add the Oracle-provided translations at a later date. After installation, you also have the option of performing your own translations, and adding additional languages.

In considering which languages to include, whether for pre-translated objects or for your own application development, keep in mind that certain languages require a Unicode database. Oracle recommends Unicode character sets rather than non-Unicode character sets, including Western European and Japanese Shift-JIS, for all installations and upgrades regardless of the languages used.

See Selecting a Database Collation.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Language Code	Language	Database Character Set
ARA	Arabic	Unicode only
CFR	Canadian French	Unicode recommended
CZE	Czech	Unicode only
DAN	Danish	Unicode recommended
DUT	Dutch	Unicode recommended
ENG	US English	Unicode recommended
FIN	Finnish	Unicode recommended
ESP	Spanish	Unicode recommended
FRA	French	Unicode recommended
GER	German	Unicode recommended
HUN	Hungarian	Unicode only
ITA	Italian	Unicode recommended
JPN	Japanese	Unicode recommended
KOR	Korean	Unicode only
NOR	Norwegian	Unicode recommended
POL	Polish	Unicode only
POR	Portuguese	Unicode recommended
ROM	Romanian	Unicode only
RUS	Russian	Unicode only
SVE	Swedish	Unicode recommended
THA	Thai	Unicode only
TUR	Turkish	Unicode only
UKE	United Kingdom English	Unicode recommended
ZHS	Simplified Chinese	Unicode only

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Language Code	Language	Database Character Set
ZHT	Traditional Chinese	Unicode only

See Also

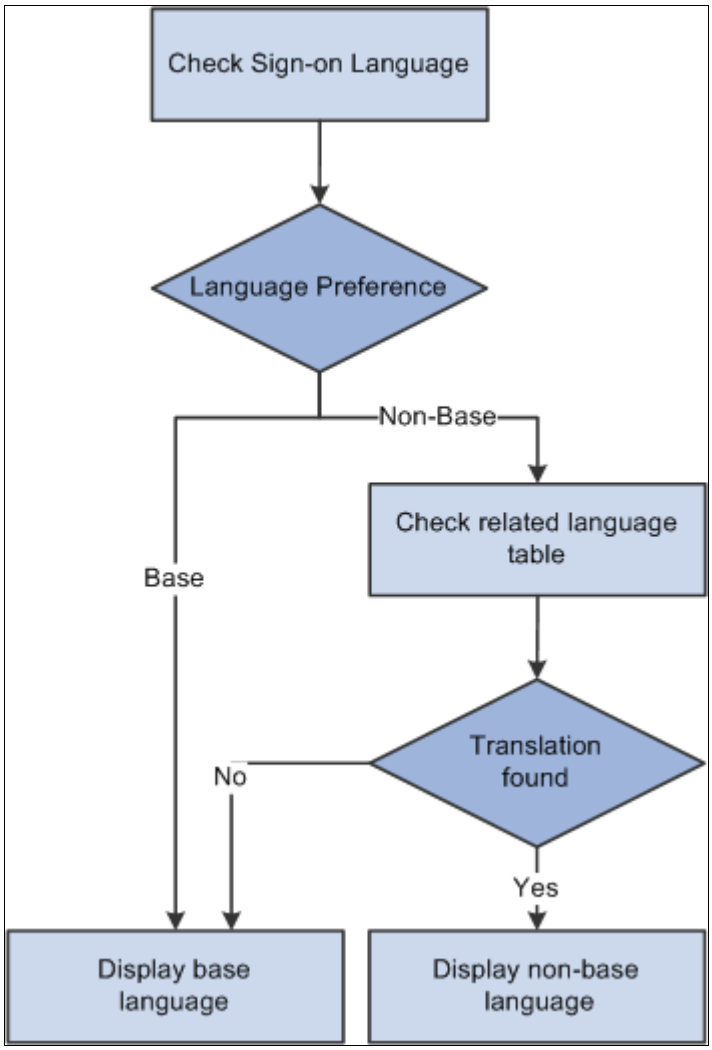
PeopleTools: Global Technology

Task 1-7-1: Choosing a Base Language

Each PeopleSoft database can have only one base language. PeopleSoft databases ship with English as the default base language. Typically, the base language of your database should match the language most commonly used by your organization, as it affects the performance of PeopleSoft applications.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

When PeopleSoft PeopleTools attempts to open language-sensitive objects (such as pages and menus), it first compares the operator's preferred language to the base language of the database. If the preferred language matches the base language, PeopleSoft PeopleTools immediately loads the required definition from the base language PeopleSoft PeopleTools tables. However, if the user's preferred language differs from the database's base language, PeopleSoft PeopleTools must first query the related language tables for the object. Should a translation of the object not be found in the operator's preferred language, a query is then performed on the base language tables. The following process flow illustrates the selection of the language used for language-sensitive objects, beginning with the language selected when the user signs in to the PeopleSoft application:



Language selection process using the base language and the preferred language

While these queries typically occur very quickly, they still take up valuable processing time. To optimize performance you can set the base language of your database as the language that is used most often by your users. Another consideration is that because PeopleSoft databases are shipped with a base language of English, maintenance is simpler if English remains the base language. Both configurations are supported by Oracle.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Task 1-7-2: Selecting Additional Languages

Oracle provides translations of all end-user objects with the global multi-language files. When you install your PeopleSoft environment, the DPK setup script asks whether you want multi-language support. It is much easier to install the multi-language files upon initial database creation than to add the languages later in your implementation process, so Oracle recommends that you decide whether to include additional languages now. There is no limit to the number of languages that can coexist in a single PeopleSoft database; however, remember that each language will require additional storage space, primarily for PeopleSoft PeopleTools objects.

Task 1-7-3: Selecting a Database Collation

This section discusses:

- Understanding Database Collation
- Using Unicode Databases

Understanding Database Collation

Depending on the languages that you are planning to select for your PeopleSoft installation, you need to determine which collation you will use during the Microsoft SQL Server installation. First you must determine whether you need a Unicode database.

Using Unicode Databases

Unicode enables you to maintain data in virtually any modern language in a single database. Prior to Unicode, many languages could not coexist in one database, as they did not share a common character set. On Microsoft SQL Server, Unicode databases differ from non-Unicode databases because they use the NVARCHAR data type (or NCHAR data type if using PeopleSoft applications 8.9 or earlier) instead of CHAR for character data. Unicode databases are particularly important if the languages that you selected do not share the same character set. Typically, a single character set can encode all languages written in a single script. For example, English, French, and Spanish all share the same script (Latin), so they can coexist in a non-Unicode database. However, Japanese does not share the same script as French, so if you need to have Japanese and French coexist in a single system, you need a Unicode database.

Note. The characters required for the English language exist in all Unicode and non-Unicode character sets. For example, Japanese and unaccented English can coexist in a single Unicode or non-Unicode database.

If you plan on installing or supporting a combination of languages that do not share the same character set, you should use a Unicode database. The primary disadvantage of a Unicode database is the disk space it requires. On Microsoft SQL Server, some characters require more disk space than a non-Unicode database, so the database size will be larger depending on the data content.

This table includes a list of collations you may want to use for supported languages:

Collation	Languages Supported
Arabic_BIN	Arabic, English
Chinese_PRC_BIN	Chinese, English

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Collation	Languages Supported
Chinese_Taiwan_Stroke_BIN	Chinese, English
Cyrillic_General_BIN	Russian, English
Czech_BIN	Czech, English
Greek_BIN	Greek, English
Hebrew_BIN	Hebrew, English
Hungarian_BIN	Hungarian, English
Korean_Wansung_BIN	Korean, English
Latin1_General_Bin	Western European or Latin-1. (All Western Europe: English, Danish, Dutch, Finnish, French, German, Italian, Norwegian, Portuguese, Spanish, and Swedish)
Japanese_Bin	Japanese, English
Polish_BIN	Polish, English
Thai_BIN	Thai, English
Turkish_BIN	Turkish, English

Note. In addition to *_BIN collations, all the *_BIN2 and *_AS_CS_WS_KS collations are supported, where "*" can be any language listed above.

Remember that all characters required for English are defined in all Unicode and non-Unicode character sets.

See *PeopleTools: Global Technology.*

Task 1-8: Installing Supporting Applications

Oracle requires that a number of supporting applications be installed for the PeopleSoft installation on batch servers and on any Windows-based client on which batch processes will be run locally. (Throughout the rest of this section we refer to these Windows-based clients as *two-tier clients.*) Be sure to check My Oracle Support, Certifications to ensure that you are installing software versions that are certified by Oracle.

COBOL

- Consult the PeopleSoft information on My Oracle Support to verify whether your application requires COBOL. Remember that COBOL is not needed for PeopleSoft PeopleTools or for applications that do not contain COBOL programs.

  See PeopleSoft Enterprise Frequently Asked Questions about PeopleSoft and COBOL Compilers, My Oracle Support, (search for the article name).

  See PeopleSoft Enterprise Frequently Asked Questions about PeopleSoft and the IBM COBOL Compiler, My

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Oracle Support, (search for the article name).

See Using Visual COBOL with PeopleSoft, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2523494.1.

- For PeopleSoft applications written in COBOL, install the appropriate version of the COBOL compiler on the server where you will compile.

  For Microsoft Windows servers, install the appropriate version of Visual COBOL.

  See "Installing and Compiling COBOL on Windows."

- If all your servers are on Microsoft Windows operating systems, Oracle recommends that you install a COBOL compiler on the file server.

  You can install PeopleSoft PeopleTools plus any patches on the file server, compile your COBOL there, and then copy the COBOL binaries to your application and batch servers.

  Note. The delivered releases before PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.4 included both source and compiled COBOL for Windows users. From release 8.4 onwards, the delivered PeopleSoft PeopleTools includes source only. If your application requires COBOL, you will need to compile it.

  If your application requires COBOL you *must* install the COBOL runtime on every application and batch server where COBOL programs will be executed.

- The format of COBOL source file names of patches or customizations on the file server should always be UPPERCASE.cbl to ensure compatibility with your UNIX servers.

SQR

- On Microsoft Windows batch servers and two-tier clients, you have the option of installing SQR locally, or mapping to a copy installed on the file server.
- Because SQR does not require any local registry settings, you can execute SQR from any Microsoft Windows batch server or two-tier client once SQR has been installed to a shared directory. Installing SQR locally will result in improved performance; over a slow network connection the improvement will be significant.

JDK

See the section Reviewing Software Requirements for the JDK version required for the current PeopleSoft PeopleTools release.

OpenSearch

OpenSearch is the supported search engine for the PeopleSoft Search Framework. Oracle provides OpenSearch as deployment packages (DPKs) for Microsoft Windows and Linux. The DPK delivers the required OpenSearch, OpenSearch Dashboards, and Logstash (OSK) software versions, Java-based plug-ins needed for integration with PeopleSoft environments, and customized code where required. OpenSearch Dashboards is used for analytics and data visualizations, and Logstash is used for PeopleSoft Health Center and as part of the external data integration feature. Be sure to obtain and use the OSK DPKs provided for use with the PeopleSoft installation.

See PeopleSoft Search and Insights Home Page, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2205540.2.

Oracle Tuxedo

The installation of Oracle Tuxedo is required for a basic PeopleSoft PeopleTools installation. When you use the PeopleSoft DPKs for either a full-tier installation using the PeopleSoft Application Images or for a mid-tier installation using the PeopleTools DPKs, Oracle Tuxedo is installed as part of the installation. If for some reason you need to install Oracle Tuxedo separately, see the chapter "Installing Oracle Tuxedo."

Microsoft Office

Install Microsoft Office (Excel and Word) on any Windows batch server or two-tier client that will be running PS/nVision or Microsoft Word batch processes.

Microsoft Office must be installed locally, because it requires registry settings.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

See Also

My Oracle Support, Certifications

Task 1-9: Deploying PeopleSoft Environments in Containers

You can run PeopleSoft applications built on the current PeopleSoft PeopleTools Release in containers. Using the delivered DPKs along with a new API and scripts, you can build a Podman container for the middle tier, and search components (OpenSearch, OpenSearch Dashboards, and Logstash).

See *PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.62 Deployment Packages,* "Deploying PeopleSoft DPKs in Containers."

Task 1-10: Installing Microsoft SQL Server Software

You must obtain and install Microsoft SQL Server on the database server. To find the versions of Microsoft SQL Server that are supported for the current PeopleSoft PeopleTools release, go to My Oracle Support, Certifications, search for the current PeopleSoft PeopleTools release, and expand the Databases section. This documentation includes information for installing Microsoft SQL Server on the database server, as well as the ODBC driver required for connectivity.

There are different editions of Microsoft SQL Server. Note that indexed views and summary tables for Microsoft SQL Server are supported only for Microsoft SQL Server Enterprise Editions.

See *PeopleTools: Data Management,* "Working with Indexed Views"

See "Installing Microsoft SQL Server 2022."

Task 1-11: Increasing the Size of Tempdb

The Oracle-recommended configuration for PeopleSoft software includes increasing the size of tempdb. Microsoft SQL Server creates an 8.5 MB temporary database, tempdb, upon installation. Tempdb is a shared workspace used for temporary tables, sorting, and other temporary work storage needs. By default, in Microsoft SQL Server, tempdb is set to grow automatically. However, PeopleSoft software uses tempdb extensively and Oracle recommends increasing its size by a minimum of 15 percent to 20 percent the estimated final size of your database. Another good practice is to distribute tempdb into several data files of the same size; as a guideline you may want to have one per each processor assigned for SQL Server. If possible spread these datafiles on a high-performance disk array.

Because auto-grow on tempdb may affect the database overall performance it is important to assign the right size to tempdb. Auto-grow should never occur on a properly sized production environment.

Note. Make sure your tempdb resides on a different disk device than your data and your database log.

Task 1-12: Performing Backups

Before proceeding, you should back up all servers and workstations that are set up for installation so you can recover to this point if necessary. Do the following:

- Back up any changes you made to the database server in setting up your PeopleSoft system.

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Back up any changes you made to your file server while setting aside space for your PeopleSoft system and setting up access privileges.
- Once you set up your install workstations to access the file server and database server simultaneously, back up the workstations.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 2

Installing the PeopleSoft Homes

This chapter discusses:

- Obtaining the PeopleSoft Application Images and PeopleTools DPKs
- Using the PT-INFRA DPK for Additional Component Software
- Reviewing the DPK Setup Script Options
- Running the DPK Setup Script to Install PS_HOME and PS_APP_HOME
- Running the DPK Setup Script to Install All Software
- Removing a Deployed PeopleSoft Environment

Task 2-1: Obtaining the PeopleSoft Application Images and PeopleTools DPKs

If you have not already done so, this section describes how to locate and obtain the PeopleSoft Application Images and PeopleTools DPKs required for a fresh installation.

The PeopleSoft Application Images and PeopleTools DPKs are available on My Oracle Support. Contact Oracle if you need a user ID and password for My Oracle Support.

1. Go to the PeopleSoft Update Manager (PUM) Home Page, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 1641843.2, to find the information on locating and downloading the current PeopleSoft Application Image.

   Note. On the PeopleSoft Update Manager Home Page, the term PeopleSoft Update Image (PI) is used for the images.

2. Select the tab PeopleSoft Update Image Home Pages, and select the link for your PeopleSoft application.
3. Expand the Update Image Link section, and then select the link for Native OS to find the details for the current PeopleSoft Application Image for Microsoft Windows.
4. In the Update Image Link table on the PeopleSoft Update Image Home Page, download or open the Update Image Manifest, and note the following:
   - The PeopleTools patch release in the Software Version Included column.
   - The file name for Application DPK Zip 1, normally *FILENAME*_9of11.zip.
5. To obtain the PeopleTools DPK, in My Oracle Support, select the Patches & Updates tab.
6. Select Product or Family (Advanced).
7. Specify the following information, and then click Search:
   - PeopleSoft Enterprise PT PeopleTools as the Product
   - The current PeopleSoft PeopleTools release, such as 8.62, as the Release
   - Microsoft Windows as the Platform

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

8. On the search results page, locate the PeopleTools patch corresponding to the patch release that you noted in step 4, and download the DPKs into a single directory, referred to in this documentation as *DPK_INSTALL*.

   Note. You can also find links to the most recent PeopleTools patches on the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Patches Home Page, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2062712.2.

9. To obtain the PeopleSoft Application DPK Zip1, return to the PeopleSoft Update Image Home Page, and in the Update Image Links table, select the link in the column <*Product*> Update Image Link.
10. From the patch page, download the zip file for Application DPK Zip 1 to the same *DPK_INSTALL* directory as in step 8.

    The first Application DPK Zip 1 includes the content needed for the PeopleSoft application, *PS_APP_HOME*. The other Application DPK files are not needed for this installation.

See "Preparing for Installation," Understanding the PeopleSoft Installation to review a list of the contents of the DPKs and file name syntax.

Task 2-2: Using the PT-INFRA DPK for Additional Component Software

The PT-INFRA DPKs contain supporting (third-party) software that is required for a PeopleSoft installation. The PT-INFRA DPKs are delivered as needed to provide security updates for one or more of the components. You can use the PT-INFRA DPKs to take advantage of up-to-date security updates (CPUs). When you use the PT-INFRA DPKs with a new installation the script installs the supporting software components with the updated CPUs. When you use the PT-INFRA DPKs with an existing installation, the script installs the CPUs on the existing third-party software installation.

The PT-INFRA DPKs include the following:

- Oracle Tuxedo
- Oracle WebLogic
- Oracle Database Client
- Java JDK

You can also use the PT-INFRA DPKs to update the JDK and Oracle Database Client for new or existing PeopleTools Client installations.

See *PT-INFRA Deployment Package Installation (PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.62),* PeopleSoft PeopleTools on Oracle Help Center, https://docs.oracle.com/en/applications/peoplesoft/peopletools/index.html.

Task 2-3: Reviewing the DPK Setup Script Options

This section discusses:

- Using the DPK Setup Script Options
- Preparing to Run the DPK Setup Script

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Task 2-3-1: Using the DPK Setup Script Options

The PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPK setup script alleviates the installation process by automating most of the manual tasks on a virtual or bare-metal host running a supported operating system. By convention, the setup DPK is the first zip file *(FILENAME_*1ofn.zip) in the group of PeopleSoft DPK zip files you download from My Oracle Support.

The DPK setup zip file includes a script, psft-dpk-setup, that you use to set up a PeopleSoft environment. The DPK setup script offers a variety of options for setting up mid-tier components, *PS_HOME* and other installation folders, and PeopleSoft domains, depending upon the options you supply. The script is an interactive script that detects the downloaded DPKs and verifies that they are correct. It also prompts the user for input, and once that information is gathered, will set up a complete functional PeopleSoft environment.

Note. The DPK setup script does not provide any default passwords. It is a good idea to be prepared to supply passwords such as user ID, PeopleSoft Connect ID, Application Server Domain Connection, and so on.

When specifying directory locations, such as for the base directory and user home directory, enter the full path. For example, C:/psft on Microsoft Windows.

The following table lists the options available for the DPK setup script, psft-dpk-setup.bat for Microsoft Windows.

See the section Preparing to Deploy with a Non-Root User for additional script options.

Note that the command options require two dashes.

Note. The commands in the table include line feeds to improve readability.

Deployment	DPK Setup Script Command

Perform the following:
• Install Puppet software in *BASE_DIR*/psft_puppet_agent.
• Install the software required for the mid-tier components, including Oracle Tuxedo, Oracle WebLogic, and Oracle database client.
• Deploy and set up the domains for the mid-tier components (Application Server, web server, Process Scheduler and Oracle database client).
The deployment sets up one each of Application Server, web server, and Process Scheduler domains.
• Install the *PS_HOME* directory.
	`psft-dpk-setup.bat`
	`--env_type midtier`
	or
	`psft-dpk-setup.bat`
	`--env_type midtier`
	`--domain_type all`

Perform the following:
• Install Puppet software in *BASE_DIR*/psft_puppet_agent.
• Install the software required for the mid-tier components, including Oracle Tuxedo, Oracle WebLogic and Oracle database client, without setting up the mid-tier domains.
• Install the *PS_HOME* directory.
	`psft-dpk-setup.bat`
	`--env_type midtier`
	`--deploy_only`
	or
	`psft-dpk-setup.bat`
	`--env_type midtier`
	`--deploy_only`
	`--deploy_type all`

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Deployment	DPK Setup Script Command
• Install Puppet software in *BASE_DIR*/psft_puppet_agent. • Deploy the *PS_HOME* directory only. This option does not set up any domains.	`psft-dpk-setup.bat --env_type midtier --deploy_only --deploy_type tools_home`
• Install Puppet software in *BASE_DIR*/psft_puppet_agent. • Deploy and set up the domain for the Application Server only. Install the Oracle Tuxedo and Oracle WebLogic software. **Note.** The deployment installs the binary files for all of the servers (Application Server, Process Scheduler, web server, database server) in *PS_HOME.*	`psft-dpk-setup.bat --env_type midtier --domain_type appserver`
• Install Puppet software in *BASE_DIR*/psft_puppet_agent. • Deploy and set up the domain for the Process Scheduler only. • Install the Oracle Tuxedo and Oracle WebLogic software. **Note.** The deployment installs the binary files for all of the servers (Application Server, Process Scheduler, web server, database server) in *PS_HOME.*	`psft-dpk-setup.bat --env_type midtier --domain_type prcs`
• Install Puppet software in *BASE_DIR*/psft_puppet_agent. • Deploy and set up the domain for PIA only. • Install the Oracle Tuxedo and Oracle WebLogic software. **Note.** Before beginning the PIA domain deployment, ensure that application server and Process Scheduler domains are available. **Note.** The deployment installs the binary files for all of the servers (Application Server, Process Scheduler, web server, database server) in *PS_HOME.*	`psft-dpk-setup.bat --env_type midtier --domain_type pia`

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Deployment	DPK Setup Script Command
• Install Puppet software in *BASE_DIR*/psft_puppet_agent. • Deploy and set up the domains for the Application Server and the Process Scheduler. • Install the Oracle Tuxedo and Oracle WebLogic software. **Note.** The deployment installs the binary files for all of the servers (Application Server, Process Scheduler, web server, database server) in *PS_HOME*.	`psft-dpk-setup.bat --env_type midtier --domain_type appbatch`
• Install Puppet software in *BASE_DIR*/psft_puppet_agent. • Deploy the *PS_APP_HOME* directory only. This option does not set up any domains.	`psft-dpk-setup.bat --env_type midtier --deploy_only --deploy_type app_home`
• Install Puppet software in *BASE_DIR*/psft_puppet_agent. • Deploy the *PS_HOME* and *PS_APP_HOME* directories only. This option does not set up any domains.	`psft-dpk-setup.bat --env_type midtier --deploy_only --deploy_type app_and_tools_home`
Specify the full path of the downloaded DPKs. The script assumes that the downloaded DPKs are in the parent directory of the DPK setup script. If the DPKs are located in a different directory, use this option.	`psft-dpk-setup.bat --env_type midtier --dpk_src_dir <full_DPK_path>`
Run the DPK setup script in silent mode for default initialization. You perform the deployment in silent mode by providing all the required information in a response file. See Running the DPK Setup Script in Silent Mode.	`psft-dpk-setup.bat --silent --response_file=<response_file>`
Run the DPK setup script in silent mode with a customization file. Use this command to specify a customization YAML file. See Running the DPK Setup Script in Silent Mode.	`psft-dpk-setup.bat --silent --response_file=<response_file> --customization_file=<dpk_customization_file>`
Remove a deployed environment. See "Using and Maintaining the PeopleSoft Environment," Removing a Deployed PeopleSoft Environment.	`psft-dpk-setup.bat --cleanup`
List the DPK setup script usage.	`psft-dpk-setup.bat --help`

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Deployment	DPK Setup Script Command

Specify the location for the installation log file by adding the log_file option to any of the other commands in this table.	Combine the option with the other DPK setup script commands listed in this table. Here are three examples:
	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext>`
	`--env_type midtier`
	`--log_file <log file>`
	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext>`
	`--env_type midtier`
	`--deploy_only`
	`--log_file <log file>`
	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext>`
	`--env_type midtier`
	`--domain_type appserver`
	`--log_file <log file>`

This option requires the presence of the PT-INFRA DPK. Apply CPUs for installed software components on an existing environment.
See *PT-INFRA Deployment Package Installation (PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.62).*
	`psft-dpk-setup.<ext>`
	`--psft_base_dir <full_path_base_dir>`
	`--apply_infra_cpu`

Note. If you want the DPK script log file to include debugging messages generated by Puppet, add the option `--debug` to any of the commands in this table. Note that running with this option increases the log file size. If you contact Oracle support regarding a deployment problem, Oracle support will request the log file. If the log file does not include the debugging messages it may not be helpful in resolving the issue.

Task 2-3-2: Preparing to Run the DPK Setup Script

Include the following decisions in preparing to install with the DPK setup script:

- FRESH or PUM installation type

  For this documentation, select a FRESH (new) installation, which enables you to make selections for RDBMS, Unicode, and multi-language support.

  The PUM installation type is used with the PeopleSoft Update Image DPKs to create and set up a PeopleSoft environment to be used as the source for the PeopleSoft Update Manager. If you select the PUM installation type, the DPK setup script installs an Oracle DEMO multi-lingual database without presenting you with other options. For the PUM installation type the script installs directories used by the PeopleSoft Update Manager process, including *PI_HOME* and *PS_APP_HOME*. It also installs and configures Change Assistant and supporting directories used for PUM Automated Updates.

  For information on deploying the PeopleSoft Update Image DPKs, see *PeopleSoft Deployment Packages for Update Images Installation (PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.62).*

- Default or manual configuration

  After extracting the DPKs, you are given the option to exit the process, create a customization file, and complete the configuration manually using the psft_puppet_apply script with a user-written customization file. Use the manual configuration if you want to change installation locations and so on.

  See Reviewing the Software Requirements on AIX

  See Preparing the Customization File for JDK on AIX.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- User IDs and password

  The DPK setup process does not include any default passwords. There are default users in some cases, which are included in the prompts. You must provide user IDs and passwords, as determined by the type of deployment.

  The restrictions for special characters are listed in the following article.

  See E-DPK - PeopleTools 8.59 and later - DPK setup does not support some special characters for passwords, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2765013.1.

  The DPK setup script prompts for the following user IDs and passwords:

  - PeopleSoft Connect ID and password
  - Database admin user (SYS/SYSTEM) password
  - Database access ID (SYSADM) password
  - PeopleSoft operator ID (such as PS or VP1) password
  - (Optional) Application Server Domain Connection password
  - Oracle WebLogic server administrator (system) password
  - PTWEBSERVER web profile user password
  - Integration Gateway administrator and password
  - Integration Gateway keystore password
- Multi-language support

  You are given the option to use the DPK setup script to deploy translated files to *PS_APP_HOME* for a multi-language installation.
- Unicode or non-Unicode

  While running the DPK setup script, you can choose to install a Unicode or non-Unicode environment.

  Alternatively, specify Unicode using the customizations and psft_puppet_apply script.

  See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations," Preparing the Customization File for Unicode.
- Specifying *PS_CUST_HOME*

  You may wish to set up a *PS_CUST_HOME* (PeopleSoft Customization Home) directory in your environment to store your site's customized files, separate from *PS_HOME* and *PS_APP_HOME*. If you wish to use a *PS_CUST_HOME* for your environment, you must perform the deployment using the DPK customizations, and specify the PS_CUST_HOME location.

  See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations," Preparing the Customization File for the PeopleSoft Homes.

Task 2-4: Running the DPK Setup Script to Install PS_HOME and PS_APP_HOME

This section discusses:

- Understanding the PS_HOME and PS_APP_HOME Installation
- Installing PS_HOME and PS_APP_HOME on Microsoft Windows
- Reviewing the Deployment Results

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Understanding the PS_HOME and PS_APP_HOME Installation

Use the DPK setup script to install the PeopleSoft PeopleTools software in *PS_HOME* and the PeopleSoft application software in *PS_APP_HOME,* using the `--deploy_only --deploy_type app_and_tools_home` option. This deployment requires the presence of PeopleSoft application DPKs in the deployment directory, *DPK_INSTALL.*

Note. You can also use the DPK setup script to deploy *PS_HOME* or *PS_APP_HOME* individually. See Reviewing the DPK Setup Script Options.

This procedure assumes that you have downloaded all of the required PeopleSoft Application Image DPKs for Linux or Microsoft Windows, and saved them in a location referred to here as *DPK_INSTALL.*

Task 2-4-1: Installing PS_HOME and PS_APP_HOME on Microsoft Windows

To use the DPK setup script for deployment only:

1. Extract the first zip file *(FILENAME*_1of*n*.zip).

   Note. It is a good idea to extract into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, *DPK_INSTALL.*

   The extraction creates the *DPK_INSTALL*/setup directory and other files.
2. Open a command prompt with Run as Administrator.
3. Change directory to *DPK_INSTALL*/setup.
4. Run the script with the options for deployment only.
   - If you extracted the first zip file into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, use this command:

     Note. Line feeds have been added to these examples for readability. Do not include the line feeds when entering the command.

     ```
     psft-dpk-setup.bat --env_type midtier --deploy_only
     --deploy_type app_and_tools_home
     ```

   - If you extracted the first zip file into a different directory, include the option `dpk_src_dir` to specify the location of the downloaded zip files, such as *DPK_INSTALL,* as follows:

     ```
     psft-dpk-setup.bat --dpk_src_dir DPK_INSTALL --env_type midtier
     --deploy_only --deploy_type app_and_tools_home
     ```
5. Wait while the script begins the setup process.

   The system displays messages indicating the steps in the setup process. The success or failure of each step is indicated by [OK] or [FAILED].

   ```
   Starting the PeopleSoft Environment Setup Process:

   Validating User Arguments:                                [  OK  ]
   Validating PeopleSoft Supported Platform:                 [  OK  ]
   ```
6. At the following prompt, enter the full path to a location that is accessible to the host to be used as the PeopleSoft base directory, referred to here as *BASE_DIR.*

   The base directory is used to extract the DPKs as well as for deploying PeopleSoft components. The script

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

creates the base directory if it does not exist.

Use forward slashes only (/) when specifying the base directory; for example, C:/psft. Do not use a base directory name that begins with a number.

```
The base directory is used to extract the PeopleSoft DPKs. It is also
used to deploy the PeopleSoft components. This directory should be
accessible, must have write permission and should
have enough free space.

Enter the full path for the PeopleSoft Base directory: C:/psft
Are you happy with your answer? [Y|n|q]:
```

7. Review the status messages.

   The script installs Puppet software, verifies if the DPKs are available in *DPK_INSTALL*, and checks for available space. It aborts with the message [FAILED] in case of errors.

   Note. The messages have been truncated for brevity.

```
Installing PSFT Relocatable Puppet Software in the base directory:
[  OK  ]
Installing eYAML Hiera Backend on this host:                [  OK  ]
Checking if PeopleSoft DPKs are Present:                    [  OK  ]
Checking if the Base Directory has Enough Free Space:       [  OK  ]

Validating the PeopleSoft DPKs in the Windows Host:
[...]
Extracting the PeopleSoft DPK Archives in the Windows Host:
[...]
```

8. Review the status messages as the script sets up the Puppet file system.

   The script sets up Puppet on the host. It then copies the PeopleSoft Puppet modules to the standard location (*BASE_DIR*\dpk) and updates the YAML files to reflect the type of PeopleSoft environment setup.

```
Setting up Puppet on the Windows VM:
Generating eYAML Hiera Backend Encryption Keys:             [  OK  ]
Updating the Puppet Hiera YAML Files in the Windows VM:     [  OK  ]
Updating the Role in Puppet Site File for the Windows VM:   [  OK  ]
```

9. Specify the information for your database platform.

   a. For the database platform, enter MSSQL for Microsoft SQL Server.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database platform [ORACLE]: MSSQL
```

   b. Enter *y* (yes) to indicate that the database you are connecting to is a Unicode database, or *n* (no) for a non-Unicode database.

```
Is the PeopleSoft database unicode? [Y|n]: y
```

10. Enter *y* if you want the script to include multi-language files in the installation.

```
Do you want Multi Language support in PeopleSoft database? [y|N]:  y
```

11. Enter *y* to continue with the script.

```
Are you happy with your answers? [y|n]: y
Encrypting the Passwords in the User Data:                  [  OK  ]
```

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
Updating the Puppet Hiera YAML Files with User Data:        [  OK  ]
```

12. If you want to continue running the initialization script using the default configuration, answer *y* (yes) to the following prompt, and continue with the next step.

    The components that are installed during a default initialization are described in the section Reviewing the Installation Results. The process for completing the initialization with customizations is described in the chapter "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations."

    If you want to customize the PeopleSoft environment using the Puppet YAML files, answer *n* (no) to stop the script.

    ```
    The bootstrap script is ready to deploy and configure the PeopleSoft
    environment using the default configuration defined in the Puppet
    Hiera YAML files. You can proceed by answering 'y' at the following
    prompt. And, if you want to customize the environment by overriding
    the default configuration, you can answer 'n'. If you answer 'n', you
    should follow the instructions in the PeopleSoft Installation Guide
    for creating the Hiera YAML file 'psft_customizations.yaml'
    and running the psft_puppet_apply script to continue with
    the setup of the PeopleSoft environment.

    Do you want to continue with the default initialization process? [y|n]:
    ```

13. Review the status messages as the script runs Puppet profiles to set up the PeopleSoft environment.

    A message of [OK] indicates that the profile has been applied successfully while a message [FAILED] indicates that the profile application failed.

    The script stops and exits the first time a profile application fails, and displays an error message. This example shows the error message after the first step failed:

    ```
    Starting the Deployment of PeopleSoft Components:

    Deploying Application Components:                          [FAILED]

    The initialization of PeopleSoft environment setup failed. Check the
    log file [C:\DPK_INSTALL\setup\psft_dpk_setup.log] for the errors.
    After correcting the errors, run the following commands to continue
    with the setup of PeopleSoft environment.

    Start a cmd window as Administrator and run C:\psft\psft_puppet_⇒
    apply.cmd

    Exiting the PeopleSoft environment setup process.
    ```

    Upon successful completion, the DPK setup script displays the following message:

    ```
    Starting the Deployment of PeopleSoft Components:

    Deploying Application Components:                          [  OK  ]
    Deploying PeopleTools Components:                          [  OK  ]

    The PeopleSoft Environment Setup Process Ended.
    ```

    The complete setup log is written to the file psft_dpk_setup.log in the same location as the DPK setup script.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Task 2-4-2: Reviewing the Deployment Results

This section describes some of the files and directories installed by the script. These are the standard default locations. If you want to change the installation locations, see "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations."

The script creates the following sub-directories under the user-specified base directory, *BASE_DIR*:

- *BASE_DIR/*psft_puppet_agent

  The script uses this directory to install the Puppet software.

- *BASE_DIR/*pt

  The script uses this directory to deploy the *PS_HOME* and *PS_APP_HOME* utilities and scripts, including the following:

  - *PS_HOME* installed to the default location under the DPK base directory, *BASE_DIR/*pt/ps_home8.62.*xx.*
  - *PS_HOME/*appserv/PSADMIN.exe
  - *PS_HOME/*bin/client/winx86/pscfg.exe (Configuration Manager)
  - *PS_HOME/*bin/client/winx86/psdmt.exe (Data Mover)
  - *PS_HOME/*bin/client/winx86/pside.exe (Application Designer)
  - *PS_HOME/*scripts
  - *PS_HOME/*setup/PsMpPIAInstall (PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture installer)
  - *PS_HOME/*setup/PsMpDbInstall (Database installer)
  - *PS_HOME/*setup/PsCA (Change Assistant installer)
  - *PS_HOME/*setup/PsCIA (Change Impact Analyzer installer)
  - Microsoft Windows DPKs include Microsoft Visual C++ Redistributable Packages for Visual Studio, which include required Microsoft C++ runtime libraries.
  - *PS_APP_HOME* installed to the default location under the DPK base directory, *BASE_DIR/*pt/<*Product*>_app_home, where <Product> is the abbreviation for the PeopleSoft application; for example, hcm_app_home for PeopleSoft Human Capital Management.

    Note. The DPK setup requires a decoupled *PS_APP_HOME*; that is, the installation location of *PS_APP_HOME* is different from *PS_HOME.*

    Files for the specific PeopleSoft application, including files needed for database creation.

    If you answered yes when asked whether you wanted multi-language support during the DPK setup script process, the files required for translations are installed under *BASE_DIR/*pt/<*Product*>_app_home.

- *BASE_DIR/*dpk

  The script uses this directory to extract the archives from the PeopleSoft DPKs, and contains the Puppet YAML files for the deployment. Do not alter the installed Puppet YAML files.

  See Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations for information on creating a YAML file to customize the environment.

- *BASE_DIR/*db

  This directory is not used for this deployment.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Task 2-5: Running the DPK Setup Script to Install All Software

This section discusses:

- Understanding the DPK Setup Deploying All Software
- Installing on Microsoft Windows
- Reviewing the Installed Software

Understanding the DPK Setup Deploying All Software

Use these instructions to install all software required to continue with the PeopleSoft installation. This deployment uses the DPK setup script `--env_type midtier --deploy_only --deploy_type all` options to install the PeopleSoft PeopleTools software in *PS_HOME,* the PeopleSoft application software in *PS_APP_HOME,* and the software required for the mid-tier components. This deployment does not set up the PeopleSoft domains; you will do that in a later chapter.

This procedure assumes that you have downloaded all of the required DPKs, and saved them in a location referred to here as *DPK_INSTALL.* This deployment requires the presence of the PeopleSoft application DPK (Application DPK, Part 1) in the deployment directory, *DPK_INSTALL.*

Task 2-5-1: Installing on Microsoft Windows

To use the DPK setup script to deploy the software required to set up a PeopleSoft environment:

1. Extract the first zip file *(FILENAME*_1of*n.*zip).

   Note. It is a good idea to extract into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, *DPK_INSTALL.*

   The extraction creates the *DPK_INSTALL/*setup directory and other files.
2. Open a command prompt with Run as Administrator.
3. Change directory to *DPK_INSTALL/*setup.
4. Run the script with the option for deployment only.
   - If you extracted the first zip file into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, use this command:

     ```
     psft-dpk-setup.bat --env_type midtier --deploy_only --deploy_type all
     ```
   - If you extracted the first zip file into a different directory, include the option `dpk_src_dir` to specify the location of the downloaded zip files, such as *DPK_INSTALL,* as follows:

     Note. A line feed has been added to this example for readability. Do not include the line feed when entering the command.

     ```
     psft-dpk-setup.bat --dpk_src_dir DPK_INSTALL
     --env_type midtier --deploy_only --deploy_type all
     ```
5. Wait while the script begins the setup process.

   The system displays messages indicating the steps in the setup process. The success or failure of each step is indicated by [OK] or [FAILED].

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

After the script completes the extraction, it deletes the original downloaded zip files.

See "Preparing for Installation," Understanding the PeopleSoft Installation Using Deployment Packages, for the filename syntax of the DPKs zip files.

```
Starting the PeopleSoft Environment Setup Process:

Validating User Arguments:                                  [  OK  ]
Validating PeopleSoft Supported Platform:                   [  OK  ]
```

6. At the following prompt, enter the full path to a location that is accessible to the host to be used as the PeopleSoft base directory.

   The base directory is used to extract the PeopleSoft DPKs as well as for deploying PeopleSoft components. The script creates the directory if it does not exist.

   Use forward slashes (/) to specify the base directory location; for example, C:/psft. Do not use a name for the base directory that begins with a number.

```
The base directory is used to extract the PeopleSoft DPKs. It is also
used to deploy the PeopleSoft components. This directory should be
accessible, must have write permissions and should
have enough free space.

Enter the full path for the PeopleSoft Base Directory: C:/psft
Are you happy with your answer? [Y|n|q]:
```

7. Review the status messages.

   The script installs Puppet software, verifies if the DPKs are available in *DPK_INSTALL*, and checks for available space. It aborts with the message [FAILED] in case of errors.

Note. The messages vary depending upon the DPKs present, and have been truncated for brevity.

```
Installing PSFT Relocatable Puppet Software in the base directory:
[  OK  ]
Installing eYAML Hiera Backend on this host:                [  OK  ]
Checking if PeopleSoft DPKs are Present:                    [  OK  ]
Checking if the Base Directory has Enough Free Space:       [  OK  ]

Validating the PeopleSoft DPKs in the Windows Host:
[...]
Extracting the Peoplesoft DPK Archives in Windows Host:
[...]
```

8. Review the status messages as the script sets up the Puppet file system.

   The script sets up Puppet on the host. It then copies the PeopleSoft Puppet modules to the standard location (*BASE_DIR*\dpk) and updates the YAML files to reflect the type of PeopleSoft environment setup.

```
Setting up Puppet on the Windows Host:
Generating eYAML Hiera Backend Encryption Keys:               [  OK  ]
Updating the Puppet Hiera YAML Files in the Windows Host:     [  OK  ]
Updating the Role in Puppet Site File for the Windows Host:   [  OK  ]
```

9. Specify the information for your database platform.

   a. For the database platform, enter MSSQL for Microsoft SQL Server.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database platform [ORACLE]: MSSQL
```

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

b. Enter *y* (yes) to indicate that the database you are connecting to is a Unicode database, or *n* (no) if it is a non-Unicode database.

```
Is the PeopleSoft database unicode? [Y|n]: y
```

10. Enter *y* if you want the DPK setup script to install files required for a multi-lingual installation.

```
Do you want Multi Language support in PeopleSoft database? [y|N]: n
```

11. Enter y to continue with the script.

```
Are you happy with your answers? [y|n]: y
Encrypting the Passwords in the User Data:                    [  OK  ]
Updating the Puppet Hiera YAML Files with User Data:          [  OK  ]
```

12. If you want to continue running the initialization script with the default configuration, answer *y* (yes) to the following prompt, and continue with the next step.

    If you want to customize the PeopleSoft environment using the Puppet YAML files, answer *n* (no) to stop the script.

```
The bootstrap script is ready to deploy and configure the PeopleSoft
environment using the default configuration defined in the Puppet
Hiera YAML files. You can proceed by answering 'y' at the following
prompt. And, if you want to customize the environment by overriding
the default configuration, you can answer 'n'. If you answer 'n', you
should follow the instructions in the PeopleSoft Installation Guide
for creating the Hiera YAML file 'psft_customizations.yaml'
and running the psft_puppet_apply script to continue with
the setup of the PeopleSoft environment.

Do you want to continue with the default initialization process? [y|n]:
```

13. Review the status messages as the script runs Puppet profiles to set up the PeopleSoft environment.

    A message of [OK] indicates that the profile has been applied successfully while a message [FAILED] indicates that the profile application failed.

    The script stops and exits the first time a profile application fails, and displays an error message. This example shows the error message after the first step failed:

```
Starting the Deployment of PeopleSoft Components:

Deploying Application Components:                             [FAILED]

The initialization of PeopleSoft environment setup failed. Check the
log file [C:\DPK_INSTALL\setup\psft_dpk_setup.log] for the errors.
After correcting the errors, run the following script to continue
with the setup of PeopleSoft environment.

Start a cmd window as Administrator and run C:\psft\psft_puppet_⇒
apply.cmd

Exiting the PeopleSoft environment setup process.
```

    See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations."

    Upon successful completion, the DPK setup script displays the following message:

```
Starting the Deployment of PeopleSoft Components:
```

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
Deploying Application Components:                          [  OK  ]
Deploying PeopleTools Components:                          [  OK  ]

The PeopleSoft Environment Setup Process Ended.
```

The complete setup log is written to the file psft_dpk_setup.log in the same location as the DPK setup script.

Task 2-5-2: Reviewing the Installed Software

This section describes some of the files and directories installed by the script. These are the standard default locations. If you want to change the installation locations, see "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations."

The script creates the following sub-directories under the user-specified base directory, *BASE_DIR*:

- *BASE_DIR*/psft_puppet_agent

  The script uses this directory to deploy the Puppet software.

- *BASE_DIR*/pt

  The script uses this directory to deploy the *PS_HOME* and *PS_APP_HOME* utilities and scripts, including the following:

  - *PS_HOME* installed to the default location under the DPK base directory, *BASE_DIR*/pt/ps_home8.62.*xx*.
  - *PS_HOME*/appserv/PSADMIN.exe
  - *PS_HOME*/bin/client/winx86/pscfg.exe (Configuration Manager)
  - *PS_HOME*/bin/client/winx86/psdmt.exe (Data Mover)
  - *PS_HOME*/bin/client/winx86/pside.exe (Application Designer)
  - *PS_HOME*/scripts
  - *PS_HOME*/setup/PsMpPIAInstall (PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture installer)
  - *PS_HOME*/setup/PsMpDbInstall (Database installer)
  - *PS_HOME*/setup/PsCA (Change Assistant installer)
  - *PS_HOME*/setup/PsCIA (Change Impact Analyzer installer)
  - *PS_APP_HOME* installed to the default location under the DPK base directory, *BASE_DIR*/pt/<*Product*>_app_home, where <Product> is the abbreviation for the PeopleSoft application; for example, hcm_app_home for PeopleSoft Human Capital Management.

    Note. The DPK setup requires a decoupled *PS_APP_HOME*; that is, the installation location of *PS_APP_HOME* is different from *PS_HOME.*

    Files for the specific PeopleSoft application, including files needed for database creation.

    If you answered yes when asked whether you wanted multi-language support during the DPK setup script process, the files required for translations are installed under *BASE_DIR*/pt/<*Product*>_app_home.

  - Oracle Tuxedo software in the standard location, <*BASE_DIR*>/pt/bea/tuxedo
  - Oracle Tuxedo services on Microsoft Windows:

    ORACLE ProcMGR V22.1.0.0.0 and Tlisten 22.1.0.0.0
  - Oracle WebLogic software in the standard location, *BASE_DIR*/pt/bea/wlserver
  - Oracle Database Client software in the standard location, *BASE_DIR*/pt/oracle-client

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Note. This is an Oracle 19c Database Client. The client can be used with any Oracle Database releases supported for the current PeopleSoft PeopleTools release. See the Certifications for PeopleSoft PeopleTools on My Oracle Support.

  - Java software in the standard location, *BASE_DIR*/pt/jdk.
- *BASE_DIR*/dpk

  The script uses this directory to extract the archives from the PeopleSoft DPKs, and contains the Puppet YAML files for the deployment. Do not alter the installed Puppet YAML files.

  See Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations for information on creating a YAML file to customize the environment.
- *BASE_DIR*/db

  This directory is not used for this deployment.

Task 2-6: Removing a Deployed PeopleSoft Environment

This section discusses:

- Understanding the Removal Process
- Using the DPK Setup Script to Remove the PeopleSoft Environment on Microsoft Windows
- Using the psft_puppet_apply.cmd Script to Remove the PeopleSoft Environment on Microsoft Windows
- Manually Removing the PeopleSoft Environment on Microsoft Windows

Understanding the Removal Process

The DPKs are based on a specific PeopleTools release and patch number. The DPK zip file names include the PeopleTools release and patch number. For example, the "8.62.05" in the zip file name PEOPLETOOLS-WIN-8.62.05_1of4.zip refers to release 8.62 and patch 5. To use the DPK setup script for cleanup, you must use the same DPK setup script (*DPK_INSTALL*/setup) that you used for deploying the PeopleSoft environment that you want to remove. Ensure that the correct script is available before proceeding further in the cleanup.

There will be times when an existing PeopleSoft environment needs to be completely removed. For example, applying a new PeopleSoft PeopleTools patch requires that an existing environment be cleaned up and a new one created. The cleanup that you perform with the DPK setup script conducts an orderly shutdown and removal of all the configured runtime domains — Application Server, Process Scheduler, and PIA domains. Additionally, it will remove all the deployed components. You can use the PeopleSoft DPK setup script cleanup for environments created with the default initialization or with the psft_customizations.yaml file.

Note. The Puppet software that is installed by the DPK setup script is not removed by the cleanup process.

In some cases the DPK setup script cleanup process may not remove all of the components. If that is the case, try one of the other methods described in this section.

Task 2-6-1: Using the DPK Setup Script to Remove the PeopleSoft Environment on Microsoft Windows

Use these steps to remove a deployed PeopleSoft environment using the PeopleSoft DPK setup script on Microsoft Windows:

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

1. Open a command prompt window; for example:
   - Select Start, and navigate to Accessories, Command Prompt.
   - Right-click and select Run as Administrator.
2. Go to *DPK_INSTALL*\setup and run one of the following commands:

   ```
   psft-dpk-setup.bat --cleanup
   ```

3. Specify the base directory *(BASE_DIR)* that you want to remove.

   ```
   Enter the PeopleSoft Base Folder specified during setup:
   ```

   You see this prompt only when there is more than one deployment. For example:
   - You carried out deployment A followed by deployment B.
   - You removed the second deployment B. For the cleanup of deployment B, you do not see this prompt for the *BASE_DIR*.
   - You run the script a second time. At the prompt, specify the *BASE_DIR* for deployment A.
4. Wait until the process is complete.

   The DPK setup script displays [OK] for each step of the process, and [FAILED] if any of the steps are not successful.
5. Review the cleanup log file in *DPK_INSTALL*\setup.
6. After completing these steps, verify that the DPK installation directories *(BASE_DIR/*pt and *BASE_DIR/*db) have been cleared.

   The cleanup process does not remove the *BASE_DIR/*dpk directory. Do not remove it manually if you want to use the psft_apply_puppet.sh process.
7. Verify that any services have been removed in the Microsoft Windows Services dialog box.
8. If any files or services remain, the cleanup process was not successful. Try running the process again, and if it is still not successful, you may need to carry out advanced cleanup.

See Manually Removing the PeopleSoft Environment on Microsoft Windows.

Task 2-6-2: Using the psft_puppet_apply.cmd Script to Remove the PeopleSoft Environment on Microsoft Windows

If the cleanup procedure using the DPK setup script was not entirely successful, the *BASE_DIR* folders may not be entirely cleared, or you may have trouble when carrying out another deployment. In case of a failed deployment, try running the psft_puppet_apply.cmd script as described here. This script sets environment variables and then runs the `puppet apply` command to remove the PeopleSoft environment.

To remove the environment on Microsoft Windows:

1. Run the command `psft-dpk-setup.bat --cleanup`.
2. If the script fails, you should see a message similar to the following:.

   ```
   The initialization of PeopleSoft environment setup failed. Check the
   log file [C:\DPK_INSTALL\setup\psft_dpk_setup.log] for the errors.
   After correcting the errors, run the following commands to continue
   with the setup of PeopleSoft environment.

   Start a cmd window as Administrator and run BASE_DIR\psft_puppet_⇒
   apply.cmd
   ```

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Leave the command window open while you complete the next step.

3. Open the file *BASE_DIR*\dpk\puppet\production\data\defaults.yaml in a text editor, such as Notepad.
4. Change the value of the `ensure` attribute from `present` to `absent`.

   Save and close the defaults file.
5. Follow the instructions from step 2 to run the psft_puppet_apply.cmd script.

Task 2-6-3: Manually Removing the PeopleSoft Environment on Microsoft Windows

This section includes advanced steps to be used only if the cleanup procedures using the DPK setup script or psft_puppet_apply script in this section failed, or if you were not able to use the previous procedures for any reason.

If the cleanup process on Microsoft Windows was not totally successful, the *BASE_DIR* folders may not be entirely cleared, or you may have trouble when carrying out another deployment. Before carrying out the advanced steps in this section:

1. Run the command `psft-dpk-setup.bat --cleanup`.
2. If the script displays a FAILED message, run it again.
3. If it succeeds, check the *BASE_DIR* folders to be sure everything has been deleted.
4. If the *BASE_DIR* folders are not clear, or if a subsequent deployment is not successful, carry out the steps below.

For the advanced manual cleanup on Microsoft Windows, there are several steps. The steps in this section should be performed by someone familiar with modifying the Microsoft Windows registry. Depending upon where the cleanup process failed, some of the items mentioned in these steps may have already been removed. The user should remove whatever remains in this order:

1. Start the Microsoft Windows Services utility.
2. Stop the services for the PeopleSoft application server, Process Scheduler, and PeopleSoft PIA domains, if necessary.
3. Open a command prompt, running as administrator, and remove the two database services and the PeopleSoft domains services with the commands:

   ```
   sc delete PsftAppServerDomain<Appserver_domain_name>Service
   sc delete PsftPrcsDomain<ProcSched_domain_name>Service
   sc delete PsftPIADomain<PIA_domain_name>Service
   ```

4. In the Services window, stop ORACLE ProcMGR V22.1.0.0.0 and TListen 22.1.0.0.0 (Port 3050) by highlighting the names, right-clicking and selecting Stop.
5. In the Services window, right-click each of the services in step 5, select Properties, and copy the correct service name (rather than the alias).
6. Open a command prompt and remove the two preceding services with the command:

   ```
   sc delete <service_name>
   ```

7. Open the Microsoft Windows registry; for example, select Start, Run, and enter regedit.
8. In the Registry Editor, locate the HKLM\SOFTWARE\ORACLE folder.

   Select the following keys and verify that they contain references to the DPK installation locations in *BASE_DIR*:

   - KEY_OraTux2210Home<*date_time*> *(BASE_DIR*\pt\bea\tuxedo by default)

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- KEY_OracleWLHome<*date_time*> *(BASE_DIR*\pt\bea by default)

9. In the Registry Editor, locate the HKLM\SOFTWARE\ORACLE\TUXEDO folder.

   Select the 22.1.0.0.0 key and verify that it contains references to the DPK installation locations in *BASE_DIR (BASE_DIR*\pt\bea\tuxedo by default).

10. In the Registry Editor, only for the keys from step 9 and 10 that reference the DPK installation locations, right-click and select Delete.
11. Close the Registry Editor window.
12. Open the file C:\Program Files\Oracle\Inventory\ContentsXML\inventory.xml in a text editor.
13. Locate the lines that reference the DPK deployment:

    Note. This sample has been formatted for readability.

    ```
    <HOME NAME="OracleWLHome<date_time>" LOC="C:/psft/pt/bea" TYPE="O" IDX=⇒
    "16"/>
    <HOME NAME="OraTux2210Home<date_time>" LOC="C:\psft\pt\bea\tuxedo" TYPE=⇒
    "O"
    IDX="17"/>
    ```

14. Delete only the lines referencing the DPK deployment, and save the file.
15. Remove everything under the *BASE_DIR* folder *(BASE_DIR*\db, *BASE_DIR*\dpk, and *BASE_DIR*\pt).

    Note. If you performed a customized deployment, back up the psft_customizations.yaml file and any log files, to refer to if necessary. Save them outside of the *BASE_DIR.*

    Note. You may get a message that some of the file names are too big for the recycle bin. Click OK to accept.

16. Remove C:\User\<*username*>\psft\pt\8.62 (PS_CFG_HOME).
17. If you performed a customized deployment that installed software such as Oracle Tuxedo or Oracle WebLogic, PS_APP_HOME, or PS_CFG_HOME, in non-default locations, remove that software manually, unless you need to retain the installations.

    Note. If you want to retain the additional components, do not remove the installation locations. Be sure to use a customized deployment and specify the location of the additional components for any subsequent deployments.

18. Delete any user-defined System environment variables, such as PS_HOME, TUXDIR, PS_CFG_HOME, PS_APP_HOME, ORACLE_HOME, TNS_ADMIN.
19. Completely clean up any DPK install directory that was used for previous DPKs.

    If you do not delete these or move them off the machine, they may be picked up by a subsequent DPK setup process and may cause the new DPK to fail.

20. Check the PATH environment variable, and remove the directories or path associated with the previous DPK deployments.
21. Restart the windows machine to release any caches or processes in the memory.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 3

Deploying the PeopleSoft Deployment Packages in Silent Mode

This chapter discusses:

- Understanding Silent Mode Installation
- Reviewing the Response File Sample for Mid-tier Installation
- Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy an Application Server Domain
- Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy a Process Scheduler Domain
- Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy an Application Server and a Process Scheduler Domain
- Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy a PIA Domain
- Reviewing the Response File Sample to Install PS_HOME Only
- Reviewing the Response File Sample to Install PS_APP_HOME Only
- Running the DPK Setup Script in Silent Mode for Default Initialization
- Running the DPK Setup Script in Silent Mode with Customizations

Understanding Silent Mode Installation

Use this section to perform a silent mode installation with the DPK setup script. In silent mode, you record the answers for the script prompts in a text file, called a response file. After you start the script and specify the response file location, no further interaction is required. Use these guidelines:

- Include a customization file if necessary.

  You can also run the DPK setup script in silent mode and specify a customizations file in addition to the response file. Use the examples in the chapter "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations" to create a customization file. Follow the procedure in the section Running the DPK Setup Script in Silent Mode with Customizations.

- Make a note of the required user IDs and passwords.

  The DPK setup process does not include any default passwords. You must supply the user IDs and passwords included in the samples.

- Enter passwords in clear text.

  Note that some of the response file samples in this section include placeholders for passwords. When creating the response file for silent mode installation, enter the passwords in clear text. If you are running a customized deployment, enter the passwords in clear text in the psft_customizations.yaml file. Do not enter encrypted passwords.

- Fulfill prerequisites if running as a non-root user.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Create your response file based on the samples in this section. The response file should include the values you would supply when running the DPK setup script interactively, and will vary depending upon the database platform and operating system.

The response files in this section include the following parameters:

- `env_type` — Specify midtier as the type of DPK deployment.
- `install_type` — Specify FRESH as the installation type for this task.

  See Reviewing the DPK Setup Script Options for information on the allowed installation types.

  This is required for mid-tier deployments if the DPK set includes App DPKs.
- `deploy_only` — Specify true for one of the special deployment options, such as to deploy only *PS_HOME*.
- `deploy_type` — Specify the type of deployment, as shown in the response file samples.
- `db_type` — Specify whether you want to install a DEMO or SYS database.
- `db_is_unicode` — Specify false if you want to install a non-Unicode database, or true to install a Unicode environment.

  The default setting is true. If you do not include the `db_is_unicode` parameter, the DPK setup script installs a Unicode environment.
- `psft_base_dir` — Enter an accessible location for the base folder, which is used to extract the PeopleSoft DPKs and for deploying PeopleSoft components.

  The script creates the folder if it is not present.

  For installation on Microsoft Windows, use forward slashes (/) for the base folder. For example, `C:/psft`. Enter the full path, and enclose the path in double quotes. Do not use a name for the base folder that begins with a number.
- `db_platform` — Specify MSSQL as the database platform for Microsoft SQL Server.
- `db_name` — Enter the PeopleSoft database name.

  If the database name includes non-alphanumeric characters such as periods, enclose the name in double quotes. For example, "HCM.92".
- `db_host` — Enter the name of the database server and the Microsoft SQL Server instance name.

  For example, server.example.com\SQL2022. Do not enter an IP address.
- `mss_odbc_name` — Enter the ODBC driver name, for example, ODBC Driver 17 for SQL Server or ODBC Driver 18 for SQL Server.
- `connect_id` — Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID.

  The default is people.
- `connect_pwd` — Enter the password for the Connect ID.

  Ensure the password meets the length and complexity requirements for your database platform.

  See E-DPK - PeopleTools 8.59 and later - DPK setup does not support some special characters for passwords, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2765013.1.
- `opr_id` — Enter the PeopleSoft operator ID, such as PS or VP1.
- `opr_pwd` — Enter the password for the operator ID.

  Ensure that the password is between 1 and 32 characters in length. You may include these special characters !@#$%^&.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- `domain_conn_pwd` — Enter the Application Server Domain Connection password.

  This is an optional password. If no password is entered, the connection between Web Server and Application Server will not be password protected.

- `weblogic_admin_pwd` — Enter the Oracle WebLogic Server Admin password.

  The default Oracle WebLogic server administrator is system. Ensure that the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length with at least one lowercase letter, one uppercase letter and one number or one special character (!@#$%^&).

- `webprofile_user_id` — Enter the web profile user name.

- `webprofile_user_pwd` — Enter the password for the PTWEBSERVER web profile user.

  Ensure that the password is between 8 and 32 characters in length. You may include these special characters !@#$%^&.

- `pia_psserver_list` — Enter <application_server_host>:<Jolt port>.

  List the application server domains that are used by the PIA domains, using the format <application_server_host>:<Jolt port>. If you enter more than one domain, separate the entries with a comma.

- `prcs_domain_id` — Enter the name of the server with the Process Scheduler domain.

  The server name must begin with a letter and include a maximum of 8 characters.

  When you run the DPK setup script with default initialization, the name generated for the Process Scheduler Server is PRCS*xxxx*, where xxx is a random number. On a host where Process Scheduler has been deployed, you can find the Process Scheduler Server name (PrcsServerName) in the Process Scheduler configuration file. Locate it in *<PS_CFG_HOME>*/appserv/prcs/*<Domain name>*/psprcs.cfg, under General settings for the Process Scheduler. For example:

  ```
  ;===================================================================
  ; General settings for the Process Scheduler
  ;===================================================================
  PrcsServerName=PRCS8783
  ```

- `prcs_server_name` — Enter the name of the server with the Process Scheduler domain, as described for prcs_domain_id.

  The server name must begin with a letter and include a maximum of 8 characters. When you run the DPK setup script with default initialization, Process Scheduler/PrcsServerName is an interpolation function based on prcs_domain_id.

- `gw_user_id` — Enter the Integration Gateway user ID.

  The default is administrator.

- `gw_user_pwd` — Enter the password for the Integration Gateway user.

  Ensure that the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length. You may include these special characters !@#$%^&.

- `gw_keystore_pwd` — Enter the Integration Gateway keystore password.

  Ensure the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length. You may include these special characters !@#$%^&.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Task 3-1: Reviewing the Response File Sample for Mid-tier Installation

This section discusses:

- Reviewing the Response File Sample for Mid-tier Installation on Microsoft Windows

Task 3-1-1: Reviewing the Response File Sample for Mid-tier Installation on Microsoft Windows

Here is a sample response file for installing mid-tier components on Microsoft Windows.

Note. Review the requirements in Understanding Silent Mode Installation before preparing the response file.

```
env_type=midtier
install_type=FRESH
psft_base_dir="C:/psft"
db_platform=MSSQL
db_name=HCM92U46
db_host=server.example.com\SQL2022
mss_odbc_name="ODBC Driver 17 for SQL Server"
connect_id=people
connect_pwd=password
opr_id=PS
opr_pwd=password
weblogic_admin_pwd=password
webprofile_user_id=PTWEBSERVER
webprofile_user_pwd=password
domain_conn_pwd=password
gw_user_id=administrator
gw_user_pwd=password
gw_keystore_pwd=password
```

Task 3-2: Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy an Application Server Domain

This section discusses:

- Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy an Application Server Domain on Microsoft Windows

Task 3-2-1: Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy an Application Server Domain on Microsoft Windows

Here is a sample response file for deploying an application server domain on Microsoft Windows.

Note. Review the requirements in Understanding Silent Mode Installation before preparing the response file.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
env_type=midtier
install_type=FRESH
psft_base_dir="C:/psft"
db_platform=MSSQL
domain_type=appserver
db_name=HCM92U46
db_host=server.example.com\SQL2022
mss_odbc_name="ODBC Driver 17 for SQL Server"
connect_id=people
connect_pwd=password
domain_conn_pwd=password
opr_id=PS
opr_pwd=password
```

Task 3-3: Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy a Process Scheduler Domain

This section discusses:

- Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy a Process Scheduler Domain on Microsoft Windows

Task 3-3-1: Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy a Process Scheduler Domain on Microsoft Windows

Here is a sample response file for deploying a Process Scheduler domain on Microsoft Windows.

Note. Review the requirements in Understanding Silent Mode Installation before preparing the response file.

```
env_type=midtier
install_type=FRESH
psft_base_dir="C:/psft"
db_platform=MSSQL
db_name=HCM92U46
db_host=server.example.com\SQL2022
mss_odbc_name="ODBC Driver 17 for SQL Server"
domain_type=prcs
connect_id=people
connect_pwd=password
domain_conn_pwd=password
opr_id=QEDMO
opr_pwd=password
```

Task 3-4: Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy an Application Server and a Process Scheduler Domain

This section discusses:

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy an Application Server and a Process Scheduler Domain on Microsoft Windows

Task 3-4-1: Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy an Application Server and a Process Scheduler Domain on Microsoft Windows

Here is a sample response file for deploying an application server and a Process Scheduler domain on Microsoft Windows.

Note. Review the requirements in Understanding Silent Mode Installation before preparing the response file.

```
env_type=midtier
install_type=FRESH
psft_base_dir="C:/psft"
db_platform=MSSQL
domain_type=appbatch
db_name=HCM92U46
db_host=server.example.com\SQL2022
mss_odbc_name="Oracle Driver 17 for SQL Server"
connect_id=people
connect_pwd=password
domain_conn_pwd=password
opr_id=PS
opr_pwd=password
```

Task 3-5: Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy a PIA Domain

This section discusses:

- Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy a PIA Domain on Microsoft Windows

Task 3-5-1: Reviewing the Response File Sample to Deploy a PIA Domain on Microsoft Windows

Here is a sample response file for deploying a PIA domain on Microsoft Windows.

Note. Review the requirements in Understanding Silent Mode Installation before preparing the response file.

```
env_type=midtier
install_type=FRESH
psft_base_dir="C:/psft"
db_platform=MSSQL
domain_type=pia
db_name=HCM92U46
db_host=server.example.com\SQL2022
mss_odbc_name="ODBC Driver 17 for SQL Server"
connect_id=people
connect_pwd=password
opr_id=PS
```


Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
opr_pwd=password
weblogic_admin_pwd=password
webprofile_user_id=PTWEBSERVER
webprofile_user_pwd=password
domain_conn_pwd=password
gw_user_id=administrator
gw_user_pwd=password
gw_keystore_pwd=password
pia_psserver_list=server2.example.com:9033
prcs_server_name=PRCS9722
prcs_domain_id=PRCS9722
```

Task 3-6: Reviewing the Response File Sample to Install PS_HOME Only

This section discusses:

- Reviewing the Response File Sample to Install PS_HOME Only on Microsoft Windows

Task 3-6-1: Reviewing the Response File Sample to Install PS_HOME Only on Microsoft Windows

Here is a sample response file for installing only the *PS_HOME* installation directory, which includes the PeopleSoft PeopleTools server utilities.

Note. Review the requirements in Understanding Silent Mode Installation before preparing the response file.

```
env_type=midtier
install_type=FRESH
deploy_only=True
deploy_type=tools_home
db_platform=MSSQL
psft_base_dir="C:/psft"
db_is_unicode=False
```

Task 3-7: Reviewing the Response File Sample to Install PS_APP_HOME Only

This section discusses:

- Reviewing the Response File Sample to Install PS_APP_HOME Only on Microsoft Windows

Task 3-7-1: Reviewing the Response File Sample to Install PS_APP_HOME Only on Microsoft Windows

Here is a sample response file for installing only the *PS_APP_HOME* installation directory, which includes the PeopleSoft application files.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Note. Review the requirements in Understanding Silent Mode Installation before preparing the response file.

```
env_type=midtier
install_type=FRESH
deploy_only=True
deploy_type=app_home
db_platform=MSSQL
psft_base_dir="C:/psft"
db_is_unicode=False
```

Task 3-8: Running the DPK Setup Script in Silent Mode for Default Initialization

This procedure assumes you have obtained the required DPK zip files and saved them in *DPK_INSTALL.*

1. Prepare the response file, using the examples in this section.
2. Extract the first zip file *(FILENAME*_1of*n.*zip).

   Note. It is a good idea to extract into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, *DPK_INSTALL.*

   The extraction creates the *DPK_INSTALL/*setup folder and other files.
3. Open a command prompt with Run as Administrator.
4. Change directory to *DPK_INSTALL/*setup.
5. Run the script and supply the full path and filename for the response file.

   On Microsoft Windows:

   ```
   psft-dpk-setup.bat --silent --response_file=<full_path/filename.txt>
   ```

6. Wait until the installation is complete.

   The script displays progress messages. The complete setup log is written to the file psft_dpk_setup.log in the same location as the DPK setup script.

Task 3-9: Running the DPK Setup Script in Silent Mode with Customizations

This procedure assumes you have obtained the required DPK zip files and saved them in *DPK_INSTALL.*

Note. Remember to enter passwords in clear text in the response file and the psft_customizations.yaml file.

1. Prepare the response text file, using the examples in this section.
2. Prepare the customization YAML file, using the instructions in this documentation.

   Note. You can name the file whatever you like. For the silent mode installation, it is not necessary to use the name psft_customizations.yaml.

   See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations."
3. Extract the first zip file *(FILENAME*_1of*n.*zip).

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Note. It is a good idea to extract into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, *DPK_INSTALL.*

The extraction creates the *DPK_INSTALL*/setup folder and other files.

4. Open a command prompt with Run as Administrator.
5. Change directory to *DPK_INSTALL*/setup.
6. Run the script, supplying the full path and filename for both the response file and the customization file.

   On Microsoft Windows:

   ```
   psft-dpk-setup.bat --silent --response_file=<full_path/filename.txt>
   --customization_file=<full_path/custfilename.yaml>
   ```

7. Wait until the installation is complete.

   The script displays progress messages. The complete setup log is written to the file psft_dpk_setup.log in the same location as the DPK setup script.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 4

Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations

This chapter discusses:

- Understanding PeopleSoft Environment Customizations
- Preparing the Customization File for PeopleSoft Domain Definitions
- Preparing the Customization File to Create PeopleSoft Domains Without Configuration
- Preparing the Customization File for Component Software Locations
- Preparing the Customization File for Unicode
- Preparing the Customization Files for the PeopleSoft Homes
- Preparing the Customization File for Jolt SSL and WSL SSL Ports
- Completing the Customized Deployment

Understanding PeopleSoft Environment Customizations

The PeopleSoft DPK setup script allows setup of a PeopleSoft environment quickly using the default data from the packaged Hiera YAML files. This section gives examples of ways to use the YAML files for customization.

Always use the documented procedures to make changes to your environment. Doing so will allow you to retain your customizations when removing a deployment before deploying a new patch or version.

Note. You can use the customizations in this chapter whether you use the DPK script interactively or in silent mode. This list notes a few places where using the DPK customization is different for interactive or silent mode.

Use these guidelines when customizing your environment:

- (Interactive mode) Do not change any of the original delivered YAML files.

  This practice enables you to retain your customizations after deploying a new patch or update.

  When you deploy the PeopleSoft DPKs, the YAML files associated with the deployment are installed in the following location. Use these files as the basis for the psft_customizations.yaml file.

  - *BASE_DIR*/dpk/puppet/production/data/defaults.yaml
  - *BASE_DIR*/dpk/puppet/production/data/psft_configuration.yaml
  - *BASE_DIR*/dpk/puppet/production/data/psft_deployment.yaml
  - *BASE_DIR*/dpk/puppet/production/data/psft_unix_system.yaml
- (Silent mode) Do not change any of the original delivered YAML files.

  This practice enables you to retain your customizations after deploying a new patch or update.

  Use the YAML files in the following location as the basis for the customizations file used in silent

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

installation:

- *DPK_INSTALL*/setup/puppet/production/data/defaults.yaml
- *DPK_INSTALL*/setup/puppet/production/data/psft_configuration.yaml
- *DPK_INSTALL*/setup/puppet/production/data/psft_deployment.yaml
- *DPK_INSTALL*/setup/puppet/production/data/psft_unix_system.yaml

- (Interactive mode) Start with the DPK setup script and choose not to continue with the default initialization.

  Answer *no* at the prompt "Do you want to continue with the default initialization process? [y|n]:" to exit the script and bypass the default initialization process.

  To set up a customized PeopleSoft environment, use the DPK setup script for the first portion of the process, that is, to automate the tasks of extracting the DPK zip files, installing Puppet (if not installed), and copying the Puppet modules and Hiera data YAML files from the DPK into the location where Puppet looks for these files during the orchestration process. When you exit the script, it displays instructions on how to proceed to complete the initialization.

- Always create a psft_customizations.yaml file to use for modified parameters.
  - Never modify the delivered YAML files. Instead, by copying the parameters that you want to modify into the psft_customizations.yaml file you are able to save the customization.
  - Copy only the section of the delivered YAML file that includes the parameters that you need to change, as directed by the samples in this documentation. Depending upon the specific type of customization, you may need to copy a single line, or an entire block of text, so be sure to check this documentation.
  - The DPK setup script processes the psft_customizations.yaml file before the generated YAML files, so that the values in psft_customizations.yaml override the values in psft_configuration.yaml, psft_deployment.yaml, and psft_unix_system.yaml.
  - (Interactive mode) Note that the file must be named "psft_customizations.yaml" for interactive mode deployment. Be sure to use the correct spelling.
  - (Silent mode) You can name the customization YAML file whatever you like for the silent mode installation.
- Verify the content of the delivered YAML files with each release.

  The YAML files may have changed since this document was published. It is important that you copy the appropriate section of code from the YAML files you install with each new deployment, and use it as the basis for your psft_customizations.yaml file (or the silent mode customization YAML file).

- Do not create new parameters for psft_customizations.yaml (or the silent mode customization YAML file).

  The deployment recognizes only those parameters in the delivered YAML files or given in the product documentation.

- Use a single psft_customizations.yaml file (or silent mode customization YAML file).

  You can copy the necessary sections from more than one of the delivered YAML files and include them in a single psft_customizations.yaml file. Again, copy only those sections with the parameters you want to change.

- Use the same psft_customizations.yaml file (or silent mode customization YAML file) for all deployments on a given base folder.

  This applies to a use case in which you carry out more than one deployment on the same *BASE_DIR*. For example, you first install *PS_HOME* only, and use a psft_customizations.yaml file to specify a non-default *PS_HOME* location. Then you later do a second deployment, with the same *BASE_DIR*, to install mid-tier components, and you want to customize the location of Oracle WebLogic. In this case, use the first psft_customizations.yaml file, including the non-default *PS_HOME*, append the customization for the Oracle WebLogic location, and use it for the second deployment.

- Include the `remove: false` attribute to retain your customizations through the clean-up process.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

To ensure that your customizations are not removed when removing a deployed environment:

- For each segment of customization parameters in the psft_customizations.yaml file (or silent mode customization YAML file), include the `remove: false` attribute at the end of the segment.
- If you remove the environment manually (using the psft_puppet_apply script), set the `ensure` attribute to *absent* in default.yaml.

  If you remove the environment using the `--cleanup` option for the PeopleSoft DPK setup script, you do not need to set the attribute first because it is part of the script process.
- Remove the environment using the `--cleanup` option for the PeopleSoft DPK setup script, as described in this documentation.

  See "Installing the PeopleSoft Homes," Removing a Deployed PeopleSoft Environment.

- Copy an entire section containing the parameter to be modified, and be sure to retain the indentation from the delivered YAML file.

  The hierarchy and alignment of the YAML files are very important to the correct operation. In addition to the brief overview given here, review the information in the appendix "Using the Puppet Hiera YAML Files for Customization."

  - The YAML files include scalar type and collection type parameters.

    Scalar parameters are of the form `key: value`; for example:

    ```
    db_platform: MSSQL
    ```

    Collection type parameters include a parameter name followed by one or more indented lists of `key:value` pairs. In this case, the value of the collection parameter is defined by the indented list of values; for example:

    ```
    ps_home:
      db_type:    "%{lookup('db_platform')}"
      unicode_db: "%{lookup('unicode_db')}"
      location:   "%{lookup('ps_home_location')}"
    ```

  - When you locate a parameter that you want to modify, be sure to locate the section heading that begins at the first column of the YAML file. This ensures that the deployment operation modifies the correct parameter.
  - Be sure to retain the indentation from the delivered YAML file.

    Typically there is an indentation of 2 or 3 spaces for each successive subsection. This is necessary in order for the parameters to be correctly interpreted.

    Note. Be sure when copying and pasting that you retain the indentation. Depending upon the authoring or editing tools you use, the desired indentation may be lost when you copy and paste. It is a good idea to double-check the final psft_customizations.yaml file (or silent mode customization YAML file), especially for the special cases where you copy a sample from this documentation.

  - When copying and modifying collection type parameters, use only spaces, not tabs, to indent the subsections.

- (Interactive mode) Use the encrypted passwords from the generated YAML files.

  The DPK setup script encrypts user-supplied passwords and includes them in the generated YAML files. If you copy a section of a YAML file with encrypted passwords, do not replace or remove the encrypted text.

  The encrypted passwords are quite long. Be sure to copy the entire string, without adding spaces, tabs, or line feeds.

- (Silent mode) Enter passwords in clear text.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

When creating the psft_customizations.yaml file for silent mode installation, enter the passwords in clear text. Do not enter encrypted passwords.

- Replace the entire attribute string.

  The parameters in the delivered YAML files are written with Hiera lookup interpolation functions that act as variables. To modify each parameter, you must replace the entire string after the colon, and enclose your new value in double quotes. For example, in the psft_deployment.yaml file, the location for an Oracle WebLogic installation is given by the following parameters:

  ```
  weblogic_location: "%{lookup('pt_location')}/bea"
  weblogic:
    location:  "%{lookup('weblogic_location')}"
  ```

  The second lookup function refers to the first. When `pt_location` is set as C:/psft, Oracle WebLogic will be installed in C:/psft/bea. To change this, remove both strings of text `"%{lookup('pt_location')}/bea"` and `"%{lookup('weblogic_location')}"`, and replace them with the full path to the new location. Retain the two-space indentation, and use a forward slash (/) for paths on both Microsoft Windows and Linux; for example:

  On Microsoft Windows:

  ```
  weblogic_location:  "C:/psft/weblogic"
  weblogic:
    location: "C:/psft/weblogic"
  ```

- Do not use the customizations to set up a non-Unicode environment if you are deploying the PeopleSoft Update Image DPKs for use with PeopleSoft Update Manager.

  The environments for the PeopleSoft Update Images are required to be Unicode.

- Verify existing installations before beginning deployment.

  You have the option to use existing installations, for example for Oracle WebLogic, but you have the responsibility to ensure that the installation is supported, complete, and correct. The deployment script does not verify whether an installation directory includes a valid, working installation.

  See Preparing the Customization File for Component Software Locations.

- Set the Puppet environment if necessary.

  The process to complete the initialization using the customizations, as described in the section Completing the Customized Deployment, runs the psft_puppet_apply script, which sets necessary environment variables and runs the `puppet apply` command. If you choose to use the `puppet apply` command directly rather than the script, you may get a message saying that "puppet" is not recognized. This message may indicate that the Puppet software is not included in your system's path. In that case, you can use the commands given here to set the Puppet environment. You should also set the Puppet environment if you need to run `puppet apply` after the script execution has ended with an error.

  Note. Oracle recommends that you use the delivered psft_puppet_apply script, not the `puppet apply` command.

  On Microsoft Windows, to set the Puppet environment, run this command

  "*BASE_DIR*\psft_puppet_agent\bin\puppet_shell.bat"

- Use only the predefined web profiles.

  PeopleSoft PeopleTools includes four predefined web profiles — DEV, KIOSK, PROD, and TEST. In the delivered YAML file psft_configuration.yaml, the web profile is specified by the scalar parameter `pia_webprofile_name: PROD`. If you want to specify a different value using psft_customizations.yaml, be sure to use one of the four predefined values.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

See *PeopleTools: Portal Technology,* "Configuring Web Profiles."

- When using the customizations for a PeopleSoft web server domain, do not use the names PIA, PIA1, PIA2, or weblogic for the domain name.

  The name of the WebLogic domain and the server and cluster names within it must be unique. The names PIA, PIA1, and PIA2 are reserved for use by the PeopleSoft system. The name weblogic is reserved for use by the Oracle WebLogic software. These restrictions apply to single server and multi-server domain creation.

  See Preparing the Customization File for PeopleSoft Domain Definitions.

  See *PeopleTools: System and Server Administration,* "WebLogic Domain Types."

- To specify a non-default location for the Process Scheduler Report Repository, you must create the Report Repository directory before you begin the DPK installation.

  The Report Repository is the designated server for reports that are generated from the PeopleSoft Process Scheduler Server. In the delivered YAML file psft_configuration.yaml, the Report Repository location is defined as a subdirectory of *PS_CFG_HOME,* as specified by this scalar parameter:

  ```
  report_repository_dir: "%{lookup('ps_config_home')}/psreports"
  ```

  To define a different location, create the directory first. Use the `report_repository_dir` parameter with the customized location in the psft_customizations.yaml file.

  See *PeopleTools: Process Scheduler,* "PeopleSoft Process Scheduler Architecture."

  See the task Setting Up Process Scheduler to Transfer Reports and Logs to the Report Repository in the PeopleSoft 9.2 Application Installation guide for your database platform. The installation guides are located on the pages for the PeopleSoft applications (such as PeopleSoft Human Capital Management) on Oracle Help Center.

  See Oracle PeopleSoft Documentation Home, https://docs.oracle.com/en/applications/peoplesoft/index.html.

Task 4-1: Preparing the Customization File for PeopleSoft Domain Definitions

This section discusses:

- Preparing the psft_customizations.yaml File
- Reviewing the Domain Definitions in psft_configuration.yaml
- Reviewing the Customization File for a Single Application Server Domain
- Reviewing the Customization File for a Single Process Scheduler Domain
- Reviewing the Customization File for a Single PIA Domain
- Reviewing the Customization File for a PIA Domain on a Separate Host
- Reviewing the Customization File for Multiple Web Sites in a Single Web Domain
- Reviewing the Customization File for Multiple Domains

Task 4-1-1: Preparing the psft_customizations.yaml File

Use this information if you want to customize the PeopleSoft domains — the application server, Process Scheduler, and PIA domains. For example, you may want to create multiple Application Server domains rather than a single domain.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Note. Review the requirements in Understanding PeopleSoft Environment Customizations before preparing the customization file.

Note. As mentioned, do not use the names PIA, PIA1, PIA2, or weblogic to create a PIA (web server) domain.

1. Locate the psft_configuration.yaml file, which was installed by the deployment, in *BASE_DIR*/dpk/puppet/production/data.

   Note. The code examples in this topic are for illustrative purposes only. Remember to use the text from the YAML files you install with each new deployment as the basis for your psft_customizations.yaml file.

2. If necessary, create a psft_customizations.yaml using a standard editing tool such as Notepad and save it in the same location as the psft_configuration.yaml file.

   If this is the first entry in the psft_customizations.yaml file, ensure that there are three dashes (`---`) on the first line of the file. Do not indent the dashes.

3. Copy the sections that you want to customize from the psft_configuration.yaml file into the psft_customizations.yaml file and modify the values as needed.

   Be sure to retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML file.

   The following sections in this task include sample psft_customizations.yaml files.

4. Save the file.
5. Continue with the steps in Completing the Customized Deployment.

Task 4-1-2: Reviewing the Domain Definitions in psft_configuration.yaml

To customize the PeopleSoft domains, you begin with the psft_configuration.yaml file, which lists the attributes pertinent to the PeopleSoft domains. Be sure to retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML file when you copy the sections into the psft_customizations.yaml file.

Note. The psft_configuration.yaml file includes definitions for Automated Configuration Manager (ACM) plug-ins, which configure components such as Integration Broker and Report Distribution. Depending upon the PeopleSoft domain being set up, certain ACM configurations will run as part of the deployment.

This sample shows a portion of a psft_configuration.yaml file, with annotations added (marked by ###) for the purposes of this explanation. The default application server name, APPDOM, is defined in the first portion of the file for the parameter `appserver_domain_name`, which is then referenced with an interpolation token `"%{lookup('appserver_domain_name')}"` in the `appserver_domain_list` section.

The DPK setup script encrypts user-supplied passwords and includes them in the generated YAML files. The encrypted text will be a long single line of letters and numbers. Be sure to copy the text in one unbroken line, with no spaces or line feeds. This sample includes short strings of text beginning with "ENC" to represent encrypted passwords.

Note. Use clear text passwords for silent mode installation.

```
---
db_name:            FSDEMO
db_user:            VP1

############################################################
# Replace this password sample with encrypted text from the  #
# generated psft_configuration.yaml file.                    #
```

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
#################################################################
db_user_pwd:       ENC[xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx]
db_connect_id:     people

#################################################################
# Replace this password sample with encrypted text from the  #
# generated psft_configuration.yaml file.                     #
#################################################################
db_connect_pwd:    ENC[xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx]

domain_user:           "%{lookup('psft_runtime_user_name')}"
ps_config_home:        "C:/Users/%{::env_username}/psft/pt/8.62"
appserver_template:    small
appserver_domain_name: APPDOM
prcs_domain_name:      PRCSDOM
prcs_domain_id:        "PRCS%{::rand}"
report_node_name:      "%{lookup('prcs_domain_id')}"
pia_domain_name:       peoplesoft
pia_site_name:         ps
pia_http_port:         8000
pia_https_port:        8443
jolt_port:             9033
wsl_port:              7000
db_port:               1521
gateway_node_name:     QE_LOCAL
pia_gateway_user:      administrator

#################################################################
# Replace these password samples with encrypted text from the  #
# generated psft_configuration.yaml file.                     #
#################################################################
pia_gateway_user_pwd:  ENC[xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx]
pia_gateway_keystore_pwd:ENC[xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx]
webserver_type:        weblogic
pia_webprofile_name:   PROD
pia_psserver_list:     "%{::fqdn}:%{lookup('jolt_port')}"
report_repository_dir: "%{lookup('ps_config_home')}/psreports"

#################################################################
# Replace this password sample with encrypted text from the  #
# generated psft_configuration.yaml file.                     #
#################################################################
domain_conn_pwd:       ENC[xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx]

help_uri:              pt862pbh1
tns_dir:               "%{lookup('db_location')}"
tns_admin_list:
  "%{lookup('db_name')}":
    db_host:         "%{::fqdn}"
    db_port:         "%{lookup('db_port')}"
    db_protocol:     TCP
    db_service_name: "%{lookup('db_name')}"
```

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
mssql_server_list:
  "%{lookup('db_name')}":
    mss_server_name: "%{::fqdn}"
    mss_odbc_name:   "ODBC Driver 17 for SQL Server"

db2_client:
   sqllib_location: <SQLLIB_LOCATION>

run_preboot_config_setup: true
run_postboot_config_setup: true

#####################################################################
# Copy the entire section beginning here for                        #
# application server customization.                                 #
#####################################################################

appserver_domain_list:
  "%{lookup('appserver_domain_name')}":
    os_user:         "%{lookup('domain_user')}"
    ps_cfg_home_dir: "%{lookup('ps_config_home')}"
    template_type:   "%{lookup('appserver_template')}"

    db_settings:
      db_name:        "%{lookup('db_name')}"
      db_type:        "%{lookup('db_platform')}"
      db_opr_id:      "%{lookup('db_user')}"
      db_opr_pwd:     "%{lookup('db_user_pwd')}"
      db_connect_id:  "%{lookup('db_connect_id')}"
      db_connect_pwd: "%{lookup('db_connect_pwd')}"

    config_settings:
      Domain Settings/Domain ID:    "%{lookup('appserver_domain_name')}"
      PSAPPSRV/Min Instances:       2
      PSAPPSRV/Max Instances:       2
      PSAPPSRV/Max Fetch Size:      15000
      Security/DomainConnectionPwd: "%{lookup('domain_conn_pwd')}"
      JOLT Listener/Port:           "%{lookup('jolt_port')}"
      JOLT Listener/Address:        0.0.0.0
      Workstation Listener/Port:    "%{lookup('wsl_port')}"

    feature_settings:
      PUBSUB:        "Yes"
      QUICKSRV:      "No"
      QUERYSRV:      "No"
      JOLT:          "Yes"
      JRAD:          "No"
      WSL:           "Yes"
      DBGSRV:        "No"
      RENSRV:        "No"
      MCF:           "No"
      PPM:           "Yes"
      PSPPMSRV:      "Yes"
      ANALYTICSRV:   "No"
```


Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
      SERVER_EVENTS: "Yes"
      DOMAIN_GW:     "No"
#########################################################################
# End application server section.                                       #
#########################################################################

#########################################################################
# Copy the entire section beginning here for                            #
# Process Scheduler customization.                                      #
#########################################################################

prcs_domain_list:
  "%{lookup('prcs_domain_name')}":
    os_user:         "%{lookup('domain_user')}"
    ps_cfg_home_dir: "%{lookup('ps_config_home')}"

    db_settings:
      db_name:        "%{lookup('db_name')}"
      db_type:        "%{lookup('db_platform')}"
      db_opr_id:      "%{lookup('db_user')}"
      db_opr_pwd:     "%{lookup('db_user_pwd')}"
      db_connect_id:  "%{lookup('db_connect_id')}"
      db_connect_pwd: "%{lookup('db_connect_pwd')}"

    config_settings:
      Process Scheduler/PrcsServerName: "%{lookup('prcs_domain_id')}"
      Security/DomainConnectionPwd:     "%{lookup('domain_conn_pwd')}"

    feature_settings:
      MSTRSRV:      "Yes"
      APPENG:       "Yes"
#########################################################################
# End Process Scheduler section.                                        #
#########################################################################

#########################################################################
# Copy the entire section beginning here for PIA customization.    #
#########################################################################
pia_domain_list:
  "%{lookup('pia_domain_name')}":
    os_user:               "%{lookup('domain_user')}"
    ps_cfg_home_dir:       "%{lookup('ps_config_home')}"
    gateway_user:          "%{lookup('pia_gateway_user')}"
    gateway_user_pwd:      "%{lookup('pia_gateway_user_pwd')}"
    auth_token_domain:     ".%{::domain}"
    webserver_install_type: "%{lookup('webserver_install_type')}"

    webserver_settings:
      webserver_type:           "%{lookup('webserver_type')}"
      webserver_home:           "%{lookup('weblogic_location')}"
      webserver_admin_user:     system
      webserver_admin_user_pwd:  ENC[xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx]
```

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
############################################################
# Replace this password sample with encrypted text from the  #
# generated psft_configuration.yaml file.                    #
############################################################

      webserver_admin_port:     "%{lookup('pia_http_port')}"
      webserver_http_port:      "%{lookup('pia_http_port')}"
      webserver_https_port:     "%{lookup('pia_https_port')}"

    site_list:
      "%{lookup('pia_site_name')}":
        appserver_connections: "%{lookup('pia_psserver_list')}"
        domain_conn_pwd:       "%{lookup('domain_conn_pwd')}"

        webprofile_settings:
          profile_name:        "%{lookup('pia_webprofile_name')}"
          profile_user:        PTWEBSERVER
          profile_user_pwd:    ENC[xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx]

############################################################
# Replace this password sample with encrypted text from the  #
# generated psft_configuration.yaml file.                    #
############################################################

        report_repository_dir: "%{lookup('report_repository_dir')}"
#####################################################################
# End PIA section.                                                  #
#####################################################################

#######################################################
# Remaining text removed for brevity.                 #
#######################################################
```

Task 4-1-3: Reviewing the Customization File for a Single Application Server Domain

This sample shows a psft_customizations.yaml file for a single application server domain with the domain name APPDOM1. Be sure to retain the indentation as given in the delivered psft_configuration.yaml file when you copy the sections into the psft_customizations.yaml file. This sample includes annotations (marked by ###) for the purposes of this explanation.

If you want to create PeopleSoft domains in a non-default *PS_CFG_HOME* location, you must specify the desired value for the scalar parameter `ps_config_home` outside the `appserver_domain_list` section.

Note. Specify the same value for `ps_config_home` and for the `ps_cfg_home_dir` parameter in the `appserver_domain_list` section. They both must reference the same location.

See Preparing the Customization File for the PS_CFG_HOME Location.

This sample starts with scalar parameters for appserver_domain_name and jolt_port. Interpolation functions that reference these scalar parameters will also use the non-default values. This applies to the interpolation function in psft_customizations.yaml as well as those used by the ACM plug-ins in psft_configuration.yaml.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

The appserver_domain_name scalar parameter replaces the default value, APPDOM, with APPDOM111. This sets the value for the domain name in the appserver_domain_list collection parameter to the non-default APPDOM111.

The jolt_port scalar parameter replaces the default port 9033 with 9077. This sets the value for Jolt Listener/Port to the non–default 9077.

```
---
### Custom port number and application server domain name ###
### in scalar parameters ###
appserver_domain_name: APPDOM111
jolt_port:             9077

appserver_domain_list:

### Application server domain name refers to scalar parameter ###
  "%{lookup('appserver_domain_name')}":
    os_user:         "%{lookup('domain_user')}"
    template_type:   "%{lookup('appserver_template')}"

    ### Do not change the ps_cfg_home_dir parameter. ###
    ps_cfg_home_dir: "%{lookup('ps_config_home')}"



    db_settings:
      db_name:        "%{lookup('db_name')}"
      db_type:        "%{lookup('db_platform')}"
      db_opr_id:      "%{lookup('db_user')}"
      db_opr_pwd:     "%{lookup('db_user_pwd')}"
      db_connect_id:  "%{lookup('db_connect_id')}"
      db_connect_pwd: "%{lookup('db_connect_pwd')}"

    config_settings:
      Domain Settings/Domain ID:    IBUPG0
      PSAPPSRV/Min Instances:       3
      PSAPPSRV/Max Instances:       5
      JOLT Listener/Port:           "%{lookup('jolt_port')}"   ### Custom⇒
 ###
      Workstation Listener/Port:    "%{lookup('wsl_port')}"

    feature_settings:
      PUBSUB:        "Yes"
      QUICKSRV:      "No"
      QUERYSRV:      "No"
      JOLT:          "Yes"
      JRAD:          "No"
      WSL:           "Yes"
      DBGSRV:        "No"
      RENSRV:        "No"
      MCF:           "No"
      PPM:           "Yes"
      PSPPMSRV:      "Yes"
      ANALYTICSRV:   "No"
```

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
      SERVER_EVENTS: "Yes"
      DOMAIN_GW:     "No"
```

Task 4-1-4: Reviewing the Customization File for a Single Process Scheduler Domain

This sample shows a psft_customizations.yaml file for a single Process Scheduler domain with the domain name PRCSDOM1. Be sure to retain the indentation as given in the delivered psft_configuration.yaml file when you copy the sections into the psft_customizations.yaml file. This sample includes annotations (marked by ###) for the purposes of this explanation.

If you want to create PeopleSoft domains in a non-default *PS_CFG_HOME* location, you must specify the desired value for the scalar parameter `ps_config_home` outside the `prcs_domain_list` section.

Note. Specify the same value for `ps_config_home` and for the `ps_cfg_home_dir` parameter in the `appserver_domain_list` section. They both must reference the same location.

See Preparing the Customization File for the PS_CFG_HOME Location.

This sample starts with a scalar parameter for prcs_domain_name. Interpolation functions that reference this scalar parameter will also use the non-default value. This applies to the interpolation functions in psft_customizations.yaml as well as those used by the ACM plug-ins in psft_configuration.yaml.

The prcs_domain_name scalar parameter replaces the default value, PRCSDOM, with PRCSDOM1. This sets the value for the domain name in the prcs_domain_list collection parameter to the non-default PRCSDOM1.

```
---
### Custom Process Scheduler domain name in scalar parameter ###
prcs_domain_name:      PRCSDOM1

prcs_domain_list:

  ### Process Scheduler domain name refers to scalar parameter ###
  "%{lookup('prcs_domain_name')}":
    os_user:         "%{lookup('domain_user')}"

    ### Do not change the ps_cfg_home_dir parameter. ###
    ps_cfg_home_dir: "%{lookup('ps_config_home')}"

    db_settings:
      db_name:        "%{lookup('db_name')}"
      db_type:        "%{lookup('db_platform')}"
      db_opr_id:      "%{lookup('db_user')}"
      db_opr_pwd:     "%{lookup('db_user_pwd')}"
      db_connect_id:  "%{lookup('db_connect_id')}"
      db_connect_pwd: "%{lookup('db_connect_pwd')}"

    config_settings:
      Process Scheduler/PrcsServerName: "%{lookup('prcs_domain_id')}"
      Security/DomainConnectionPwd:     "%{lookup('domain_conn_pwd')}"

    feature_settings:
      MSTRSRV:      "Yes"
      APPENG:       "Yes"
```


Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Task 4-1-5: Reviewing the Customization File for a Single PIA Domain

This sample shows a psft_customizations.yaml file for a single PIA domain with the domain name PIAHR1. Be sure to retain the indentation as given in the delivered psft_configuration.yaml file when you copy the sections into the psft_customizations.yaml file. This sample includes annotations (marked by ###) for the purposes of this explanation.

Note. Do not use the reserved names PIA, PIA1, PIA2, or weblogic for the PIA (web server) domain.

If you want to create PeopleSoft domains in a non-default *PS_CFG_HOME* location, you must specify the desired value for the scalar parameter `ps_config_home` outside the `pia_domain_list` section.

Note. Specify the same value for `ps_config_home` and for the `ps_cfg_home_dir` parameter in the `appserver_domain_list` section. They both must reference the same location.

See Preparing the Customization File for the PS_CFG_HOME Location.

This sample starts with scalar parameters for pia_domain_name, pia_http_port, and pia_https_port. Interpolation functions that reference these scalar parameters will also use the non-default values. This applies to the interpolation function in psft_customizations.yaml as well as those used by the ACM plug-ins in psft_configuration.yaml.

The pia_domain_name scalar parameter replaces the default value, peoplesoft, with PIAHR1. This sets the value for the domain name in the pia_domain_list collection parameter to the non-default PIAHR1.

The pia_http_port and pia_https_port scalar parameters replace the default port 8000 and 8443 with 8050 and 8943, respectively. This sets the values for webserver_admin_port, webserver_http_port, and webserver_https_port to the non–default values.

```
---
### Custom port numbers and PIA domain name in scalar parameters ###
pia_http_port: 8050
pia_https_port: 8943
pia_domain_name:       PIAHR1

pia_domain_list:

  ## PIA domain name refers to scalar parameter ###
  "%{lookup('pia_domain_name')}":
    os_user:                "%{lookup('domain_user')}"

    ### Do not change the ps_cfg_home_dir parameter. ###
    ps_cfg_home_dir:        "%{lookup('ps_config_home')}"
    gateway_user:           "%{lookup('pia_gateway_user')}"
    gateway_user_pwd:       "%{lookup('pia_gateway_user_pwd')}"
    auth_token_domain:      ".%{::domain}"
    webserver_install_type: "%{lookup('webserver_install_type')}"

    webserver_settings:
      webserver_type:           "%{lookup('webserver_type')}"
      webserver_home:           "%{lookup('weblogic_location')}"
      webserver_admin_user:     system
      webserver_admin_user_pwd: ENC[xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx]
      webserver_admin_port:     "%{lookup('pia_http_port')}"  ###Custom###
      webserver_http_port:      "%{lookup('pia_http_port')}"  ###Custom###
```

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
    webserver_https_port:     "%{lookup('pia_https_port')}"  ###Custom###

  site_list:
    "%{lookup('pia_site_name')}":
      appserver_connections: "%{lookup('pia_psserver_list')}"
      domain_conn_pwd:       "%{lookup('domain_conn_pwd')}"

      webprofile_settings:
        profile_name:        "%{lookup('pia_webprofile_name')}"
        profile_user:        PTWEBSERVER
        profile_user_pwd:    ENC[xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx]

      report_repository_dir: "%{lookup('report_repository_dir')}"
```

Task 4-1-6: Reviewing the Customization File for a PIA Domain on a Separate Host

If you want to set up an environment in which the PIA domain and web server are not on the same machine as the application server domain, you must use customizations to specify the machine where the application server is installed. This customization is required for the Integration Broker configuration. The sample includes annotations (marked by ###) for the purposes of this explanation.

1. Copy the entire `component_postboot_setup_list` collection type parameter section (comprised of several lines) from psft_configuration.yaml and paste it into psft_customizations.yaml.

   Be sure to retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML file when you copy the sections into the psft_customizations.yaml file, and when you modify them.

2. Locate the `env.ib_appserver_host` parameter.

   This parameter sets the host for Integration Broker to the PIA host. The default value in the delivered psft_configuration.yaml file is the machine where the DPK setup script is run:

   ```
   env.ib_appserver_host:            "%{lookup('pia_host_name')}"
   ```

3. Change the value for `env.ib_appserver_host` to point to the host where the application server is set up, for example `ps_app_server1`.

   See "Deploying the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Deployment Packages," Running the DPK Setup Script to Deploy a PIA Domain.

4. In the section PTIBConfigureGatewayProperties, change the value for `env.app_pia_same_host` to "N" to specify that the application server and web server are on different hosts.

5. Add the scalar parameters for pia_http_port and pia_https_port at the top of the file.

   Interpolation functions that reference these scalar parameters will also use the non-default values. This applies to the interpolation function in psft_customizations.yaml as well as those used by the ACM plug-ins in psft_customizations.yaml and psft_configuration.yaml.

   The pia_http_port and pia_https_port scalar parameters replace the default port 8000 and 8443 with 8050 and 8943, respectively. This sets the value for env.gateway_port and env.gateway_ssl_port to the non–default port values.

Note. Do not use the reserved names PIA, PIA1, PIA2, or weblogic for the PIA (web server) domain.

This sample shows a sample psft_customizations.yaml file, with annotations added (marked by ###) for the purposes of this explanation.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
---
### Custom port numbers in scalar parameters  ###
pia_http_port: 8050
pia_https_port: 8943

component_postboot_setup_list:
  integration_broker:
    run_control_id:                         intbroker
    os_user:                                "%{lookup('domain_user')}"

    db_settings:
      db_name:                              "%{lookup('db_name')}"
      db_type:                              "%{lookup('db_platform')}"
      db_opr_id:                            "%{lookup('db_user')}"
      db_opr_pwd:                           "%{lookup('db_user_pwd')}"
      db_connect_id:                        "%{lookup('db_connect_id')}"
      db_connect_pwd:                       "%{lookup('db_connect_pwd')}"

    acm_plugin_list:
      PTIBActivateDomain:
        domain.activate_retry_count:      10
        domain.activate_wait_time:        10

### Ports refer to scalar parameters ###
      PTIBConfigureGatewayNodes:
        env.gateway_host:                 "%{lookup('pia_host_name')}"
        env.gateway_port:                 "%{lookup('pia_http_port')}"
        env.gateway_ssl_port:             "%{lookup('pia_https_port')}"
        env.use_ssl_gateway:              false
        env.default_local_node:           "%{lookup('gateway_node_name')}"
        env.gateway_user:                 "%{lookup('pia_gateway_user')}"
        env.gateway_password:             "%{lookup('pia_gateway_user_⇒
pwd')}"

       ### Custom application server name ###
        env.ib_appserver_host:            ps_app_server1
        env.ib_jolt_port:                 "%{lookup('jolt_port')}"
        env.ib_node_proxy_userid:         "%{lookup('db_user')}"
        env.ib_node_proxy_password:       "%{lookup('db_user_pwd')}"
        env.tools_release:                "%ToolsRelease"
        env.ib_appserver_domain_password: "%{lookup('domain_conn_pwd')}"
        env.ib_set_as_default_node:       true

      PTIBConfigureGatewayProperties:
        env.gateway_keystore_password:    ENC[xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx⇒
xxx]
        env.webserver_domain:             "%{lookup('pia_domain_name')}"

        ### Application server and web server on different hosts ###
        env.app_pia_same_host:             "N"

      PTWebServerConfigUpdate:
```

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
        env.domainname:                     "%{lookup('pia_domain_name')}"
        env.sitename:                       "%{lookup('pia_site_name')}"
        env.piahome:                        "%{lookup('ps_config_home')}"
        env.psserver:                       ""
        env.KeyStorePwd:                    ""

    acm_plugin_order:
      - PTIBActivateDomain
      - PTIBConfigureGatewayNodes
      - PTIBConfigureGatewayProperties
      - PTWebServerConfigUpdate
```

Task 4-1-7: Reviewing the Customization File for Multiple Web Sites in a Single Web Domain

Use these guidelines to create the psft_customizations.yaml file for a single PIA (web server) domain with two or more web sites. Be sure to also fulfill the guidelines in the section Preparing the psft_customizations.yaml File.

Be sure to retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML file when you copy the sections into the psft_customizations.yaml file.

This sample shows the psft_customizations.yaml file for a single PIA domain, called PIAHR2, with two web sites, hr92dev and hr92site.

- Copy the scalar parameter `pia_site_name` from psft_configuration.yaml and change the value to the name for the first web site, hr92dev in this example.

  This web site will be used for configuring the report node and Integration Broker.

- Copy the entire `pia_domain_list` collection type parameter (comprised of several lines) from psft_configuration.yaml and change the value `"%{lookup('pia_domain_name')}"` to the desired name for the PIA domain, PIAHR2 in this example.

  Note. Do not use the reserved names PIA, PIA1, PIA2, or weblogic for the PIA (web server) domain.

- In the `pia_domain_list` collection type parameter, to add a second web site, copy the portion defining the web site, and paste it below the first, default, web site definition.

  Copy and paste the web site portion for as many web sites as you need, and specify different names for the each site. The web site names in this example are hr92dev and hr92site. The name of the first web site that you use here is the same as the name you enter for `pia_site_name`.

- Replace the password sample here with encrypted text from the generated psft_configuration.yaml file.

  Note. Use clear text passwords for silent mode installation.

- The parameters webserver_admin_port, webserver_http_port, and webserver_https_port are interpolation functions. To specify non-default port numbers for these parameters, include the scalar parameters that the interpolation functions are based on at the top of the file. This sample replaces the default values 8000 and 8443 for pia_http_port and pia_https_port with 50000. This ensures that interpolation functions that are based on pia_http_port and pia_https_port use the custom values.

Here is a sample psft_customizations.yaml file, with annotations added (marked by ###) for the purposes of this explanation.

```
---
### Custom port numbers for first domain in scalar parameters ###
```


Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
pia_http_port: 50000
pia_https_port: 50000

### First domain with custom name in scalar parameter ###
pia_domain_name: PIAHR2

### First site with custom name in scalar parameter ###
pia_site_name:              hr92dev

### First PIA domain refers to scalar parameter ###
pia_domain_list:
  "%{lookup('pia_domain_name')}":
    os_user:               "%{lookup('domain_user')}"
    ps_cfg_home_dir:       "%{lookup('ps_config_home')}"
    gateway_user:          "%{lookup('pia_gateway_user')}"
    gateway_user_pwd:      "%{lookup('pia_gateway_user_pwd')}"
    auth_token_domain:     ".%{::domain}"
    webserver_install_type: "%{lookup('webserver_install_type')}"

    webserver_settings:
      webserver_type:           "%{lookup('webserver_type')}"
      webserver_home:           "%{lookup('weblogic_location')}"
      webserver_admin_user:     system
      webserver_admin_user_pwd: ENC[xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx]
      webserver_admin_port:     "%{lookup('pia_http_port')}"
      webserver_http_port:      "%{lookup('pia_http_port')}"
      webserver_https_port:     "%{lookup('pia_https_port')}"

    site_list:
      ### First web site with custom name ###
      "hr92dev":
        appserver_connections: "%{lookup('pia_psserver_list')}"
        domain_conn_pwd:       "%{lookup('domain_conn_pwd')}"

        webprofile_settings:
          profile_name:        "%{lookup('pia_webprofile_name')}"
          profile_user:        PTWEBSERVER
          profile_user_pwd:    ENC[xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx]

        report_repository_dir: "%{lookup('report_repository_dir')}"

      ### Second web site with custom name ###
      "hr92site":
        appserver_connections: "%{lookup('pia_psserver_list')}"
        domain_conn_pwd:       "%{lookup('domain_conn_pwd')}"

        webprofile_settings:
          profile_name:        "%{lookup('pia_webprofile_name')}"
          profile_user:        PTWEBSERVER
          profile_user_pwd:    ENC[xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx]

        report_repository_dir: "%{lookup('report_repository_dir')}"
```

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Task 4-1-8: Reviewing the Customization File for Multiple Domains

For multiple domains, duplicate the entire domain section, again maintaining the indentation from the original psft_configuration.yaml file. This sample shows a psft_customizations.yaml file for two application server domains, two PIA domains, and two Process Scheduler domains, with annotations added for the purposes of this explanation. The annotations are labelled with letters referring to the text discussion, and by ### characters, such as `###(A)###`.

Follow these guidelines in creating a psft_customizations.yaml file for customized PeopleSoft domains. The letters correspond to those in the code sample.

- (A) For more than one application server, include the `pia_psserver_list` entry at the top of the psft_customizations.yaml definitions. List the application server domains that are used by the PIA domains, using the format *<application_server_host>:<Jolt port>*. Separate the entries with a comma.
- (B) Include the scalar parameters for each domain at the top.

  You can retain the default names for each domain, or change them.

  This sample starts with several scalar parameters. Interpolation functions that reference these scalar parameters will also use the non-default values. This applies to the interpolation function in psft_customizations.yaml as well as those used by the ACM plug-ins in psft_configuration.yaml.
- (C) Copy the entire section for the domains that you want to customize.

  Be sure to retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML file when you copy the sections into the psft_customizations.yaml file.

  In the delivered psft_configuration.yaml file, each section begins with a domain name that is defined as an interpolation token based on the scalar parameter. For example, under `appserver_domain_list`, the domain name is defined as `"%{lookup('appserver_domain_name')}"`, which uses the scalar parameter `appserver_domain_name`. After you copy the sections into the psft_customizations.yaml file, in the first section, either duplicate the value of the scalar parameter, or retain the interpolation token to refer to it.
- (D) Specify unique names for each domain.
- (E) Specify unique, unused ports for each domain.

  This sample starts with several scalar parameters for ports. Interpolation functions for the first application server domain, APPDOM111, which reference these scalar parameters, will use the same values. This applies to the interpolation functions in psft_customizations.yaml as well as those used by the ACM plug-ins in psft_configuration.yaml.

  For the second application server domain, APPDOM222, enter non-default port values for Jolt Listener/Port and Workstation Listener/Port directly.

  To set Jolt Listener/Port and Workstation Listener/Port for the second domain, you must take into account the range of ports that will be used by the first domain. Derive the allowed ports using the Workstation and Jolt Max Handler values. The default Max Handler values are based on the application server template type. The default DPK deployment uses the small template. Refer to the PeopleTools documentation for the values.

  See *PeopleTools: System and Server Administration,* "Setting Application Server Domain Parameters," Jolt Listener Options.

  See *PeopleTools: System and Server Administration,* "Setting Application Server Domain Parameters," Workstation Listener Options.

  For example, if the Workstation Listener/Port is set to 7001 for the first domain, APPDOM111, and the Workstation Max Handler is 3, set the Workstation Listener/Port for the second domain, APPDOM222, to 7004 (skip 3 numbers).

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- (E) If specifying more than one PIA domain, ensure that the ports are not in use, and use different ports for HTTP and HTTPS for each domain.
- (F) If specifying more than one Process Scheduler domain, you must specify unique Process Scheduler server names.

  In this sample, the first Process Scheduler server uses the default value, which is defined as an interpolation token. The first Process Scheduler server name is specified with a scalar parameter at the top, `prcs_domain_name`.

  The second Process Scheduler server has a different name, `PRCS222`.

  Each Process Scheduler server name must begin with a letter and include a maximum of 8 characters.
- (G) The Master Scheduler Server should be enabled for the first Process Scheduler domain (`MSTRSRV: "Yes"`), and disabled for subsequent Process Scheduler domains (`MSTRSRV: "No"`).

  See *PeopleTools: Process Scheduler*, "Understanding PeopleSoft Master Scheduler Server."
- (H) If specifying more than one PIA domain, you must specify different site names for each.

  In this sample, the first PIA site name uses the default value, which is defined as an interpolation token. The second PIA site name has a different name, `ps222`.

```
---
pia_psserver_list:   "hostname.example.com:9033,hostname.example.com:9043"
### (A) ###

### (B), (E) ###
appserver_domain_name: APPDOM111
prcs_domain_name:      PRCSDOM111                ### (F) ###
pia_domain_name:       PIA111
pia_site_name:         ps
pia_http_port: 8000
pia_https_port: 8443
jolt_port: 9033
wsl_port: 7000

appserver_domain_list:
  "%{lookup('appserver_domain_name')}":                ###(C), (D) ###
    os_user:         "%{lookup('domain_user')}"
    template_type:   "%{lookup('appserver_template')}"
    ps_cfg_home_dir: "%{lookup('ps_config_home')}"

    db_settings:
      db_name:        "%{lookup('db_name')}"
      db_type:        "%{lookup('db_platform')}"
      db_opr_id:      "%{lookup('db_user')}"
      db_opr_pwd:     "%{lookup('db_user_pwd')}"
      db_connect_id:  "%{lookup('db_connect_id')}"
      db_connect_pwd: "%{lookup('db_connect_pwd')}"

    config_settings:
      Domain Settings/Domain ID:    IBUPG0
      PSAPPSRV/Min Instances:       3
      PSAPPSRV/Max Instances:       5
      JOLT Listener/Port:           "%{lookup('jolt_port')}"     ### (E)⇒
 ###
```

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
      Workstation Listener/Port:    "%{lookup('wsl_port')}"       ### (E)⇒
 ###

    feature_settings:
      PUBSUB:         "Yes"
      QUICKSRV:       "No"
      QUERYSRV:       "No"
      JOLT:           "Yes"
      JRAD:           "No"
      WSL:            "Yes"
      DBGSRV:         "No"
      RENSRV:         "No"
      MCF:            "No"
      PPM:            "Yes"
      PSPPMSRV:       "Yes"
      ANALYTICSRV:    "No"
      SERVER_EVENTS:  "Yes"
      DOMAIN_GW:      "No"

  "APPDOM222":                                                  ### (C), (D) ###
    os_user:          "%{lookup('domain_user')}"
    template_type:    "%{lookup('appserver_template')}"
    ps_cfg_home_dir:  "%{lookup('ps_config_home')}"

    db_settings:
      db_name:         "%{lookup('db_name')}"
      db_type:         "%{lookup('db_platform')}"
      db_opr_id:       "%{lookup('db_user')}"
      db_opr_pwd:      "%{lookup('db_user_pwd')}"
      db_connect_id:   "%{lookup('db_connect_id')}"
      db_connect_pwd:  "%{lookup('db_connect_pwd')}"

    config_settings:
      Domain Settings/Domain ID:    IBUPG0
      PSAPPSRV/Min Instances:       3
      PSAPPSRV/Max Instances:       5
      JOLT Listener/Port:           9041                        ### (E) ###
      Workstation Listener/Port:    7004                        ### (E) ###

    feature_settings:
      PUBSUB:         "Yes"
      QUICKSRV:       "No"
      QUERYSRV:       "No"
      JOLT:           "Yes"
      JRAD:           "No"
      WSL:            "Yes"
      DBGSRV:         "No"
      RENSRV:         "No"
      MCF:            "No"
      PPM:            "Yes"
      PSPPMSRV:       "Yes"
      ANALYTICSRV:    "No"
      SERVER_EVENTS:  "Yes"
```


Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
      DOMAIN_GW:     "No"


pia_domain_list:
  "%{lookup('pia_domain_name')}":                          ### (C), (D) ###
    os_user:               "%{lookup('domain_user')}"
    ps_cfg_home_dir:       "%{lookup('ps_config_home')}"
    gateway_user:          "%{lookup('pia_gateway_user')}"
    gateway_user_pwd:      "%{lookup('pia_gateway_user_pwd')}"
    auth_token_domain:     ".%{::domain}"

    webserver_settings:
      webserver_type:           "%{lookup('webserver_type')}"
      webserver_home:           "%{lookup('weblogic_location')}"
      webserver_admin_user:     system
      webserver_admin_user_pwd: ENC[xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx]

#############################################################
# Replace this password sample with encrypted text from the  #
# generated psft_configuration.yaml file.                    #
#############################################################

      webserver_admin_port:     8000                          ### (E) ###
      webserver_http_port:      8000                          ### (E) ###
      webserver_https_port:     8443                          ### (E) ###

    site_list:
      "%{lookup('pia_site_name')}":                            ### (H)⇒
 ###
        appserver_connections: "%{lookup('pia_psserver_list')}"
        domain_conn_pwd:       "%{lookup('domain_conn_pwd')}"

        webprofile_settings:
          profile_name:        "%{lookup('pia_webprofile_name')}"
          profile_user:        PTWEBSERVER
          profile_user_pwd:    ENC[xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx]

#############################################################
# Replace this password sample with encrypted text from the  #
# generated psft_configuration.yaml file.                    #
#############################################################

        report_repository_dir: "%{lookup('report_repository_dir')}"

  "PIADOM222":                                          ### (C), (D) ###
    os_user:               "%{lookup('domain_user')}"
    ps_cfg_home_dir:       "%{lookup('ps_config_home')}"
    gateway_user:          "%{lookup('pia_gateway_user')}"
    gateway_user_pwd:      "%{lookup('pia_gateway_user_pwd')}"
    auth_token_domain:     ".%{::domain}"

    webserver_settings:
      webserver_type:           "%{lookup('webserver_type')}"
```

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
      webserver_home:           "%{lookup('weblogic_location')}"
      webserver_admin_user:     system
      webserver_admin_user_pwd: ENC[xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx]

############################################################
# Replace this password sample with encrypted text from the  #
# generated psft_configuration.yaml file.                    #
############################################################

      webserver_admin_port:     8002                              ### (E) ###
      webserver_http_port:      8002                              ### (E) ###
      webserver_https_port:     8445                              ### (E) ###

    site_list:
      "ps222":                                                    ###(H) ###
        appserver_connections: "%{lookup('pia_psserver_list')}"
        domain_conn_pwd:       "%{lookup('domain_conn_pwd')}"

        webprofile_settings:
          profile_name:        "%{lookup('pia_webprofile_name')}"
          profile_user:        PTWEBSERVER
          profile_user_pwd:    ENC[xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx]

############################################################
# Replace this password sample with encrypted text from the  #
# generated psft_configuration.yaml file.                    #
############################################################

        report_repository_dir: "%{lookup('report_repository_dir')}"


prcs_domain_list:
  "%{lookup('prcs_domain_name')}":
    os_user:         "%{lookup('domain_user')}"
    ps_cfg_home_dir: "%{lookup('ps_config_home')}"

    db_settings:
      db_name:        "%{lookup('db_name')}"
      db_type:        "%{lookup('db_platform')}"
      db_opr_id:      "%{lookup('db_user')}"
      db_opr_pwd:     "%{lookup('db_user_pwd')}"
      db_connect_id:  "%{lookup('db_connect_id')}"
      db_connect_pwd: "%{lookup('db_connect_pwd')}"

    config_settings:
      Process Scheduler/PrcsServerName: "%{lookup('prcs_domain_id')}" ###⇒
(F)###
      Security/DomainConnectionPwd:     "%{lookup('domain_conn_pwd')}"

    feature_settings:
      MSTRSRV:      "Yes"                                         ### (G) ###
      APPENG:       "Yes"
```


Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
"PRCSDOM222":
  os_user:          "%{lookup('domain_user')}"
  ps_cfg_home_dir: "%{lookup('ps_config_home')}"

  db_settings:
    db_name:         "%{lookup('db_name')}"
    db_type:         "%{lookup('db_platform')}"
    db_opr_id:       "%{lookup('db_user')}"
    db_opr_pwd:      "%{lookup('db_user_pwd')}"
    db_connect_id:   "%{lookup('db_connect_id')}"
    db_connect_pwd: "%{lookup('db_connect_pwd')}"

  config_settings:
    Process Scheduler/PrcsServerName: PRCS222                ### (F)###
    Security/DomainConnectionPwd:     "%{lookup('domain_conn_pwd')}"

  feature_settings:
    MSTRSRV:       "No"                                      ###(G)###
    APPENG:        "Yes"
```

Task 4-2: Preparing the Customization File to Create PeopleSoft Domains Without Configuration

The default DPK initialization includes pre-boot and post-boot processes that use Automated Configuration Manager (ACM) plug-ins to configure and start the PeopleSoft domains. The ACM configuration, for example, sets up Integration Broker and the report repository for the Process Scheduler.

Use this customization if you want to install the necessary software for the PeopleSoft Application Server, PIA, and Process Scheduler servers without running the pre-boot and post-boot ACM processes. After you complete the DPK deployment with this customization, you can complete the configuration as needed.

Note. Review the requirements in Understanding PeopleSoft Environment Customizations before preparing the customization file.

To prepare the customization file:

1. Locate the psft_configuration.yaml file, which was installed by the deployment, in *BASE_DIR*/dpk/puppet/production/data.
2. If necessary, create a psft_customizations.yaml using a standard editing tool such as Notepad and save it in the same location as the psft_configuration.yaml file.

   If this is the first entry in the psft_customizations.yaml file, ensure that there are three dashes (`---`) on the first line of the file. Do not indent the dashes.
3. Copy the parameters below from the psft_configuration.yaml file and paste them into the psft_customizations.yaml file.

   Retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML file.

   ```
   run_preboot_config_setup: true
   run_postboot_config_setup: true
   ```
4. To specify that the deployment does not run the pre-boot and post-boot ACM processes, change the values to "false"; for example:

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
run_preboot_config_setup: false
run_postboot_config_setup: false
```

5. Add the parameter `prcs_domain_id` and provide a name for the Process Scheduler domain server.

   The Process Scheduler domain server name must begin with a letter and include a maximum of 8 characters. For example, you might choose a name to indicate the operating system, such as PSNT for Microsoft Windows or PSUNX for Linux or UNIX.

```
---
run_preboot_config_setup: false
run_postboot_config_setup: false

prcs_domain_id: PSNT
```

6. Save the file.
7. Continue with the steps in Completing the Customized Deployment.

Task 4-3: Preparing the Customization File for Component Software Locations

Use the information in this section if you want to customize an installation location, for example to use an existing installation of Oracle Tuxedo or Oracle WebLogic.

Note. Review the requirements in Understanding PeopleSoft Environment Customizations before preparing the customization file.

1. Locate the psft_deployment.yaml file in *BASE_DIR*/dpk/puppet/production/data.

   Note. The code examples in this topic are for illustrative purposes only. Remember to use the text from the YAML files you install with each new deployment as the basis for your psft_customizations.yaml file.

   The installation locations for Oracle Tuxedo, Oracle WebLogic, and JDK are defined in the psft_deployment.yaml file that is installed with the deployment.
2. If necessary, create a psft_customizations.yaml using a standard editing tool such as Notepad and save it in the same location as the psft_configuration.yaml file.

   If this is the first entry in the psft_customizations.yaml file, ensure that there are three dashes (`---`) on the first line of the file. Do not indent the dashes.
3. Select one or more of the sections corresponding to the components that you want to customize, and copy them to the psft_customizations.yaml file.

   As previously mentioned, setting the optional attribute `remove: false` means that the parameters in this section will not be deleted when the deployed environment is removed.

   Note. This applies only for *customized location for new installation* of component software: Before you run the psft_puppet_apply.<ext> command, ensure the customized location given in the psft_customizations.yaml file does not contain any files or directories.

   - For JDK, copy the `jdk_location` scalar parameter, and the entire `jdk` collection-type section (comprised of two lines) from the psft_deployment.yaml file into the psft_customizations.yaml file. Be sure to set the locations to the same value. Retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML file.

     ```
     ---
     ```


Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
jdk_location:    C:/jdk
jdk:
  location:  C:/jdk
  remove:        false
```

- For Oracle Tuxedo, copy both the `tuxedo_location` scalar parameter and the entire `tuxedo` collection-type section (comprised of two lines) from the psft_deployment.yaml file into the psft_customizations.yaml file. Be sure to set the locations to the same value. Retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML file.

  ```
  ---
  tuxedo_location:   C:/psft/tuxedo
  tuxedo:
    location:      C:/psft/tuxedo
    remove:        false
  ```

- For Oracle WebLogic, copy both the `weblogic_location` scalar parameter and the entire `weblogic` collection-type section (comprised of two lines) from the psft_deployment.yaml file into the psft_customizations.yaml file. Be sure to set the locations to the same value. Retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML file.

  ```
  ---
  weblogic_location:  C:/psft/weblogic
  weblogic:
    location:         C:/psft/weblogic
    remove:           false
  ```

- If you want to customize JDK, Oracle Tuxedo, and Oracle WebLogic, add all three entries to psft_customizations.yaml; for example:

  ```
  ---
  jdk_location:    C:/jdk
  jdk:
    location:      C:/jdk
    remove:        false

  tuxedo_location:   C:/psft/tuxedo
  tuxedo:
    location:      C:/psft/tuxedo
    remove:        false

  weblogic_location:  C:/psft/weblogic
  weblogic:
    location:         C:/psft/weblogic
    remove:           false
  ```

4. Save the file.
5. Continue with the steps in Completing the Customized Deployment.

Task 4-4: Preparing the Customization File for Unicode

Use these instructions if you want to change the Unicode designation for your database.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Note. Review the requirements in Understanding PeopleSoft Environment Customizations before preparing the customization file.

1. Locate the psft_deployment.yaml file.

   Note. The code examples in this topic are for illustrative purposes only. Remember to use the text from the YAML files you install with each new deployment as the basis for your psft_customizations.yaml file.

   By default, the DPK setup script installs the YAML files in *BASE_DIR*/dpk/puppet/production/data.

   The `unicode_db` parameter is part of the `ps_home` section.

   ```
   ps_home:
     db_type:    "%{lookup('db_platform')}"
     unicode_db: "%{lookup('unicode_db')}"
     location:   "%{lookup('ps_home_location')}"
   ```

2. If necessary, create a psft_customizations.yaml using a standard editing tool such as Notepad and save it in the same location as the psft_configuration.yaml file.

   If this is the first entry in the psft_customizations.yaml file, ensure that there are three dashes (`---`) on the first line of the file. Do not indent the dashes.

3. Copy the entire `ps_home` section from psft_deployment.yaml, maintaining the indentation, into the psft_customizations.yaml file.

   For a Unicode database, set the value for `unicode_db` to true:

   ```
   ---
   ps_home:
     db_type:    "%{lookup('db_platform')}"
     unicode_db: true
     location:   "%{lookup('ps_home_location')}"
   ```

   For a non-Unicode database, set the value for `unicode_db` to false:

   ```
   ---
   ps_home:
     db_type:    "%{lookup('db_platform')}"
     unicode_db: false
     location:   "%{lookup('ps_home_location')}"
   ```

4. Save the file.
5. Continue with the steps in Completing the Customized Deployment.

Task 4-5: Preparing the Customization Files for the PeopleSoft Homes

This section discusses:

- Preparing the Customization File for the PS_HOME Location
- Preparing the Customization File for the PS_APP_HOME Location
- Preparing the Customization File for the PS_CFG_HOME Location
- Preparing the Customization File for the PS_CUST_HOME Location

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Task 4-5-1: Preparing the Customization File for the PS_HOME Location

By default, the DPK setup script creates the *PS_HOME* directory in *BASE_DIR/*pt/ps_home<*release*>, where <release> is the PeopleSoft PeopleTools patch release, such as 8.62.12. Use these steps to specify a different *PS_HOME* location.

Note. Review the requirements in Understanding PeopleSoft Environment Customizations before preparing the customization file.

1. Locate the psft_deployment.yaml file in *BASE_DIR/*dpk/puppet/production/data.

   Note. The code examples in this topic are for illustrative purposes only. Remember to use the text from the YAML files you install with each new deployment as the basis for your psft_customizations.yaml file.

   The *PS_HOME* installation location is specified by the `ps_home` section (comprised of four lines).

   ```
   ps_home:
     db_type:     "%{lookup('db_platform')}"
     unicode_db: "%{lookup('unicode_db')}"
     location:    "%{lookup('ps_home_location')}"
   ```

2. If necessary, create a psft_customizations.yaml using a standard editing tool, such as Notepad on Microsoft Windows, and save it in the same location as the psft_deployment.yaml file.

   If this is the first entry in the psft_customizations.yaml file, ensure that there are three dashes (`---`) on the first line of the file. Do not indent the dashes.

3. Copy the entire section from the psft_deployment.yaml file into the psft_customizations.yaml file and modify the location value as needed.

   Retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML file.

   Note. This applies only for *customized location for new installation* of PeopleSoft homes: Before you run the psft_puppet_apply.<ext> command, ensure the customized location given in the psft_customizations.yaml file does not contain any files or directories.

   For example, on Microsoft Windows:

   ```
   ---
   ps_home:
     db_type:     "%{lookup('db_platform')}"
     unicode_db: "%{lookup('unicode_db')}"
     location:    "C:/psft8.62.12"
   ```

4. Save the file.
5. Continue with the steps in Completing the Customized Deployment.

Task 4-5-2: Preparing the Customization File for the PS_APP_HOME Location

By default, the DPK setup script creates the *PS_APP_HOME* directory in *BASE_DIR/*pt/<*Product*>_app_home, where <Product> is the abbreviation for the PeopleSoft application, such as fscm for PeopleSoft Financials and Supply Chain Management.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Note. Review the requirements in Understanding PeopleSoft Environment Customizations before preparing the customization file.

Here are two scenarios where you might use this customization:

- If you are performing a new installation using the PeopleSoft DPKs, and you do not want to use the default *PS_APP_HOME* location created by the DPK setup script, use this customization to specify and create the desired *PS_APP_HOME* directory.
- If you are performing a mid-tier deployment to connect to an existing environment, use this customization to specify the existing *PS_APP_HOME*.

Note. This applies only for *customized location for new installation* of PeopleSoft homes: Before you run the psft_puppet_apply.<ext> command, ensure the customized location given in the psft_customizations.yaml file does not contain any files or directories.

Use these steps to specify the *PS_APP_HOME* location.

1. Locate the psft_deployment.yaml file in *BASE_DIR*/dpk/puppet/production/data.

   Note. The code examples in this topic are for illustrative purposes only. Remember to use the text from the YAML files you install with each new deployment as the basis for your psft_customizations.yaml file.

   The *PS_APP_HOME* installation location is specified by the `ps_app_home` section.

   ```
   ps_apphome_location:  "%{lookup('pt_location')}/hcm_app_home"
   ps_app_home:
     db_type: "%{lookup('db_platform')}"
     include_ml_files: false
     location: "%{lookup('ps_apphome_location')}"
   ```

2. If necessary, create a psft_customizations.yaml using a standard editing tool, such as Notepad on Microsoft Windows, and save it in the same location as the psft_deployment.yaml file.

   If this is the first entry in the psft_customizations.yaml file, ensure that there are three dashes (`---`) on the first line of the file. Do not indent the dashes.

3. To override the location, copy the entire section from the psft_deployment.yaml file into the psft_customizations.yaml file and modify the location value as needed.

   Retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML file.

   For example, on Microsoft Windows:

   ```
   ---
   ps_apphome_location:  "C:/hcm92_home"
   ps_app_home:
     db_type: "%{lookup('db_platform')}"
     include_ml_files: false
     location: "C:/hcm92_home"
   ```

4. Save the file.
5. Continue with the steps in Completing the Customized Deployment.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Task 4-5-3: Preparing the Customization File for the PS_CFG_HOME Location

By default, the DPK setup script creates the *PS_CFG_HOME* directory in *<user_profile>*/psft/pt/8.62, such as C:/users/username/psft/pt/8.62. Note that you cannot specify different *PS_CFG_HOME* locations for different PeopleSoft domains. The DPK installation requires the same *PS_CFG_HOME* be used for all domains. Use these steps to specify the *PS_CFG_HOME* location.

Note. Review the requirements in Understanding PeopleSoft Environment Customizations before preparing the customization file.

1. Locate the psft_configuration.yaml file in *BASE_DIR*/dpk/puppet/production/data.

   Note. The code examples in this topic are for illustrative purposes only. Remember to use the text from the YAML files you install with each new deployment as the basis for your psft_customizations.yaml file.

   The *PS_CFG_HOME* installation location is specified by the ps_config_home parameter.

   ```
   ps_config_home:         "%{lookup('user_home_dir')}/%{lookup('domain_⇒
   user')}/psft/pt/8.62"
   ```

2. If necessary, create a psft_customizations.yaml using a standard editing tool, such as Notepad on Microsoft Windows, and save it in the same location as the psft_configuration.yaml file.

   If this is the first entry in the psft_customizations.yaml file, ensure that there are three dashes (`---`) on the first line of the file. Do not indent the dashes.

3. Copy the entire section from the psft_configuration.yaml file into the psft_customizations.yaml file and modify the location value as needed.

   Note. This applies only for *customized location for new installation* of PeopleSoft homes: Before you run the psft_puppet_apply.<ext> command, ensure the customized location given in the psft_customizations.yaml file does not contain any files or directories.

   Retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML file.

   For example, on Microsoft Windows:

   ```
   ---
   ps_config_home:         "C:/pt862_config"
   ```

4. Save the file.
5. Continue with the steps in Completing the Customized Deployment.

Task 4-5-4: Preparing the Customization File for the PS_CUST_HOME Location

Use the *PS_CUST_HOME* location for files such as COBOL and SQR that originate with your organization. The delivered YAML files do not include a *PS_CUST_HOME* location. The DPK setup script creates the *PS_CUST_HOME* if it does not exist.

Note. Setting a PS_CUST_HOME environment variable, which was used for non-DPK deployments, does not work.

1. If necessary, create a psft_customizations.yaml using a standard editing tool, such as Notepad on Microsoft

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Windows, and save it in the same location as the psft_configuration.yaml file.

If this is the first entry in the psft_customizations.yaml file, ensure that there are three dashes (`---`) on the first line of the file. Do not indent the dashes.

2. Add the following parameters in the psft_customizations.yaml file and modify the location value as needed.

Note. This applies only for *customized location for new installation* of PeopleSoft homes: Before you run the psft_puppet_apply.<ext> command, ensure the customized location given in the psft_customizations.yaml file does not contain any files or directories.

Retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML file.

For example, on Microsoft Windows:

```
---
ps_cust_home_location:        "C:/pscusthome"
ps_cust_home:
  location:   "C:/pscusthome"
```

3. Save the file.
4. Continue with the steps in Completing the Customized Deployment.

Task 4-6: Preparing the Customization File for Jolt SSL and WSL SSL Ports

You have the option to use the Secure Socket Layers/Transport Layer Security (SSL/TSL) protocol for Workstation Listener and Jolt Listener ports for the application server configuration. To use this protocol you must set up an Oracle wallet for the digital certificates.

See *PeopleTools: Security Administration,* "Installing Web Server-Based Digital Certificates."

Note. Review the requirements in Understanding PeopleSoft Environment Customizations before preparing the customization file.

1. Locate the psft_configuration.yaml file in *BASE_DIR*/dpk/puppet/production/data.

Note. The code examples in this topic are for illustrative purposes only. Remember to use the text from the YAML files you install with each new deployment as the basis for your psft_customizations.yaml file.

2. If necessary, create a psft_customizations.yaml using a standard editing tool such as Notepad and save it in the same location as the psft_configuration.yaml file.

   If this is the first entry in the psft_customizations.yaml file, ensure that there are three dashes (`---`) on the first line of the file. Do not indent the dashes.

3. Copy the entire `appserver_domain_list` section from psft_configuration.yaml to psft_customizations.yaml.

   When you copy, retain the indentation as given in the delivered YAML file.

4. Add the following parameters to the psft_customizations.yaml file:

Note. These parameters are not included in the delivered psft_configuration.yaml file.

- Specify the SSL/TSL port for the Jolt listener; for example 9012.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
JOLT Listener/SSL Port:                 9012
```

- Specify the SSL/TSL port for the Workstation listener, for example 7012:
  ```
  Workstation Listener/SSL Port:        7012
  ```
- Specify the location of the wallet containing the certificates:
  ```
  Oracle Wallet/SEC_PRINCIPAL_LOCATION: test/security
  ```
- Specify the wallet name, for example psft:
  ```
  Oracle Wallet/SEC_PRINCIPAL_NAME:     psft
  ```
- Specify the wallet password:
  ```
  Oracle Wallet/SEC_PRINCIPAL_PASSWORD:
  ```

5. Modify the psft_customizations.yaml file, including the added parameters from the previous step, with values for your environment.

Note. Be sure to retain the indentation shown in this example.

This sample psft_customizations.yaml file shows the parameters added from step 4 in bold font:

```
---

appserver_domain_list:
  "%{lookup('appserver_domain_name')}":
    os_user:         "%{lookup('domain_user')}"
    ps_cfg_home_dir: "%{lookup('ps_config_home')}"
    template_type:   "%{lookup('appserver_template')}"

    db_settings:
      db_name:        "%{lookup('db_name')}"
      db_type:        "%{lookup('db_platform')}"
      db_opr_id:      "%{lookup('db_user')}"
      db_opr_pwd:     "%{lookup('db_user_pwd')}"
      db_connect_id:  "%{lookup('db_connect_id')}"
      db_connect_pwd: "%{lookup('db_connect_pwd')}"

    config_settings:
      Domain Settings/Allow Dynamic Changes:    Y
      Domain Settings/Domain ID:            "%{lookup('appserver_domain_⇒
name')}"
      PSAPPSRV/Min Instances:               2
      PSAPPSRV/Max Instances:               2
      PSAPPSRV/Max Fetch Size:              15000
      Security/DomainConnectionPwd:         "%{lookup('domain_conn_⇒
pwd')}"
      JOLT Listener/Port:                   "%{lookup('jolt_port')}"
      JOLT Listener/Address:                 0.0.0.0
      JOLT Listener/SSL Port:                9012
      Workstation Listener/Port:            "%{lookup('wsl_port')}"
      Workstation Listener/SSL Port:        7012
```

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
  Oracle Wallet/SEC_PRINCIPAL_LOCATION: test/security

  Oracle Wallet/SEC_PRINCIPAL_NAME:     psft

  Oracle Wallet/SEC_PRINCIPAL_PASSWORD:


feature_settings:
  PUBSUB:         "Yes"
  QUICKSRV:       "No"
  QUERYSRV:       "No"
  JOLT:           "Yes"
  JRAD:           "No"
  WSL:            "Yes"
  DBGSRV:         "No"
  RENSRV:         "No"
  MCF:            "No"
  PPM:            "Yes"
  PSPPMSRV:       "Yes"
  ANALYTICSRV:    "No"
  SERVER_EVENTS:  "Yes"
  DOMAIN_GW:      "No"
```

6. Save the file.
7. Continue with the steps in Completing the Customized Deployment.

Task 4-7: Completing the Customized Deployment

Use these steps to complete the customized deployment of the PeopleSoft environment:

1. Run the DPK setup script as previously described.

   See "Deploying the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Deployment Packages."

2. Answer *n* (no) to the following prompt:

   ```
   Do you want to continue with the default initialization process? [y|n]: ⇒
   n
   ```

   The script stops, and displays instructions for completing the initialization. Leave the command window or terminal window open to refer to the instructions provided.

3. Prepare the psft_customizations.yaml file as previously described and save it in *BASE_DIR/*dpk/puppet/production/data.
4. As directed by the message displayed when the DPK setup script exited, enter the full path and script name, and wait until the deployment is complete.

   Note. You must run the script as instructed by the script message. Do not copy the psft_puppet_apply script into a different *BASE_DIR* to run.

   Since the script redirects the output to a log file, you cannot follow the progress on the command window or terminal window. The process is complete when the prompt returns.

   On Microsoft Windows:

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

BASE_DIR\psft_puppet_apply.cmd

The psft_puppet_apply.<*ext*> script performs these actions:

- Sets the required PATH, library path, and PYTHON path.
- Runs the `puppet apply` command to set up the PeopleSoft environment using the values in psft_customizations.yaml and the generated YAML files.

  As mentioned, the values in psft_customizations.yaml override those in the generated YAML files.
- Saves the log file as *BASE_DIR*/psft_dpk_setup_apply.log.

5. If you want to include the Puppet debug messages in the log file, run the script with the `–-debug` option.

   This option is useful for troubleshooting. Keep in mind that running with the `–-debug` option increases the log file size.

Note. You must run the script as instructed by the script message. Do not copy the psft_puppet_apply script into a different *BASE_DIR* to run.

Note that you can run the `puppet apply` command directly, but Oracle recommends that you use the script provided, which sets the required environment variables to specify the locations for the Puppet software and the YAML files. Oracle also recommends that you do not run `puppet apply –debug`.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 5

Setting Up the Install Workstation

This chapter discusses:

- Understanding the Install Workstation
- Prerequisites
- Starting Configuration Manager
- Setting Startup Options
- Editing the Default Profile
- Running Client Setup

Understanding the Install Workstation

This chapter describes how to set up a PeopleSoft Windows-based client for connecting to the database server in two-tier mode, specifically for the purpose of performing install-related tasks from the workstation. You must configure at least one two-tier Windows-based client for running Data Mover and SQR processes required for setting up the batch server and for creating the PeopleSoft database. For some installations you may wish to set up multiple install workstations, so that you can perform asynchronous tasks at the same time; for example, you could create and populate multiple databases simultaneously. You can quickly configure multiple workstations by exporting a configuration file from one workstation and importing it to another workstation.

See Also

PeopleTools: System and Server Administration

Prerequisites

The following tasks are prerequisites for setting up the install workstation:

- The workstation must have database connectivity software installed.
- You must have planned your database creation strategy. You should know the precise names of the databases that you intend to create.
- Make sure that you have created your connect strategy. You must use a Connect ID. You should know both the Connect ID and Connect password.

  For information on PeopleSoft Connect ID and Connect password, consult the *PeopleTools: System and Server Administration* product documentation for information on setting Application Server domain parameters.
- The workstation must have a logical drive mapped to *PS_HOME* on the file server (or, if the file server and

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

install workstation are one and the same, *PS_HOME* can be installed on a local drive).

- The person performing the installation must have read access to the *PS_HOME* directory.

If this is the same workstation on which the PeopleSoft PeopleTools installation was performed, it should have a PeopleTools 8.5 installation program group, which was created when you loaded the PeopleTools software. This isn't a requirement, but it does make it more convenient to run the PeopleTools install applications.

See Also

"Preparing for Installation"

Task 5-1: Starting Configuration Manager

Configuration Manager is a utility for configuring workstations being used as the PeopleTools Development Environment. These are its principal functions:

- Sets up and make changes to PeopleSoft configuration settings.
- Creates a program group containing Microsoft Windows shortcuts to PeopleSoft applications.
- Installs local DLLs.

The first time you run Configuration Manager on the client, it will populate certain fields with default values specified in a configuration file stored on the file server, specifically: *PS_HOME*\setup\pstools.cfg. This configuration file was set up when you ran the installation. Once you set up and run Configuration Manager, it will populate fields using values that are stored in the Windows system registry.

To start Configuration Manager, do one of the following:

- Locate PeopleTools 8.62, Configuration Manager in the list of programs, for example from the Start menu or the Apps screen.

  Note. See the documentation for your operating system for information on accessing the Apps screen. The PeopleTools program group will be available if you installed PeopleSoft PeopleTools on this workstation.

- If the *PeopleTools 8.62* program group was not installed on this workstation, run pscfg.exe directly from the *PS_HOME*\bin\client\winx86 directory on the file server.

Task 5-2: Setting Startup Options

The Startup tab of Configuration Manager sets the default options for the PeopleSoft sign-on screen that is used for connecting to a PeopleSoft database. It also contains a setting that specifies the local directory for storing cached PeopleSoft data.

To set Startup options:

1. Confirm that you are viewing the Configuration Manager Startup tab (this tab is what you see if you started Configuration Manager as described in the previous task).
2. Set the following options:
   - *Database type* **—** Verify the type of RDBMS. This should already be set to Microsoft SQL Server.
   - *Application Server Name* **—** This option appears if you select a database type of Application Server. It is where you enter your application server name if you are setting up a three-tier connection.

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- *Server Name* **—** The name of the MSS database server to connect to. This is used for setting up the ODBC connection later in this chapter.
- *Database name* **—** The name of the default database to connect to. Enter the name of one of the databases that you intend to create.
- *User ID* **—** The name of the default user that will appear in the sign-on screen. This can be any valid user name, although for installation setup it normally matches the name of one of the built-in PeopleSoft users (typically PS or VP1) that will be installed in the database.
- *Connect ID and Connect Password* **—** Type your connect ID and password into these fields.

Task 5-3: Editing the Default Profile

Begin by editing the default profile for the workstation. Among other things, this will verify that the paths to *PS_HOME* and its subdirectories are correctly set, which is required for subsequent tasks.

For more information on using Configuration Manager, see the *PeopleTools: System and Server Administration* product documentation for configuring user profiles.

To edit the default profile:

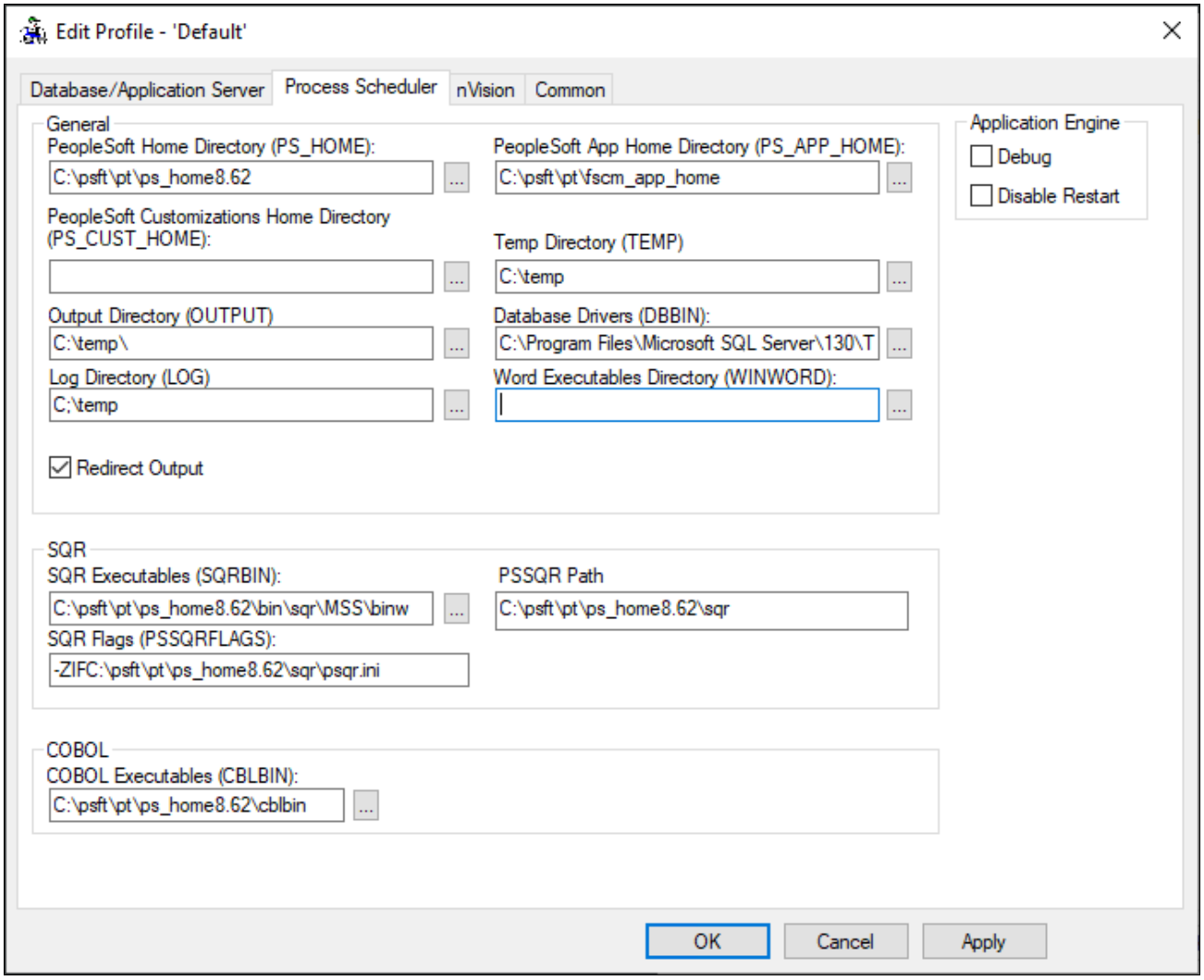
1. Select the Profile tab in Configuration Manager.

   Only one profile, the Default Profile, has been defined.
2. Select Edit to display the Edit Profile dialog box, and then select the Process Scheduler tab.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

3. In the Process Scheduler tab verify the options listed below the example.

   These should have been set correctly by the PeopleSoft installation program.



Edit Profile dialog box: Process Scheduler tab

- Verify that the PeopleSoft Home Directory (PS_HOME) field is set to the path to *PS_HOME* on the file server.
- Verify that the PeopleSoft Apps Home Directory (PS_APP_HOME) field is set to the path to *PS_APP_HOME* on the file server, C:\psft\pt\fscm_app_home in this example.

  Note. The installation using PeopleSoft DPKs requires that *PS_APP_HOME* and *PS_HOME* be different.

- Set the Database Drivers (DBBIN) field to the path for the database connectivity files, if necessary.

  The example shows the default for Microsoft SQL Server, C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\130\Tools\Binn.

  Note. The location of the connectivity software varies depending upon the version of SQL Server that you are using. The location may also vary depending on the options chosen during installation.

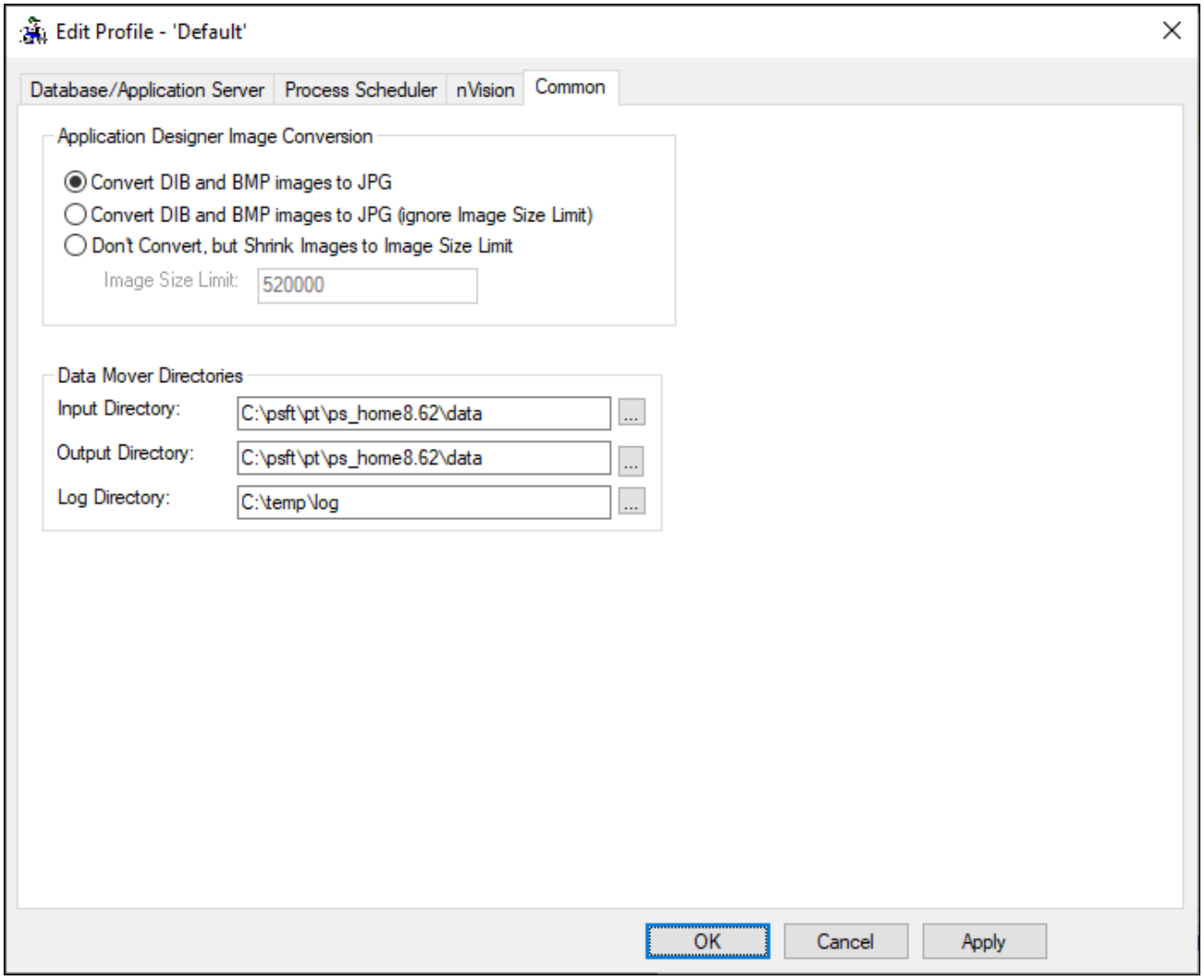
- Set the SQR Executables (SQRBIN) field to the file server directory where SQR for Windows was

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

installed when you ran the installation.

- Set the SQR Flags (PSSQRFLAGS) field to *-ZIF<PS_HOME>\sqr\pssqr.ini*.
- Set the SQR Report Search 1 (PSSQR1) field to *PS_HOME\sqr*. The remaining SQR Report Search fields can be left blank, because no additional SQR report directories have been created yet.

4. Select the Common tab of the Edit Profile dialog box, shown in this example:



Edit Profile dialog box: Common tab

The following fields on the Common tab are used to set Data Mover default input, output, and log directories.

- Verify that the Input Directory and Output Directory fields are set to *PS_HOME*\data. This directory will store the Data Mover scripts and .DAT files required to populate the PeopleSoft database.
- Set the Log Directory to a local workstation directory to store the Data Mover log files. The default is C:\TEMP.

  Data Mover will not create a new directory under *PS_APP_HOME* or *PS_HOME* for log files. If you want Data Mover to write log files into *PS_APP_HOME*, you must create a new directory named log under *PS_APP_HOME*.

5. Select OK to close the Edit Profile dialog box.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Task 5-4: Running Client Setup

The Client Setup tab does the following:

- Installs a PeopleSoft program group on the workstation.
- Installs system DLLs on the workstation.

These Client Setup functions are performed when you click OK or Apply from Configuration Manager only if the Install Workstation option on the Client Setup tab is selected.

Note. Any files installed by Client Setup on the workstation from the file server use the paths specified in the default profile.

To run Client Setup:

1. Select the Client Setup tab in Configuration Manager.
2. In the Group Title text box enter the name of the program group for the icons you want on the client workstation. (A program group name cannot contain any of the following characters: \ / : * ? " < > |)

   You can call the program group anything you want, but this documentation uses *PeopleTools 8.62*.
3. If you do not have a PeopleTools 8.62 program group set up on the workstation, be sure to check the following two options for installing shortcuts to applications essential for installation.

   Note. When you run Client Setup, it will uninstall any existing shortcuts in the PeopleTools 8.62 program group, and install shortcuts for the applications you have selected. If you subsequently want to install or uninstall shortcuts, you can always re-run Client Setup.

   - *Data Mover*
   - *Configuration Manager*
4. Select the option Install Workstation.

   This check box determines whether Client Setup runs when you click Apply or OK in Configuration Manager. If this option is not selected, Client Setup will create or update settings in the registry, but it will not set up the PeopleTools 8.62 program group or install local DLLs.
5. Click OK to run Client Setup and close Configuration Manager.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 6A

Creating a Database

This chapter discusses:

- Understanding the Database Configuration Wizard
- Fulfilling PeopleSoft Database Configuration Wizard Prerequisites
- Using the Database Configuration Wizard in Silent Mode
- Cleaning Up Orphaned Language Data
- Checking the Log Files and Troubleshooting

Understanding the Database Configuration Wizard

The Database Configuration Wizard is a tool designed to simplify your PeopleSoft database installation. When you run the Database Configuration Wizard, Data Mover is also running silently.

See *PeopleTools: Data Management.*

Important! Do not forget that application-specific installation steps are provided in a separate document specific to the application. For instance, if you are performing PeopleSoft CRM installation, you need both this PeopleSoft PeopleTools installation guide and you also need any additional instructions provided by CRM. My Oracle Support provides installation guides that are specific to your application.

See My Oracle Support, (search for "installation," the application name, and release).

You also have the option of using a manual process for creating a PeopleSoft database, instead of using the Database Configuration Wizard. The manual process is mandatory for some configurations.

See "Creating a Database Manually on Microsoft Windows."

After you complete the tasks in this chapter, read the chapter "Completing the Database Setup." Depending upon your environment, you may not need to carry out every task in that chapter. However it is important that you evaluate the requirements and perform the necessary tasks.

Task 6A-1: Fulfilling PeopleSoft Database Configuration Wizard Prerequisites

This section discusses:

- Installing the PeopleSoft Database Server Components on the Database Server
- Obtaining Windows Administrator Authority
- Setting Up the Collation

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Task 6A-1-1: Installing the PeopleSoft Database Server Components on the Database Server

To run the PeopleSoft Database Configuration Wizard, your setup *must* fulfill these requirements:

- You must have installed the PeopleSoft PeopleTools *(PS_HOME)* and the PeopleSoft application software *(PS_APP_HOME)* on your database server.
- You must have specified the FRESH installation type when running the DPK setup script, in order to install the required files in *PS_APP_HOME*.
- You must have the PeopleTools Development Environment set up to create your database.
- You must run the Database Configuration Wizard at the database server.

Note. The machine that you use to run the Database Configuration Wizard in Windows must be running in *256 color mode or higher.* This is not necessary for UNIX or console mode.

See the information on PeopleSoft Configuration Manager in the *PeopleTools: System and Server Administration* product documentation.

See Also

"Setting Up the Install Workstation"

Task 6A-1-2: Obtaining Windows Administrator Authority

To run the Database Configuration Wizard, you must be a Windows administrator of the target server. This is necessary because the Database Configuration Wizard will start and stop the SQLServer service and create or modify several directories.

Task 6A-1-3: Setting Up the Collation

The default collation for PeopleSoft databases is Latin1_General_Bin. If you want to use a collation other than Latin1_General_Bin, you will need to modify the createdb.sql script in the *PS_HOME*\scripts directory and replace Latin1_General_Bin with the desired collation before running the Database Configuration Wizard. The PeopleSoft software supports any sort that is case-, accent-, width-, and kana-sensitive.

If you modify the collation for the database you may also have to modify the sort order option in PeopleSoft PeopleTools after you configure PIA. A modification in the collation usually impacts the sort order of the database.

See "Setting Up the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture."

Some components of PeopleSoft PeopleTools cannot rely on the database to sort data and must do so in memory. The sort order option on the PeopleTools Options page enables you to select which sort order should be used by PeopleSoft PeopleTools when sorting data in memory.

You should set this option soon after you have completed the installation of the database and your PIA environment; choose the option that most closely approximates the sort order that you selected when creating the database.

To set the sort order:

1. Select PeopleTools, Utilities, Administration, PeopleTools Options.
2. Select an option from the Sort Order Option drop-down list box.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

3. Click Save.

Task 6A-2: Using the Database Configuration Wizard in Silent Mode

This section discusses:

- Understanding the Database Configuration Wizard
- Preparing the Response File
- Running the Silent Mode Database Creation

Understanding the Database Configuration Wizard

When you run the Database Configuration Wizard, Data Mover typically performs the following actions:

1. IMPORT *. Create all the PeopleTools and application tables with their indexes.
2. ENCRYPT_PASSWORD * Encrypt security information for the database.
3. CREATE_TRIGGER * Create application-required triggers.
4. REPLACE_VIEW * Create PeopleSoft views.
5. CREATE_TEMP_TABLE * Create PeopleSoft temporary tables.

If Data Mover fails at any of the above steps, it will complete the rest of the steps but will not start the next step—instead the Database Configuration Wizard aborts and tells the user what file to review for the detailed error message. If Data Mover fails at step 1 or 2, it is fatal. If Data Mover fails at step 3 or 4, it is not necessarily fatal. You may continue the next step(s) manually.

To complete the database creation procedure you must supply information on various authorization IDs and passwords, including Access ID, Connect ID, Symbolic ID, and User IDs. Before beginning this procedure, review the information in the section Planning Database Creation and make a note of the authorization information for your environment. For the current release, the user profiles in PeopleTools demo databases are delivered disabled. During the database configuration procedure you will choose whether to enable the delivered user profiles, and how to assign passwords for the profiles. In addition, you will supply several passwords that were previously provided as defaults. Be sure to note the passwords that you supply, as they will be needed for subsequent installation procedures. See the information on user profiles in the *PeopleTools: Security Administration* product documentation.

Task 6A-2-1: Preparing the Response File

In the current release, the Database Configuration Wizard is run in silent mode. In silent mode, you provide the required information in a response text files and run the script without further interaction. After installation, you can find a sample response file, mss_resp_file.txt, in *PS_HOME/*setup/PsMpDbInstall.

The response file is organized with basic and RDBMS-specific sections, with explanations for many entries. Copy the file and modify the values for your environment. Save the file in a location referred to in this section as *<path_to_response_file>*. To exclude a line of text in the file, enter a pound sign (#) at the beginning of the line.

1. Specify the location for the PeopleSoft application software, *PS_APP_HOME*.

   Note that the DPK installation requires that the *PS_APP_HOME* location, where the PeopleSoft application is installed, is different than the *PS_HOME* location where the PeopleSoft PeopleTools software is installed. The *PS_HOME* location cannot be changed in the Database Configuration Wizard response file.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
##################################################################

                          BASIC Inputs

##################################################################

#The following inputs are required in the response file for silent
#installation.
#PS_HOME=Installation location.
#Do not change anything. It will be determined automatically by the
#installer.
PS_APP_HOME=C:/fscm_app_home
```

2. To create a Microsoft SQL Server database, choose DB_SERVER_TYPE=MSS, and leave the comment characters in front of the other selections.

   ```
   DB_SERVER_TYPE=MSS
   ```

3. Specify whether you want to create a Demo or System database for DB_TYPE.

   ```
   # DB_TYPE=DMO/SYS
   # This specifies the type of database you want to create.
   # Specify DMO for Demo Database or SYS for System Database.
   #
   CREATE_DB_TYPE=DMO
   ```

4. To create a Unicode database, specify 1 (one) for the UNICODE parameter, or 0 (zero) for non-Unicode.

   Oracle recommends Unicode, but also supports non-Unicode (legacy) code sets, in PeopleSoft databases. Use the values listed previously to specify the character set for DB_CHARSET_CODE and description for DB_CHAR_DES.

   See "Preparing for Installation," Planning Multilingual Strategy for information on allowed character sets.

   For example, for a Unicode database:

   ```
   #UNICODE=0
   # This value is determined in unicode.cfg.
   # Specify the value here to override that setting.
   #
   UNICODE=1
   DB_CHARSET_CODE=Latin1_General_BIN
   DB_CHAR_DES=Latin1_General_BIN
   ```

   For non-Unicode:

   ```
   #UNICODE=0
   # This value is determined in unicode.cfg.
   # Specify the value here to override that setting.
   #
   UNICODE=0
   DB_CHARSET_CODE=Latin1_General_BIN
   DB_CHAR_DES=Latin1_General_BIN
   ```

5. The base language selection (BASE_LANGUAGE) is used to determine what primary base language you want to run the PeopleSoft application on.

   If you choose a language other than English, the base language will be swapped during the database creation script. See "Preparing for Installation," Planning Multilingual Strategy. This step applies only if your users

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

will be operating PeopleSoft applications primarily in one particular language other than English. This step gives a performance boost to the language you designate as the base language, but would require more administrative overhead than leaving English as the base language does. See *PeopleTools: Global Technology*.

```
BASE_LANGUAGE=ENG
#APP_LANGUAGE = UKE
```

6. Specify a name for the database.

   ```
   DB_DB_NAME=FSDMO
   ```

7. Specify the user name for the Connect ID, and the Connect ID password.

   Ensure that the Connect ID contains only alphanumeric characters and is eight characters or less. Ensure that the password for the Connect ID meets the length and complexity requirements for your database platform.

   ```
   PS_CONNECT_ID=people
   PS_CONN_PWD=password
   PS_CONN_PWD_RETYPE=password
   ```

8. Specify the PeopleSoft user ID (operator ID) and password.

   Ensure that the password is between 1 and 32 characters in length.

   ```
   PS_APP_USER=PS
   PS_APP_PWD=password
   PS_APP_PWD_RETYPE=password
   ```

9. Specify the user ID and password for the PTWEBSERVER profile.

   The default Web server user is PTWEBSERVER. The Web Server user ID, also referred to in this documentation as Web Profile User ID, is used to access the web profile information from the database through the Application Server Jolt service.

   Ensure that the password is between 8 and 32 characters in length.

   ```
   PS_WEB_USER=PTWEBSERVER
   PS_WEB_PWD=<password>
   PS_WEB_PWD_RETYPE=<password>
   ```

10. Set the parameter ENABLE_USERPROFILE to 1 (one) to leave the User profiles (other than the Application Server User Profile and Web server User profiles) unchanged. Set this option to 0 (zero) to disable all the User profiles in the database except the Application Server User Profile and Web server User profiles.

    ```
    ENABLE_USERPROFILE=1
    ```

11. Specify how to set the user passwords.

    - Set the parameter SET_GLOBAL_PWD to 0 (zero) to specify a password that is the same as the User ID (for example, VP1/VP1). For example:

      ```
      SET_GLOBAL_PWD=0
      #PS_GLOBAL_PWD=
      ```

    - Set the parameter SET_GLOBAL_PWD to 1 (one) to set a common global password for all the User profiles in the database.

      If you set the SET_GLOBAL_PWD option to 1, remove the comment (#) character in front of the parameter PS_GLOBAL_PWD, and specify the password to be used for all user profiles. For example:

      ```
      SET_GLOBAL_PWD=1
      PS_GLOBAL_PWD=password
      ```

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

12. Specify the path to the connectivity software.

    The location of the connectivity software varies depending upon the version of SQL Server that you are using. The location may also vary depending on the options chosen during installation.

    For Microsoft SQL Server 2022, the default path is C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\Client SDK\ODBC\170\Tools\Binn.

```
#################################################################

                          MSS Inputs

#################################################################

DIR_QUERY_TOOLS=C:/Program Files/Microsoft SQL Server/Client SDK/ODBC⇒
/170/Tools/Binn
```

13. Specify the SQL Server name (default or named instance) of the server you are using to install the application.

    This is the server that will host your database. You can use the name of a default instance or a named instance. Default instances only require the name of the SQL Server server. A named instance entry requires more details. Here is an example of a named instance entry: SERVER1\SQL2022, where "SERVER1" is the name of the SQL Server server and "SQL2022" is the named instance name.

```
DB_SERVER_NAME=SERVER1\SQL2022
```

14. Specify the PeopleSoft database name.

    The name must be uppercase and can have no more than eight characters.

    See "Preparing for Installation," Planning Database Creation.

```
DB_DATA_NAME=FSDMO
```

15. Choose whether to configure a server and create a database (DB_CONFIG_SRVR=1), or create a database on an existing server (DB_CONFIG_SRVR=0).

    If this is your first time installing the application, select configure a server and create database. Otherwise, choose create a database on existing server.

```
DB_CONFIG_SRVR=0
```

16. Specify the full path and file name for the Microsoft SQL Server Data file name.

```
DB_DATA_FL_NME=C:/PS_HOME/FSDMO_data.mdf
```

17. Specify the Microsoft SQL Server Data File Size, the initial physical size in megabytes of the file that will host your database data.

```
DB_DATA_SZE=3000
```

18. Specify the logical name of the log device, a name that identifies the physical device that allocates your database log.

```
DB_LOG_NME=FSDMOlog
```

19. Specify the full path and file name for the Microsoft SQL server log file.

```
LOG_FLE_NME=C:/PS_HOME/FSDMO_log.ldf
```

20. Specify the log file size, the initial amount of space in megabytes assigned to your database log.

```
DB_LOG_SZE=700
```


Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

21. Specify the PeopleSoft Symbolic ID.

    Accept the default value provided or use the same value as the ACCESSID. This value will be used internally by your PeopleSoft application; for example, sa.

    ```
    STRSYMBOLICID=sa
    ```

22. Specify ADMIN_USER.

    The Database Configuration Wizard will use this server user to create the PeopleSoft database and all of its objects, and assign the access permissions to the ACCESSID and the CONNECTID. This user should have permissions to create databases and grant permissions to the objects created at the PeopleSoft database. This user could be used as a database administrator user which has the ability to back up and restore the database when necessary and also to perform other administrative tasks. This user is not the ACCESSID and will not be used by the applications to access the database.

    ```
    ADMIN_USER=sa
    ```

23. Specify the password for the Admin User ID two times.

    The password is necessary to be able to log in to the server and run the database installation during the installation process.

    ```
    ADMIN_PASS=password
    ADMIN_PASS_RETYPE=password
    ```

24. Specify the PeopleSoft ACCESSID and its password.

    This is the PeopleSoft ACCESSID defined in the task "Planning Database Creation." You use it when signing on to Data Mover in "bootstrap mode." The ACCESSID value is case sensitive, and you must limit it to eight characters or less.

    See "Preparing for Installation," Planning Database Creation.

    See "Preparing for Installation," Defining Microsoft SQL Server and PeopleSoft Databases, for ACCESSID password requirements.

    ```
    ACCESS_ID=satst
    ACCESS_PWD=password
    ACCESS_PWD_RETYPE=password
    ```

Task 6A-2-2: Running the Silent Mode Database Creation

Use the response file that you modified for your configuration. Substitute the location where you saved the response file for <path_to_response_file> in the following procedure.

On Microsoft Windows:

1. In a command prompt, go to *PS_HOME*\setup\PsMpDbInstall.
2. Run the following command, using forward slashes (/) to specify the path:

   ```
   setup.bat -f <path_to_response_file>
   ```

   For example:

   ```
   setup.bat -f D:/psftinstall/mss_resp_file.txt
   ```

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Task 6A-3: Cleaning Up Orphaned Language Data

Perform this task if you are a Multilingual customer and are installing non-English languages. This task assumes that you have loaded the necessary language files. If you have not yet loaded the language files, follow the instructions in the Global Technology product documentation.

See *PeopleTools: Global Technology,* "Adding Oracle-Provided Translations."

The Application Engine program PTIACLNLNGCA removes any orphaned related language objects that do not have a matching base language object.

Run the PTIACLNLNGCA application engine program. From the command line utility, the syntax is:

```
<PS_HOME>\bin\client\winx86\psae -CD <dbname> -CT MICROSFT -CO <oprid> -CP⇒
 <password> -R <run_control> -AI PTIACLNLNGCA -FP <log_path>
```

Use the values for the database name and user ID that you entered on the startup tab of the Configuration Manager for <dbname> and <oprid> respectively. However, be aware that <password> is not the same as the connect password you entered on the Configuration Manager startup tab. Enter a value for <password> that is the password associated with the <oprid>. For <log_path>, specify the path where you want the log file for the application engine program to be generated, such as C:\temp\.

Task 6A-4: Checking the Log Files and Troubleshooting

This section discusses:

- Checking the Log Files
- Running Data Mover
- Troubleshooting
- Improving Performance

Task 6A-4-1: Checking the Log Files

After the Database Configuration Wizard finishes its execution, look for all log output in the *PS_HOME*/log directory. Open all the log files. There is a log file for each of the steps that the Database Configuration Wizard carries out—importing, encrypting passwords, creating triggers, replacing views, and creating temp tables. *None should contain error messages.*

Task 6A-4-2: Running Data Mover

If the Database Configuration Wizard does not complete successfully, you must run Data Mover manually, using one of the following methods.

Microsoft Windows

- Depending upon your Microsoft Windows operating system, select PeopleTools 8.62, Data Mover from the Start, Programs list or the Apps screen to run a graphical user interface (GUI mode).
- Run *PS_HOME*\bin\client\winx86\psdmt.exe from the command line.

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

If you use the access ID that you specified during the database configuration to log on, you log on in "bootstrap mode." When you start Data Mover in bootstrap mode, the word "BootStrap" appears in the Data Mover status bar.

If you use a valid PeopleSoft Operator ID, such as PS for Human Capital Management or VP1 for Financials/Supply Chain Management, you log on in "user mode." In this mode, no designation appears in the Data Mover status bar.

See Also

PeopleTools: Data Management

Task 6A-4-3: Troubleshooting

If the Database Configuration Wizard did not complete successfully, read this troubleshooting information. If your script has stopped midway (this can happen for a number of reasons) you need to edit the Data Mover script generated automatically by the Database Configuration Wizard and restart Data Mover manually. The Data Mover script files have the extension .dms and are sometimes referred to as "DMS scripts."

The generated Data Mover import script is saved in the *PS_APP_HOME*/scripts directory. The script conforms to the following naming convention:

<dbname>mss.dms

To edit and restart the DMS script:

1. Determine the record that was being imported (that is, which IMPORT command was running) when the script stopped, and use the following guidelines to edit and rerun the DMS scripts.

   When building a DMO database or a multilingual database, adding the SET START statement can be tricky because the Data Mover script used to load the database will include more than one IMPORT statement. The key is to view the log files and determine which IMPORT section of the script Data Mover failed on.

   - If the failure occurred during the first IMPORT statement, add the SET START statement before the first IMPORT *; statement.
   - If the failure occurred during a subsequent IMPORT statement, comment out all statements preceding the IMPORT *; statement where the failure occurred and add the SET START statement before the IMPORT *; statement of the section in which the failure occurred.
   - *This is very important:* If you see any "unique index constraint" error messages in the "Building required indexes" section, your IMPORT script failed during a subsequent IMPORT but the SET START statement was added to the first IMPORT. In this situation, you can run the Data Mover script in its originally generated form, with only one modification. In the first IMPORT section, change the statement "IMPORT *;" to "REPLACE_DATA *;". This will delete all the data in the tables, and re-import it. This process will take some time to run, and you will need to separately create each of the indexes that failed.
2. Run Data Mover as previously described.

   See Running Data Mover.

   The PeopleSoft Logon dialog box appears.
3. Log on using the ACCESSID to start Data Mover in *bootstrap mode.*

   The input window should display the DMS import script for the database. The script has the format <dbname>mss.dms.
4. If necessary, select File, Open, and browse to the *PS_APP_HOME*/scripts directory to find the appropriate DMS script.
5. Add the following line before the offending IMPORT command (the one being executed when the failure

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

occurred):

```
SET START <RECORD NAME>;
```

<RECORD NAME> is the name of the record that failed. Make sure to review the Data Mover log file to see where the script failed and locate the last record that imported successfully. The SET START command will begin the Data Mover import at the specified record name.

Note. It is a good idea to change the name of the log file in the script before each attempt at running it. This ensures that you have a separate log file for each attempt, if you run the import more than once.

For example, if the script stops and the table is partially inserted with a message similar to this one:

```
Importing  PSPNLFIELD
Rows inserted into PSPNLFIELD

3000
```

First drop the partially inserted table (for example, record) by using the DROP TABLE command, and then restart Data Mover at the record that failed using the SET START command and continue the Data Mover import. This can be done in a single pass.

Add the following lines before the offending IMPORT *; command (the one being executed when the failure occurred):

```
SET START <RECORD NAME>;
DROP TABLE <RECORD NAME>;
```

For <RECORD NAME>, specify the name of the record that failed. The SET START statement will begin the Data Mover import at the specified <RECORD NAME>.

Example of the original script:

```
REM - PeopleSoft Database - US English
/
SET LOG epengs.log;
SET INPUT epengs.db;
SET COMMIT 30000;
SET NO VIEW;
SET NO SPACE;
SET NO TRACE;
SET UNICODE ON;
IMPORT *;
```

Example of script after modification, with changes in bold font:

```
REM - PeopleSoft Database - US English
/
SET LOG epengs2.log;
SET INPUT epengs.db;
SET COMMIT 30000;
SET NO VIEW;
SET NO SPACE;
SET NO TRACE;
SET UNICODE ON;
SET START PSPNLFIELD;
DROP TABLE PSPNLFIELD;
IMPORT *;
```

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

For the DROP statement, for records with a recname without a leading PS, add PS_ to the beginning of the recname; otherwise the table will not be found. For example, PS_<RECNAME>.

6. Restart the script (File, Run Script).

Task 6A-4-4: Improving Performance

The following tips can help you save time when running the Data Mover scripts:

- Run Data Mover on the database server.
- Run only a single instance of Data Mover, and do not have any other applications running during the import.
- In the PeopleSoft Configuration Manager, turn off all trace options.

  Tracing during a DMS load will add considerable time to the process.
- Run Data Mover on the database server with the .db or .dat file located locally.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 6B

Creating a Database Manually

This chapter discusses:

- Understanding Database Creation
- Preparing for Manual Database Creation
- Configuring an ODBC Data Source
- Running ADDOBJ.SQL
- Setting Up the CONNECTID
- Creating the ACCESSID
- Creating Data Mover Import Scripts
- Running Data Mover Import Scripts
- Cleaning Up Orphaned Language Data
- Checking the Log Files and Troubleshooting
- Changing the Base Language

Understanding Database Creation

This section describes the tasks required to create a PeopleSoft product database. During a standard PeopleSoft installation you will execute these tasks to create two distinct types of databases.

- *System:* The System (SYS) database has no company specific data, and can be used to load your data and begin development of your production database.
- *Demo:* The Demo (DMO) database contains data for a sample company, and can be used immediately for demonstration, for testing, and as a development reference.

Note. The PeopleTools System Database (PTSYS) is not available with the current release. As an alternative, install the latest PeopleSoft Interaction Hub database.

The requirements for these databases vary, so not all of this section's tasks apply to each database. The instructions will note any distinctions between creating a Demo and a System database.

- You must have installed the Database component of your PeopleSoft application installation software to your database server.
- You must have the PeopleTools Development Environment set up to create your database.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Important! Do not forget that application-specific installation steps are provided in a separate document specific to the application. For instance, if you are performing PeopleSoft CRM installation, you need both this documentation for the basic installation of PeopleSoft PeopleTools and the PeopleSoft application, and any additional instructions provided by CRM. Search in My Oracle Support for the installation documentation specific to your application.

After you complete the tasks in this chapter, read the chapter "Completing the Database Setup." Depending upon your environment, you may not need to carry out every task in that chapter. However it is important that you evaluate the requirements and perform the necessary tasks.

See Also

"Preparing for Installation," Planning Database Creation

"Setting Up the Install Workstation"

Task 6B-1: Preparing for Manual Database Creation

This section discusses:

- Using createdb.sql to Create a Database
- Setting Collation and Sort Order
- Setting Database Options
- Setting Maximum File Size

Task 6B-1-1: Using createdb.sql to Create a Database

You can use Microsoft's SQL Enterprise Manager or the delivered SQL script, *PS_HOME*\scripts\createdb.sql, to create your database. If you decide to use SQL Enterprise Manager to create your database you still need to review the script provided by Oracle to create the database to make sure all the necessary options are selected. See the Microsoft documentation for information on installing and using SQL Enterprise Manager.

Regardless of the method you use, keep the following in mind:

- The name of the database must be in UPPERCASE, must not exceed eight characters, and must not start with a number.
- For performance reasons, we recommend placing the database data files and log files on separate physical drives and using separate disk controllers.
- If you are creating the database remotely, confirm that you have installed ODBC for connectivity on the workstation.
- You will need a user with DB creation permissions to create your PeopleSoft database. This is a major difference from previous PeopleSoft PeopleTools releases, because this user will not be your ACCESSID anymore.
- You will need to create an ACCESSID user. Oracle provides the necessary scripts for this purpose as explained later in this chapter.
- Your ACCESSID must be eight characters or less.
- For the ACCESSID password requirements, see "Preparing for Installation," Defining Microsoft SQL Server and PeopleSoft Databases.

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Please carefully review the createdb.sql script before running it. The script includes instructions, as well as several default statements that you can customize for your environment. The following sections discuss how to use the script.

Task 6B-1-2: Setting Collation and Sort Order

The createdb.sql script will create your database with the following collation:

```
COLLATE Latin1_General_BIN
```

The default collation for PeopleSoft databases is Latin1_General_BIN. If you want to use a collation other than Latin1_General_BIN, you will need to modify createdb.sql in the *PS_HOME*\scripts directory and replace Latin1_General_BIN with the desired collation before running the script. For further information on selecting a collation refer to the first chapter in this guide.

See "Preparing for Installation."

If you modify the collation for the database you may also have to modify the option in PeopleSoft PeopleTools that controls the sort order after you set up the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture (PIA), normally as part of the mid-tier deployment. A modification in the collation usually impacts the sort order of the database.

See "Deploying Mid-Tier Components."

See "Setting Up the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture."

You can set the appropriate sort order after setting up PIA. Some components of PeopleSoft PeopleTools cannot rely on the database to sort data and must do so in memory. The sort order option on the PeopleTools Options page enables you to select which sort order should be used by PeopleSoft PeopleTools when sorting data in memory.

See the information on sort order in the *PeopleTools: Global Technology* product documentation.

You should set this option soon after you have completed the installation of the database and your PIA environment. Choose the option that most closely approximates the sort order that you selected when creating the database.

1. Select PeopleTools, Utilities, Administration, PeopleTools Options.
2. Select an option from the Sort Order Option drop-down list box.
3. Click Save.

Task 6B-1-3: Setting Database Options

The createdb.sql script will turn on several database options with the following commands:

```
ALTER DATABASE <DBNAME>
SET ARITHABORT ON
go
ALTER DATABASE <DBNAME>
SET QUOTED_IDENTIFIER ON
go
```

In this command, <*DBNAME*> is your database name. The option QUOTED_IDENTIFIER can be changed at the connection properties section under the ODBC Administrator and as an option in SQL Server Management Studio. Make sure this option is enabled for any client connecting to your PeopleSoft database that will execute SQL.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Note. If you create your database through the Enterprise Manager be sure to turn ON both options in this section manually. You may run the previous commands through SQL Server Management Studio after creating the database.

See "Preparing for Installation," Installing Client Connectivity.

Task 6B-1-4: Setting Maximum File Size

Set the maximum file size for data files and transaction log to unrestricted file growth. Once your data is imported, file growth can be restricted as needed.

If you are using the createdb.sql script you can change the growth option for your database device files by modifying the portion of the script similar to that below. Remove the comment characters ("- -") and edit the statements to fit your environment:

```
-- ALTER DATABASE <DBNAME> MODIFY FILE (NAME = <DATANAME>, MAXSIZE =⇒
 UNLIMITED)
-- go

-- ALTER DATABASE <DBNAME> MODIFY FILE (NAME = <LOGDATANAME>, MAXSIZE =⇒
 UNLIMITED)
-- go
```

If you are using Enterprise Manager to create a PeopleSoft database, specify unrestricted file growth, but do not turn on any special options—unless you are using *Truncate Log on Checkpoint* for data import. You will set some database options by running the script ADDOBJ.SQL in a subsequent task.

Task 6B-2: Configuring an ODBC Data Source

This section discusses:

- Understanding the ODBC Connectivity Drivers
- Understanding ODBC Driver 17 and ODBC Driver 18 Settings
- Configuring an ODBC Data Source with the ODBC Data Source Administrator

Understanding the ODBC Connectivity Drivers

Now that you have established your database name and location, you can set up an ODBC data source on the database client.

To run on a 64-bit machine, confirm that you are using the correct connectivity drivers. PeopleSoft PeopleTools client and server executables are 64-bit. If you are running on a 64-bit operating system you need only the 64-bit connectivity drivers for PeopleSoft PeopleTools.

The 64-bit odbcad32.exe is found in C:\windows\system32. This is the correct version for 64-bit PeopleSoft PeopleTools clients and servers such as Application Server, Process Scheduler, Application Designer (pside.exe) and Data Mover (psdmt.exe). You need to create the ODBC Data Source under System DSN for 64-bit applications only.

When you run odbcad32 on a 64-bit Microsoft Windows machine (for example, select Start, Programs, Control Panel), the 64-bit version of odbcad32.exe (C:\windows\system32) is used by default.

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Note. You will need to configure a separate ODBC data source for each additional database that you create.

Understanding ODBC Driver 17 and ODBC Driver 18 Settings

Use these guidelines to use ODBC Driver 17 and ODBC Driver 18 with the current PeopleTools release.

- In ODBC Driver 17, connection encryption is not enabled by default, as indicated by the parameter setting Encrypt = No/optional
- In ODBC Driver 18, connection encryption is enabled by default, as indicated by the parameter setting Encrypt = Yes/mandatory
- When you install a Microsoft SQL Server database using Database Configuration Wizard, PeopleTools configures either ODBC Driver 17 or ODBC Driver 18 to Encrypt = No/optional.
- When you install a Microsoft SQL Server database manually, the Microsoft SQL Server default setting, Encrypt = Yes/mandatory, is in place.

  To successfully connect to the Microsoft SQL Server PeopleSoft database, you must change the setting to No/optional. Follow the steps in Method 1.
- If you set up a PeopleTools client on a separate server, the Microsoft SQL Server default setting, Encrypt = Yes/mandatory, is in place.

  To successfully connect to the Microsoft SQL Server PeopleSoft database, you must change the setting to No/optional. Follow the steps in Method 1.
- If you have an existing Microsoft SQL Server database that was set up with ODBC Driver 17, and then decide to go to ODBC Driver 18, you must change the setting to No/optional.

  Follow the steps in Method 1.

Method 1: Set Encrypt = No/optional when configuring ODBC 18 for SQL Server by performing the following steps.

1. Start ODBC and select the System DNS tab.
2. Click Add.
3. Select the ODBC Driver 18 version, such as ODBC Driver for SQL Server 2018.185.01.01.
4. Click Finish.
5. Enter the database name and server name and click Next.
6. Select the desired SQL Server authenticity login option.

   For example, select "With SQL Server authentication using a login ID and password entered by the user."
7. Click Next.
8. Skip setting the default database by clicking Next to advance to the next configuration page.
9. Locate the parameter "Connection Encryption" and select "Optional" from the drop-down list.
10. Click the Back button.
11. Select the "Change the default database to:" check box.
12. Select the database from the drop-down list.
13. Click Next.
14. Click Finish.
15. Click Test Data Source, and ensure that it returns "TESTS COMPLETED SUCCESSFULLY".
16. Click OK two times to finish creating the ODBC definition.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

If you want to use ODBC Driver 18 to connect to a PeopleSoft database with the Encrypt = Yes/mandatory setting, change the Connection Encryption parameter to Mandatory. See the Microsoft ODBC Driver documentation for additional information.

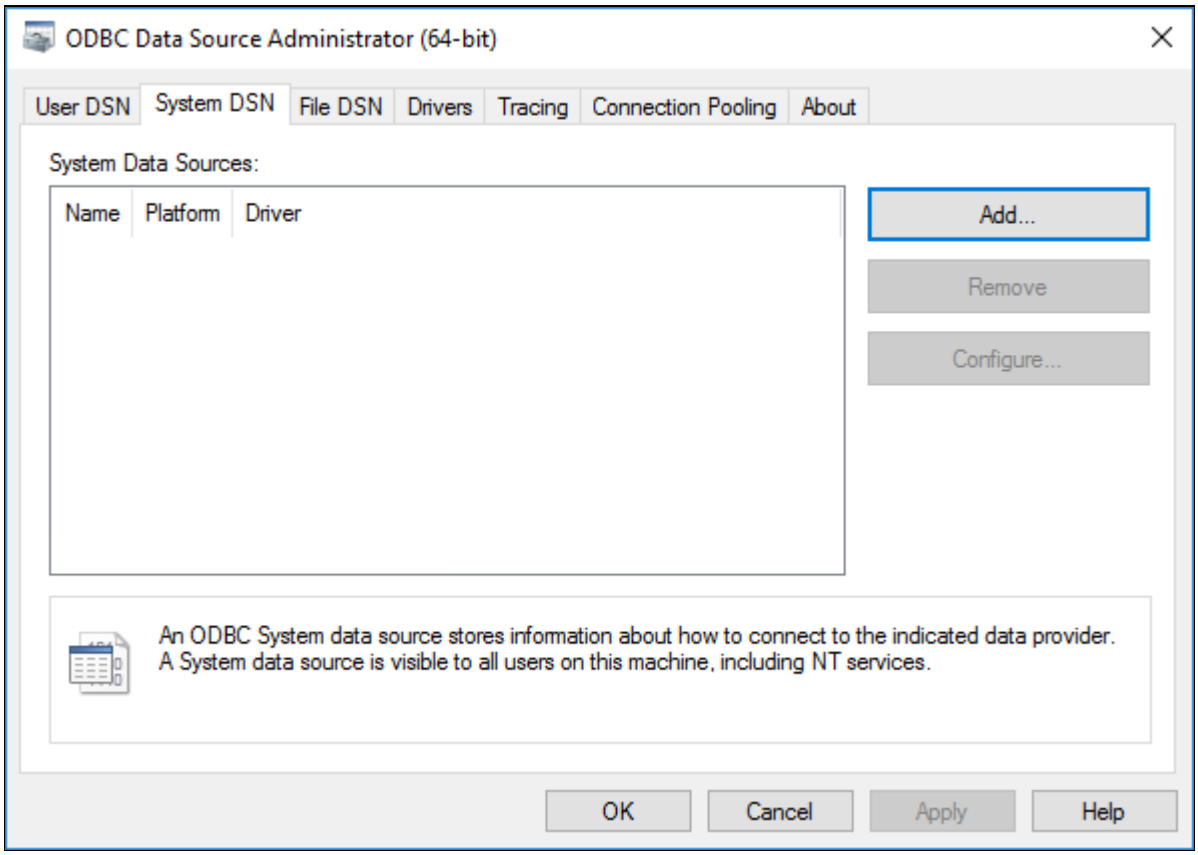
Task 6B-2-1: Configuring an ODBC Data Source with the ODBC Data Source Administrator

To configure an ODBC data source using the ODBC Data Source Administrator:

1. Start the ODBC Data Source Administrator (64-bit).

   For example, open the Control Panel, and select Administrative Tools, ODBC Data Sources (64-bit). Alternatively, double-click C:\windows\system32\odbcad32.exe.

2. Select the System DSN tab, and then click Add.



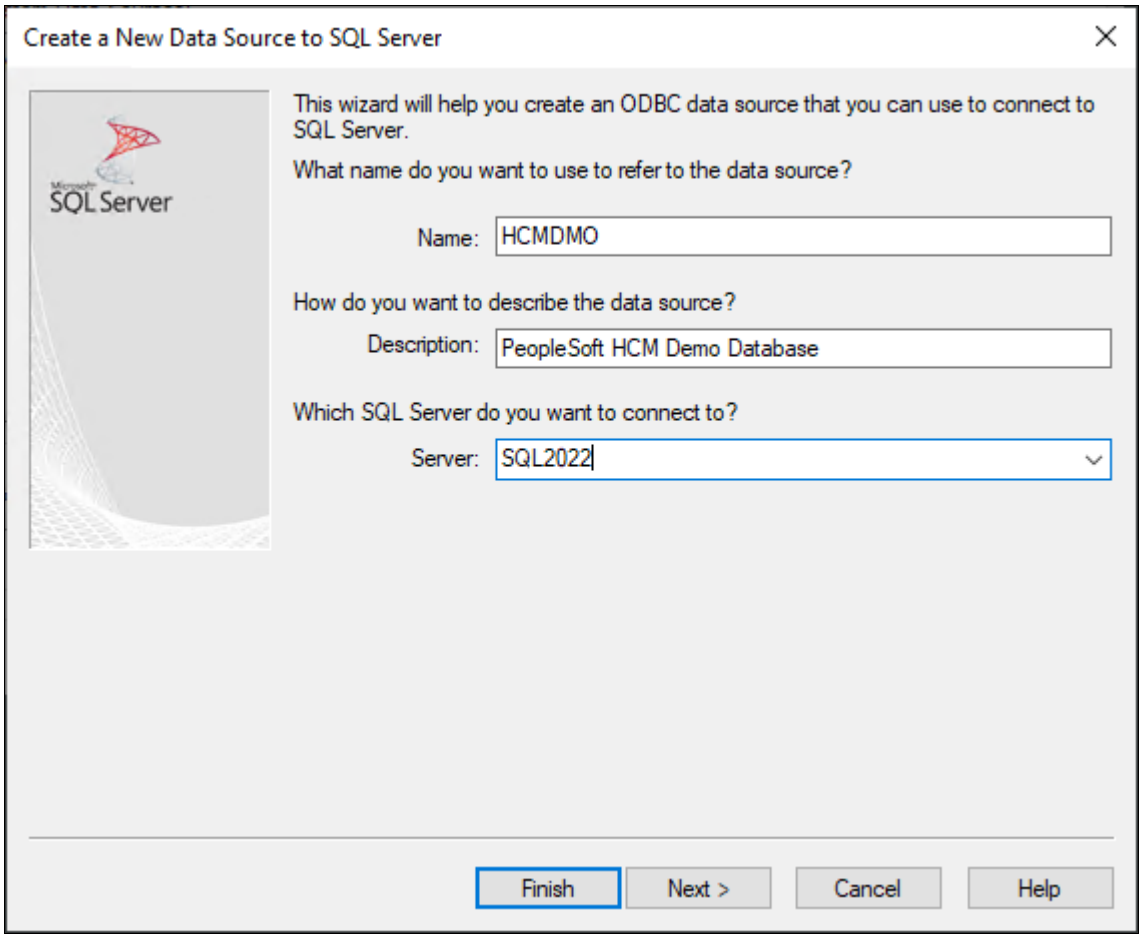
ODBC Data Source Administrator window: System DSN page

3. Select the ODBC Driver for your Microsoft SQL Server installation.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

4. In the Create a New Data Source to SQL Server dialog box, enter the database name in the Name text box and the server name in the Server text box.

   For PeopleSoft, the data source name must be the same as the database name. You must enter the data source name in uppercase. Filling in the Description text box is optional. Click Next.

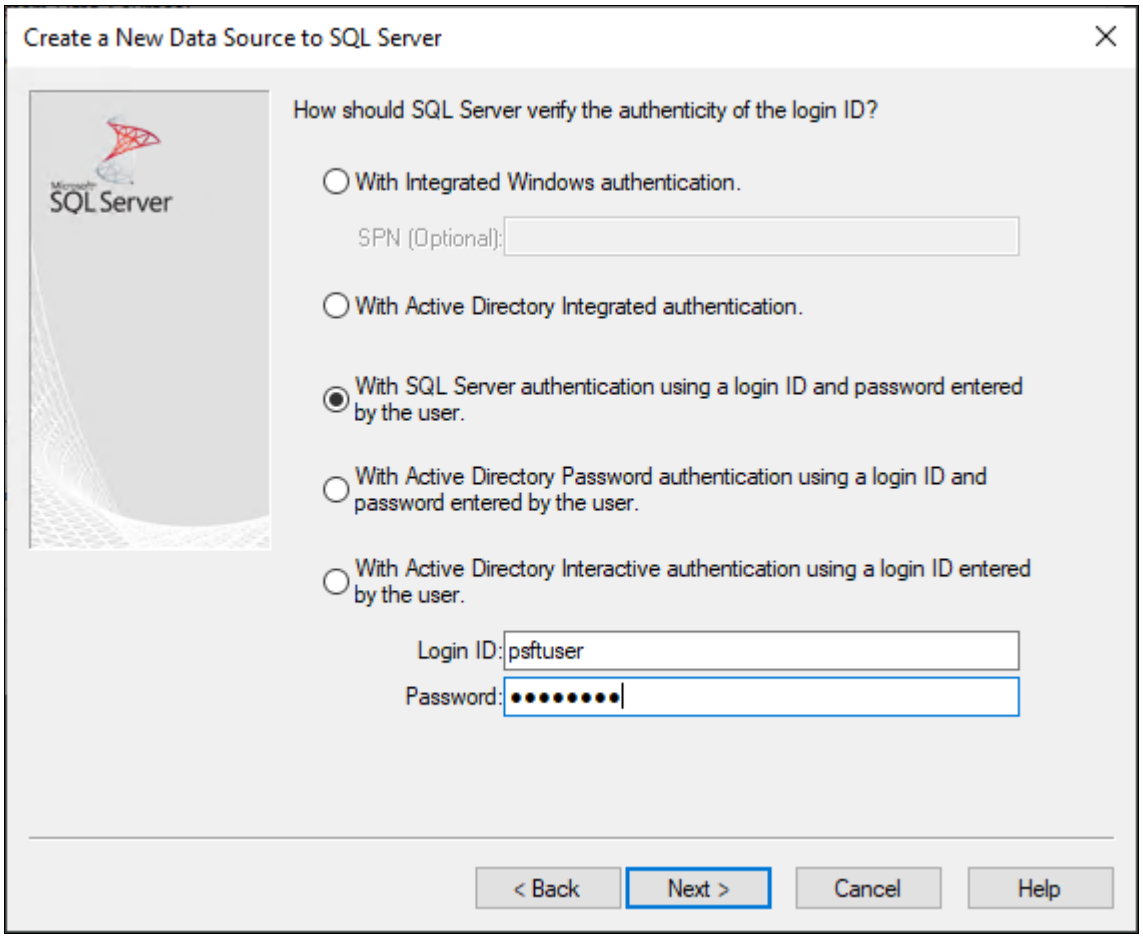


Create a New Data Source to SQL Server window

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

5. Select the option "With SQL Server authentication using a login ID and password entered by the user."

   Enter the login ID and password. Click Next. For information on using different Client Configuration options consult the *PeopleTools: Data Management* product documentation.

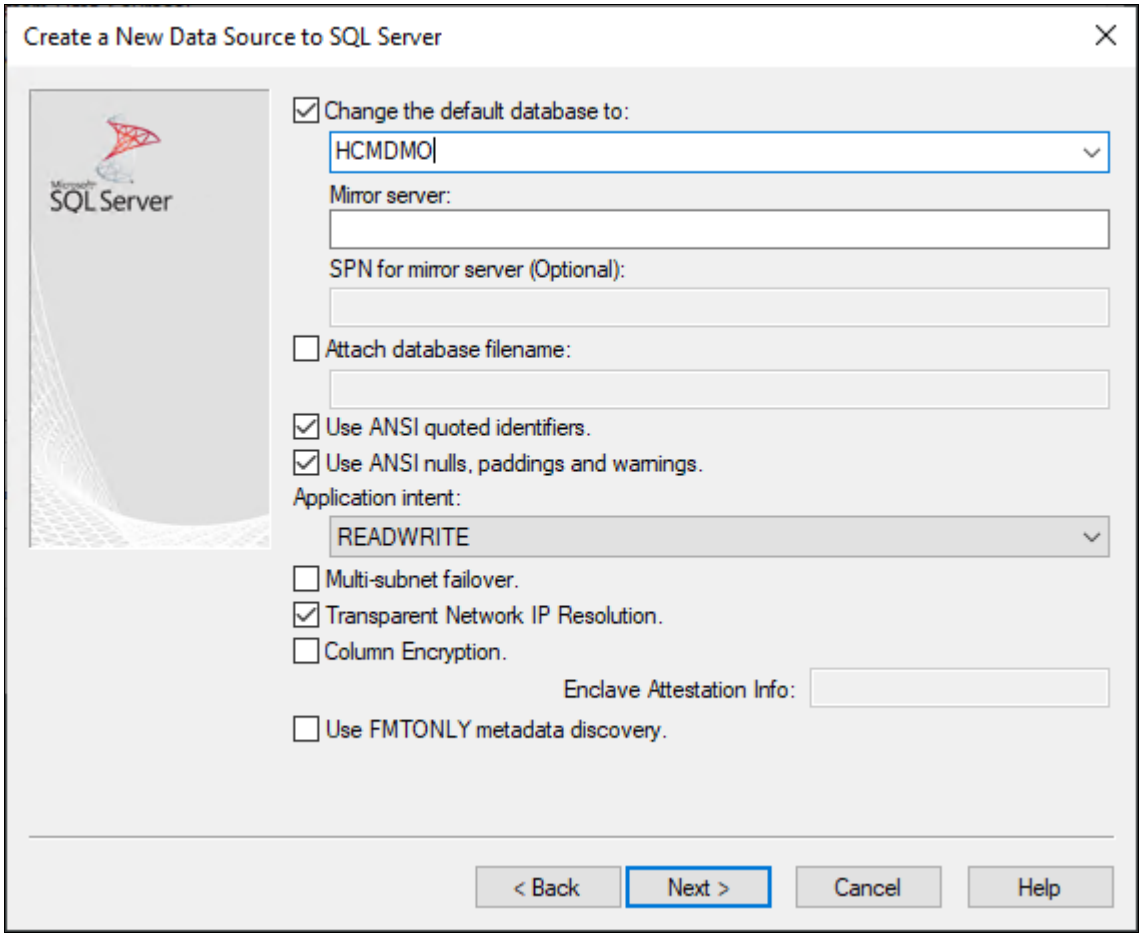


Create a New Data Source to SQL Server window: How to verify authenticity

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

6. Select the option "Change the default database to," and enter your database name—be sure to enter your database name in uppercase.

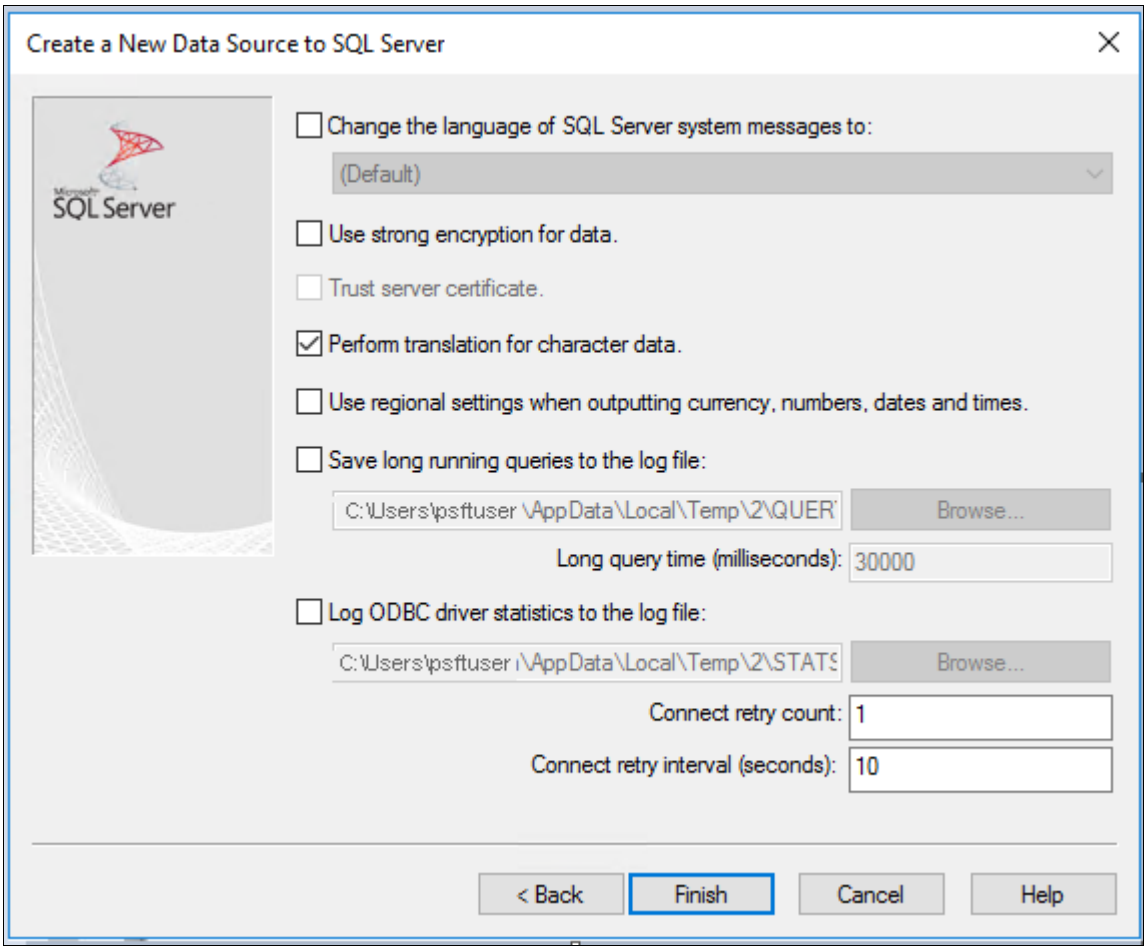
   For PeopleSoft, the data source name and the database name must be the same. Leave the options Use ANSI quoted identifiers and Use ANSI nulls, padding and warnings selected. Click Next.



Create a New Data Source to SQL Server window: Change the default database

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

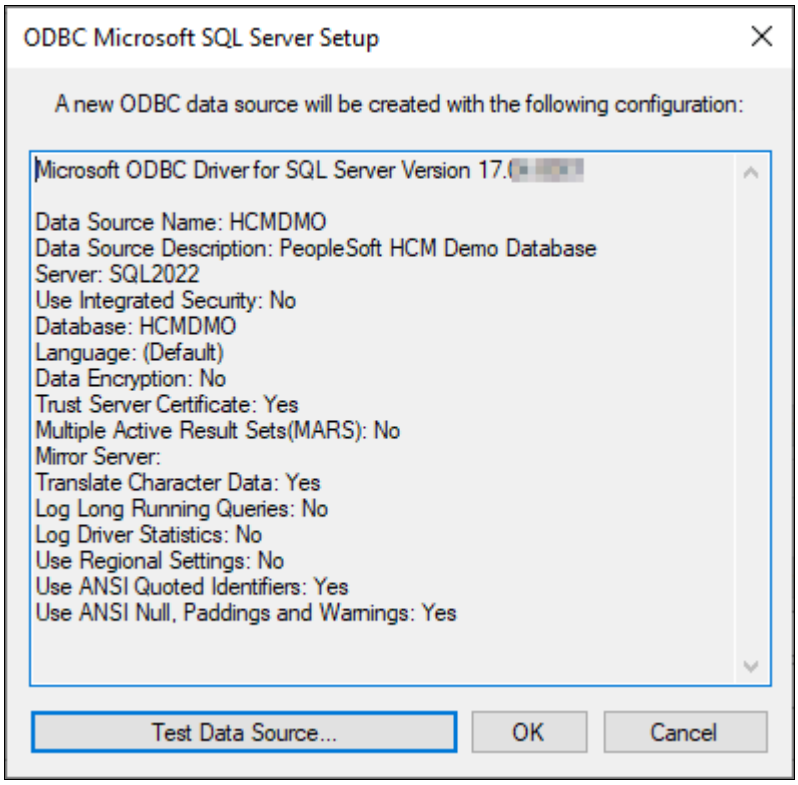
7. Click Finish on the next window.



Create a New Data Source to SQL Server page: Click Finish

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

8. Review the Summary and click OK.



ODBC Microsoft SQL Server Setup summary

9. The new data source is included on the System DNS page.

Task 6B-3: Running ADDOBJ.SQL

For this step you will need a SQL Server login with the ability to create new data types and views on the PeopleSoft database created in the task "Creating a Database". You can use the same login utilized to create the database.

Use a query tool such as SQL Server Management Studio or something similar, to run the following SQL script while in the PeopleSoft database:

PS_HOME\SCRIPTS\ADDOBJ.SQL

Please read the instructions in the SQL script carefully and review it with your DBA before running it. You will need to edit certain parameters like the database name "<DBNAME>".

This script creates user-defined data types and system catalog views that both Data Mover and PeopleSoft PeopleTools use. It also enables the *ANSI Null Default* option.

Note. Make sure that you set the context of your session in your PeopleSoft database before you run the script. If this script is accidentally run in the master database, it will yield an error. See the script for more details. Running ADDOBJ.SQL is a prerequisite to running Data Mover against your database. To check that the *ANSI Null Default* option has been set, run the following T-SQL command with a query tool like the SQL Server Management Studio: `sp_dboption <databasename>`

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Task 6B-4: Setting Up the CONNECTID

This section discusses:

- Understanding the CONNECTID
- Defining the CONNECTID
- Creating the CONNECTID

Understanding the CONNECTID

You establish connections to a database by using the CONNECTID, which allows you to associate multiple PeopleSoft operators to the same CONNECTID. The CONNECTID has the minimum privileges required to connect to the database—that is, it has only SELECT privileges on specific PeopleTools tables. After connection, PeopleSoft Security uses the user ID to control access to objects in the database. The PeopleSoft sign-on process validates the CONNECTID on the server, rather than the user ID. CONNECTID simplifies database security maintenance. You don't have to maintain access for all PeopleSoft users, just for the CONNECTID.

The CONNECTID is granted access using the following script:

Connect.sql: To run the script you must use a login with the ability to grant permissions and create users over the PeopleSoft database created in previous steps. You can use the same user utilized to create the database to run this script. Consult with your DBA and review the script to understand it before running it. A system administrator user has the necessary permissions to run this script.

The CONNECTID and connect password must be specified at the client Configuration Manager or the configuration file of any two-tier client accessing the application.

Task 6B-4-1: Defining the CONNECTID

When logging into a PeopleSoft database in two-tier mode, the user enters a Database Name, User ID, and Password in the PeopleSoft Signon dialog box. This table gives the steps and related database operations:

Log-in Processing Steps	Related Database SQL Operations
The access to SQL Server and the PeopleSoft Database is established with the CONNECTID not the User ID.	Connect=PT84/<*ConnectID*>/<*ConnectIDPassword*>
Check PSSTATUS	SELECT OWNERID, TOOLSREL, LASTREFRESHDTTM, LASTCHANGEDTTM FROM PSSTATUS
Validate the User ID and Password	SELECT VERSION, OPERPSWD, ENCRYPTED, SYMBOLICID, ACCTLOCK FROM PSOPRDEFN WHERE OPRID =1
Get the ACCESSID and Password	SELECT ACCESSID, ACCESSPSWD, ENCRYPTED FROM PSACCESSPROFILE WHERE SYMBOLICID =1
Disconnect CONNECTID	Disconnect

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Log-in Processing Steps	Related Database SQL Operations
Login using the ACCESSID	Connect=PT84/ACCESSID/ACCESSPWD

At this point, access is governed by PeopleSoft security, which determines what applications a specific user ID has access to.

Task 6B-4-2: Creating the CONNECTID

To create the CONNECTID:

1. Start a query tool like SQL Server Management Studio and connect to the PeopleSoft database using a System Administrator login or the designated user chosen on the previous step.
2. Open the script *PS_HOME*\scripts\CONNECT.SQL.
3. Edit the script to use the desired CONNECTID and Connect Password.

   Note. The PeopleSoft default for CONNECTID is "people" (with the letter "l").

   Note. Your CONNECTID must follow the PeopleSoft naming convention—that is, the user name and password can't be longer than eight characters and do not use special characters. Also remember you may need to comply with the Microsoft Windows server password policies if they are enabled at your site.

4. Run the script. (Make sure you are executing the script against the PeopleSoft database, not the master database.)

Task 6B-5: Creating the ACCESSID

The ACCESSID is the database user utilized by the PeopleSoft system to run all the necessary SQL for the system to operate. For PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.50 and later releases, the ACCESSID user is not required to be a system administrator; hence the ACCESSID will not have the ability to create or drop databases, create or drop databases users, run backups or restore them, grant privileges on the database and other administrator related tasks that are not required to run PeopleSoft applications.

You will need to create a database user and designate it as your ACCESSID utilizing the script CREATE_ACCESSID.SQL delivered under *PS_HOME*\scripts. To run this script you will need a user with sufficient security privileges to create the database user and assign it the appropriate rights specified in the script. A system administrator user has more than enough privileges to run this script.

To create the ACCESSID:

1. Start a query tool like SQL Server Management Studio and connect to the PeopleSoft database using a System Administrator login or the designated user chosen on the previous step.
2. Open the script *PS_HOME*\scripts\CREATE_ACCESSID.SQL.
3. Edit the script to use the desired ACCESSID and ACCESSID password.

   Note. For PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.50 and later releases the ACCESSID is not required to be a system administrator. Your ACCESSID must follow the PeopleSoft naming convention—user name cannot be longer than eight characters and cannot use special characters. Also remember you may need to comply with the Windows server password policies if they are enabled in the site.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

4. Run the script. (Make sure you are executing the script against the PeopleSoft database, not the master database.)

Task 6B-6: Creating Data Mover Import Scripts

This section discusses:

- Understanding Data Mover Import Scripts
- Working with Multilingual Databases
- Running Database Setup to Create Data Mover Import Scripts

Understanding Data Mover Import Scripts

The Data Mover Import scripts are used to populate the PeopleSoft database with data. You use the Database Setup feature of the PeopleSoft Data Mover utility to create the Data Mover import scripts.

Note. This task and the next one (Running Data Mover Import Scripts) should be executed from a Microsoft Windows client machine. Before you can load PeopleSoft data from a Microsoft Windows client machine, you need to install PeopleSoft PeopleTools and your PeopleSoft Application to the Microsoft Windows client machine and be sure to select File Server and Database Server.

To complete the database creation procedure you must supply information on various authorization IDs and passwords, including Access ID, Connect ID, Symbolic ID, and User IDs. Before beginning this procedure, review the information in the section Planning Database Creation and make a note of the authorization information for your environment. For PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.53 and later releases, the user profiles in PeopleTools demo databases are delivered disabled. During the procedure to create Data Mover import scripts you will choose whether to enable the delivered user profiles, and how to assign passwords for the profiles. In addition, you will supply several passwords that were previously provided as defaults. Be sure to note the passwords that you supply, as they will be needed for subsequent installation procedures.

See the information on administering user profiles in the *PeopleTools: Security Administration* product documentation.

See "Preparing for Installation," Planning Database Creation.

Task 6B-6-1: Working with Multilingual Databases

All PeopleSoft releases are shipped with English as the database's base language. Therefore when selecting components for the Data Mover Import script, you must select the English components in addition to any other languages you are installing. After the installation is complete, you can change the database's base language to the language that you plan to use most frequently, or leave the base language as English.

Read the section Planning Multilingual Strategy for information on installing multiple languages and changing your base language.

See "Preparing for Installation," Planning Multilingual Strategy.

If you are creating a database and want to load Oracle-provided translations for non-English languages, you must load English (ENG) in addition to the foreign language components.

If you are creating a non-Unicode database, you must ensure that the languages you select are all supported by the character set you used to create your database.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Note. During the database setup process, you have the option to select the database's base language. Select the language that you plan to use most frequently. If the database's base language is different than that set in this database setup process, generate the SWAP_BASE_LANGUAGE command in the Data Mover Import script to swap the language.

See *PeopleTools: Global Technology.*

Task 6B-6-2: Running Database Setup to Create Data Mover Import Scripts

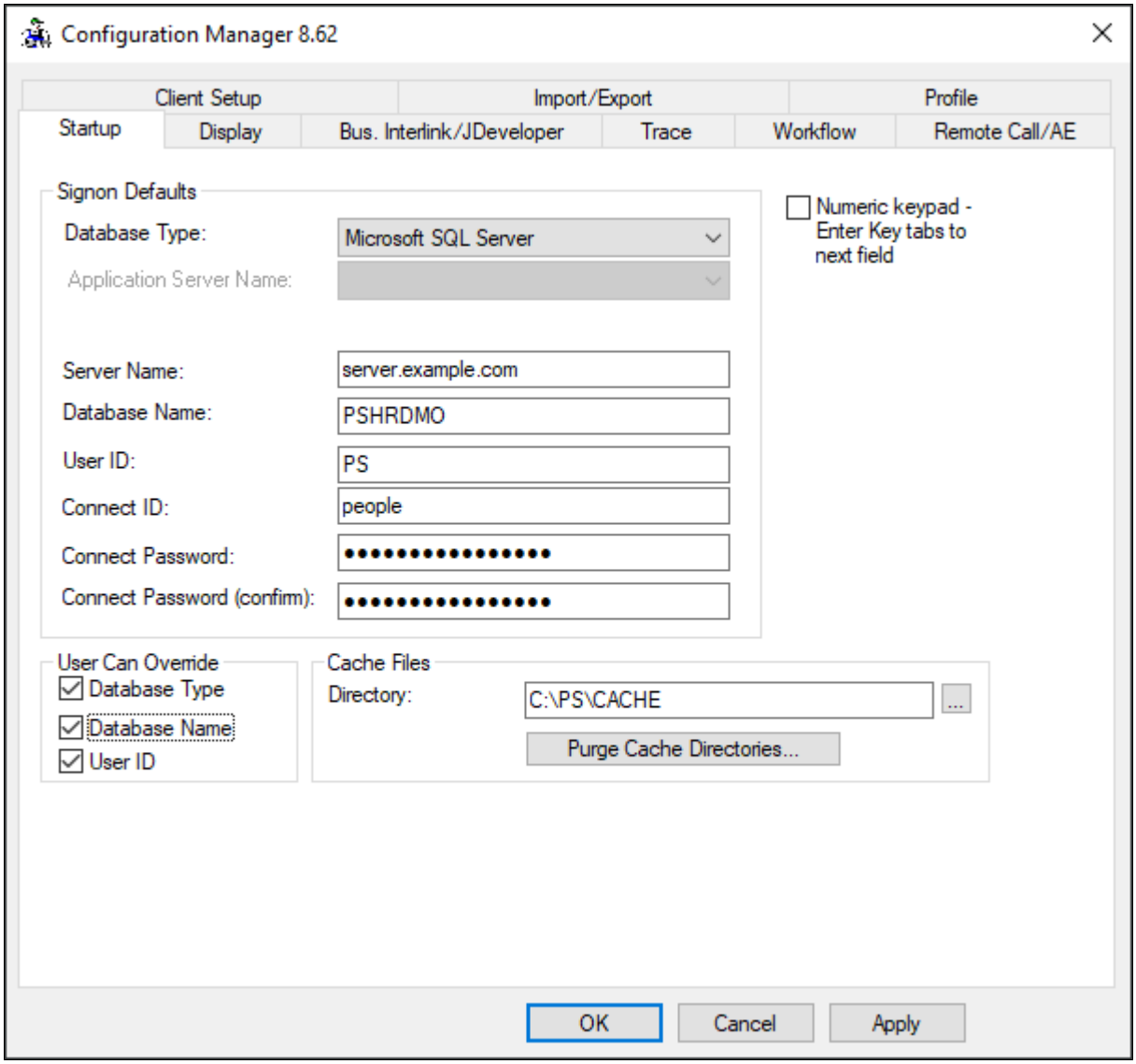
To create the import scripts using Data Mover:

See *PeopleTools: Data Management.*

1. Run Configuration Manager by using one of the following methods:
    - On Microsoft Windows, access the Apps screen and navigate to PeopleTools 8.62, Configuration Manager.
    - Run *PS_HOME*\bin\client\winx86\pscfg.exe.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

2. Verify in the Signon Defaults on the Startup page that the Database Type of Microsoft SQL Server is selected, as shown in the example.



Startup tab on the Configuration Manager dialog box

3. Verify that the connect ID is correct.

   If you accepted all defaults, the connect ID is people. Enter and confirm a value for the connect ID password.

4. If the *PS_APP_HOME* location is not the same as *PS_HOME*, make sure it is set in Configuration Manager, as follows:

   a. In Configuration Manager, select Profile.

   b. Highlight the Default Profile and select Edit.

   c. On the Edit Profile dialog box, select the Process Scheduler tab.

   d. Verify that the *PS_APP_HOME* value is correct.

      See "Setting Up the Install Workstation," Editing the Default Profile.

5. Run Data Mover by using one of these methods:

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- On Microsoft Windows systems, access the Apps screen or Start menu, and navigate to PeopleTools 8.62, Data Mover.
- Run *PS_HOME*\bin\client\winx86\psdmt.exe.

6. Log on using the ACCESSID as the user id to start Data Mover in bootstrap mode; this should be the user that creates the database.

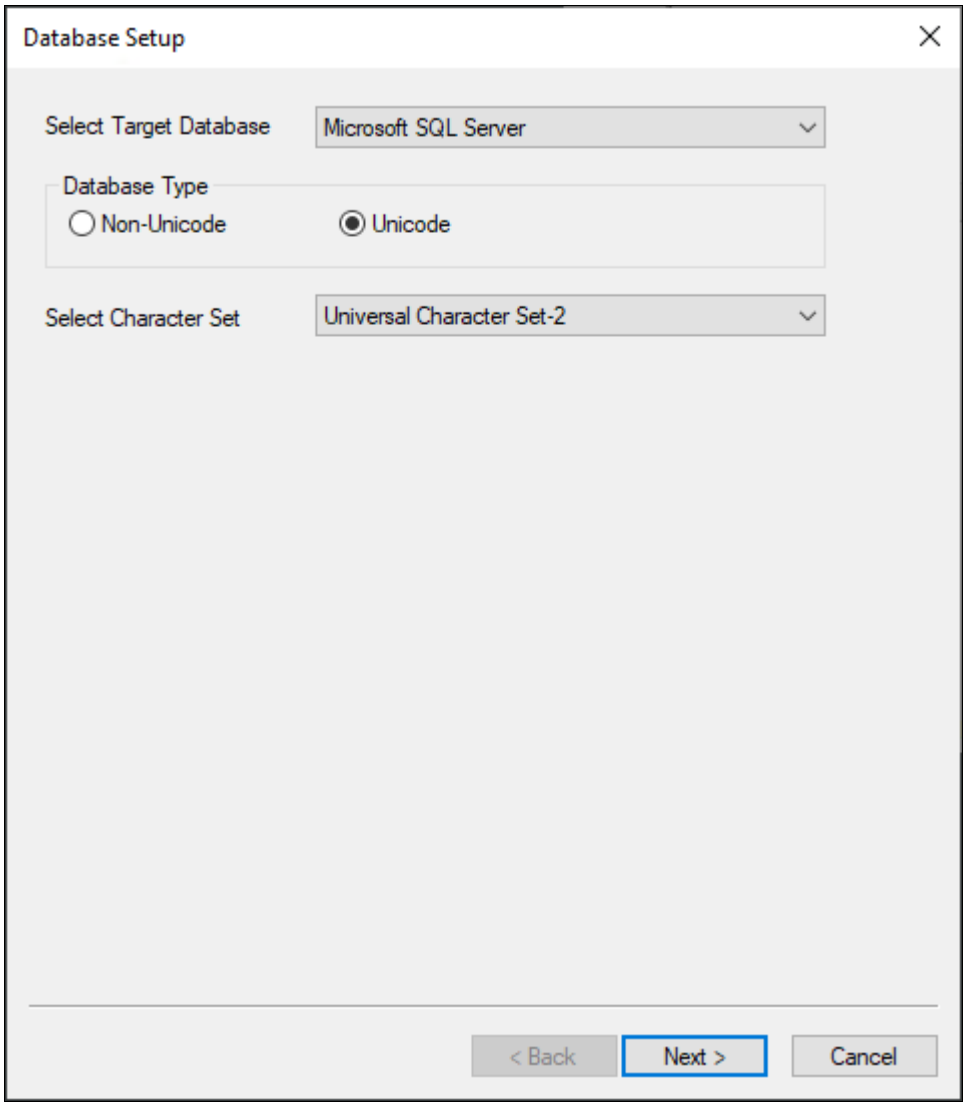
   See Checking the Log Files and Troubleshooting, Running Data Mover.

Note. You must limit the ACCESSID to eight characters or less. See "Preparing for Installation," Defining Microsoft SQL Server and PeopleSoft Databases, for ACCESSID password requirements.

---

7. Select File, Database Setup.

   The Database Setup dialog box appears, as shown in this example:



Selecting target database and character set on the Database Setup dialog box

8. Select your database platform from the Select Target Database drop-down list.
9. Select your database type, Unicode or non-Unicode, and character set.

   Choose the Database Type—Unicode or Non-Unicode—that you selected in the section on multilingual

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

strategy. If you choose Non-Unicode, select the character set that you decided upon in that section from the drop-down list.

Note. When you select a non-Unicode character set, only the characters within that character set can be stored in your database. Oracle recommends that you create your database using Unicode.

See "Preparing for Installation," Planning Multilingual Strategy.

Note. The database setup does not actually modify the character set of your database. That is done by the DBA during database creation. The database setup process only creates customized scripts based on your selection.

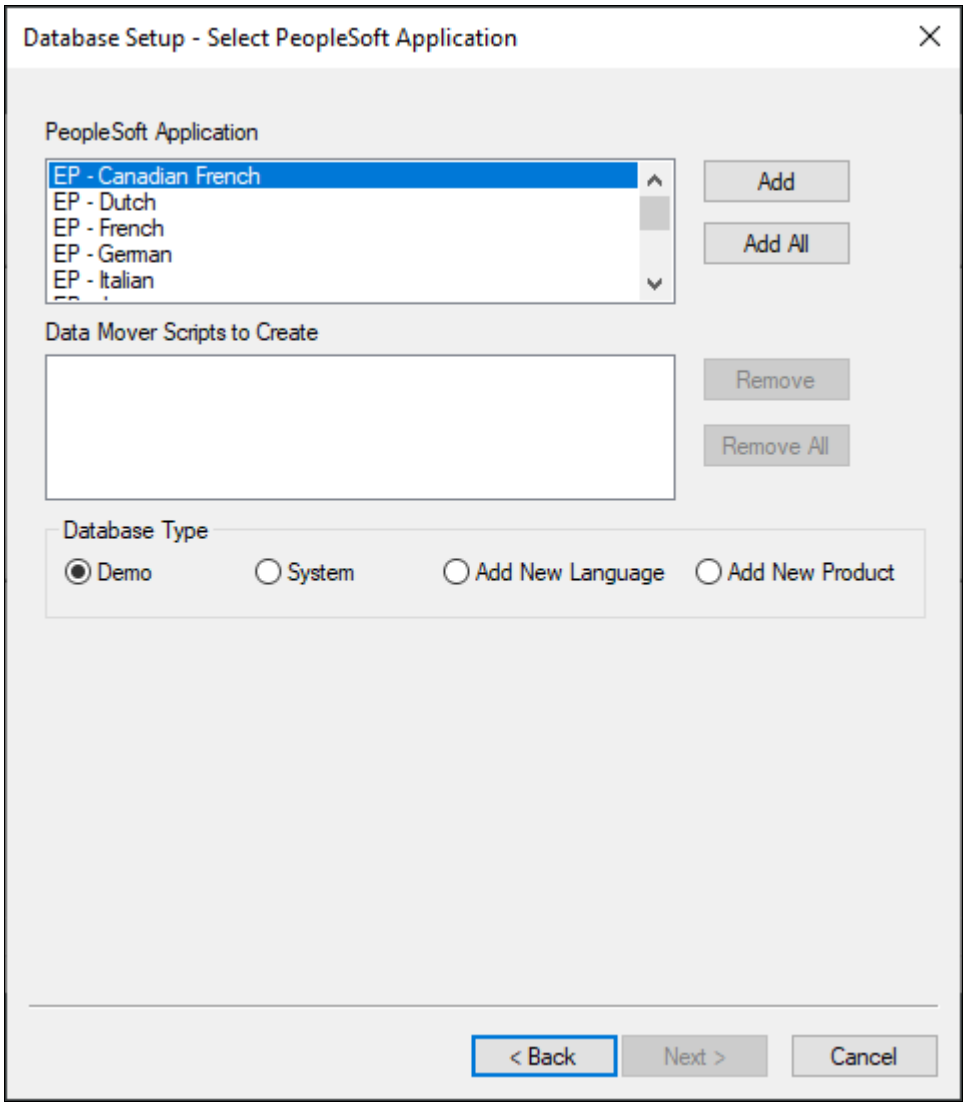
---

10. Select the Demo or System radio button, depending on which type of PeopleSoft database you are installing.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

11. Select the products for which you want to create a Data Mover script from the PeopleSoft Application list box, and move the items you have selected into the Data Mover Scripts to Create list box by clicking on the Add or Add All button.

    The dialog box lists the available languages for your installation.



Selecting languages on the Database Setup dialog box

If you installed the multilanguage software, each application will be listed several times, once for each language. For example, if there are both PeopleSoft PeopleTools and PeopleSoft application translated database objects under *PS_HOME*/data and *PS_APP_HOME*/data, the list will include both.

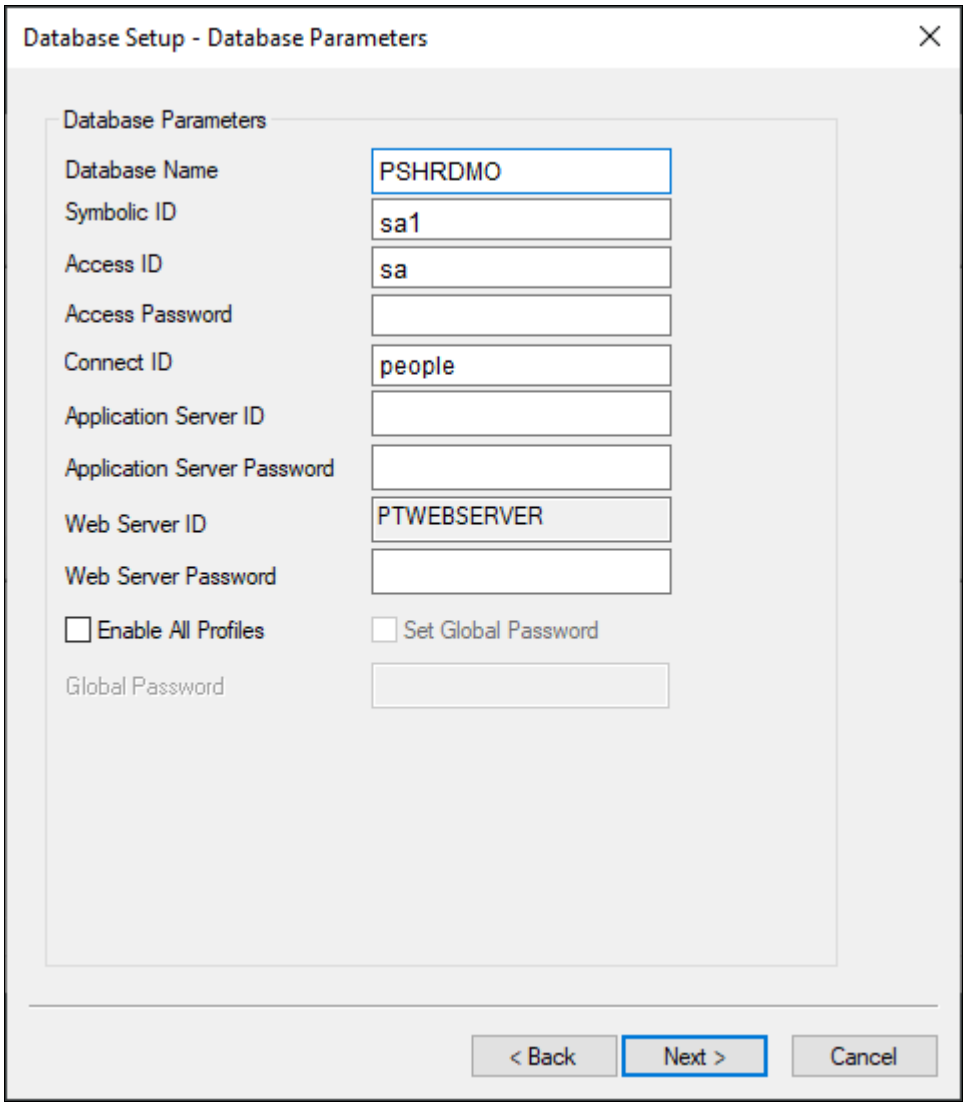
If you are installing languages other than English, make sure to select the appropriate language data files for each application you select in English. This will load the translated database objects.

See "Preparing for Installation," Planning Multilingual Strategy.

If you are installing an application in any language other than English, you must also select the English component of the application. For example, if you select PeopleSoft Fin/SCM - French, you must also select PeopleSoft Fin/SCM Database - US English. This ensures that you install the necessary base-language components.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

12. Set the database parameters described below and then click Finish.



Specifying Database Parameters on the Database Setup dialog box

- *Database Name:* Specify the database name that users will enter on the PeopleSoft signon screen. This corresponds to the owner ID. It can be up to eight characters long and must be entered in uppercase.

  This name must be the same as that of the ODBC data source.
- *Symbolic ID:* This is used as the key to retrieve ACCESSID and ACCESSPSWD from PSACCESSPROFILE.

  For initial installation set it equal to the Database Name. The symbolic ID cannot be longer than eight characters.
- *Access ID*: This is the ACCESSID user created with the CREATE_ACCESSID.SQL. (Note that this user is not a SQL Server system administrator.)

  This value is case sensitive. You will use the access ID every time you want to sign on to Data Mover in bootstrap mode. Limit this to eight characters or less.

Note. You must limit ACCESSID and CONNECTID to eight characters or less.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- *Access Password:* This is the PeopleSoft ACCESSID password. See "Preparing for Installation," Defining Microsoft SQL Server and PeopleSoft Databases, for ACCESSID password requirements.
- *Connect ID:* This is the CONNECTID that is used for the initial connection to SQL Server. The standard PeopleSoft configuration delivers people as the connect ID.
- *Application Server ID*: The Application Server ID has privileges to start or shut down the Application Server domain. It is also used during the Application Server configuration. Enter one of the delivered PeopleSoft user IDs.
- *Application Server Password*: Specify a password for the Application Server ID.
- *Web Server Password*: Specify a password for the Web Server ID.

  The default Web Server ID, as displayed in the example, is PTWEBSERVER. The Web Server ID, also referred to in this documentation as Web Profile User ID, is used to access the web profile information from the database through the Application Server Jolt service.
- *Enable All Profiles*: Select this option to leave the User profiles (other than the Application Server profile and the Web Server User profiles) unchanged.

  If you do not select this option, all of the User profiles in the database, with the exception of the Application Server profile and Web Server User profiles, remain disabled as delivered.
- *Set Global Password*: If you enabled all profiles, you can choose to set the same password for all of the profiles.

  Note. This option is enabled when the Enable All Profiles option is selected, as shown in the example.

- *Global Password*: Enter the password to be used for all user profiles.

  Note. This option is enabled when the Set Global Password option is selected, as shown in the example.

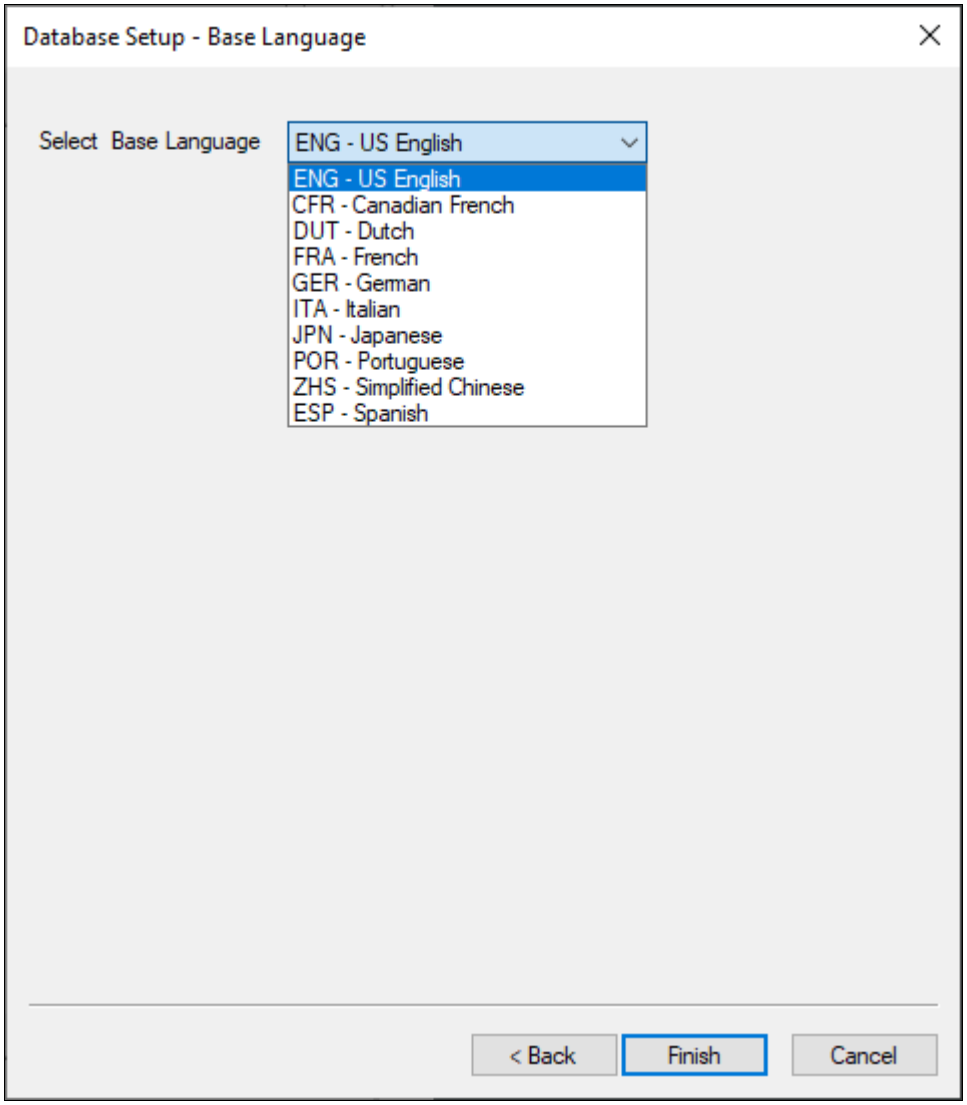
Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

13. Select your database's base language.

Note. This window appears only if you selected one or more languages other than English in the previous window. If you see this window it is critical to select the correct base language. When you select a base language other than ENG, DBSETUP generates the Data Mover import script with the SWAP_BASE_LANGUAGE command to swap the base language.

See "Preparing for Installation," Planning Multilingual Strategy.

See Working with Multilingual Databases.



Selecting a base language in the Database Setup dialog box

Use the following information in making your selection:

- If you have not already done so, read the earlier section on multilingual strategy before determining whether to install multiple languages and whether to change your base language.
- If you are creating a database and want to load Oracle-provided translations for non-English languages, you must load English (ENG) in addition to the foreign language components.
- All PeopleSoft releases are shipped with English as the database's base language. Therefore when

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

selecting components for the Data Mover Import script, you must select the English components in addition to any other languages you are installing. During the Database Setup wizard, you need to select the database's base language that you plan to use most frequently. If your database's base language is different than the Database Setup wizard generate the SWAP_BASE_LANGUAGE command in the Data Mover Import script to swap the language.

14. Click Finish.

Note. If the Database Setup - Base Language window does not appear, click Finish after supplying the parameters on the Database Setup - Database Parameters window.

At this point you are in Data Mover, with the DMS script you just created ready to run.

See Also

PeopleTools: Data Management

PeopleTools: Security Administration, "PeopleSoft Authorization IDs"

Task 6B-7: Running Data Mover Import Scripts

This section discusses:

- Understanding Data Mover Import Scripts
- Populating Tables in the PeopleSoft Database

Understanding Data Mover Import Scripts

Now you will run the Data Mover scripts (DMS) that you created in the preceding task to import the data for your PeopleSoft database. The Data Mover script creates either a system (SYS) or a demo (DMO) database.

When you initially logged onto Data Mover to create the DMS scripts, you logged in with the ACCESSID and password, using bootstrap mode. You need to use bootstrap mode to run the Data Mover import script, because there are not yet any PeopleSoft security tables in the database.

When you start Data Mover in bootstrap mode, the word "BootStrap" appears in the Data Mover status bar.

See *PeopleTools: Data Management.*

See Also

Checking the Log Files and Troubleshooting, Running Data Mover

Task 6B-7-1: Populating Tables in the PeopleSoft Database

To populate tables in the PeopleSoft database:

1. The DMS import script for your application will contain hard-coded file names for log files and data files.

   Modify the DMS script if you have moved any files from the delivered directories or want to write log files to another location than that specified in the script.

2. Select File, Run to execute the script.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

When you run the script, Data Mover typically performs the following actions:

- IMPORT *

  Create all the PeopleTools and application tables with their indexes.
- ENCRYPT_PASSWORD *

  Encrypt security information for the database.
- CREATE_TRIGGER *

  Create application required triggers.
- REPLACE_VIEW *

  Create PeopleSoft views.
- CREATE_TEMP_TABLE *

  Create PeopleSoft temporary tables.

Note. When installing an application database, Data Mover may fail when creating the view PTLT_SCOMP_VW1 if the database was delivered on a PeopleSoft PeopleTools release prior to 8.48. This error may be ignored. The view will be created correctly in a later step.

Task 6B-8: Cleaning Up Orphaned Language Data

Perform this task if you are a Multilingual customer and are installing non-English languages. This task assumes that you have loaded the necessary language files. If you have not yet loaded the language files, follow the instructions in the Global Technology product documentation.

See *PeopleTools: Global Technology,* "Adding Oracle-Provided Translations."

The Application Engine program PTIACLNLNGCA removes any orphaned related language objects that do not have a matching base language object.

Run the PTIACLNLNGCA application engine program. From the command line utility, the syntax is:

```
<PS_HOME>\bin\client\winx86\psae -CD <dbname> -CT MICROSFT -CO <oprid> -CP⇒
 <password> -R <run_control> -AI PTIACLNLNGCA -FP <log_path>
```

Use the values for the database name and user ID that you entered on the startup tab of the Configuration Manager for <dbname> and <oprid> respectively. However, be aware that <password> is not the same as the connect password you entered on the Configuration Manager startup tab. Enter a value for <password> that is the password associated with the <oprid>. For <log_path>, specify the path where you want the log file for the application engine program to be generated, such as C:\temp\.

Task 6B-9: Checking the Log Files and Troubleshooting

This section discusses:

- Checking the Log Files
- Running Data Mover
- Troubleshooting
- Improving Performance

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Task 6B-9-1: Checking the Log Files

After running each Data Mover script, examine the .LOG files to make sure that all the commands were executed successfully. The log files are located in the directory you specified in the Data Mover script.

See "Setting Up the Install Workstation," Editing the Default Profile.

Task 6B-9-2: Running Data Mover

Use one of these methods to run Data Mover.

Microsoft Windows

- Depending upon your Microsoft Windows operating system, select PeopleTools 8.62, Data Mover from the Start, Programs list or the Apps screen to run a graphical user interface (GUI mode).
- Run *PS_HOME*\bin\client\winx86\psdmt.exe from the command line.

If you use the access ID that you specified during the database configuration to log on, you log on in "bootstrap mode." When you start Data Mover in bootstrap mode, the word "BootStrap" appears in the Data Mover status bar.

If you use a valid PeopleSoft Operator ID, such as PS for Human Capital Management or VP1 for Financials/Supply Chain Management, you log on in "user mode." In this mode, no designation appears in the Data Mover status bar.

See Also

PeopleTools: Data Management

Task 6B-9-3: Troubleshooting

If the DMS script has stopped midway (this can happen for a number of reasons) you need to edit the script and start again.

To edit and restart the DMS script:

1. Determine the record that was being imported (that is, which IMPORT command was running) when the script stopped, and use the following guidelines to edit and rerun the DMS scripts.

   When building a DMO database or a multilingual database, adding the SET START statement can be tricky because the Data Mover script used to load the database will include more than one IMPORT statement. The key is to view the log files and determine which IMPORT section of the script Data Mover failed on.

   - If the failure occurred during the first IMPORT statement, add the SET START statement before the first IMPORT *; statement.
   - If the failure occurred during a subsequent IMPORT statement, comment out all statements preceding the IMPORT *; statement where the failure occurred and add the SET START statement before the IMPORT *; statement of the section in which the failure occurred.
   - *This is very important:* If you see any "unique index constraint" error messages in the "Building required indexes" section, your IMPORT script failed during a subsequent IMPORT but the SET START statement was added to the first IMPORT. In this situation, you can run the Data Mover script in its originally generated form, with only one modification. In the first IMPORT section, change the statement "IMPORT *;" to "REPLACE_DATA *;". This will delete all the data in the tables, and re-import it. This process will take some time to run, and you will need to separately create each of the indexes that failed.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

2. Run Data Mover as previously described.

   See Running Data Mover.

   The PeopleSoft Logon dialog box appears.

3. Log on using the ACCESSID to start Data Mover in *bootstrap mode.*

   Use the Access ID you specified when you created the Data Mover scripts with the Database Setup utility.

   The input window should display the DMS import script for the database. The script has the format <dbname>mss.dms.

4. If necessary, select File, Open, and browse to the *PS_APP_HOME/*scripts directory to find the appropriate DMS script.

5. Add the following line before the offending IMPORT command (the one being executed when the failure occurred):

   ```
   SET START <RECORD NAME>;
   ```

   <RECORD NAME> is the name of the record that failed. Make sure to review the Data Mover log file to see where the script failed and locate the last record that imported successfully. The SET START command will begin the Data Mover import at the specified record name.

   Note. It is a good idea to change the name of the log file in the script before each attempt at running it. This ensures that you have a separate log file for each attempt, if you run the import more than once.

   For example, if the script stops and the table is partially inserted with a message similar to this one:

   ```
   Importing  PSPNLFIELD
   Rows inserted into PSPNLFIELD

   3000
   ```

   First drop the partially inserted table (for example, record) by using the DROP TABLE command, and then restart Data Mover at the record that failed using the SET START command and continue the Data Mover import. This can be done in a single pass.

   Add the following lines before the offending IMPORT *; command (the one being executed when the failure occurred):

   ```
   SET START <RECORD NAME>;
   DROP TABLE <RECORD NAME>;
   ```

   For <RECORD NAME>, specify the name of the record that failed. The SET START statement will begin the Data Mover import at the specified <RECORD NAME>.

   Example of the original script:

   ```
   REM - PeopleSoft Database - US English
   /
   SET LOG epengs.log;
   SET INPUT epengs.db;
   SET COMMIT 30000;
   SET NO VIEW;
   SET NO SPACE;
   SET NO TRACE;
   SET UNICODE ON;
   IMPORT *;
   ```

   Example of script after modification, with changes in bold font:

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
REM - PeopleSoft Database - US English
/
SET LOG epengs2.log;
SET INPUT epengs.db;
SET COMMIT 30000;
SET NO VIEW;
SET NO SPACE;
SET NO TRACE;
SET UNICODE ON;
SET START PSPNLFIELD;
DROP TABLE PSPNLFIELD;
IMPORT *;
```

For the DROP statement, for records with a recname without a leading PS, add PS_ to the beginning of the recname; otherwise the table will not be found. For example, PS_<RECNAME>.

6. Restart the script (File, Run Script).

Task 6B-9-4: Improving Performance

The following tips can help you save time when running the Data Mover scripts:

- Run Data Mover on the database server.
- Run only a single instance of Data Mover, and do not have any other applications running during the import.
- In the PeopleSoft Configuration Manager, turn off all trace options.

  Tracing during a DMS load will add considerable time to the process.
- Run Data Mover on the database server with the .db or .dat file located locally.

Task 6B-10: Changing the Base Language

The information in the earlier task Planning Multilingual Strategy will help you determine whether you should change your base language, and lists the currently supported languages.

See "Preparing for Installation," Planning Multilingual Strategy.

See PeopleTools Certifications — Supported Languages, My Oracle Support (search for article name).

This task applies only if your users will be operating PeopleSoft applications *primarily* in one particular language other than English. It gives a performance boost to the language you designate as the base language, but requires more administrative overhead than leaving English as the base language. The details are spelled out in the *PeopleTools: Global Technology* product documentation.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 7

Completing the Database Setup

This chapter discusses:

- Selecting the Necessary Tasks to Complete the Database Setup
- Running Additional Data Mover Scripts
- Running SQR Reports
- Checking the Database
- Cleaning and Backing Up the Database

Selecting the Necessary Tasks to Complete the Database Setup

Review each of the tasks in this chapter to determine which are required for your database setup. Depending upon the details of your installation you may not need to complete every task. However, it is important to evaluate the tasks with respect to your specific situation.

Task 7-1: Running Additional Data Mover Scripts

To import additional data for your specific PeopleSoft database, or to make other required changes, you may need to run additional Data Mover scripts. These script files have the extension .dms and are sometimes referred to as "DMS scripts." They are located in the *PS_HOME*\scripts or *PS_APP_HOME*\scripts directory of your file server, and need to be run from the file server by means of Data Mover.

For the details on which additional application-specific Data Mover scripts to run, consult your application-specific installation instructions.

Task 7-2: Running SQR Reports

This section discusses:

- Understanding Running SQR Reports
- Running SQRs on the Client Workstation
- Creating a Shortcut to Run SQRs

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Understanding Running SQR Reports

The instructions in this section describe how to run SQR reports from the client workstation. On the Microsoft Windows client, you may prefer to create a shortcut to allow you to run the reports repeatedly. You can use these instructions to run SQRs required in the upcoming task Checking the Database.

You can also choose to run SQR reports from the command line in console mode. Before running SQR from the command line on Microsoft Windows operating systems, set PS_HOME from the prompt. For example:

```
set PS_HOME=C:\psft\pt\ps_home8.62
```

See Also

PeopleTools: SQR for PeopleSoft Developers

PeopleTools: SQR Language Reference for PeopleSoft

Task 7-2-1: Running SQRs on the Client Workstation

To run an SQR on the client workstation:

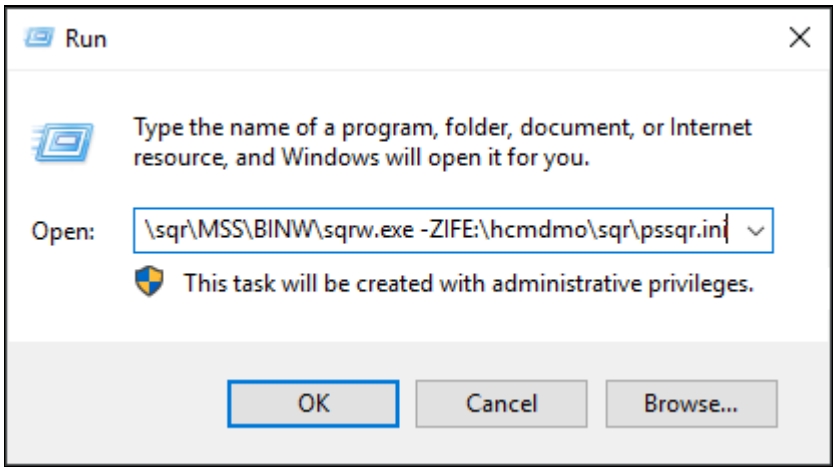
1. Select Start, Run, click Browse, and navigate to *PS_HOME*\bin\sqr\MSS\binw.

   Select sqrw.exe and click Open.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

2. Add any needed flags at the end of the command line.

   Refer to the table that follows. For those flags that require attributes, append the attributes to the flags with no intervening spaces (for example, –fC:\fsdmo\bin\sqr\pssqr.ini).



Run dialog box launching sqrw.exe

The following table summarizes the SQR report arguments used by PeopleSoft software. (For a full listing of report arguments, press the Help button to view the SQR help topic for this dialog box.)

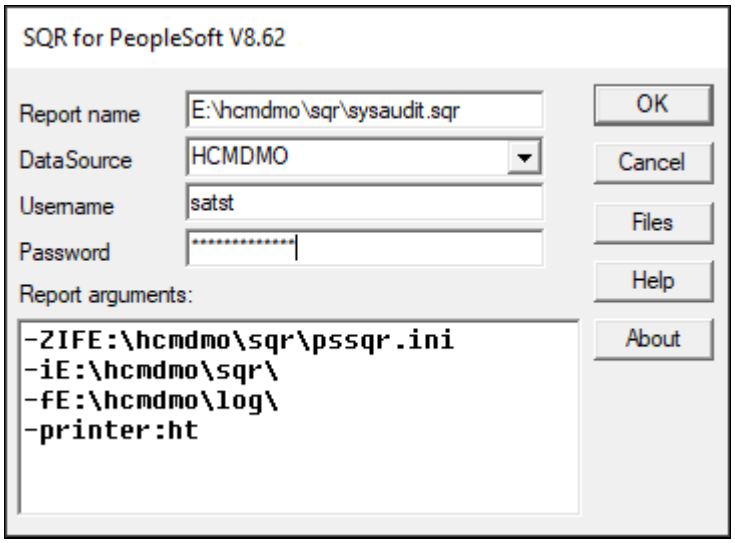
Flag	Description
-I	Specifies the directories that SQR will search for the #INCLUDE files. (A trailing slash is required.)
-f	Specifies the directory where the report output will be sent. If you use the –keep flag, you must specify the directory with a trailing slash. If you use the –printer flag, specify a full path name with a filename for the HTML file.
-ZIF	Sets the full path and name of the SQR initialization file. The -ZIF flag should point to your *PS_HOME*\sqr\pssqr.ini file.
-keep	Keeps the .SPF file after the program runs. This enables you to view the report with the SQR viewer.
-printer:ht	Generates the output file in HTML format. Specify the filename, with path location, with the –f flag.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

3. Click OK.

   The SQR for PeopleSoft V8.62 dialog box appears, displaying the attributes that you entered in the Run dialog box. The fields on this dialog box are described in the next step:

   Note. The report arguments in this example have been arranged for readability.



SQR for PeopleSoft dialog box with SYSAUDIT.SQR

4. Enter the following values:
   - Enter the report name.

     You must specify the full path.
   - Enter the database name in the DataSource field.
   - Enter the ACCESSID in the Username field.
   - Enter the access password in the Password field.
5. Click OK to run the SQR report.

Task 7-2-2: Creating a Shortcut to Run SQRs

If you think you may need to run the SQR reports more than once, you may want to create a shortcut on the Windows client workstation. To save the report arguments:

1. Open Windows Explorer on the machine on which you want to run SQR.
2. Navigate to *PS_HOME*\bin\sqr\MSS\binw.
3. Right-click sqrw.exe and click Create Shortcut.
4. Right-click the shortcut that you just created and select Properties.
5. On the Shortcut tab, add the same sqr flags that you used in the previous task after sqrw.exe in the Target entry box.
6. Click OK.
7. To run the report, double-click the shortcut and specify the following information in the dialog box:
   - Report Name: Enter the full path and the name.
   - Data Source

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Username: Enter the ACCESSID.
- Password: Enter the access password.
- Report arguments: Make any necessary modifications to the saved arguments.

8. Click OK.

Task 7-3: Checking the Database

Run and examine the SQR reports to verify that your database is complete.

See Running SQR Reports.

To verify that the database is complete, run the following SQR reports from the *PS_HOME*\sqr directory:

- dddaudit.sqr
- sysaudit.sqr
- swpaudit.sqr, if you plan to swap your base language

For further information about these reports, consult PeopleSoft product documentation. This documentation includes specific information on how to interpret the reports and how to fix any errors found there.

It is good practice to run and read the audit reports, which include sysaudit, dddaudit, swpaudit, and alter audit, after making changes such as applying patches, bundles, and upgrades to the database, to make sure that the tables are internally and externally in synch. It is also a good idea to schedule regular maintenance, for example weekly, in which you run and review the reports. You can find information on these audit reports in the *PeopleTools: Data Management* product documentation.

See *PeopleTools: Global Technology,* "Running the Swap Audit Report."

See Also

PeopleTools: Data Management

PeopleTools: System and Server Administration

Task 7-4: Cleaning and Backing Up the Database

This step involves running sp_updatestats, running some DBCC commands, and dumping your transaction log and database.

To clean and back up your database:

1. To check the integrity of the database, also run the following DBCC command, for example through SQL Server Management Studio:

   ```
   DBCC CheckDB
   ```

   Oracle recommends that you run this command before you do a dump of your database to confirm that everything is set up properly.

2. Back up the transaction log.

   This step is not necessary if you previously enabled *Truncate Log On Checkpoint.* If you *did* enable *Truncate Log On Checkpoint,* you should turn it off at this point. You can use the *No_Log* or *Truncate_Only* option because you will not be saving your log at this time.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

3. Back up the database.

   Make sure you have a good backup schedule in place so you can recover your work in case of an emergency. This usually includes scheduling nightly backups of the transaction log and weekly backups of the database.

See Also

The SQL Server Books Online

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 8

Deploying Mid-Tier Components

This chapter discusses:

- Understanding the Mid-Tier Deployment
- Running the DPK Setup Script for Mid-Tier Deployment
- Completing Installation Tasks

Understanding the Mid-Tier Deployment

After you complete the database creation, run the PeopleTools DPK setup script again to deploy the mid-tier components for the PeopleSoft environment. Specify the same *BASE_DIR* that you specified when you used the DPK setup script to install the software.

The default mid-tier deployment performs the following:

- Sets up a single application server domain, Process Scheduler domain, and PIA domain.
- On Microsoft Windows, sets up services for the PeopleSoft domains.

  Note. On Windows, when running the setup script to deploy mid-tier components for previously-created domains, first stop and delete services for configured domains to avoid errors.

- Installs Oracle Tuxedo and Oracle WebLogic software, unless the DPK setup script installed them in previous deployment to the same *BASE_DIR*/pt location.

Task 8-1: Running the DPK Setup Script for Mid-Tier Deployment

This section discusses:

- Understanding the Mid-Tier Deployment
- Prerequisites
- Running with the Mid-Tier Option on Microsoft Windows

Understanding the Mid-Tier Deployment

Use this procedure to install the PeopleSoft mid-tier components The deployment includes the following:

- *PS_HOME* installed to the default location under the DPK base directory
- Oracle Tuxedo installed to the default location under the DPK base directory
- Oracle WebLogic installed to the default location under the DPK base directory

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Oracle Database Client installed to the default location under the DPK base directory

  Note. This is an Oracle 19c Database Client. The client can be used with the Oracle Database releases that are supported for the current PeopleSoft PeopleTools release. See the Certifications for PeopleSoft PeopleTools on My Oracle Support.

- Deployed and set up PeopleSoft domains. There is a single Application Server domain, single Process Scheduler domain, and single PIA domain.
- The Microsoft Windows DPKs include Microsoft Visual C++ Redistributable Packages for Visual Studio, which include required Microsoft C++ runtime libraries

Prerequisites

Before performing the mid-tier deployment, be sure that you have fulfilled the following requirements:

- You have downloaded all of the required PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs, and saved them in a location accessible to the Microsoft Windows host, referred to here as *DPK_INSTALL*.

  See "Installing the PeopleSoft Homes," Obtaining the PeopleSoft Application and PeopleTools DPKs

  Note. After the DPK setup script extracts the downloaded zip files, it will delete the original zip files in *DPK_INSTALL.* If you want to save the original zip files, make a backup copy in a different directory.

  Note. If you want to have a PeopleSoft application-specific local node, for Integration Broker or Report Node, configured during the mid-tier creation, you must also download the first application DPK (normally zip file 9of*n.*zip). If the application DPK is not present, the mid-tier deployment will create a PeopleTools-specific default local node.

- Remove any previous installations of the same version of Oracle Tuxedo.
- You extracted the first zip file. The extraction gives a setup directory and other files.

  See "Deploying the PeopleSoft Homes."
- The user running the script *must have administrative permission* on Microsoft Windows.

  Note. Restarting services for the deployed PeopleSoft environment, such as those for Oracle Tuxedo, must be performed by the same user (with administrative permission) who carried out the installation.

- There is enough space on the host for the PeopleSoft environment.

  See "Prerequisites," Reviewing Hardware Requirements on Microsoft Windows.
- You have installed database connectivity software for the database that you want to access on the machine on which you deploy the mid-tier components.

  See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations."
- You have the information for the database to connect to, including:
  - RDBMS platform
  - Database name, service name, host, and listening port
  - Unicode or non-Unicode database
  - For Microsoft SQL Server, the database server name and connectivity software information.
- You have the information for the user IDs and passwords needed for the deployment, including the following:

  The DPK setup process does not include any default passwords. There are default users in some cases, which

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

are included in the prompts. You must provide user IDs and passwords, as determined by the type of deployment. Type carefully, because the window does not display masking characters as you type.

- PeopleSoft Connect ID and password
- PeopleSoft operator ID (such as PS or VP1) and password
- Application Server Domain Connection password (optional)
- PTWEBSERVER web profile user password
- Oracle WebLogic server administrator password
- Integration Gateway administrator and password
- Integration Gateway keystore password

- Review the information for password restrictions. When you run the DPK setup script, the prompts for some of the passwords do not explicitly specify the restrictions as they did in previous releases.

  See E-DPK - PeopleTools 8.59 and later - DPK setup does not support some special characters for passwords, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2765013.1.

Task 8-1-1: Running with the Mid-Tier Option on Microsoft Windows

To deploy mid-tier components on physical or virtual Microsoft Windows hosts:

1. Open a command prompt window with Run as Administrator.
2. Change directory to the location where you extracted the first zip file, *DPK_INSTALL*/setup.
3. Run the script with the mid-tier option to set up the Application Server, PIA, and web server mid-tier components.

   - If you extracted the first zip file into the same directory where you downloaded the zip files, use this command:

     ```
     psft-dpk-setup.bat --env_type midtier
     ```

   - If you extracted the first zip file into a different directory, include the option `dpk_src_dir` to specify the location of the downloaded zip files, such as *DPK_INSTALL*.

     ```
     psft-dpk-setup.bat --dpk_src_dir DPK_INSTALL --env_type midtier
     ```

Note. Running the DPK setup script with the `--env_type midtier` option deploys all servers. If you want to deploy one of the servers (application server, Process Scheduler server, PIA, or application server and Process Scheduler server) see the command options in "Installing the PeopleSoft Homes," Reviewing the DPK Setup Script Options.

---

4. Wait while the script begins the setup process.

   The system displays messages indicating the steps in the setup process. The success or failure of each step is indicated by [OK] or [FAILED].

   ```
   Starting the PeopleSoft Environment Setup Process:

   Validating User Arguments:                              [  OK  ]
   Validating PeopleSoft Supported Platform:               [  OK  ]
   ```

5. At the following prompt, enter the full path to a location that is accessible to the host to be used as the PeopleSoft base directory.

   The base directory is used to extract the PeopleSoft DPKs as well as for deploying PeopleSoft components. The script creates the directory if it is not present.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Note. When entering the path for the base directory, use forward slashes (/). For example, `C:/psft`. Enclose any names with special characters in double quotes. Do not use a name for the base directory that begins with a number. Confirm your choice or change it if necessary.

```
The base directory is used to extract the PeopleSoft DPKs. It is also
used to deploy the PeopleSoft components. This directory should be
accessible, must have write permission and should have enough
free space.

Enter the full path for the PeopleSoft Base Directory: C:/psft
Are you happy with your answer? [Y|n|q]:
```

The script validates if there is enough free space available under the specified base directory for the PeopleSoft environment. The PeopleSoft environment setup is aborted if there is not enough free space.

Note. A mid-tier setup of a PeopleSoft environment requires about 25 GB of disk space.

The script creates the following sub-directories under the user-provided base directory, *BASE_DIR*:

- *BASE_DIR*\db

  This directory is not used for a mid-tier deployment.

- *BASE_DIR*\dpk

  The script uses this directory to extract the archives from the PeopleSoft DPKs, and contains the Puppet YAML files for the deployment.

- *BASE_DIR*\psft_puppet_agent

  This script uses this directory to install Puppet software.

- *BASE_DIR*\pt

  The script uses this directory to deploy PeopleSoft components.

6. Review the status messages.

   The script installs Puppet software, verifies if the DPKs are available in *DPK_INSTALL*, and checks for available space. It aborts with the message [FAILED] in case of errors.

   ```
   Installing PSFT Relocatable Puppet Software in the base directory:
   [  OK  ]
   Installing eYAML Hiera Backend on this host:                [  OK  ]
   Checking if PeopleSoft DPKs are Present:                    [  OK  ]
   Checking if the Base Directory has Enough Free Space:       [  OK  ]
   ```

7. Review the status messages as the script validates the files found in *DPK_INSTALL* and extracts the DPK archives.

   The script carries out validations for the mid-tier deployment. If any of the validations fail, the PeopleSoft environment setup is aborted.

   After the script completes the extraction, it deletes the original files. Make a backup copy if you want to keep them.

   See "Preparing for Installation," Understanding the PeopleSoft Installation Using Deployment Packages, for the filename syntax of the DPK zip files.

   Note. The messages have been truncated for brevity.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
Validating the PeopleSoft DPKs in the Windows Host:
[...]
Extracting the PeopleSoft DPK Archives in the Windows Host:
[...]
```

8. Review the status messages as the script sets up the Puppet file system.

   The script sets up Puppet on the host or VM. It then copies the PeopleSoft Puppet modules to the standard location under the base directory *(BASE_DIR*\dpk) and updates the YAML files to reflect the type of PeopleSoft environment setup.

```
Setting up Puppet on the Windows Host:
Generating eYAML Hiera Backend Encryption Keys:              [  OK  ]
Updating the Puppet Hiera YAML Files in the Windows Host:    [  OK  ]
Updating the Role in Puppet Site File for the Windows Host:  [  OK  ]
```

9. Specify the installation type.

   Confirm your choice or change it if necessary.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft installation [PUM or FRESH] type [PUM]: FRESH
Are you happy with your answer? [y|n]:
```

Note. You see this prompt only when PeopleSoft application DPKs that were built on the same PeopleTools release, are present in *DPK_INSTALL.*

---

10. Specify the information for the database that you want to connect to.

    a. Enter MSSQL for a Microsoft SQL Server database platform.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database platform [ORACLE]: MSSQL
```

    b. Enter *y* (yes) if the database you are connecting to is a Unicode database, or n (no) for a non-Unicode database.

```
Is the PeopleSoft database unicode? [Y|n]:
```

    c. Enter *y* (yes) if you want to install the files needed for multi-language support.

Note. You see this prompt only when PeopleSoft application DPKs that were built on the same PeopleTools release, are present in *DPK_INSTALL.*

```
Do you want Multi Language support in PeopleSoft database? [y|N]:
```

    d. Enter the database name.

       If the database name includes non-alphanumeric characters such as periods, enclose the name in double quotes. For example, "HCM.92".

```
Enter a new PeopleSoft database name. Ensure that the database
name start with a letter and contains only uppercase letters and
numbers and is no more than 8 characters in length [HCM92]:
```

    e. Enter the database server name, for example, server.example.com\sql2022.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft database server name: server.example.com\sql2022
```

    f. Enter the ODBC driver name.

```
Enter Microsoft SQL Server ODBC Name["ODBC Driver 17 for SQL⇒
```

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
 Server"]:
```

If you want to change to a different version, enter the text without double quotes; for example:

```
Enter Microsoft SQL Server ODBC Name["ODBC Driver 17 for SQL⇒
 Server"]: ODBC Driver 18 for SQL Server
```

11. Enter the PeopleSoft Connect ID at the following prompt:

    The default is people.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID [people]:
    ```

12. Enter a password for the PeopleSoft Connect ID, and enter again on the next line, at the following prompt.

    See E-DPK - PeopleTools 8.59 and later - DPK setup does not support some special characters for passwords, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2765013.1.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database Connect ID [people] password.
    Ensure that the password meets the length and complexity requirements
    for your database platform:
    Re-Enter the PeopleSoft Connect ID password:
    ```

13. Enter the PeopleSoft Operator ID (user ID) at the next prompt:

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database Operator ID [PS]:
    ```

14. Enter the password twice for the PeopleSoft operator ID, such as PS or VP1.

    ```
    Enter a new PeopleSoft database Operator ID [PS] password.
    Ensure that the password is between 1 and 32 characters in length.
    You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
    Re-Enter the PeopleSoft Operator ID password:
    ```

15. Enter the Application Server Domain Connection password, following the guidelines in the prompt.

    Note. This is an optional password. If no password is entered, the connection between Web Server and Application Server will not be password protected.

    ```
    [Optional] Enter a new Application Server Domain connection password.
    Ensure that the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length:
    You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
    Re-Enter the Application Server Domain connection password:
    ```

16. Enter the password for the PTWEBSERVER web profile user.

    ```
    Enter a new PeopleSoft Web Profile user [PTWEBSERVER] password.
    Ensure that the password is between 8 and 32 characters in length.
    You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
    Re-Enter the PeopleSoft Web Profile user password:
    ```

17. Enter the Oracle WebLogic Server Admin password, following the guidelines in the prompt.

    The default Oracle WebLogic server administrator is system. The window does not display masking characters as you type. There is no default password.

    ```
    Enter a new WebLogic Server Admin user [system] password.
    Ensure that the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length
    with at least one lowercase letter and one uppercase letter.
    It must also contain one number or
    ```


Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
one of these special characters !@#$%^& :

Re-Enter the WebLogic Server Admin user password:
```

Enter the Integration Gateway user ID and password at the following prompt.

The default user ID is administrator.

```
Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway user [administrator]:
Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway user [administrator] password.
Ensure the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length:
You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
Re-Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway user password:
```

18. Enter the Integration Gateway keystore password.

    This is the SSL Keystore password, which is required for web servers and Integration Broker gateways in SSL-enabled environments. The password you enter is used for the default keystore. If you need to reset the password, use the pskeymanager utility.

    See *PeopleTools: System and Server Administration,* "Implementing WebLogic SSL Keys and Certificates."

    See *PeopleTools: Integration Broker Administration,* "Configuring Security and General Properties."

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway Keystore password. Ensure
    the password is between 8 and 30 characters in length.
    You may include these special characters !@#$%^& :
    Re-Enter the PeopleSoft Integration Gateway Keystore password:
    ```

19. If you want to change any of the answers to the previous questions, enter *n* (no) at the following prompt, or enter *y* (yes) to continue:

    ```
    Are you happy with your answers? [y|n]:
    ```

20. Review the status messages as the script updates the Puppet YAML files with the user input.

    ```
    Encrypting the Passwords in the User Data:                  [  OK  ]
    Updating the Puppet Hiera YAML Files with User Data:        [  OK  ]
    ```

21. Answer *n* (no) to indicate that you do not want to continue running the initialization script using the default configuration.

    The script stops. Follow the instructions for using customizations for mid-tier connectivity to complete the mid-tier deployment.

    See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations."

    ```
    The bootstrap script is ready to deploy and configure the PeopleSoft
    environment using the default configuration defined in the Puppet
    Hiera YAML files. You can proceed by answering 'y' at the following
    prompt. And, if you want to customize the environment by overriding
    the default configuration, you can answer 'n'. If you answer 'n', you
    should follow the instructions in the PeopleSoft Installation Guide
    for creating the Hiera YAML file 'psft_customizations.yaml'
    and running the psft_puppet_apply script to continue with
    the setup of the PeopleSoft environment.

    Do you want to continue with the default initialization process? [y|n]: ⇒
    n
    ```

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
You have decided not to continue with the default PeopleSoft environment
setup process. Any customizations to the PeopleSoft environment
should be done in the Hiera YAML file 'psft_customizations.yaml'
and place it under [c:\psft\dpk\puppet\production\data] directory.
After making the necessary customizations, run the following
script to continue with the setup of PeopleSoft environment.

Start a cmd window as Administrator and run C:\psft\psft_puppet_⇒
apply.cmd

Exiting the PeopleSoft environment setup process.
```

The complete setup log is written to the file psft_dpk_setup.log in the same location as the DPK setup script.

Task 8-2: Completing Installation Tasks

After completing the installation process, be sure to go to the chapter "Completing the Installation." This chapter includes information on accessing the PeopleSoft environment, as well as post-installation steps.

It is important that you perform the tasks in the section Completing Post-Installation Steps that apply to your environment.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 9

Completing the Installation

This chapter discusses:

- Accessing the PeopleSoft Environment
- Completing Post-Installation Steps
- Reviewing the Deployed File System and Users

Task 9-1: Accessing the PeopleSoft Environment

This section discusses:

- Accessing the Environment in a Browser
- Using Fluid User Interface

Task 9-1-1: Accessing the Environment in a Browser

To sign in to the deployed PeopleSoft environment in a browser (that is, use the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture, or PIA), use a URL with this format:

http://<host_name>:<http_port>/<PIA_site_name>/signon.html

For example, for a deployment with the default port, 8000, and default PIA site name, ps, the URL would be http://server1.example.com:8000/ps/signon.html.

See the PeopleSoft product documentation for information on working with the components in a PeopleSoft installation.

See PeopleSoft PeopleTools on the Oracle Help Center, https://docs.oracle.com/en/applications/peoplesoft/peopletools/index.html.

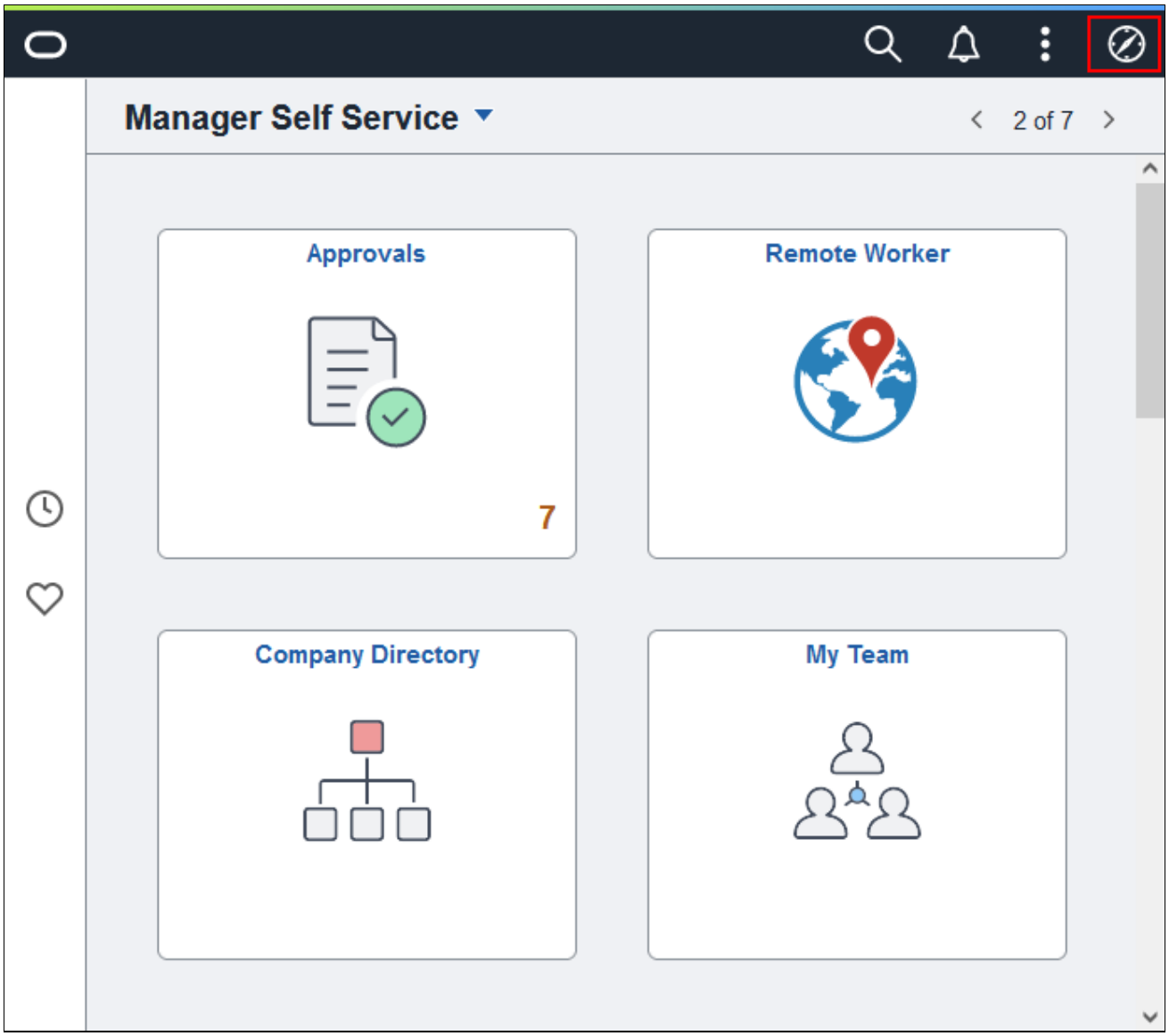
Task 9-1-2: Using Fluid User Interface

When you sign in to your PeopleSoft application, you may see the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface by default. To access the menu items, as seen in the classic user interface, from the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface:

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

1. On the PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface select (press) the NavBar button at the top right.

   In this example the NavBar button, which looks like a compass, is surrounded by a red border. This example shows the top portion of an FSCM home page.

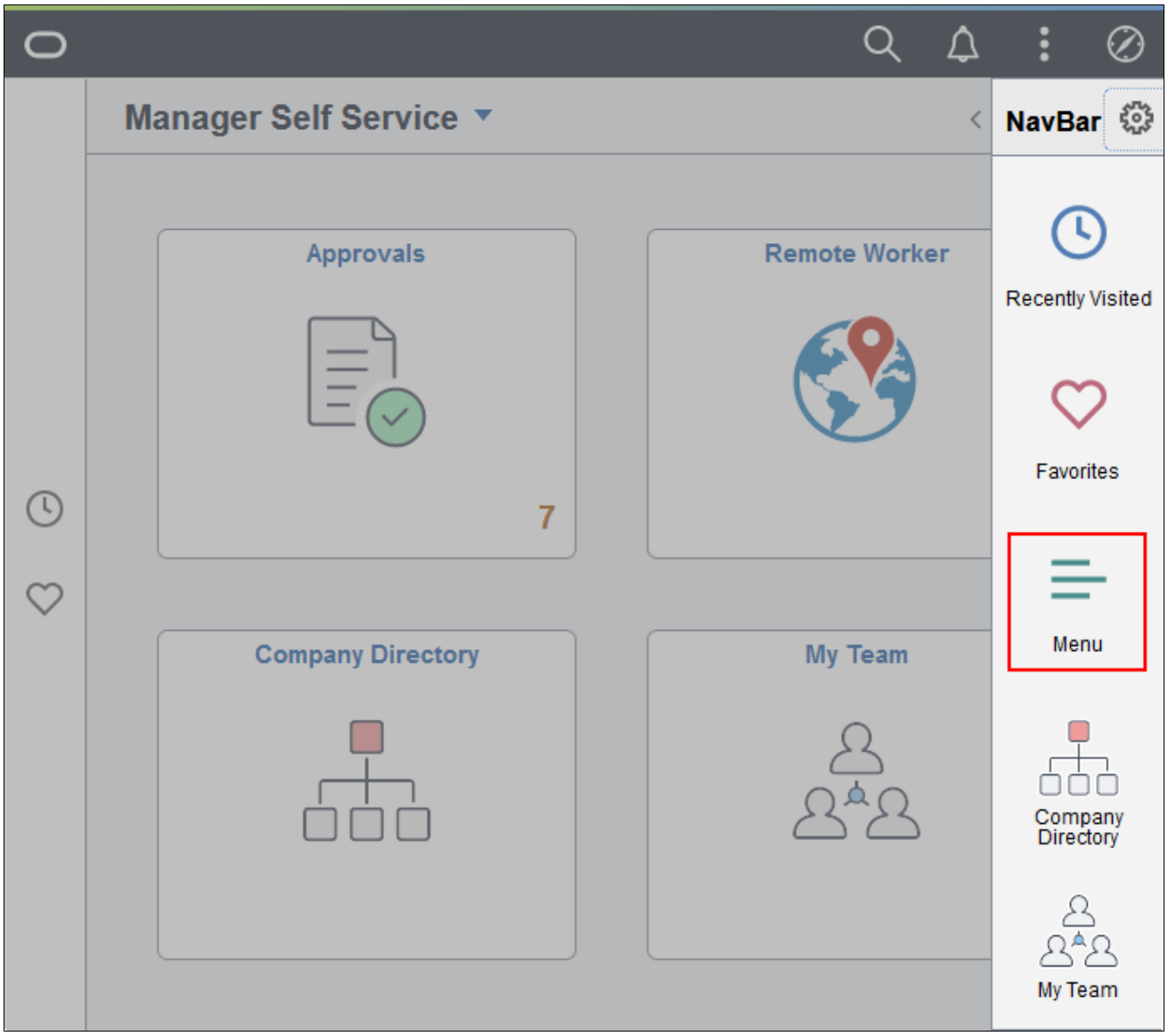


PeopleSoft Fluid User Interface home page

   The Navigation bar (NavBar) side page appears.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

2. Select (press) Menu.

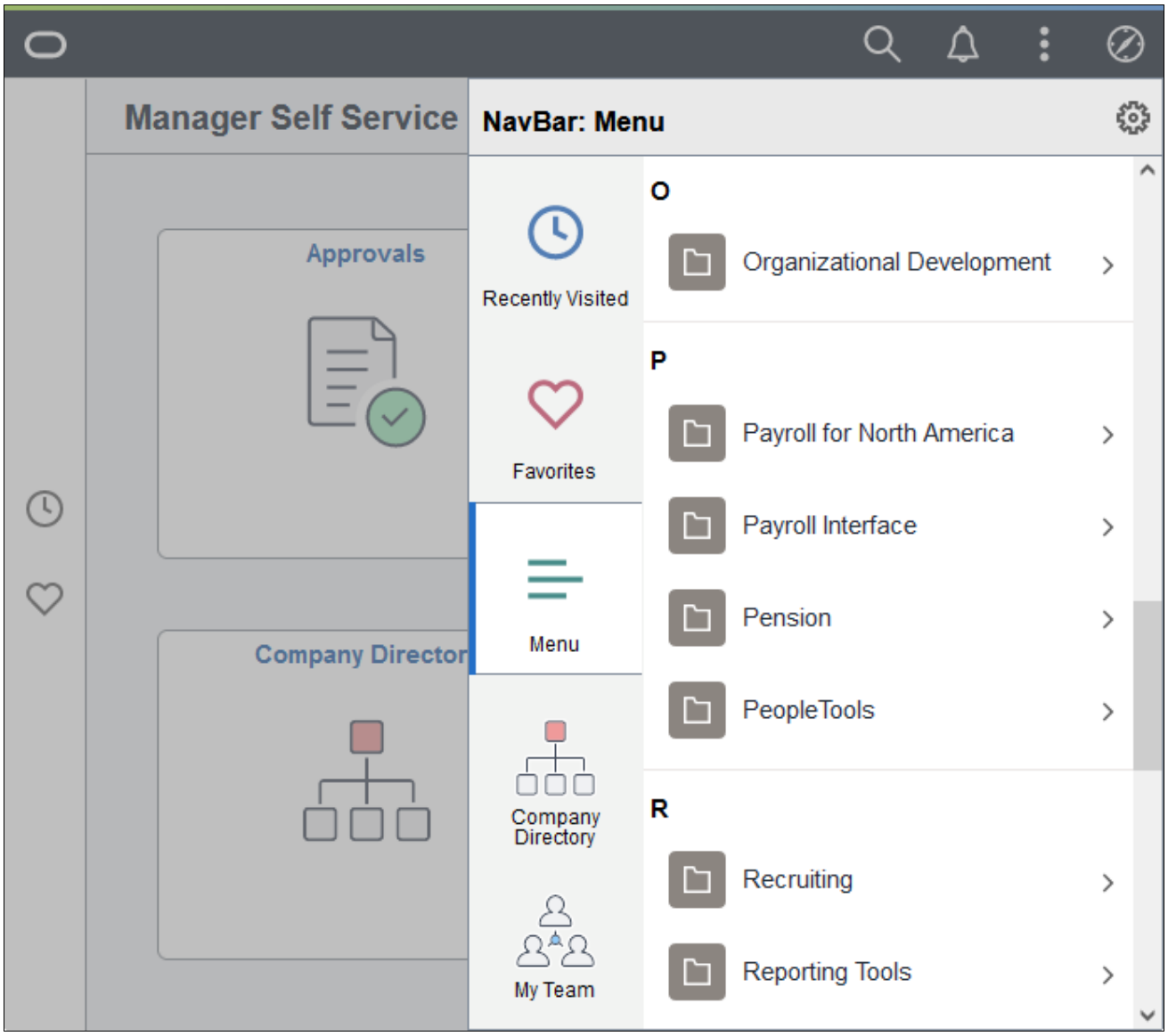


NavBar side page

The menu structure appears.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

3. Navigate to the desired item, such as PeopleTools.



Navigator side page with PeopleSoft menu items

See Also

PeopleTools: Applications User's Guide, "Working With Fluid Homepages"

PeopleTools: Fluid User Interface Developer's Guide

Task 9-2: Completing Post-Installation Steps

This section discusses:

- Updating the Installation Table
- Setting Options for Multilingual Databases

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Updating PeopleTools Options
- Updating Time Zone Information
- Updating Database Information
- Building a New Encryption Key and Re-encrypting Passwords
- Installing the fontconfig Package for Download to Excel

Task 9-2-1: Updating the Installation Table

After you complete the installation process, creating the database, installing the Application Server, and installing the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture, you must complete this additional step. This post-installation step ensures that only the products you are entitled to use are active in the installation. The location of the installation table in the PeopleSoft system varies depending upon the PeopleSoft application that you installed.

Note. For information on the products you are entitled to use, contact your Oracle Support representative.

---

1. Sign on to the PeopleSoft system in a browser.
2. Select Set Up *Application_name* (where Application_name is the PeopleSoft application you installed), Install, Installation Table.
3. Select the Products tab.
4. Clear the check boxes for the products that you are not entitled to use.

Task 9-2-2: Setting Options for Multilingual Databases

Setting the Data Field Length Checking Option

The value to specify data field length checking must be set correctly in order for PeopleSoft applications to perform correctly in a browser. Use one of these methods to set the data field length checking option:

- Select PeopleTools > Utilities > Administration > PeopleTools Options, and select the Data Field Length Checking option from the drop-down list.
  - If your database uses the Shift-JIS character set for Japanese, select MBCS.
  - For all other databases, verify that the option is set to Others, the default setting.
- Alternatively, use the SQL tool for your database platform to modify the DBLENGTHTYPE parameter in the PSOPTIONS table.
  - If your database uses the Shift-JIS character set for Japanese, enter M.
  - For all other databases, verify that the option is set to N, the default setting.

See *PeopleTools: Global Technology,* "Setting Data Field Length Checking."

See *PeopleTools: Global Technology,* "Selecting Character Sets."

Setting the Unicode Enabled Option

If you are running a Unicode database, verify that the UNICODE_ENABLED parameter in the PSSTATUS table is set correctly. For example:

- For non-Unicode databases, including those using the Shift-JIS character set for Japanese, set UNICODE_ENABLED=0.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- For Unicode databases, set UNICODE_ENABLED=1.

See the information on converting to Unicode in the *PeopleTools: Global Technology* product documentation.

Task 9-2-3: Updating PeopleTools Options

You can set the following options on the PeopleTools Options page:

- Multi-Currency — Select this check box if you plan to use currency conversion.

  See *PeopleTools: Global Technology*, "Using System-Wide Multicurrency Settings."

- Base Time Zone — Enter a value for the base time zone for your PeopleTools database.

  See *PeopleTools: Global Technology*, "Setting the Base Time Zone."

- Sort Order Option — If you specified a non-binary sort order for your database, choose the Sort Order Option that most closely approximates your database sort order.

  See *PeopleTools: Global Technology*, "Setting the Sort Order."

Task 9-2-4: Updating Time Zone Information

Additional steps may be required to configure your time zone after you complete the installation.

See *PeopleTools: Global Technology,* "Maintaining Time Zones."

Task 9-2-5: Updating Database Information

The database information updated in this procedure is used by the PeopleSoft software update tools to identify your PeopleSoft database when searching for updates. These steps should be followed for all additional databases that you create to enable the accurate identification of your databases.

1. Sign on to your PeopleSoft database.
2. Navigate to PeopleTools > Utilities > Administration > PeopleTools Options.
3. Specify long and short names for your environment. For example:
   - Environment Long Name — Customer HR Demo Database
   - Environment Short Name — HR Demo DB
4. Select a system type from the drop-down list. For example, Demo Database.
5. Save your changes.

Task 9-2-6: Building a New Encryption Key and Re-encrypting Passwords

The PeopleTools installation includes a default encryption key (psvault), which is used to encrypt the passwords that you enter during the installation. For security reasons, create a new key after you complete the installation and use the new key to re-encrypt passwords included in your PeopleSoft environment files.

1. Use the PSCipher utility to build a new key.

   See *PeopleTools: Security Administration*, "Generating a Unique Encryption Key."

   For example, run the following command from <*PIA_HOME*>/webserv/<*DOMAIN_NAME*>/piabin:

   ```
   pscipher.bat -buildkey
   Your environment has been set.
   ```

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
A new key of version {V2.2} is generated successfully
```

2. Use the new key from step 1 to re-encrypt passwords that you supply as plain text.

   See *PeopleTools: Security Administration,* "Using the PSCipher Utility."

3. Replace the existing encrypted values for the passwords in web server files with the newly created encrypted passwords.

   Ensure that the password values begin with {V2.2}, which indicates the AES implementation. This table lists web server files and passwords to check.

   See *PeopleTools: Security Administration,* "Understanding the Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) Implementation."

Location	File	Examples of Password Text
<*PIA_HOME*>\webserv\<*DOMAIN_NAME*>\applications\peoplesoft\PSIGW.war\WEB-INF	integrationGateway.properties	• ig.isc.NODE_NAME.password={V2.2}XXXXXX • ig.isc.NODE_NAME.DomainConnectionPwd={V2.2}XXXXXX • Others as needed. There are several sections including passwords. Be sure to update all that apply to your environment.
<*PIA_HOME*>\webserv\<*DOMAIN_NAME*>\applications\peoplesoft\PSIGW.war\WEB-INF	gatewayUserProfile.xml	<password>{V2.2}XXXXXX</password>
<*PIA_HOME*>\webserv\<*DOMAIN_NAME*>\applications\peoplesoft\PORTAL.war\WEB-INF\psftdocs\<*SITE_NAME*>	configuration.properties	• KeyStorePwd={V2.2}XXXXXX • DomainConnectionPwd={V2.2}XXXXXX • WebUserId={V2.2}XXXXXX • WebPassword={V2.2}XXXXXX

4. After building the new key, copy psvault from the web server location to the application server location.

   Copy from <*PIA_HOME*>\webserv\<*DOMAIN_NAME*>\piaconfig\properties.

   Copy to <*PS_HOME*>\secvault.

Task 9-2-7: Installing the fontconfig Package for Download to Excel

The fontconfig package is required for the download to Excel feature, which downloads query results or data from a grid to a Microsoft Excel spreadsheet. The package is available in *PS_HOME/*setup/fontconfig. This applies to installations on Linux.

To install the fontconfig package:

1. If necessary, sign out of PIA.
2. In a terminal window, log in to the PeopleSoft environment as the root user.
3. Enter this command:

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
yum info fontconfig
```

If the package is installed in the environment, the command lists it. If it is not present, the command lists the repository where it is available.

4. If the package is not installed, as the root user, enter this command to install it from *PS_HOME*/setup:

```
yum install fontconfig
```

5. Sign in to PIA and try the download to Excel again.

Note. Restarting the Application Server should not be necessary.

If you are still unable to use download to Excel, check to be sure the machine can access the Internet.

See Also

PeopleTools: Applications User's Guide, "Navigating Through Data"

PeopleTools: Query, "Downloading Queries"

Task 9-3: Reviewing the Deployed File System and Users

This section discusses:

- Reviewing the Deployment File System

Task 9-3-1: Reviewing the Deployment File System

The PeopleSoft installation deployed by the PeopleSoft DPKs sets up an environment comprised of several directories. This table lists the directories with the location, contents of the directory, and the owner.

Directory	Description	Default Location
PS_HOME	*PS_HOME* is a secure location for the PeopleTools binary installation files.	<*BASE_DIR*>/pt/ps_home <*ptools_patch_ver*> The descriptor <*ptools_patch_ver*> is the PeopleSoft PeopleTools full release, for example 8.62.03.
PS_CFG_HOME	The *PS_CFG_HOME* location holds the configuration and log files for the PeopleSoft Application Server and Process Scheduler server domains.	C:\%USERPROFILE%\psft\pt\ <*ptools_major_ver*> For example, if the USERPROFILE environment variable is C:\Users\username, the location is C:\Users\username\psft\pt\8.62.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Directory	Description	Default Location
Web server (PIA) installation	The web server (PIA) configuration files are located in *PS_CFG_HOME/*webserv.	C:\%USERPROFILE%\psft\pt\<*ptools_major_ver*>\webserv For example, if the USERPROFILE environment variable is C:\Users\username, the location is C:\Users\username\psft\pt\8.62\webserv. The descriptor <*ptools_major_ver*> is the PeopleSoft PeopleTools major release without patch numbers; for example, 8.62.
PS_APP_HOME	The *PS_APP_HOME* location holds the PeopleSoft application installation files.	*BASE_DIR*/pt/<*Product*>_app_home The descriptor <*Product*> is an abbreviation for the PeopleSoft application, such as hcm for PeopleSoft Human Capital Management.
ORACLE_HOME (Oracle RDBMS software)	This directory includes the Oracle RDBMS database server and client connectivity software, including the SQL*Plus program. The Oracle RDBMS client installation is the 64-bit client used by PeopleSoft PeopleTools to connect from the PeopleSoft Application Server and Process Scheduler domains to the PeopleTools Database. **Note.** The default listener port is 1521.	*BASE_DIR*/db/oracle-server
Oracle WebLogic	This directory includes the installation files for the Oracle WebLogic web server. **Note.** The configuration files for the PIA domain are located in *PS_CFG_HOME/*webserv.	*BASE_DIR*/pt/bea/wlserver
Oracle Tuxedo	This directory includes the installation files for Oracle Tuxedo.	*BASE_DIR*/pt/bea/tuxedo

See Also

PeopleTools: System and Server Administration, "Securing PS_HOME and PS_CFG_HOME"

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 10

Deploying the PeopleTools Client DPK

This chapter discusses:

- Deploying the PeopleTools Client DPK

Task 10-1: Deploying the PeopleTools Client DPK

This section discusses:

- Understanding the Standalone Mode Deployment
- Preparing for the PeopleTools Client DPK Deployment
- Deploying in Standalone Mode

Task 10-1-1: Understanding the Standalone Mode Deployment

Use the standalone mode (SA mode) deployment for the PeopleTools Client DPK when deploying the DPK alone, without first deploying the PeopleSoft application or PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs. Use this method, for example, when carrying out a PeopleTools-only upgrade, or to install Change Assistant or one of the other utilities.

Install the PeopleTools Client DPK on a Microsoft Windows host that is certified for PeopleTools client installation.

Use SA mode deployment for the following tasks:

- PeopleTools Upgrade

  The deployment process installs a PeopleTools client *PS_HOME* that includes the directories needed for a PeopleSoft PeopleTools-only upgrade, such as data, projects, and scripts directories.

- PeopleTools Patch

  The deployment process installs a PeopleTools client *PS_HOME* that includes the directories needed for a PeopleSoft PeopleTools patch application, such as the PTP directory.

  See "Learning About the PeopleSoft Deployment Process," Reviewing the PeopleTools Patch DPKs.

- PeopleTools Client

  The deployment process installs a PeopleTools client *PS_HOME*. Choose the deployment type "None of the above" for this deployment.

- Change Assistant installation

  You can install Change Assistant as part of the PeopleTools Client deployment, or as a separate installation. The deployment process installs, but does not configure Change Assistant. To use Change Assistant for a PeopleSoft PeopleTools-only upgrade or to apply a PeopleSoft PeopleTools patch, you must configure Change Assistant manually. See the PeopleTools upgrade or patch documentation for information.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

If there is an existing Change Assistant installation, the deployment process removes or upgrades it to the current release, and saves a configuration file with the existing setup.

- Change Impact Analyzer

  You can install Change Impact Analyzer as part of the PeopleTools Client deployment, or as a separate installation.

- PeopleSoft Test Framework (PTF) installation

  You can install PeopleSoft Test Framework as part of the PeopleTools Client deployment, or as a separate installation.

- PeopleSoft Test Framework (PTF) configuration

  If you choose to configure PTF, the deployment process prompts you for setup parameters. You can configure PTF either at the same time that you install it or later. For example, you may choose to configure PTF separately if you install and configure it first, and then later the middle-tier components in your environment change. In this case, you do not need to install, but you can use the deployment process to reconfigure PTF.

- Configuration Manager

  If you accept the option to configure the PeopleTools client, the information that you supply is used to configure Configuration Manager.

- The PeopleTools Client deployment installs Microsoft Visual C++ Redistributable Packages for Visual Studio, which include required Microsoft C++ runtime libraries.

In addition to the Standalone Mode deployment described in this section, it is possible to deploy the PeopleTools Client in Update Manager mode. To deploy in Update Manager mode, you must have installed a PeopleSoft application image in full-tier mode and specified the PUM installation type. A full-tier PUM installation installs the directory *BASE_DIR*\pt\tools_client. The installation files in this directory are reserved for use in the Update Manager mode deployment.

See *PeopleSoft Deployment Packages for Update Images Installation (PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.62).*

Task 10-1-2: Preparing for the PeopleTools Client DPK Deployment

To obtain and extract the PeopleTools Client DPK:

1. Go to the download location for the PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs, and download only the last zip file to a location known as *DPK_INSTALL* on a Microsoft Windows computer.

   The last zip file, for example *Filename*_4of4.zip, is the PeopleSoft PeopleTools client DPK.

   See Obtaining the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Patch DPKs, for the filename syntax of the DPK zip files.

2. Extract the downloaded zip file, which yields another zip file.
3. Extract the resulting zip file to a local or shared directory; for example C:\tools_client.

Task 10-1-3: Deploying in Standalone Mode

This section assumes that the user running the script has administrative permission. The script includes the options in the following table:

Deployment	Script Commands
Install the PeopleTools client software in standalone mode.	`SetupPTClient.bat -t`

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Deployment	Script Commands

The setup script deploys to drive C by default. To deploy to a different drive, you can use the option `-d <drive>`
This option installs all specified software (Change Assistant, Change Impact Analyzer, PeopleSoft Test Framework), installation and temporary directories, and log files to the specified drive. The drive can be any valid local or mapped shared drive.
	`SetupPTClient.bat -t -d <drive>`
	For example, to install to drive E:
	`SetupPTClient.bat -t -d E`

Install the PeopleTools client software in standalone mode and enable logging.	`SetupPTClient.bat -t -l`
Apply CPUs for JDK and the Oracle Database Client on an existing PeopleTools client environment. This usage requires the presence of the PT-INFRA DPK.	For information on using the PT-INFRA DPK, see *PT-INFRA Deployment Package Installation (PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.62).*

To deploy the PeopleTools Client DPK in SA mode:

1. Verify that the Microsoft Windows folders options are set to show known file extensions.

   Hidden file extensions may interfere with the script. To show file extensions, for example:

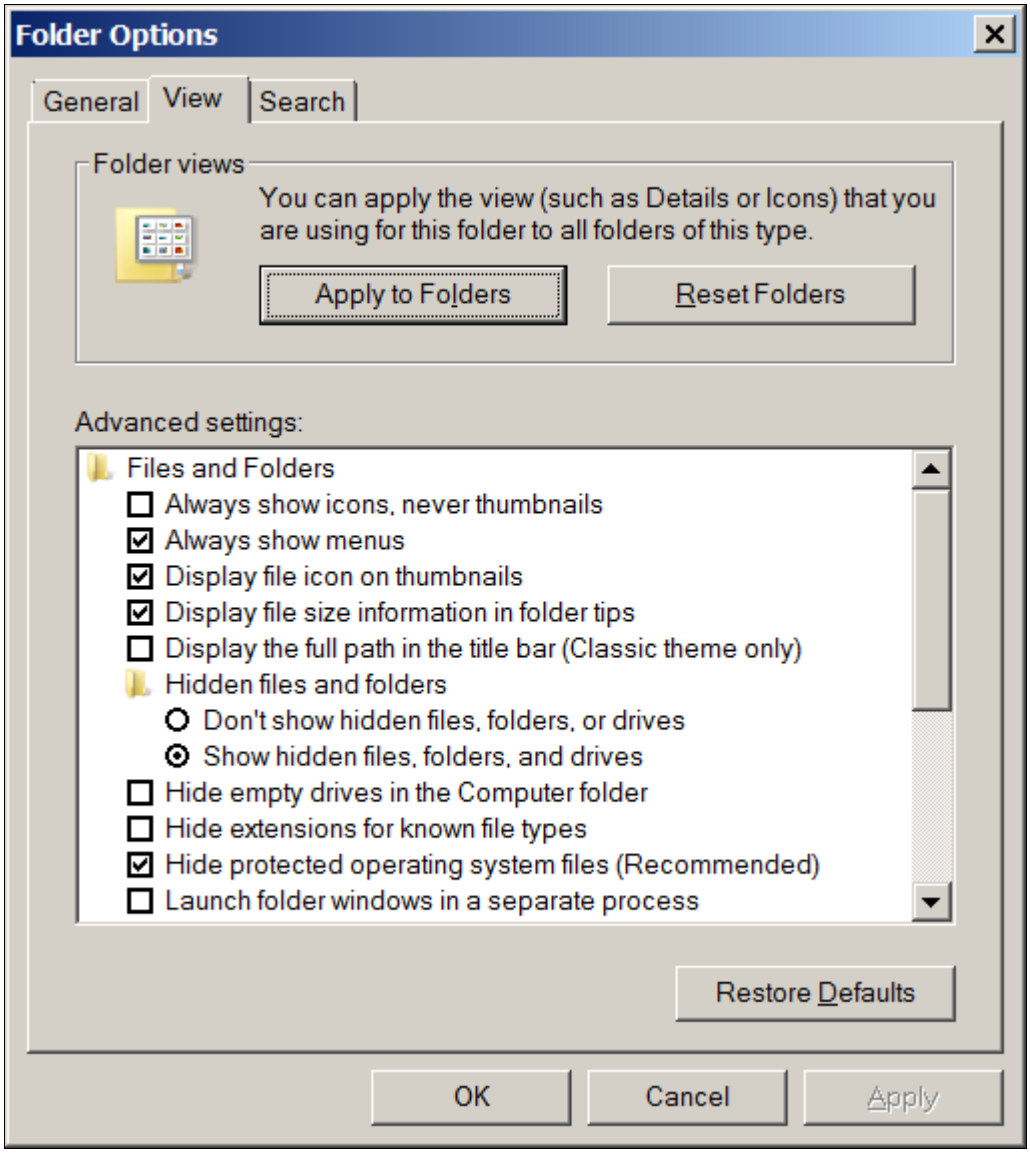
   a. Open Windows Explorer and select Tools, Folder Options.

   Note. Depending upon the Microsoft Windows operating system, you may use a different method to set the folder options.

   b. On the Folder Options dialog box, select the View tab.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

c. Verify that the check box for Hide extensions for known file types is not selected, as shown in this example:



Folder Options dialog box: View tab

d. Click OK to close the box.

2. Open a command prompt, running as administrator, and change directory to the C:\tools_client directory.

   The tools_client directory includes various sub-directories, and the following files:

   - SetupPTClient.bat

     The interactive script that installs the PeopleSoft PeopleTools components such as Application Designer, Change Assistant, Change Impact Analyzer, and PeopleSoft Test Framework.

   - readme.txt

3. Run the setup script with the following command to install to drive C.

   For other script options, see the table at the beginning of this section.

   ```
   SetupPTClient.bat -t
   ```


Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

4. Answer *y* (yes) at the following prompt to deploy the PeopleTools Client.

   If you are running the script after having deployed the PeopleTools Client previously, and you want to install Change Assistant, Change Impact Analyzer, or PeopleSoft Test Framework without deploying the PeopleTools Client again, answer *n* (no), and continue with step 9.

```
****** SetupPTClient started at 11:42:38.91 ******
set logger to true
 Do you want to deploy PeopleTools client? [Y/N]: y
```

5. Specify the RDBMS type for the PeopleTools Client that you want to deploy.

   In this example, the RDBMS is option *2*, Microsoft SQL Server.

```
 Please Select the Database Platform:
 1. Oracle
 2. Microsoft SQL Server
 3. DB2 for zOS
 Enter your choice [1-3] : 2
```

6. Specify the installation directory, referred to as PSHOME, for the PeopleTools Client, or press ENTER to accept the default directory, C:\PT<*release_number*>_Client_<*database_type*>, for example C:\PT8.62.02_Client_MSS.

```
Please specify the PSHOME for the PeopleTools Client
[C:\PT8.62.02_Client_MSS]:
```

7. Specify whether you want to supply configuration details at the following prompt.

```
Do you want to configure PeopleTools client? [Y/N]:
```

   If you answer *n* (no), you do not want to configure the PeopleTools client, continue with step 9.

   If you answer *y* (yes), specify the information for your environment at the following prompts:

```
Database Name: HCM92
Server Name: example.com
UserId: VP1
Connect ID: people
Connect Password:
Retype Connect Password:
```

Note. When you enter the password, the script does not echo the password or any masking characters as you type.

   - Specify the database name and database server to connect to.
   - The connect ID a valid database-level ID that the PeopleSoft system uses to make the initial connection to the database.
   - For User ID, specify a PeopleSoft user ID, such as VP1 or PS, that has permission to access the database from the PeopleTools client, Application Designer, and so on.

8. Select the type of deployment at the following prompt:

   See the definitions in Understanding the Standalone Mode Deployment.

```
Please make your selection for the Tools Client deployment:
 1. People Tools Full Upgrade
 2. People Tools Patch
 3. None of the above
```

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
 Enter your choice [1-3]:
```

9. Specify whether you want to install Change Assistant at the following prompt:

   ```
   Do you want to install Change Assistant? [Y/N]:
   ```

   If you answer *y* (yes), specify the installation directory, or accept the default, C:\Program Files\PeopleSoft\Change Assistant:

   ```
   Please specify the directory to install Change Assistant
   [C:\Program Files\PeopleSoft\Change Assistant]:
   ```

10. Specify whether you want to install Change Impact Analyzer at the following prompt:

    ```
    Do you want to install Change Impact Analyzer? [Y/N]:
    ```

    If you answer *y* (yes), specify the installation directory for Change Impact Analyzer, or accept the default, C:\Program Files\PeopleSoft\Change Impact Analyzer:

    ```
    Please specify the directory to install Change Impact Analyzer
    [C:\Program Files\PeopleSoft\Change Impact Analyzer]:
    ```

11. Specify whether you want to install PeopleSoft Test Framework at the following prompt:

    ```
    Do you want to install PeopleSoft Test Framework? [Y/N]:
    ```

    If you answer *y* (yes), specify the installation directory for PeopleSoft Test Framework, or accept the default, C:\Program Files\PeopleSoft\PeopleSoft Test Framework:

    ```
    Please specify the directory to install PeopleSoft Test Framework
    [C:\Program Files\PeopleSoft\PeopleSoft Test Framework]:
    ```

12. Specify whether you want to configure the PeopleSoft Test Framework at the following prompt:

    ```
    Do you want to configure PeopleSoft Test Framework? [Y/N]:
    ```

    If you answer *y* (yes), specify the information for your environment. For information on these parameters, see the PeopleTools Test Framework product documentation.

    See *PeopleTools: Test Framework,* "Installing a PTF Client."

    ```
    Database Name: HCM92
    Server:Port: example.com:443
    Node ID: node_name
    User ID: VP1
    Proxy [Y/N]: y
    Proxy Server: proxyserver.com
    Proxy Port: 5000
    Proxy User: username
    Proxy Password:*******
    Retype Proxy Password:*******
    ```

13. Review the setup steps.

    The messages you see depend upon your choices.

    ```
    Starting Tools Client Deployment!
    Deploying PeopleTools 8.62.02 Client in C:\PT8.62.02_Client_MSS
    Configuring PeopleTools 8.62.02 Client
    Deployment of PeopleTools Client Complete.
    Tools Client Deployment Ended.
    ```


Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
***** SetupPTClient ended at 11:35:08.91 ******
Please review C:\PeopleSoft\PTClientDeploy.log for additional⇒
 information.
```

14. To review the log file for the setup process, go to %USERPROFILE%\AppData\Local\Temp\PeopleSoft\PTClientDeploy.log.

    For example, if the USERPROFILE environment variable is C:\Users\username, the log file location is C:\Users\username\AppData\Local\Temp\PeopleSoft\PTClientDeploy.log.

    Note. If you used the `-d <drive>` option to deploy to a drive other than drive C:\, the log file is found in <drive>:\Users\<username>\AppData\Local\Temp\PeopleSoft\PTClientDeploy.log and creates the directory if it does not exist.

    The PTClientDeploy.log file includes a record of each of the steps in the PeopleTools Client deployment process. If any of the steps fail, a detailed error or warning message will be written to the same log file.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Part II

Discretionary Installation

The second part of the installation guide includes optional tasks, tasks that are only required by certain environments, and those that you may decide to defer until after the initial installation.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 11

Installing and Compiling COBOL on Windows

This chapter discusses:

- Understanding COBOL
- Prerequisites
- Preparing COBOL for a PeopleTools-only Upgrade
- Installing Visual COBOL on Microsoft Windows
- Using the Visual COBOL Compiler on Microsoft Windows

Understanding COBOL

This chapter describes how to compile and link PeopleSoft COBOL batch programs, if necessary.

COBOL is not needed for PeopleSoft PeopleTools because the Process Scheduler is written in C++. In addition, COBOL is not required for PeopleSoft applications that contain no COBOL programs. See My Oracle Support for the details on whether your application requires COBOL.

The chapter includes instructions for the Visual COBOL compiler.

See Also

"Preparing for Installation," Installing Supporting Applications

Using Visual COBOL with PeopleSoft, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2523494.1.

PeopleSoft Enterprise Frequently Asked Questions About PeopleSoft and COBOL Compilers, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 747059.1.

PeopleTools: Global Technology, "Understanding COBOL in a Unicode Environment"

Prerequisites

Before you attempt to run COBOL from the command line you should do the following:

- Make sure the variable PS_SERVER_CFG points to a valid psprcs.cfg file.
- Make sure %PS_HOME%\bin\server\winx86 is in your path. It should appear before %PS_HOME%\bin\client\winx86 if that also appears in the path.
- Before compiling COBOL, you must obtain and install Perl on the machine used to compile COBOL.

  Perl is used to perform conversions on COBOL source files. Make sure the Perl installation location is

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

included in the system's PATH environment variable. Contact the Perl vendor for installation and reference documentation.

Task 11-1: Preparing COBOL for a PeopleTools-only Upgrade

When performing a PeopleTools-only upgrade, if you have COBOL modules, recompile all PeopleSoft PeopleTools and PeopleSoft application COBOL programs, as explained in a later section.

See Recompiling COBOL on Microsoft Windows.

Ensure that the following COBOL runtime files in your CBLBIN*X* directories match those of your Visual COBOL installation.

For Visual COBOL 7 and later, the files are located in the *COBROOT*\bin folder, where *COBROOT* refers to the Visual COBOL installation folder.

- adis.dll
- cbldwinm.dll
- cblintm.dll
- cblprnt.dll
- cblrtsm.dll
- cblviom.dll
- csqlsupp.dll
- fs.dll
- fsmgr.dll
- mffh.dll
- mfsqlsmf.dll
- odbcrw64.dll
- oesqlebc.dll
- shell.dll
- cblexecm.exe
- cblxecwm.exe
- fs.exe
- fsclose.exe
- fsservice.exe
- mfsort.exe
- rebuild.exe
- run.exe
- runm.exe
- runw.exe
- runmw.exe

You can also refer to this list if you need to copy the run-time system files manually.

See the information on the Run-time System Files to Ship in the Visual COBOL documentation.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Task 11-2: Installing Visual COBOL on Microsoft Windows

This section discusses:

- Understanding Visual COBOL for Microsoft Windows
- Obtaining Visual COBOL Files from Oracle Software Delivery Cloud
- Managing Licenses for Visual COBOL V7.0 for Microsoft Windows
- Managing Licenses for Visual COBOL V9.0 for Microsoft Windows
- Installing Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2017 V7.0
- Installing Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2019 V7.0
- Installing Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2022 V9.0
- Installing Visual COBOL for Eclipse on Windows V7.0
- Installing Visual COBOL for Eclipse on Windows V9.0
- Installing Visual COBOL Build Tools for Windows (V7.0)
- Installing Visual COBOL Build Tools for Windows (V9.0)
- Installing COBOL Server for Windows V7.0
- Installing COBOL Server for Windows V9.0

Understanding Visual COBOL for Microsoft Windows

Rocket Software Visual COBOL® is a suite of products for developing, compiling, and debugging COBOL. You can select a product to integrate with your choice of integrated development environment (IDE).

Note. This product was formerly Micro Focus Visual COBOL. This documentation uses the name Visual COBOL.

Review the Visual COBOL data sheet for an overview of the Visual COBOL products.

See Rocket® Visual COBOL® data sheet, https://www.rocketsoftware.com/sites/default/files/resource_files/visual-cobol.pdf.

The current PeopleSoft PeopleTools release supports Visual COBOL V7.0 Patch Update 18 and Visual COBOL V9.0 Patch Update 18. You must install the base version of Visual COBOL products for Microsoft Windows before installing the patch updates.

Refer to My Oracle Support, Certifications, for the latest information on Visual COBOL versions that are supported for your environment.

Before installing any of the products of the current supported versions (Visual COBOL V7.0 Patch Update 18 and Visual COBOL V9.0 Patch Update 18) for Microsoft Windows, remove any existing, earlier installations of Visual COBOL. See the information on uninstalling in the Visual COBOL documentation.

Use these guidelines in choosing a Visual COBOL product supported for PeopleSoft installations on Microsoft Windows:

- Visual COBOL Build Tools for Windows.
  - Compiler and runtime
  - Install on systems to both compile and run COBOL programs.
  - Command-line tool.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

    - Use this command-line tool for environments that do not require advanced editing and debugging functionality.
    - Visual COBOL Build Tools for Windows has a separate installer, but the documentation is included with that for Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2017, Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2019, or Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2022.
- Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2017
    - Compiler, runtime, and IDE integration
    - Install on systems to both compile and run COBOL programs.
    - Use Visual Studio 2017 for editing and debugging.
    - You are responsible for obtaining and installing Visual Studio 2017 separately.
- Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2019
    - Compiler, runtime, and IDE integration
    - Install on systems to both compile and run COBOL programs.
    - Use Visual Studio 2019 for editing and debugging.
    - You are responsible for obtaining and installing Visual Studio 2019 separately.
- Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2022
    - Compiler, runtime, and IDE integration
    - Install on systems to both compile and run COBOL programs.
    - Use Visual Studio 2022 for editing and debugging.
    - You are responsible for obtaining and installing Visual Studio 2022 separately.
- Visual COBOL for Eclipse on Windows
    - Compiler, runtime, and IDE integration
    - Install on systems to both compile and run COBOL programs.
    - Use Eclipse for editing and debugging.
    - Eclipse is included as part of the installation.
- COBOL Server for Windows
    - Runtime only
    - Install on systems where you want to run compiled COBOL programs only.
    - The version of COBOL Server for Windows must be the same as or higher than that of the Visual COBOL program that you use to compile.
    - COBOL Server for Windows works with programs compiled with Visual COBOL products. You cannot use it as the runtime for programs that were compiled with Micro Focus Net Express.
    - COBOL Server for Windows cannot coexist on the same machine with Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2017, Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2019, Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2022, or Visual COBOL for Eclipse on Windows.

See Also

Using Visual COBOL with PeopleSoft, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2523494.1, https://support.oracle.com/epmos/faces/DocumentDisplay?id=2523494.1

Rocket Software Visual COBOL, https://www.rocketsoftware.com/en-us/products/cobol/visual-cobol

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Rocket Software Product Documentation web site, https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/

Task 11-2-1: Obtaining Visual COBOL Files from Oracle Software Delivery Cloud

The Visual COBOL installation files are available on Oracle Software Delivery Cloud. At this point you may have already downloaded the necessary files. This section includes additional information on finding and using the files for Visual COBOL if necessary.

1. Log in to Oracle Software Delivery Cloud at https://edelivery.oracle.com.
2. Enter Visual COBOL in the type-ahead search field, and select the download package for one of the supported versions of Visual COBOL.
3. Select the link Continue.
4. Select the products and documentation you want, and click Continue.
5. Read the license agreement, select the check box to acknowledge that you accept the agreement, and then click Continue.
6. Select the products that you want to download if necessary, and click Continue.

   Note that you need both the base version and the patch update, if any.
7. Click one of the filenames to download an individual zip file, or click Download to obtain all of the files listed.

   Download both the base installation files and the patches.

   The files include software and documentation. Save the zip files to a temporary directory on your local system. The directory where you save the zip files for both versions is referred to in this documentation as *VC_INSTALL*. You must extract (unzip) each file on the platform for which it is intended. For example, if you download the zip file for Microsoft Windows, you must unzip it on Microsoft Windows to avoid problems.

Task 11-2-2: Managing Licenses for Visual COBOL V7.0 for Microsoft Windows

Oracle is the exclusive reseller of the Visual COBOL compiler for use with PeopleSoft applications.

- Obtain a permanent license from Oracle.

  When a Visual COBOL compiler is licensed from Oracle, licenses are provided for both the compiler and unlimited run-time.

  Request the permanent license files by sending an email to licensecodes_ww@oracle.com. Specify the Visual COBOL product that you are licensing, and include your Company Name, Customer ID, and CSI number (if available).

  Note. There are no trial (temporary) licenses available for Visual COBOL V7.0.

- Install the license.

  After you complete the installation of the Visual COBOL product, start the License Administration utility, and install the permanent license. Visual COBOL V7.0 uses AutoPass licensing.

  You install the license in the License Administration tool. The Visual COBOL installation for the compiler or runtime software puts the License Administration tool in this location: C:\Program Files (x86)\Micro Focus\Licensing\cesadmintool.bat.

  See the Managing Licenses information in the Visual COBOL documentation for the license installation

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

options.

See Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2017 V7.0, Managing Licenses, https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_dg5_70_html/page/GUID-24E20084-06D2-4505-B10B-5C0877300A27.html.

See Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2019 V7.0, Managing Licenses, https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_dg4_70_html/page/GUID-24E20084-06D2-4505-B10B-5C0877300A27.html.

See Visual COBOL for Eclipse on Windows V7.0, Managing Licenses, https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_dg3_70_html/page/GUID-24E20084-06D2-4505-B10B-5C0877300A27.html.

Task 11-2-3: Managing Licenses for Visual COBOL V9.0 for Microsoft Windows

Oracle is the exclusive reseller of the Visual COBOL compiler for use with PeopleSoft applications.

- Obtain a permanent license from Oracle.

  When a Visual COBOL compiler is licensed from Oracle, licenses are provided for both the compiler and unlimited run-time.

  Request the permanent license files by sending an email to licensecodes_ww@oracle.com. Specify the Visual COBOL product that you are licensing, and include your Company Name, Customer ID, and CSI number (if available).

- Obtain a temporary license from Oracle.

  You can use a temporary (trial) license from Oracle to evaluate the Visual COBOL compiler and runtime products. Oracle provides a trial license (one, and *only one*) that is good for at least 30 days.

  The temporary license is available in the same Oracle Software Delivery Cloud download package (DLP) as the Visual COBOL software. The Visual COBOL products covered by the temporary licenses are listed in the included readme.txt.

  After you complete the installation of the Visual COBOL product, start the License Administration utility, and install the temporary license. You can view the number of days before the license expires in summary information in the License Administration utility.

- Install the license.

  After you complete the installation of the Visual COBOL product, start the License Administration utility, and install the permanent license. Visual COBOL V9.0 uses AutoPass licensing.

  You install the license in the License Administration tool. The Visual COBOL installation for the compiler or runtime software puts the License Administration tool in this location: C:\Program Files (x86)\Micro Focus\Licensing\cesadmintool.bat.

  See the Managing Licenses information in the Visual COBOL documentation for the license installation options.

  See Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2022 V9.0, Managing Licenses, https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_dg2_90_html/page/GUID-24E20084-06D2-4505-B10B-5C0877300A27.html.

  See Visual COBOL for Eclipse on Windows V9.0, Managing Licenses, https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_dg_90_html/page/GUID-24E20084-06D2-4505-B10B-5C0877300A27.html.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Task 11-2-4: Installing Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2017 V7.0

Install Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2017 V7.0 on systems that you use to compile COBOL. You can also obtain Visual Studio 2017 separately to use for editing and debugging.

After downloading your Visual COBOL files from Oracle Software Delivery Cloud, locate the installation instructions in the Visual COBOL documentation. Review the prerequisites, licensing information, and installation instructions.

1. Install Microsoft Windows Visual Studio 2017 if necessary.
2. Access the documentation site for Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2017 V7.0.

   See Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2017 V7.0, https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_dg5_70_html/page/GUID-CBF8DCDC-1F63-4C02-AC0C-7FABBE6A04AD.html.
3. Review and fulfill the system requirements in the Visual COBOL online documentation.

   See System Requirements, https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_dg5_70_html/page/GUID-1F000B89-90DA-4E93-B29E-BF9BED28C063.html.
4. Install Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2017 V7.0.

   See Installation, https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_dg5_70_html/page/GUID-FACEF60F-BAE3-446C-B2B4-4379A5DF6D9F.html.
5. Install Patch Update 18.0 for Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2017 V7.0.

To remove Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2017 V7.0, see the Visual COBOL documentation.

See Uninstalling, https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_dg5_70_html/page/GUID-0AB211F0-41FD-43DE-9B55-2903EC37C126.html.

Task 11-2-5: Installing Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2019 V7.0

Install Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2019 V7.0 on systems that you use to compile COBOL. You can also obtain Visual Studio 2019 separately to use for editing and debugging.

After downloading your Visual COBOL files from Oracle Software Delivery Cloud, locate the installation instructions in the Visual COBOL documentation. Review the prerequisites, licensing information, and installation instructions.

1. Install Microsoft Windows Visual Studio 2019 if necessary.
2. Access the documentation site for Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2019 V7.0.

   See Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2019 V7.0, https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_dg4_70_html/page/GUID-CBF8DCDC-1F63-4C02-AC0C-7FABBE6A04AD.html.
3. Review and fulfill the system requirements in the Visual COBOL online documentation.

   See System Requirements, https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_dg4_70_html/page/GUID-1F000B89-90DA-4E93-B29E-BF9BED28C063.html.
4. Install Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2019 V7.0.

   See Installation, https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_dg4_70_html/page/GUID-FACEF60F-BAE3-446C-B2B4-4379A5DF6D9F.html.
5. Install Patch Update 18.0 for Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2019 V7.0.

To remove Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2019 V7.0, see the Visual COBOL documentation.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

See Uninstalling, https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_dg4_70_html/page/GUID-0AB211F0-41FD-43DE-9B55-2903EC37C126.html.

Task 11-2-6: Installing Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2022 V9.0

Install Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2022 V9.0 on systems that you use to compile COBOL. You can also obtain Visual Studio 2022 separately to use for editing and debugging.

After downloading your Visual COBOL files from Oracle Software Delivery Cloud, locate the installation instructions in the Visual COBOL documentation. Review the prerequisites, licensing information, and installation instructions.

1. Install Microsoft Windows Visual Studio 2022 if necessary.
2. Access the documentation site for Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2022 V9.0.

   See Visual COBOL V9.0 for Visual Studio 2022, https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_dg2_90_html/page/GUID-CBF8DCDC-1F63-4C02-AC0C-7FABBE6A04AD.html.
3. Review and fulfill the system requirements in the Visual COBOL online documentation.

   See System Requirements, https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_dg2_90_html/page/GUID-1F000B89-90DA-4E93-B29E-BF9BED28C063.html.
4. Install Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2022 V9.0.

   See Installation, https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_dg2_90_html/page/GUID-FACEF60F-BAE3-446C-B2B4-4379A5DF6D9F.html.

To remove Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2022 V9.0, see the Visual COBOL documentation.

See Uninstalling, https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_dg2_90_html/page/GUID-0AB211F0-41FD-43DE-9B55-2903EC37C126.html.

Task 11-2-7: Installing Visual COBOL for Eclipse on Windows V7.0

Install Visual COBOL for Eclipse on Windows V7.0 on systems that you use to compile COBOL, and use Eclipse for editing and debugging.

After downloading your Visual COBOL files from Oracle Software Delivery Cloud, locate the installation instructions in the Visual COBOL documentation. Review the prerequisites, licensing information, and installation instructions.

1. Access the documentation site for Visual COBOL for Eclipse on Windows V7.0.

   See Visual COBOL V7.0 for Eclipse on Windows, https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_dg3_70_html/page/GUID-8D6B7358-AC35-4DAF-A445-607D8D97EBB2.html.
2. Review and fulfill the system requirements in the Visual COBOL online documentation.

   See System Requirements for Visual COBOL for Eclipse (Windows), https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_dg3_70_html/page/GUID-28F91105-1188-40B7-AF41-CD5303CAA544.html.
3. Install Visual COBOL for Eclipse on Windows V7.0.

   See Installing Visual COBOL for Eclipse (Windows), https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_dg3_70_html/page/GUID-6C2E928A-DE6C-4DBC-8F05-7816D71FAD9F.html.
4. Install Patch Update 18.0 for Visual COBOL 7.0.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

To remove Visual COBOL for Eclipse on Windows V7.0, see the Visual COBOL documentation.

See Uninstalling, https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_dg3_70_html/page/GUID-98EC358D-0BE5-4D01-866E-883068AD1282.html.

Task 11-2-8: Installing Visual COBOL for Eclipse on Windows V9.0

Install Visual COBOL for Eclipse on Windows V9.0 on systems that you use to compile COBOL, and use Eclipse for editing and debugging.

After downloading your Visual COBOL files from Oracle Software Delivery Cloud, locate the installation instructions in the Visual COBOL documentation. Review the prerequisites, licensing information, and installation instructions.

1. Access the documentation site for Visual COBOL for Eclipse on Windows V9.0.

   See Visual COBOL V9.0 for Eclipse on Windows, https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_dg_90_html/page/GUID-8D6B7358-AC35-4DAF-A445-607D8D97EBB2.html.

2. Review and fulfill the system requirements in the Visual COBOL online documentation.

   See System Requirements for Visual COBOL for Eclipse (Windows), https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_dg_90_html/page/GUID-28F91105-1188-40B7-AF41-CD5303CAA544.html.

3. Install Visual COBOL for Eclipse on Windows V9.0.

   See Installing Visual COBOL for Eclipse (Windows), https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_dg_90_html/page/GUID-6C2E928A-DE6C-4DBC-8F05-7816D71FAD9F.html.

To remove Visual COBOL for Eclipse on Windows V9.0, see the online documentation.

See Uninstalling, https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_dg_90_html/page/GUID-98EC358D-0BE5-4D01-866E-883068AD1282.html.

Task 11-2-9: Installing Visual COBOL Build Tools for Windows (V7.0)

Install Visual COBOL Build Tools for Windows on systems that you use to compile COBOL. After downloading your Visual COBOL files from Oracle Software Delivery Cloud, locate the installation instructions in the Visual COBOL documentation. Review the prerequisites, licensing information, and installation instructions.

The documentation for Visual COBOL Build Tools is part of the Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2019 V7.0 documentation.

See Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2019 V7.0, https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_dg4_70_html/page/GUID-CBF8DCDC-1F63-4C02-AC0C-7FABBE6A04AD.html.

1. Remove any existing installation of Visual COBOL 4.0 Build Tools for Windows.
2. Access the Visual COBOL Build Tools for Windows documentation on the Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2019 V7.0 site.

   See Visual COBOL Build Tools for Windows https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_dg4_70_html/page/GUID-E3E69237-F9B7-4401-8C61-5099372F2D19.html.

3. Review and fulfill the system requirements in the Visual COBOL online documentation.

   See Prerequisites for Using Visual COBOL Build Tools for Windows,

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_dg4_70_html/page/GUID-1E501959-6331-4CE3-814C-7A2FCA4736DD.html.

4. Install Visual COBOL 7.0 Build Tools.

   See Installing Visual COBOL Build Tools for Windows, https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_dg4_70_html/page/GUID-34DFF119-58A8-4C98-938F-2B72FCE0FE31.html.

5. Install Patch Update 18.0 for Visual COBOL 7.0.

Task 11-2-10: Installing Visual COBOL Build Tools for Windows (V9.0)

Install Visual COBOL Build Tools for Windows on systems that you use to compile COBOL. After downloading your Visual COBOL files from Oracle Software Delivery Cloud, locate the installation instructions in the Visual COBOL documentation. Review the prerequisites, licensing information, and installation instructions.

The documentation for Visual COBOL Build Tools is part of the Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2022 V9.0 documentation.

See Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2022 V9.0, https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_dg2_90_html/page/GUID-CBF8DCDC-1F63-4C02-AC0C-7FABBE6A04AD.html.

1. Remove any existing installation of Visual COBOL 4.0 Build Tools for Windows.
2. Access the Visual COBOL Build Tools for Windows documentation on the Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2022 V9.0 site.

   See Visual COBOL Build tools for Windows, https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_dg2_90_html/page/GUID-E3E69237-F9B7-4401-8C61-5099372F2D19.html.

3. Review and fulfill the system requirements for Visual COBOL Build Tools and for Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2022 V9.0.

   See Prerequisites for Using Visual COBOL Build Tools for Windows, https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_dg2_90_html/page/GUID-1E501959-6331-4CE3-814C-7A2FCA4736DD.html.

   See System Requirements for COBOL 9.0 for Visual Studio 2022, https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_dg2_90_html/page/GUID-1F000B89-90DA-4E93-B29E-BF9BED28C063.html.

4. Install Visual COBOL 9.0 Build Tools.

   See Installing Visual COBOL Build Tools for Windows, https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_dg2_90_html/page/GUID-34DFF119-58A8-4C98-938F-2B72FCE0FE31.html.

Task 11-2-11: Installing COBOL Server for Windows V7.0

Install COBOL Server for Windows V7.0 on systems where you want to run compiled COBOL programs only. After downloading your Visual COBOL files from Oracle Software Delivery Cloud, locate the installation instructions in the Visual COBOL documentation. Review the prerequisites, licensing information, and installation instructions.

1. Access the documentation site for COBOL Server for Windows V7.0.

   See COBOL Server for Windows V7.0, https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_rg2_70_html/page/GUID-F7D8FD6E-BDE0-4169-

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

8D8C-96DDFFF6B495.html.

2. Review and fulfill the system requirements in the Visual COBOL online documentation.

   See System Requirements, https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_rg2_70_html/page/GUID-4FA82D12-240B-4705-ABE5-1FC560BF11F2.html.

3. Install COBOL Server for Windows V7.0.

   See Installation, https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_rg2_70_html/page/GUID-FACEF60F-BAE3-446C-B2B4-4379A5DF6D9F.html.

4. Install Patch Update 18.0 for COBOL Server for Windows V7.0.

Task 11-2-12: Installing COBOL Server for Windows V9.0

Install COBOL Server for Windows V9.0 on systems where you want to run compiled COBOL programs only. After downloading your Visual COBOL files from Oracle Software Delivery Cloud, locate the installation instructions in the Visual COBOL documentation. Review the prerequisites, licensing information, and installation instructions.

1. Access the documentation site for COBOL Server for Windows V9.0.

   See COBOL Server for Windows V9.0, https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_rg_90_html/page/GUID-F7D8FD6E-BDE0-4169-8D8C-96DDFFF6B495.html.

2. Review and fulfill the system requirements in the Visual COBOL online documentation.

   See System Requirements, https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_rg_90_html/page/GUID-4FA82D12-240B-4705-ABE5-1FC560BF11F2.html.

3. Install COBOL Server for Windows V9.0.

   See Installation, https://docs.rocketsoftware.com/bundle/visualcobol_rg_90_html/page/GUID-FACEF60F-BAE3-446C-B2B4-4379A5DF6D9F.html.

Task 11-3: Using the Visual COBOL Compiler on Microsoft Windows

This section discusses:

- Understanding Visual COBOL Compilation
- Compiling Visual COBOL on Microsoft Windows with PS_HOME and PS_APP_HOME
- Compiling Visual COBOL on Microsoft Windows with PS_HOME, PS_APP_HOME, and PS_CUST_HOME Setup
- Recompiling Visual COBOL on Microsoft Windows
- Setting Up the COBOL Server for Windows Runtime
- Defining the GNT and INT Files
- Distributing Visual COBOL Binaries

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Understanding Visual COBOL Compilation

This section assumes that you are carrying out the compile process from your file server. (The COBOL compiler itself does not need to be on the file server, as long as the user can write to the file server and can link to the src and bin directories.) The recommended approach for the PeopleSoft installation is to use CBLBLD.BAT to compile all your COBOL source files at once. Another alternative is CBLMAKE.BAT, which you can use to compile selected COBOL files.

The way that you set up your installation environment determines how you compile COBOL. This section includes different procedures for the different installation environments, as follows:

- Installations with *PS_HOME* and *PS_APP_HOME*

  The PeopleSoft Application software is installed to a *PS_APP_HOME* location that is outside of the PeopleSoft PeopleTools installation location, *PS_HOME*. If the PS_APP_HOME environment variable is defined and is different from PS_HOME, the COBOL build scripts behave differently under certain build options. Follow the instructions in these sections:

  - Compiling COBOL on Microsoft Windows with PS_HOME and PS_APP_HOME
  - Defining the GNT and INT Files
- Installations with *PS_HOME, PS_APP_HOME,* and *PS_CUST_HOME*

  You have the option to place customized COBOL baseline sources into a location referenced by the environment variable PS_CUST_HOME.

  The *PS_CUST_HOME* directory structure must replicate that of *PS_HOME* or *PS_APP_HOME*; that is, any COBOL source file that is customized should be placed in the same relative path as was present in the original location.

  For example, if the original location for the COBOL source files is *PS_APP_HOME*/src/cbl, place the customized files in *PS_CUST_HOME*/src/cbl.

  If your environment includes customized files in a *PS_CUST_HOME* directory, as well as in *PS_HOME* and *PS_APP_HOME,* follow the instructions in these sections:

  - Compiling COBOL on Microsoft Windows with PS_HOME, PS_APP_HOME, and PS_CUST_HOME
  - Defining the GNT and INT Files

For those systems on which you only need to run COBOL, but do not need to compile it, you can install and configure the runtime product.

See Setting Up the COBOL Server for Windows Runtime.

Task 11-3-1: Compiling Visual COBOL on Microsoft Windows with PS_HOME and PS_APP_HOME

This section discusses:

- Compiling with CBLBLD.BAT with PS_HOME and PS_APP_HOME
- Compiling with CBLMAKE.BAT with PS_HOME and PS_APP_HOME

This section assumes that there is no separate *PS_CUST_HOME* directory with customized COBOL source files.

Compiling with CBLBLD.BAT with PS_HOME and PS_APP_HOME

The usage for running CBLBLD.BAT is:

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
cblbld <compile drive>  <compile directory> [BUILD_option] [BUILD_home]
```

Substitute the appropriate values as follows:

- <compile drive>

  Enter the drive letter for the drive containing the directory where the compile takes place.

- <compile directory>

  Enter the directory where the compile takes place. Be sure to include a space between <compile drive> and <compile directory>.

- BUILD_option

  The allowed values are nothing (blank), ASCII or Unicode.

  BUILD_option refers to the encoding scheme of your PeopleSoft installation. This parameter is optional.

- BUILD_home

  The allowed values are nothing (blank), PS_HOME or PS_APP_HOME.

  Note. The values PS_HOME and PS_APP_HOME are case-insensitive.

  BUILD_home refers to the directory from which the COBOL source files will be compiled.

  This parameter is optional.

  - If the option is PS_HOME, the COBOL source files placed under %PS_HOME%\src\cbl will be copied to *<compile drive>**<compile directory>*, compiled, and then copied to the target directory.
  - If the option is PS_APP_HOME, the COBOL source files placed under %PS_APP_HOME%\src\cbl will be copied to *<compile drive>**<compile directory>*, compiled, and then copied to the target directory.
  - If the option is blank, the COBOL source files under %PS_HOME%\src\cbl and COBOL source files under %PS_APP_HOME%\src\cbl will be copied to *<compile drive>**<compile directory>*, compiled one after another, and then copied to the target directory.

To compile COBOL sources on Microsoft Windows:

1. In a command prompt, set the environment variables described in this table:

Environment Variable	Purpose
PS_HOME	PeopleSoft PeopleTools home directory—that is, the drive letter and high-level directory where you installed PeopleSoft PeopleTools.
COBROOT	Drive letter and root directory of the COBOL compiler.
PS_APP_HOME	PeopleSoft Application home directory—that is, the drive letter and high-level directory where you installed the PeopleSoft Application software.

   For example:

```
set PS_HOME=C:\PTcompile
set COBROOT="C:\Program Files\VisualCobol70"
set PS_APP_HOME=C:\HRcompile
```

2. Change directory to *PS_HOME*\setup:

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
cd %PS_HOME%\setup
```

3. Run CBLBLD.BAT, using one of these methods:

   - To compile all the COBOL source files under your PeopleSoft application, that is, all PeopleSoft PeopleTools source files and all PeopleSoft Application source files, run this command:

     ```
     cblbld <compile drive> <compile directory>
     ```

     For example:

     ```
     cblbld c: \temp\PTcompile
     ```

   - To compile only PeopleSoft PeopleTools COBOL source files, run this command:

     ```
     cblbld <compile drive> <compile directory> PS_HOME
     ```

     For example:

     ```
     cblbld c: \temp\PTcompile PS_HOME
     ```

   - To compile only PeopleSoft Application COBOL source files, run this command:

     ```
     cblbld <compile drive> <compile directory> PS_APP_HOME
     ```

     For example:

     ```
     cblbld c: \temp\HRcompile PS_APP_HOME
     ```

PeopleSoft PeopleTools COBOL compiled executables will be placed under the <*PS_HOME*>\CBLBIN<*X*> directory. PeopleSoft Application COBOL compiled executables will be placed under the <*PS_APP_HOME*>\CBLBIN<*X*> directory. CBLBIN<X> will be one of the following:

- CBLBINA if you are using ANSI encoding scheme
- CBLBINU if you are using Unicode encoding scheme

Note. If you chose the Unicode option while installing PeopleSoft software, the file UNICODE.CFG was created in the *PS_HOME/*setup directory. UNICODE.CFG automatically triggers the batch file CBL2UNI.BAT when you run CBLBLD.BAT. Another batch file, CBLRTCPY.BAT, copies DLL files that are needed for COBOL to run from the compiler directory identified by the %COBROOT% setting into the appropriate CBLBIN directory (CBLBINA or CBLBINU) when you run CBLBLD. These files can reside anywhere as long as they are in the path. You can run either of these BAT files independently from the command line (they reside in *PS_HOME*\setup). For CBLRTCPY.BAT you need to specify a target directory.

Compiling with CBLMAKE.BAT with PS_HOME and PS_APP_HOME

CBLBLD.BAT compiles all your COBOL source files at once, which can take a lot of time. CBLMAKE.BAT, in contrast, lets you employ one or more parameters to compile a specific COBOL source file or a selected group of COBOL source files. The procedure is slightly different depending upon whether the file that you want to compile is a PeopleSoft Application or PeopleSoft PeopleTools COBOL file. Both procedures are covered in this section.

The following table describes the various options for CBLMAKE.BAT.

Option	Purpose
Cblmake	Compiles all source
Cblmake all	Compiles all source

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Option	Purpose
Cblmake PT*	Compiles all source files that start with PT
Cblmake PT* ALL	Compiles all source files that start with PT
Cblmake PT* INT	Generates INT files for all source files that start with PT
Cblmake PT* GNT	Generates GNT files for all source files that start with PT
Cblmake PT* EXE	Generates EXE files for all source files that start with PT
Cblmake PTPDBTST INT	Generates PTPDBTST.INT file
Cblmake PTPDBTST INT LIST	Generates PTPDBTST.INT and source listing file
Cblmake PTPDBTST GNT	Generates PTPDBTST.GNT file
Cblmake PTPDBTST EXE	Generates PTPDBTST.EXE file

To compile a PeopleSoft Application COBOL file with CBLMAKE.BAT:

1. Open a command prompt window.
2. Verify that the PS_HOME, COBROOT, and PS_APP_HOME environment variables are set, as previously defined.

   See Compiling with CBLBLD.BAT with a PS_APP_HOME Setup.
3. Verify that the environment variable PS_compile_apps is set, as follows:

   ```
   set PS_compile_apps=Y
   ```

   Important! This variable setting is required for individual file compilation with CBLMAKE.BAT.
4. Make sure the compile directory, <*compile directory*>, exists, and that you have write permission to it.

   This directory may already exist if you have run CBLBLD.BAT before. If it does exist, remove any files residing there—just as a safeguard. If it does not exist, you need to create it.
5. Change to the *PS_HOME*\setup directory.
6. If the installation is Unicode, run CBL2UNI (with no parameters).
7. Execute the following command to copy all the COBOL source files from the *PS_APP_HOME* directory to the compile directory:

   ```
   cblsrc <source directory>    <compile directory>
   ```

   Here <*source directory*> is the drive and directory where the source resides (it should be the same as *PS_APP_HOME*), and <*compile directory*> is the drive and directory to which the source files will be copied.

   For example, the following command will take the COBOL source from *PS_APP_HOME* and copy all the necessary files to the location where the compile process will take place, c:\temp\HRcompile in this example:

   ```
   cblsrc %PS_APP_HOME% c:\temp\HRcompile
   ```

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Note. The compile in the next step will generate a GNT file unless the exception file, CBLINT.*XX* already exists (the *XX* represents the Product ID). CBLINT.*XX* contains the list of files that need to be compiled to the INT file. Make sure the intended CBLINT.*XX* is located under <*compile directory*> before executing CBLMAKE.

8. After CBLSRC completes, change directories to the compile directory, and run CBLMAKE.BAT, using the basic syntax as well as the CBLMAKE table shown earlier as your guide.

   For example, to compile a file named GPPDPRUN, run this command:

   ```
   cblmake GPPDPRUN
   ```

9. After CBLMAKE.BAT completes, copy the EXE, GNT, or INT files to the appropriate <*PS_APP_HOME*>\CBLBIN<*X*> directory (CBLBINA for ANSI or CBLBINU for Unicode).

   These examples use the ANSI encoding:

   ```
   copy *.exe %PS_APP_HOME%\cblbina
   copy *.gnt %PS_APP_HOME%\cblbina
   copy *.int %PS_APP_HOME%\cblbina
   ```

   Note. You have to copy these files to the appropriate cblbin directory manually when you use CBLMAKE; they are not copied automatically, as when you use CBLBLD.

10. Verify that the compiler runtime files (*.EXE and *.DLL) are present in the <*PS_APP_HOME*>\CBLBIN<*X*> directory.

    If they are not present, then you will have to run %PS_HOME%\setup\cblrtcpy.bat as follows:

    ```
    cblrtcpy %PS_APP_HOME%\cblbina
    ```

    See Preparing Visual COBOL for a PeopleTools-only Upgrade for the list of files.

The procedure to compile a PeopleSoft PeopleTools COBOL file with CBLMAKE.BAT is similar, but the environment variable PS_compile_apps must *not* be set.

1. Open a command prompt window.
2. Verify that the PS_HOME, COBROOT, and PS_APP_HOME environment variables are set, as previously defined.

   See Compiling with CBLBLD.BAT with a PS_HOME and PS_APP_HOME.

3. Verify that the environment variable PS_compile_apps is *not* set, as follows:

   ```
   set PS_compile_apps=
   ```

   Important! Unsetting this environment variable is required for individual file compilation with CBLMAKE.BAT for PeopleSoft PeopleTools files.

4. Make sure the compile directory, <*compile directory*>, exists, and that you have write permission to it.

   This directory may already exist if you have run CBLBLD.BAT before. If it does exist, remove any files residing there—just as a safeguard. If it does not exist, you need to create it.

5. Change to the *PS_HOME*\setup directory.
6. If the installation is Unicode, run CBL2UNI (with no parameters).
7. Execute the following command to copy all the COBOL source files from the *PS_HOME* directory to the compile directory:

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
cblsrc <source directory>    <compile directory>
```

where <*source directory*> is the drive and directory where the source resides (it should be the same as *PS_HOME*), and <*compile directory*> is the drive and directory to which the source files will be copied.

For example, the following command will take the COBOL source from *PS_HOME* and copy all the necessary files to the location where the compile process will take place, c:\temp\PTcompile in this example:

```
cblsrc %PS_HOME% c:\temp\PTcompile
```

8. After CBLSRC completes, change directories to the compile directory, and run CBLMAKE.BAT, using the basic syntax as well as the CBLMAKE table shown earlier as your guide.

   For example, to compile a file named PTPDBTST, run this command:

   ```
   cblmake PTPDBTST
   ```

9. After CBLMAKE.BAT completes, copy the EXE, GNT, or INT files to the appropriate <*PS_HOME*>\CBLBIN<*X*> directory (CBLBINA for ANSI or CBLBINU for Unicode).

   These examples use the ANSI encoding:

   ```
   copy *.exe %PS_HOME%\cblbina
   copy *.gnt %PS_HOME%\cblbina
   copy *.int %PS_HOME%\cblbina
   ```

   Note. You have to copy these files to the appropriate cblbin directory manually when you use CBLMAKE; they are not copied automatically, as when you use CBLBLD.

10. Verify that the compiler runtime files (*.EXE and *.DLL) are present in the <*PS_HOME*>\CBLBIN<*X*> directory.

    If they are not present, then you will have to run %PS_HOME%\setup\cblrtcpy.bat as follows:

    ```
    cblrtcpy %PS_HOME%\cblbina
    ```

    See Preparing Visual COBOL for a PeopleTools-only Upgrade for the list of files.

Note. If you plan to use cblmake.bat to compile a single (or a set) of PeopleSoft PeopleTools or PeopleSoft Application COBOL program at the same time, it would be a good idea to use two different command prompts and two different compile directories—one for PeopleSoft PeopleTools COBOL programs and the other for the PeopleSoft Application COBOL programs. This avoids setting and unsetting the PS_compile_apps environment variable.

Task 11-3-2: Compiling Visual COBOL on Microsoft Windows with PS_HOME, PS_APP_HOME, and PS_CUST_HOME Setup

This section discusses:

- Compiling with CBLBLD.BAT with PS_HOME, PS_APP_HOME, and PS_CUST_HOME
- Compiling with CBLMAKE.BAT with PS_HOME, PS_APP_HOME, and PS_CUST_HOME

This section assumes that you have set up a PS_CUST_HOME environment variable for customized COBOL source files.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Compiling with CBLBLD.BAT with PS_HOME, PS_APP_HOME, and PS_CUST_HOME

The usage for running CBLBLD.BAT is:

```
cblbld <compile drive>  <compile directory> [BUILD_option] [BUILD_home]
```

Substitute the appropriate values as follows:

- <compile drive>

  Enter the drive letter for the drive containing the directory where the compile takes place.

- <compile directory>

  Enter the directory where the compile takes place. Be sure to include a space between <compile drive> and <compile directory>.

- BUILD_option

  The allowed values are nothing (blank), ASCII or Unicode.

  BUILD_option refers to the encoding scheme of your PeopleSoft installation. This parameter is optional.

- BUILD_home

  The allowed values are nothing (blank), PS_HOME, PS_APP_HOME, or PS_CUST_HOME.

  Note. The values PS_HOME, PS_APP_HOME, and PS_CUST_HOME are case-insensitive.

  BUILD_home refers to the directory from which the COBOL source files will be compiled.

  This parameter is optional.

  - If the option is PS_HOME, the COBOL source files placed under %PS_HOME%\src\cbl will be copied to *<compile drive>**<compile directory>*, compiled, and then copied to the target directory.
  - If the option is PS_APP_HOME, the COBOL source files placed under %PS_APP_HOME%\src\cbl will be copied to *<compile drive>**<compile directory>*, compiled, and then copied to the target directory.
  - If the option is PS_CUST_HOME, the COBOL source files placed under %PS_CUST_HOME%\src\cbl will be copied to *<compile drive>**<compile directory>*, compiled, and then copied to the target directory.
  - If the option is blank, the COBOL source files under %PS_HOME%\src\cbl, under %PS_APP_HOME%\src\cbl (if PS_APP_HOME is different from PS_HOME), and under %PS_CUST_HOME%\src\cbl will be copied to *<compile drive>**<compile directory>*, compiled one after the other, and then copied to the target directory.

To compile COBOL sources on Microsoft Windows:

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

1. In a command prompt, set the environment variables described in this table:

Environment Variable	Purpose
PS_HOME	PeopleSoft PeopleTools home directory—that is, the drive letter and high-level directory where you installed PeopleSoft PeopleTools.
PS_APP_HOME	PeopleSoft Application home directory—that is, the drive letter and high-level directory where you installed the PeopleSoft Application software.
PS_CUST_HOME	PeopleSoft Application customized home directory—that is, the drive letter and high-level directory containing your customized PeopleSoft COBOL programs.
COBROOT	Drive letter and root directory of the COBOL compiler.

   For example:

```
set PS_HOME=C:\PTcompile
set COBROOT="C:\Program Files\VisualCobol90"
set PS_CUST_HOME=C:\CUSTcompile
set PS_APP_HOME=C:\HRcompile
```

2. Change directory to *PS_HOME*\setup:

```
cd %PS_HOME%\setup
```

3. Run CBLBLD.BAT, using one of these methods:

   - To compile all the COBOL source files under your PeopleSoft application, that is, all PeopleSoft PeopleTools source files, all PeopleSoft Application source files, and all customized PeopleSoft source files, run this command:

     ```
     cblbld <compile drive> <compile directory>
     ```

     For example:

     ```
     cblbld c: \temp\PTcompile
     ```

   - To compile only PeopleSoft PeopleTools and PeopleSoft Application COBOL source files, run this command:

     ```
     cblbld <compile drive> <compile directory> PS_HOME
     ```

     For example:

     ```
     cblbld c: \temp\PTcompile PS_HOME
     ```

   - To compile only customized PeopleSoft Application or PeopleSoft PeopleTools COBOL source files, run this command:

     ```
     cblbld <compile drive> <compile directory> PS_CUST_HOME
     ```

     For example:

     ```
     cblbld c: \temp\CUSTcompile PS_CUST_HOME
     ```

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Delivered (that is, non-customized) PeopleSoft PeopleTools and PeopleSoft Application COBOL compiled executables will be placed under the <*PS_HOME*>\CBLBIN<*X*> directory. Customized PeopleSoft Application or PeopleSoft PeopleTools COBOL compiled executables will be placed under the <*PS_CUST_HOME*>\CBLBIN<*X*> directory. CBLBIN<X> will be one of the following:

- CBLBINA if you are using ANSI encoding scheme
- CBLBINU if you are using Unicode encoding scheme

Compiling with CBLMAKE.BAT with PS_HOME, PS_APP_HOME, and PS_CUST_HOME

CBLBLD.BAT compiles all your COBOL source files at once, which can take a lot of time. CBLMAKE.BAT, in contrast, lets you employ one or more parameters to compile a specific COBOL source file or a selected group of COBOL files. The procedure is slightly different depending upon whether the file that you want to compile is a PeopleSoft Application, PeopleSoft PeopleTools, or customized COBOL source file. Both procedures are covered in this section.

Note. The options for CBLMAKE.BAT are defined in a table in the previous section Compiling with CBLMAKE.BAT with a *PS_APP_HOME* Setup.

To compile a customized COBOL file with CBLMAKE.BAT:

1. Open a command prompt window.
2. Verify that the PS_HOME, COBROOT, PS_APP_HOME, and PS_CUST_HOME environment variables are set, as previously defined.

   See Compiling with CBLBLD.BAT with a PS_CUST_HOME Setup.
3. Verify that the environment variable PS_compile_cust is set, as follows:

   ```
   set PS_compile_cust=Y
   ```

   Important! This variable setting is required for individual file compilation with CBLMAKE.BAT.

   ---
4. Ensure that the compile directory, <*compile directory*>, exists, and that you have write permission to it.

   This directory may already exist if you have run CBLBLD.BAT before. If it does exist, remove any files residing there—just as a safeguard. If it does not exist, you need to create it.
5. Change to the *PS_HOME*\setup directory.
6. If the installation is Unicode, run CBL2UNI (with no parameters).
7. Execute the following command to copy all the COBOL source files from the *PS_CUST_HOME* directory to the compile directory:

   ```
   cblsrc <source directory>    <compile directory>
   ```

   Here <*source directory*> is the drive and directory where the source resides (it should be the same as *PS_CUST_HOME*), and <*compile directory*> is the drive and directory to which the source files will be copied.

   For example, the following command will take the COBOL source files from *PS_CUST_HOME* and copy all the necessary files to the location where the compile process will take place, c:\temp\CUSTcompile in this example:

   ```
   cblsrc %PS_CUST_HOME% c:\temp\CUSTcompile
   ```

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Note. The compile in the next step will generate a GNT file unless the exception file, CBLINT.*XX* already exists (the *XX* represents the Product ID). CBLINT.*XX* contains the list of files that need to be compiled to the INT file. Make sure the intended CBLINT.*XX* is located under <*compile directory*> before executing CBLMAKE.

8. After CBLSRC completes, change directories to the compile directory, and run CBLMAKE.BAT, using the basic syntax as well as the CBLMAKE table shown earlier as your guide.

   For example, to compile a file named GPPDPRUN, run this command:

   ```
   cblmake GPPDPRUN
   ```

9. After CBLMAKE.BAT completes, copy the EXE, GNT, or INT files to the appropriate <*PS_CUST_HOME*>\CBLBIN<*X*> directory (CBLBINA for ANSI or CBLBINU for Unicode).

   These examples use the ANSI encoding:

   ```
   copy *.exe %PS_CUST_HOME%\cblbina
   copy *.gnt %PS_CUST_HOME%\cblbina
   copy *.int %PS_CUST_HOME%\cblbina
   ```

   Note. You have to copy these files to the appropriate cblbin directory manually when you use CBLMAKE; they are not copied automatically, as when you use CBLBLD.

10. Verify that the compiler runtime files (*.EXE and *.DLL) are present in the <*PS_CUST_HOME*>\CBLBIN<*X*> directory.

    If they are not present, then you will have to run %PS_HOME%\setup\cblrtcpy.bat as follows:

    ```
    cblrtcpy %PS_CUST_HOME%\cblbina
    ```

    See Preparing Visual COBOL for a PeopleTools-only Upgrade for the list of files.

The procedure to compile a PeopleSoft PeopleTools COBOL file with CBLMAKE.BAT is similar, but the environment variable PS_compile_cust must *not* be set.

1. Open a command prompt window.
2. Verify that the PS_HOME, COBROOT, and PS_APP_HOME environment variables are set, as previously defined.

   See Compiling with CBLBLD.BAT with a PS_HOME and PS_APP_HOME.

3. Verify that the environment variable PS_compile_cust is *not* set, as follows:

   ```
   set PS_compile_cust=
   ```

   Important! Unsetting this environment variable is required for individual file compilation with CBLMAKE.BAT for PeopleSoft PeopleTools files.

4. Make sure the compile directory, <*compile directory*>, exists, and that you have write permission to it.

   This directory may already exist if you have run CBLBLD.BAT before. If it does exist, remove any files residing there—just as a safeguard. If it does not exist, you need to create it.

5. Change to the *PS_HOME*\setup directory.
6. If the installation is Unicode, run CBL2UNI (with no parameters).
7. Execute the following command to copy all the COBOL source files from the *PS_HOME* directory to the compile directory:

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
cblsrc <source directory>    <compile directory>
```

Here <*source directory*> is the drive and directory where the source resides (it should be the same as *PS_HOME*), and <*compile directory*> is the drive and directory to which the source files will be copied.

For example, the following command will take the COBOL source from *PS_HOME* and copy all the necessary files to the location where the compile process will take place, c:\temp\PTcompile in this example:

```
cblsrc %PS_HOME% c:\temp\PTcompile
```

8. After CBLSRC completes, change directories to the compile directory, and run CBLMAKE.BAT, using the basic syntax as well as the CBLMAKE table shown earlier as your guide.

   For example, to compile a file named PTPDBTST, run this command:

   ```
   cblmake PTPDBTST
   ```

9. After CBLMAKE.BAT completes, copy the EXE, GNT, or INT files to the appropriate <*PS_HOME*>\CBLBIN<*X*> directory (CBLBINA for ANSI or CBLBINU for Unicode).

   These examples use the ANSI encoding:

   ```
   copy *.exe %PS_HOME%\cblbina
   copy *.gnt %PS_HOME%\cblbina
   copy *.int %PS_HOME%\cblbina
   ```

   Note. You have to copy these files to the appropriate cblbin directory manually when you use CBLMAKE; they are not copied automatically, as when you use CBLBLD.

10. Verify that the compiler runtime files (*.EXE and *.DLL) are present in the <*PS_HOME*>\CBLBIN<*X*> directory.

    If they are not present, then you will have to run %PS_HOME%\setup\cblrtcpy.bat as follows:

    ```
    cblrtcpy %PS_HOME%\cblbina
    ```

    See Preparing Visual COBOL for a PeopleTools-only Upgrade for the list of files.

Note. If you plan to use cblmake.bat to compile a single (or a set) of PeopleSoft PeopleTools or PeopleSoft Application COBOL program at the same time, it would be a good idea to use two different command prompts and two different compile directories—one for PeopleSoft PeopleTools COBOL programs and the other for the PeopleSoft Application COBOL programs. This avoids setting and unsetting the PS_compile_cust environment variable.

Task 11-3-3: Recompiling Visual COBOL on Microsoft Windows

You always need to compile at installation, so you will only need to recompile COBOL in the following situations:

- You are installing PeopleSoft software for the first time.
- The supported COBOL compiler changes.
- You change the version of your RDBMS.
- You change the version of your operating system.
- You apply a PeopleSoft PeopleTools upgrade, patch, or fix.

You can recompile selected COBOL files by using CBLMAKE.BAT, or recompile all your COBOL source files by using CBLBLD.BAT.

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Note. If you want to recompile all your COBOL, you can follow the appropriate procedure for compiling COBOL, as described earlier.

See Compiling COBOL on Microsoft Windows with PS_HOME and PS_APP_HOME, or Compiling COBOL on Microsoft Windows with PS_HOME, PS_APP_HOME, and PS_CUST_HOME.

Task 11-3-4: Setting Up the COBOL Server for Windows Runtime

This section discusses:

- Understanding the COBOL Server for Windows Runtime
- Managing the COBOL Server for Windows Runtime License
- Setting Up the COBOL Server for Windows Runtime

Understanding the COBOL Server for Windows Runtime

For systems that will only run PeopleSoft application COBOL programs, where no compiling is needed, you can install the Visual COBOL runtime program only, COBOL Server for Windows. Typically, PeopleSoft application COBOL programs are run on PeopleSoft Application Server systems and PeopleSoft Process Scheduler systems.

Do not install the runtime program on the same system as the Visual COBOL development and integration program. The Visual COBOL development programs include a runtime program. On systems where you compiled the programs you do not need to install a separate runtime program. Be sure to obtain separate installation files and separate license files for COBOL Server for Windows.

Managing the COBOL Server for Windows Runtime License

The installation for the COBOL Server for Windows runtime software puts the License Administration tool in this location:

C:\Program Files (x86)\Common Files\SafeNet Sentinel\Sentinel RMS License Manager\WinNT\cesadmintool

After obtaining your license file from Oracle, see the Managing Licenses information in the Visual COBOL documentation to install it for the COBOL Server for Windows.

Setting Up the COBOL Server for Windows Runtime

To set up the COBOL Server for Windows runtime:

1. Install Visual COBOL Build Tools for Windows, Visual COBOL for Visual Studio 2019, or Visual COBOL for Eclipse for Windows on the development system.
2. On the Visual COBOL development system, compile the PeopleSoft application COBOL files.

   When CBLBLD.bat is run as part of the compilation process, it invokes CBLRTCPY.bat to copy the COBOL runtime .dll and .exe files, from the %COBROOT%\bin directory to *PS_HOME*\CBLBIN*X* directory on the development system.

   CBLBIN*X* is CBLBINA, or CBLBINU, based on the compilation mode of ASCII or Unicode respectively.
3. On the runtime system, install the runtime program, COBOL Server for Windows.
4. On the runtime system, install the license for COBOL Server for Windows.
5. Copy *PS_HOME*\CBLBIN*X* from the development system to the runtime system.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

See Distributing Visual COBOL Binaries.

6. On the runtime system, set the COBROOT environment variable to reference the installation location for COBOL Server for Windows; for example:

   ```
   set COBROOT="C:\Program Files\CobolServer60"
   ```

7. On the runtime system, run CBLRTCPY.bat to copy the COBOL runtime .dll and .exe files, from the %COBROOT%\bin directory to the CBLBIN*X* directories under *PS_HOME, PS_APP_HOME*, and (if necessary) *PS_CUST_HOME* (all locations on the runtime system).

   Run the following commands and specify the location of the files that you copied in step 5.

   ```
   PS_HOME\setup\cblrtcpy.bat PS_HOME\CBLBINX
   PS_HOME\setup\cblrtcpy.bat PS_APP_HOME\CBLBINX
   PS_HOME\setup\cblrtcpy.bat PS_CUST_HOME\CBLBINX
   ```

8. Start running the COBOL programs.

Task 11-3-5: Defining the GNT and INT Files

By default, the compile generates a GNT file unless the exception file, CBLINT.*XX* already exists. CBLINT.*XX* contains the list of files that need to be compiled to the INT file.

Note. The INT exception file is sometimes needed to overcome a Visual COBOL execution error with GNT files.

For example, the exception file, CBLINT.PT, where *PT* represents PeopleTools, would contain the following information:

```
Call cblcrint <file name without file extension>
```

or:

```
Call cblcprint PTPDBTST
```

Task 11-3-6: Distributing Visual COBOL Binaries

After you have compiled your COBOL, you must transfer it to the needed locations. The required action depends upon how you set up *PS_HOME, PS_APP_HOME,* and *PS_CUST_HOME.*

- Installations with *PS_HOME* and *PS_APP_HOME*

  If you do not have a *PS_CUST_HOME* location with customized files:

  1. Copy the contents of <*PS_HOME*>\CBLBIN<*X*> (CBLBINA or CBLBINU) directory into <*PS_HOME*>\CBLBIN<*X*> (CBLBINA or CBLBINU) on your batch and application server machines.
  2. Copy the contents of <*PS_APP_HOME*>\CBLBIN<*X*> (CBLBINA or CBLBINU) directory into <*PS_APP_HOME*>\CBLBIN<*X*> (CBLBINA or CBLBINU) on your batch and application server machines.

- Installations with *PS_HOME, PS_APP_HOME,* and *PS_CUST_HOME*

  If you have customized files in *PS_CUST_HOME*:

  1. Copy the contents of <*PS_HOME*>\CBLBIN<*X*> (CBLBINA or CBLBINU) directory into <*PS_HOME*>\CBLBIN<*X*> (CBLBINA or CBLBINU) on your batch and application server machines.
  2. Copy the contents of <*PS_APP_HOME*>\CBLBIN<*X*> (CBLBINA or CBLBINU) directory into <*PS_APP_HOME*>\CBLBIN<*X*> (CBLBINA or CBLBINU) on your batch and application server machines.

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

3. Copy the contents of <*PS_CUST_HOME*>\CBLBIN<*X*> (CBLBINA or CBLBINU) directory into <*PS_CUST_HOME*>\CBLBIN<*X*> (CBLBINA or CBLBINU) on your batch and application server machines.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 12

Installing Web Server Products

This chapter discusses:

- Installing Oracle WebLogic Server

Task 12-1: Installing Oracle WebLogic Server

This section discusses:

- Understanding the Oracle WebLogic Installation
- Reviewing Troubleshooting Tips
- Obtaining Oracle WebLogic Installation Files from Oracle Software Delivery Cloud
- Installing JDK
- Installing Oracle WebLogic on Microsoft Windows
- Configuring JDK for Daylight Savings Time Change
- Removing the Oracle WebLogic Installation on Microsoft Windows

Understanding the Oracle WebLogic Installation

PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.62 supports Java-enabled Oracle WebLogic Server 14.1.2.0.0. You must install an operating-system specific 64-bit Java Developers Kit (JDK) before beginning the Oracle WebLogic installation.

See Installing JDK for Oracle WebLogic.

This section describes a traditional installation of Oracle WebLogic. When you use the PeopleSoft DPKs for either a full-tier installation using the PeopleSoft Update Images or for a mid-tier installation using the PeopleTools DPKs, Oracle WebLogic is installed as part of the installation, and you do not need to carry out the separate installation in this section. If you choose to install Oracle WebLogic independently of the DPK installation, you can obtain installation files for Oracle WebLogic on the Oracle Software Delivery Cloud portal and use the steps in this section.

See Obtaining Oracle WebLogic Installation Files from Oracle Software Delivery Cloud.

Note that to use a separate Oracle WebLogic installation with a DPK deployment, you must use customizations to specify the Oracle WebLogic installation location.

See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations," Preparing the Customization File for Component Software Locations.

Oracle publishes critical patch updates for Oracle WebLogic regularly. After completing the installation instructions in this section, review the information for FMW Infrastructure / WebLogic Server and apply the latest patch.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

See Critical Patch Update (CPU) Patch Advisor for Oracle Fusion Middleware, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2806740.2.

To familiarize yourself with the most current support information and information about any required Oracle WebLogic service packs based on operating system platform or PeopleSoft PeopleTools versions, consult the Certifications area of My Oracle Support.

See Also

Oracle Software Delivery Cloud, https://edelivery.oracle.com

My Oracle Support, Certifications

Clustering and High Availability for PeopleTools, My Oracle Support, (search for the article title)

Oracle WebLogic Server 14.1.2.0 documentation, https://docs.oracle.com/en/middleware/fusion-middleware/weblogic-server/14.1.2/index.html

Reviewing Troubleshooting Tips

If you have trouble with the installation, review these tips:

- It can require up to 800 MB space to install Oracle WebLogic. If there is not enough space, the installer displays an error with information about the space limitation. You will need to exit the installation and create some space under your home directory before starting over.
- The Oracle WebLogic installer makes use of the default system temporary space. It will stop and display an error message if the temporary space is not sufficient. Clean up the default system temp space and try again. If you do not have the privilege to clean up that directory and need to proceed, the workaround is to set aside a directory under your Home directory and use it as the temporary space. This can be achieved by setting `-Djava.io.tmpdir` in the command for launching the installer.

  Note. This workaround may not be applicable on all platforms. If you tried and the installer still errors out due to the amount of temporary space, contact your system administrator to clean up the system temporary space before proceeding.

- If the installation fails, and the Middleware Home directory that you specified for the Oracle WebLogic 14.1.2.0 installation is one in which other Oracle products have been installed in previous releases, (for example c:\oracle folder in Microsoft Windows), it may indicate corruption in the registry.xml file inside your existing Middleware Home. Pick a different location for the Oracle WebLogic 14.1.2.0 installation directory and try the installation again.
- If you encounter the following error message while running in console mode on a Microsoft Windows operating system, it means an environment variable *_JAVA_OPTIONS* has been set in your system. It causes the Java process initiated by the Oracle WebLogic installer to fail.

  ```
  ERROR: JVMPI, an experimental interface, is no longer supported.
  Please use the supported interface: the JVM Tool Interface (JVM TI).
  ```

  To resolve the problem, remove the environment variable *_JAVA_OPTIONS* from your system and rerun the installation.

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Task 12-1-1: Obtaining Oracle WebLogic Installation Files from Oracle Software Delivery Cloud

At this point you should have already downloaded the necessary files from Oracle Software Delivery Cloud. If not, this section includes additional information on finding and using the files for Oracle WebLogic if necessary.

See "Preparing for Installation," Using Oracle Software Delivery Cloud to Obtain Installation Files.

See Oracle Software Delivery Cloud, https://edelivery.oracle.com.

To obtain the files for Oracle WebLogic installation:

1. After logging in to Oracle Software Delivery Cloud, read the information about export restrictions, and then click Accept.
2. Enter Oracle WebLogic in the Product field, and select Oracle WebLogic Server 14c 14.1.2.0 (Oracle WebLogic Server Enterprise Edition, Oracle WebLogic Server Standard Edition), from the results.

   Note. The Enterprise Edition includes Oracle WebLogic Server and Oracle Coherence, as well as other items.

3. Click Continue.
4. From the drop-down list under Platform/Languages, select Microsoft Windows.
5. Click Continue.
6. Read the license agreements, and select the check box to acknowledge that you accept the agreement, and then click Continue.
7. On the File Download window, download the zip files for Oracle WebLogic Server and Oracle Coherence.

   Choose the generic files, which include the WebLogic Administration console. Download the files you need by clicking a file name to download an individual file, or click Download to obtain all of the files listed.

   Save the zip files to a temporary directory on your local system. The directory where you save the zip file is referred to in this documentation as *WLS_INSTALL*. You must extract (unzip) the file on the platform for which it is intended. For example, if you download the zip file for Linux, you must unzip it on Linux to avoid problems. If you unzip the file to a staging directory on a Microsoft Windows computer and copy the staging directory to a Linux computer, the stage area files may be corrupt.
8. Extract the files into *WLS_INSTALL*.

   The Oracle WebLogic installer file is fmw_14.1.2.0_wls.jar.

   Note. If you need to FTP the downloaded file, make sure to FTP it in Binary mode.

Task 12-1-2: Installing JDK

This section discusses:

- Understanding the JDK Requirement for Oracle WebLogic
- Installing JDK for Microsoft Windows

Understanding the JDK Requirement for Oracle WebLogic

Before beginning the Oracle WebLogic installation you must install the appropriate 64-bit Java JDK. Install Oracle JDK 21.0.4 or later for Microsoft Windows or Linux.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Installing JDK for Microsoft Windows

To install 64-bit JDK on Microsoft Windows:

1. Go to the Oracle JDK download site:

   https://www.oracle.com/java/technologies/downloads/

2. Download Oracle Java 21 64-bit JDK version 21.0.4 or higher for Microsoft Windows x86-64.

   Refer to the JDK installation instructions on the download page.

3. Install the JDK on the computer where you will install the Oracle WebLogic server. The directory where you install the JDK is referred to in this documentation as *JAVA_HOME*.

Note. Spaces are not allowed in the *JAVA_HOME* name.

Task 12-1-3: Installing Oracle WebLogic on Microsoft Windows

The following procedure assumes that you saved the installation file fmw_14.1.2.0_wls.jar from Oracle Software Delivery Cloud in the directory *WLS_INSTALL.* Installation in GUI mode is normally used for Microsoft Windows operating systems. You should have installed the appropriate JDK to *JAVA_HOME* before beginning this installation.

See Installing JDK for Oracle WebLogic.

Note. Previous releases of Oracle WebLogic Server, such as 10.3.*X,* can coexist with 14.1.2.0 on a single machine. The best practice is to install Oracle WebLogic 14.1.2.0 into an empty directory, or at least one that does not contain other Oracle WebLogic (previously BEA) products.

If you choose, however, to install this version of Oracle WebLogic in an existing *WLS_HOME* directory (for example, c:\oracle), you must shut down all instances of Oracle WebLogic Server running in that *WLS_HOME* before performing this installation.

To install Oracle WebLogic Server 14.1.2.0:

1. Open a command prompt and change directory to *WLS_INSTALL*.

   Note. If you are running on a Microsoft Windows operating system, you must run the command prompt as administrator.

   ---

2. Set the environment variable JAVA_HOME to be the location where you installed the Oracle Java JDK 21.

   For example, if you installed JDK to D:\jdk21 use this command:

   ```
   set JAVA_HOME=D:\jdk21
   ```

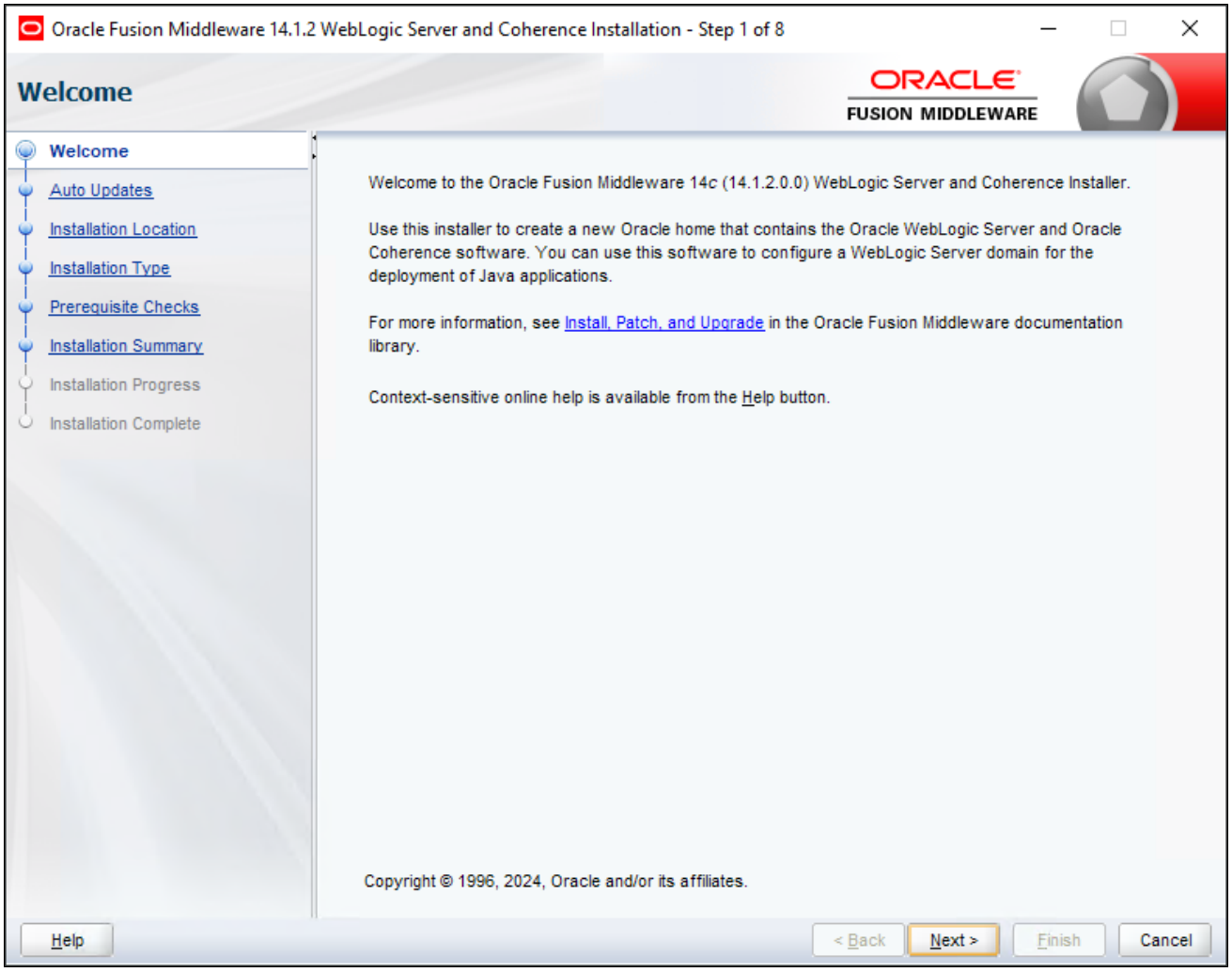
3. Use the following command to launch the installer:

   ```
   %JAVA_HOME%\bin\java -jar fmw_14.1.2.0_wls.jar
   ```

   Note. It may take up to five minutes to extract the installer. You see system check messages during the extraction process. The Welcome window appears when the extraction is complete.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

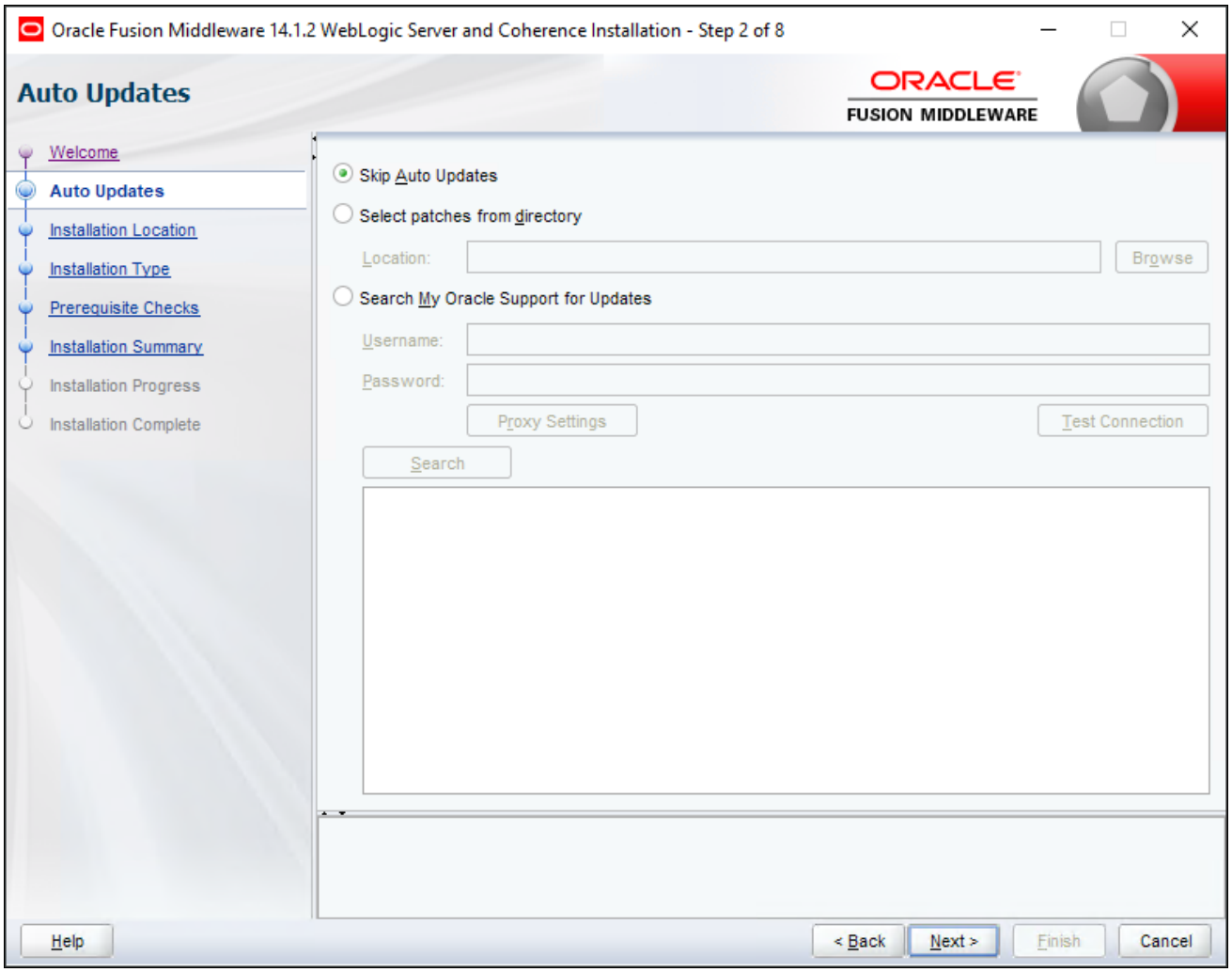
4. Click Next on the Welcome window for Oracle Fusion Middleware 14.1.2 WebLogic Server and Coherence Installer.



Oracle Fusion Middleware 14.1.2 WebLogic Server and Coherence Installation - Step 1 of 8

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

5. Select the Skip Auto Updates radio button.



Oracle Fusion Middleware 14.1.2 WebLogic Server and Coherence Installation - Step 2 of 8

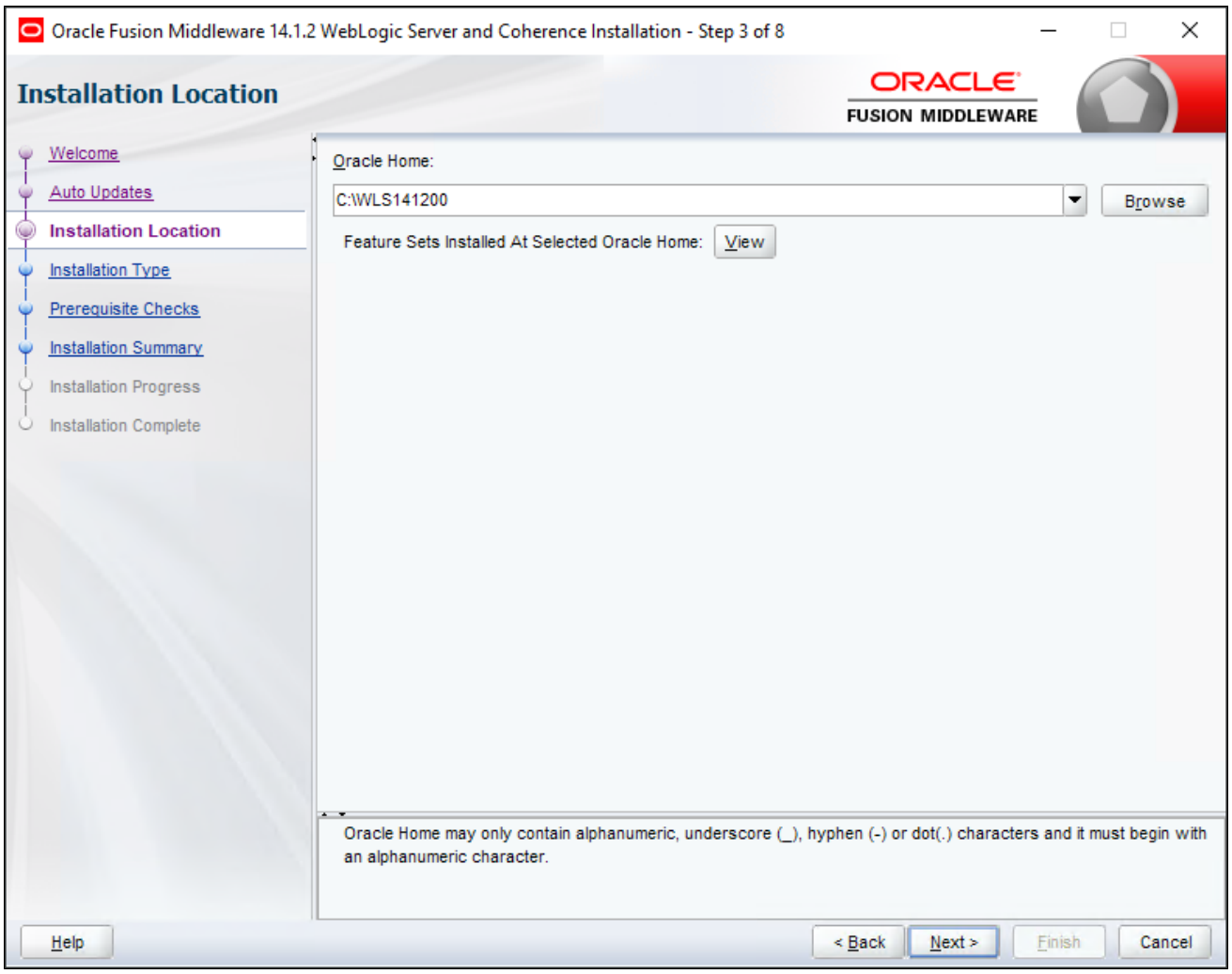
Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

6. On the Installation Location window, enter a location for the Oracle Home, or browse to an existing directory.

   Do not choose a directory that contains an existing installation of Oracle WebLogic.

   If the directory does not exist, the Oracle WebLogic installer creates it. The directory where you install Oracle WebLogic is referred to as *WLS_HOME* in this documentation. In this example *WLS_HOME* is C:\WLS141200.

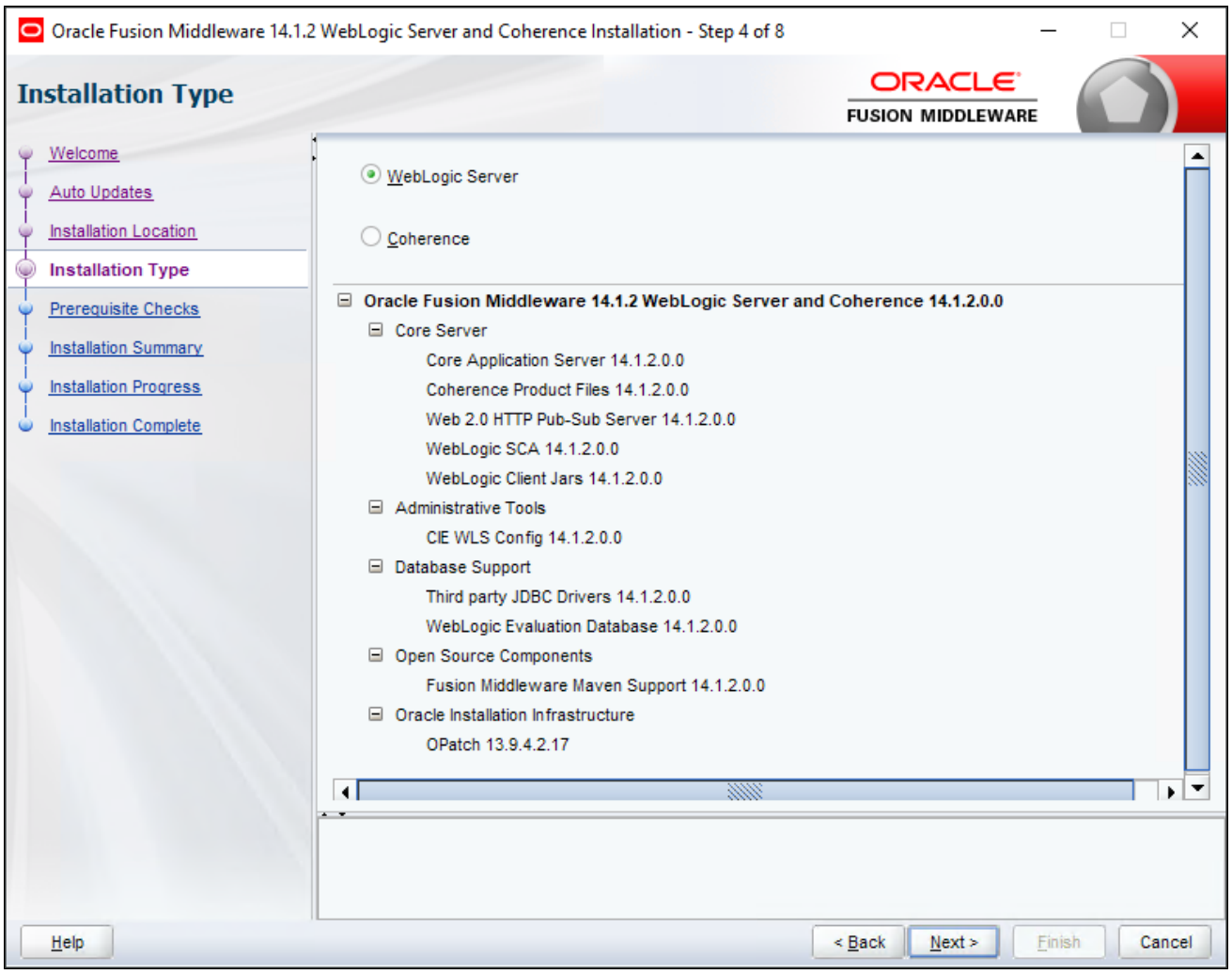
   Click Next to continue.



Oracle Fusion Middleware 14.1.2 WebLogic Server and Coherence Installation - Step 3 of 8

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

7. Accept the default WebLogic Server installation option on the Installation Type window, for WebLogic Server Installation, and then click Next.

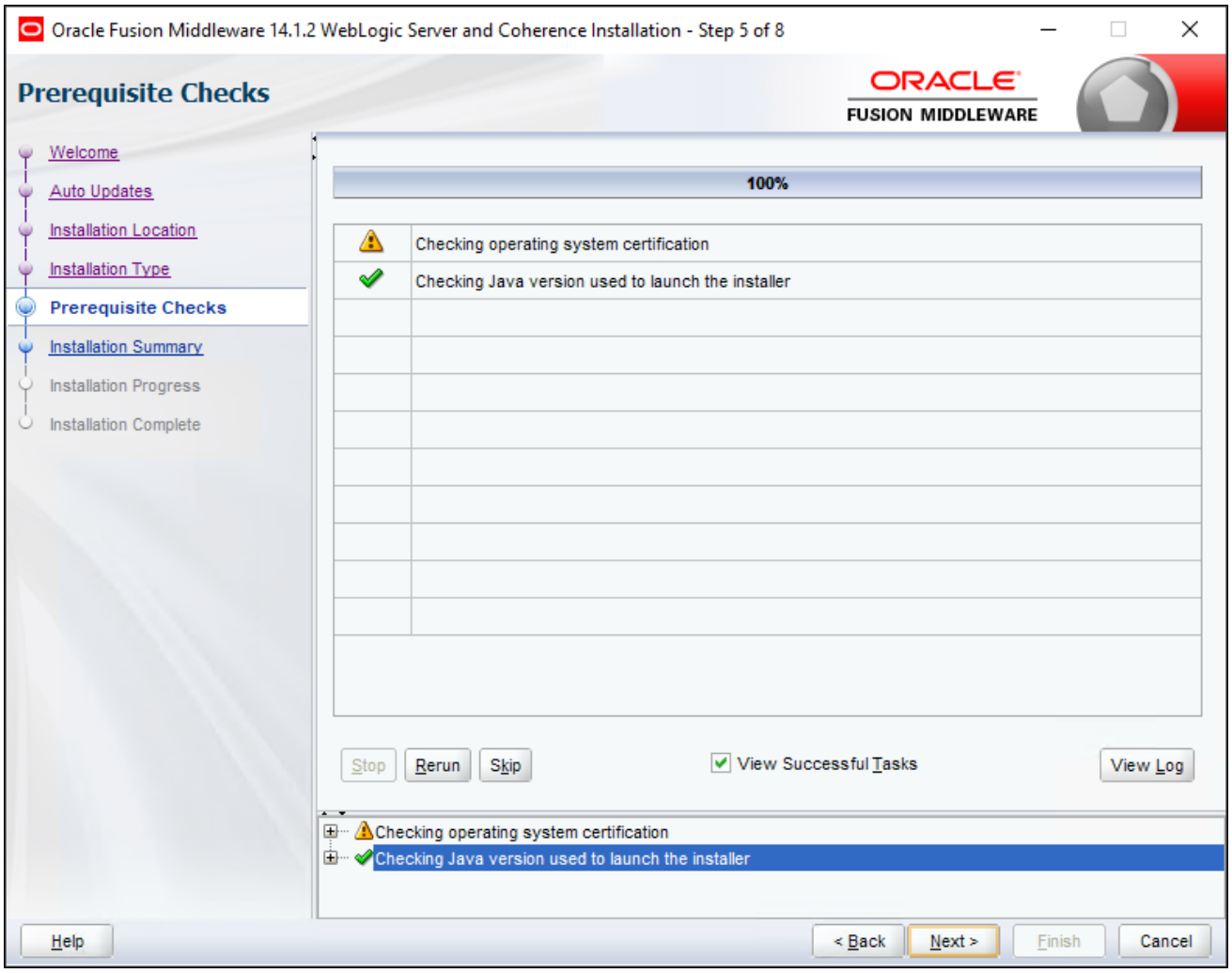


Oracle Fusion Middleware 14.1.2 WebLogic Server and Coherence Installation - Step 4 of 8

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

8. Wait while the installer carries out prerequisite checks, and then click Next.

   In this example the system passed the prerequisite checks. You can select the messages at the bottom of the window for more information.



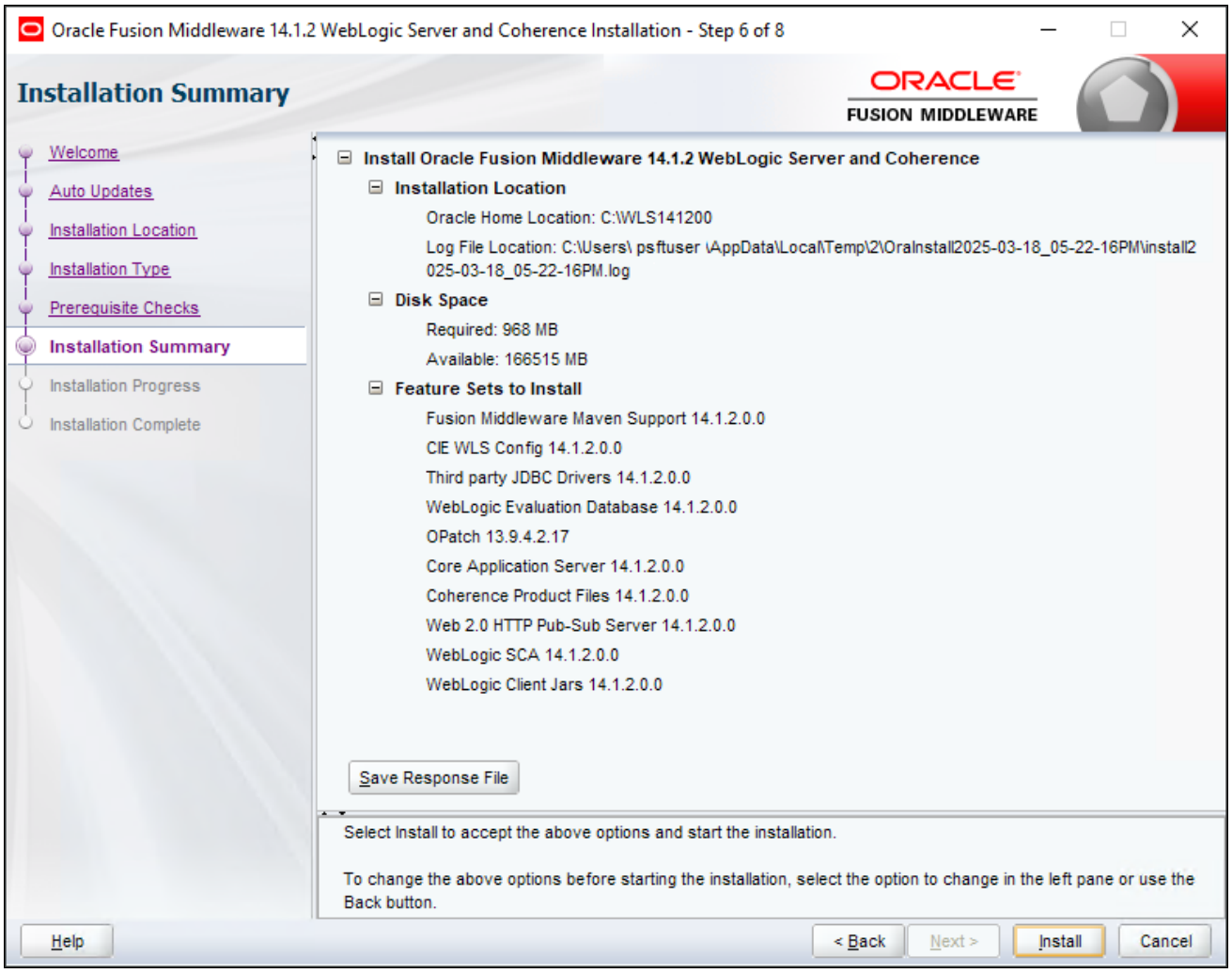
Oracle Fusion Middleware 14.1.2 WebLogic Server and Coherence Installation - Step 5 of 8

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

9. Verify your choices in the installation summary, such as the installation location and features to install.

   If you want to save a response file to be used in silent installation, click Save Response File and provide a location.

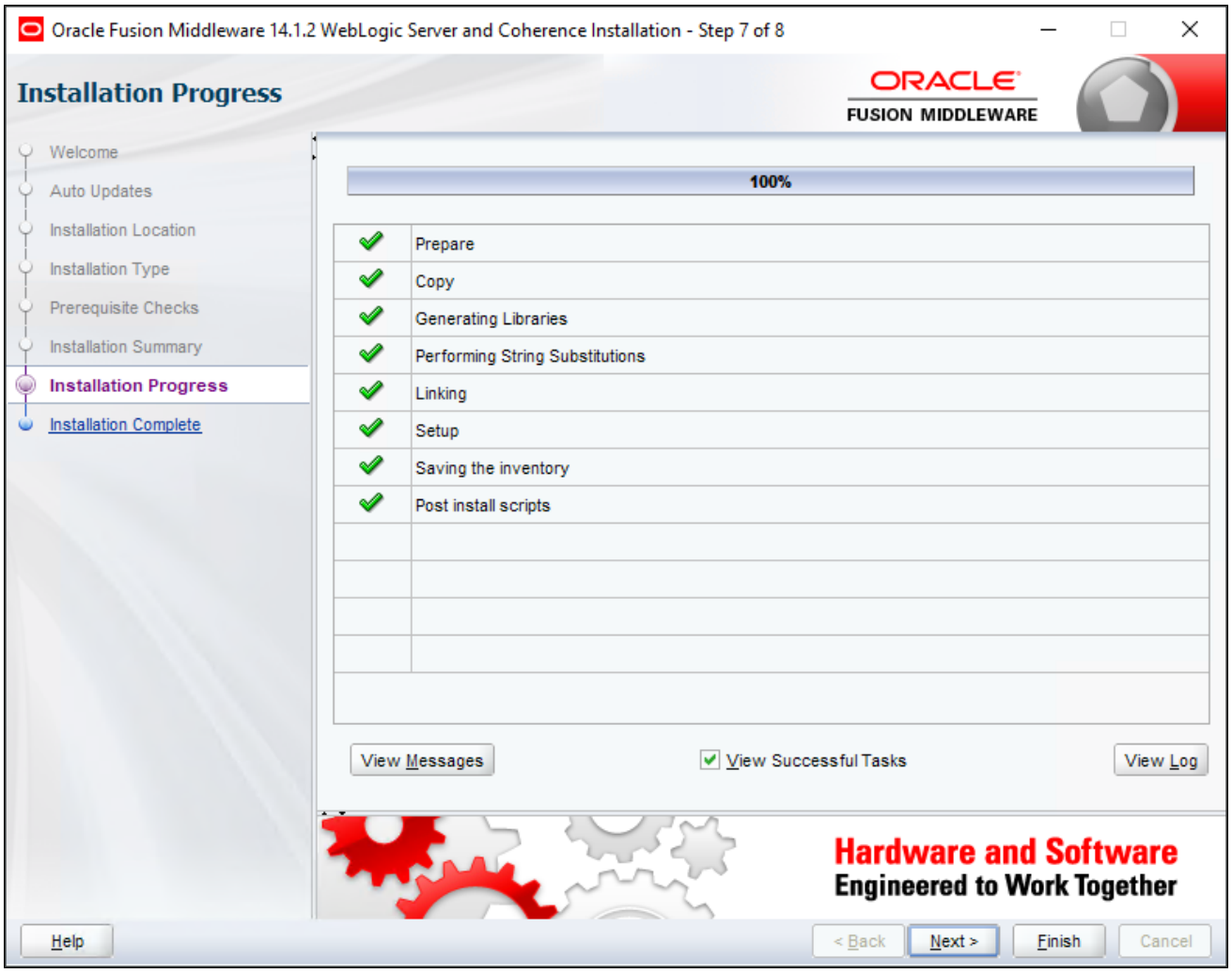
   Click Install to begin the installation.



Oracle Fusion Middleware 14.1.2 WebLogic Server and Coherence Installation - Step 6 of 8

   A progress indicator appears. Click Next when the tasks are complete, as shown in this example:

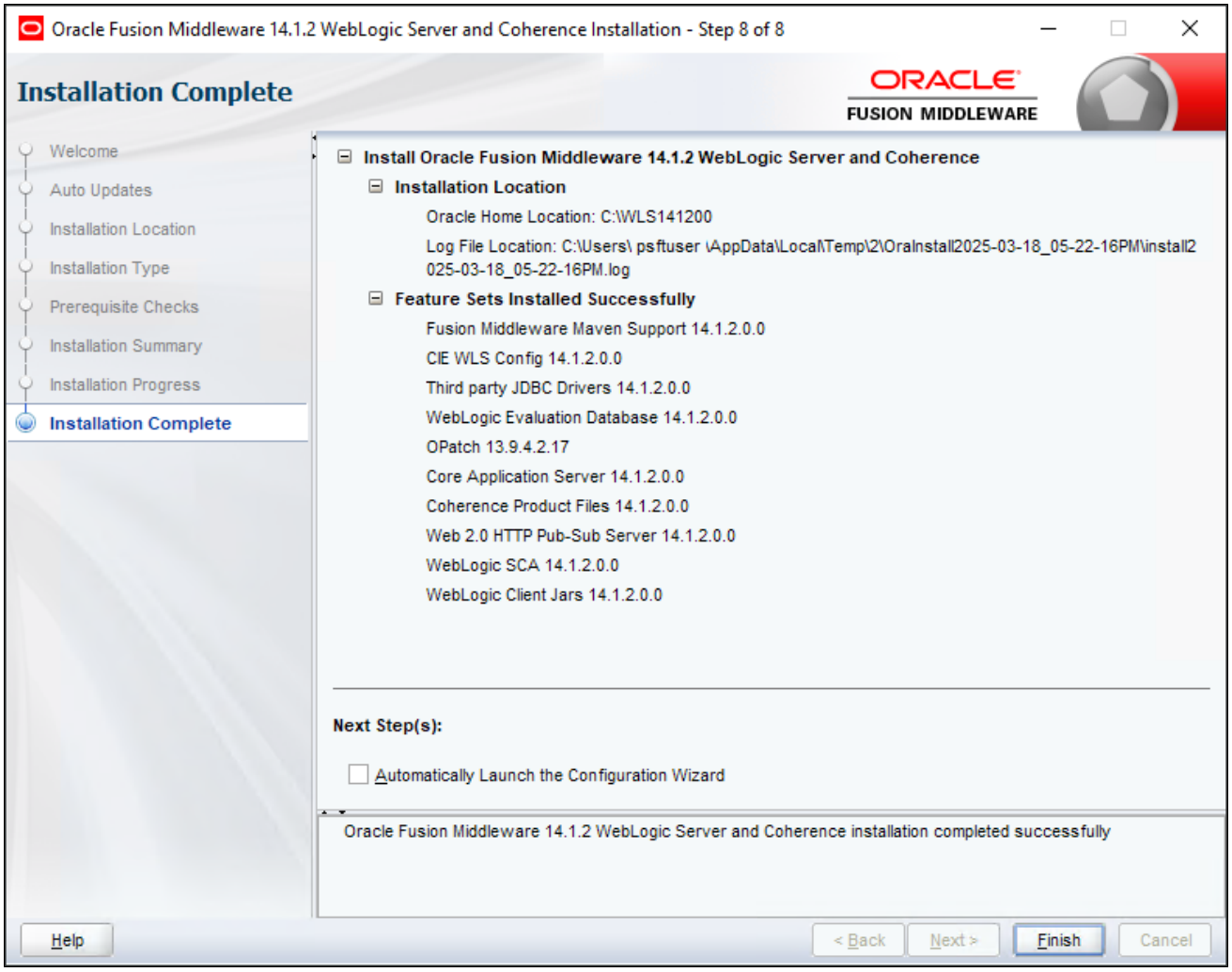
Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.



Oracle Fusion Middleware 14.1.2 WebLogic Server and Coherence Installation - Step 7 of 8

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

10. When the installation has completed successfully, clear the Automatically Launch the Configuration Wizard option, and click Finish.



Oracle Fusion Middleware 14.1.2 WebLogic Server and Coherence Installation - Step 8 of 8

Task 12-1-4: Configuring JDK for Daylight Savings Time Change

The version of JDK mentioned in the previous section Installing JDK for Oracle WebLogic includes the Daylight Saving Time (DST) rules available at the time of packaging. If new rules are implemented after this time, you should use the instructions in this section to update the time zone definition files.

You can skip this section unless a change to the DST rules has happened near or after the general availability date of Oracle WebLogic or PeopleSoft PeopleTools. Consult the information on configuring PeopleSoft time zone definitions in the *PeopleTools: Global Technology* product documentation.

This section provides an example of how the time zone updater utility (TZUPDATER), which is supplied by the JDK vendors, can be used to update the time zone definition files contained in the JDK used by Oracle WebLogic server.

1. Identify and shut down any JVM processes that are using the JDK that you will be updating.
2. For future reference or restoration, back up the location where the targeted JDK is located.

   The JDK being used for different operating systems is different. For Oracle WebLogic 14.1.2.0.0, refer to the

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

commBaseEnv.cmd (for Microsoft Windows), or commBaseEnv.sh (for UNIX) file under *WLS_HOME*\oracle_common\common\bin to determine the setting for JAVA_HOME and the exact name and location for the JDK being used by your Oracle WebLogic server. *WLS_HOME* is the directory where Oracle WebLogic is installed.

3. Download the appropriate updater utility for your operating system from the JDK vendor.

Each tzupdater provided by the vendor comes with instructions (typically in a readme file) describing how to:

- Locate the correct JDK.
- Apply classes using the tzupdater or provided scripts.
- Check tzupdater versions.

Read the instructions carefully as the steps and instructions are vendor-specific. Keep in mind that these instructions and versions may be updated when the vendor finds it necessary.

Note. After successfully running the TZUPDATER to update a JDK location, the changes will take effect only for newly started Java processes from that location. In the event that you did not identify and stop all Java processes running from this location, it will be necessary to stop and restart these for the changes to take effect.

See Also

Timezone Updater Tool, Oracle Technology Network, https://www.oracle.com/java/technologies/javase/tzupdater-readme.html

Task 12-1-5: Removing the Oracle WebLogic Installation on Microsoft Windows

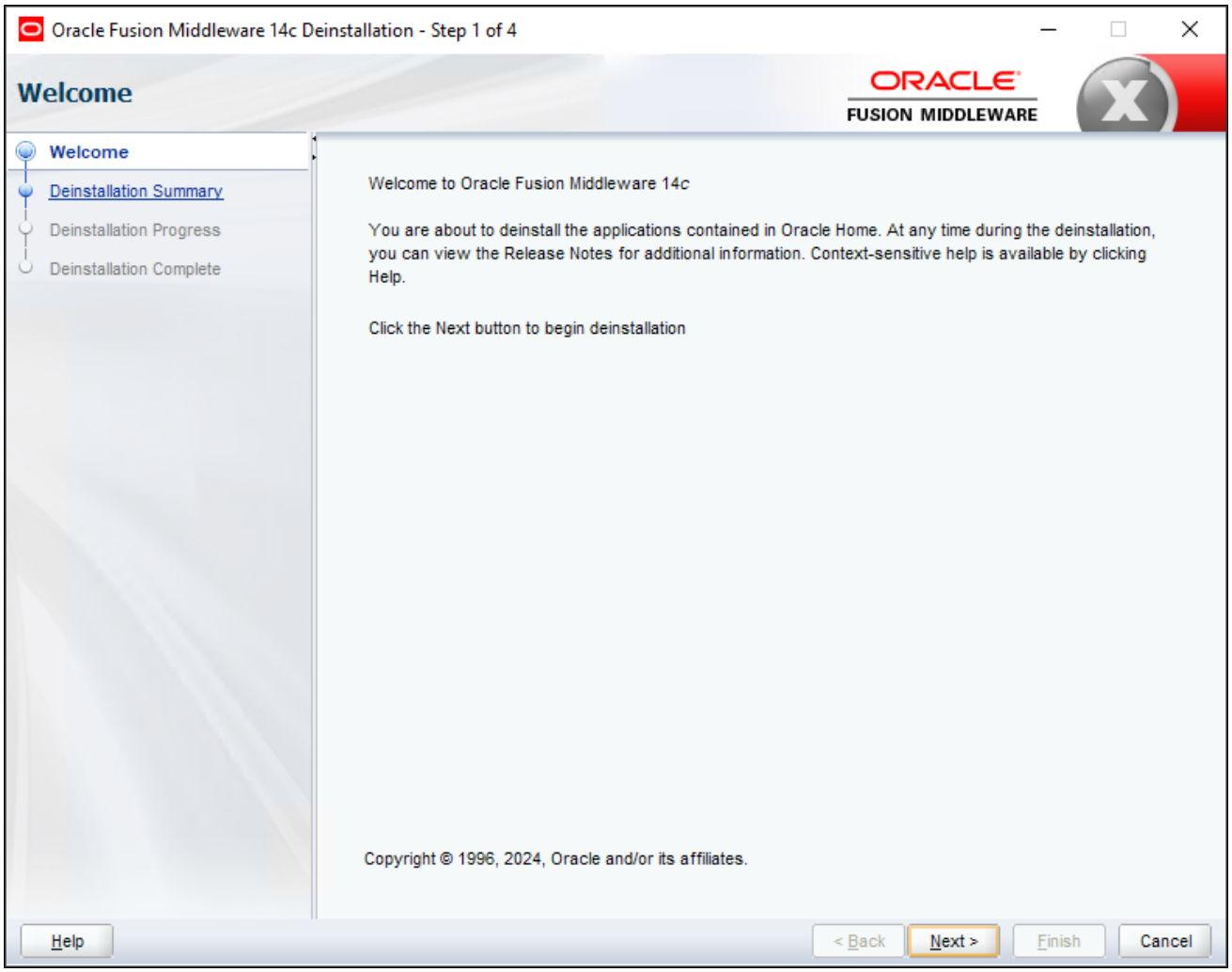
To remove the Oracle WebLogic installation on Microsoft Windows (GUI mode):

1. Before running the deinstaller, stop all servers and processes associated with the Oracle home you are going to remove.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

2. Change directory to the *WLS_HOME*\oui\bin folder and run the deinstall.cmd script.

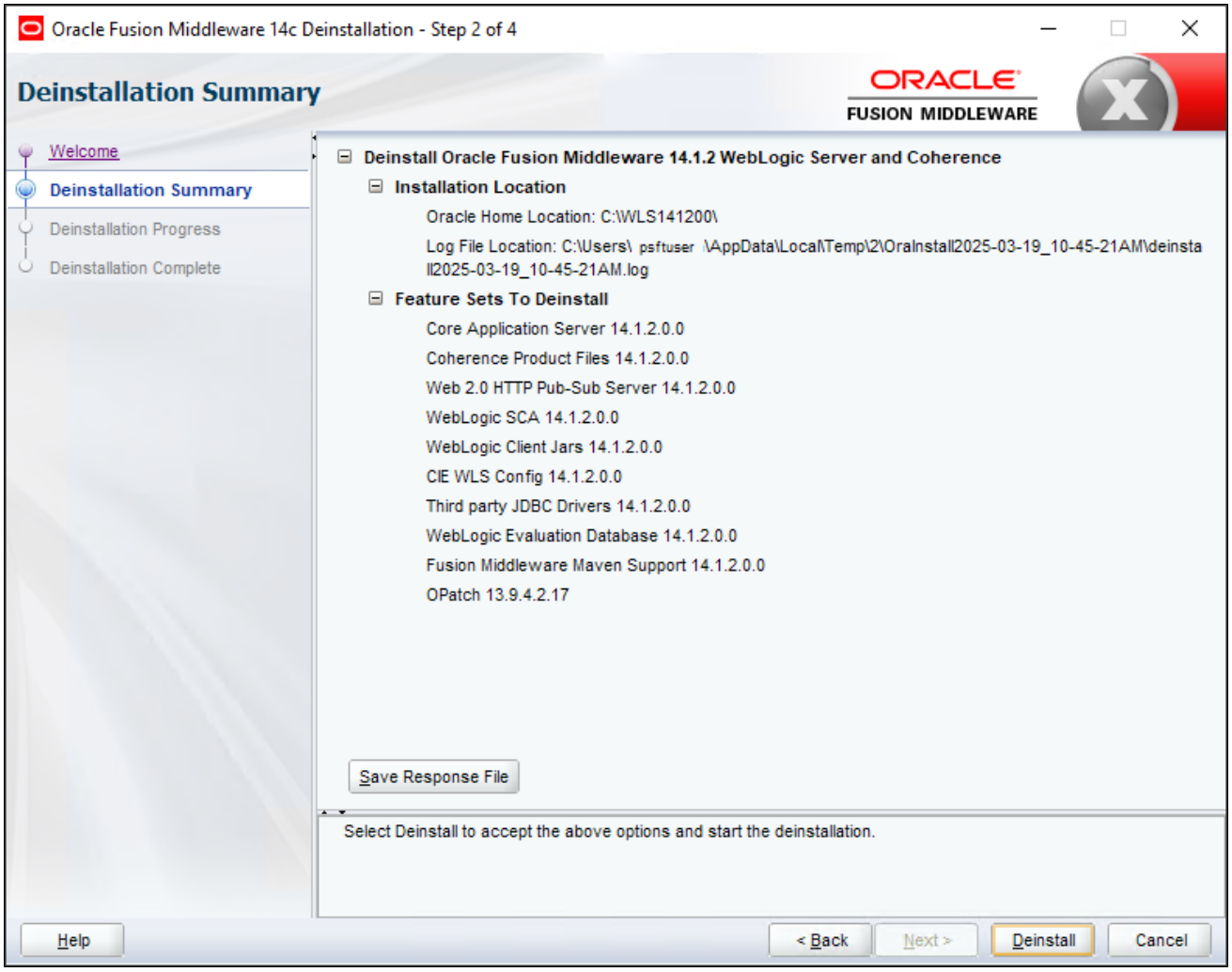
   You see one or two command prompts with progress messages, and then the Welcome window appears. *WLS_HOME* is the location where you installed your Oracle WebLogic 14.1.2.0, for example C:\WLS141200. Click Next on the Welcome window.



Oracle Fusion Middleware 14.1.2 Deinstallation - Step 1 of 4

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

3. Verify the components that you want to uninstall on the summary page (by default all components are selected as shown in this example).

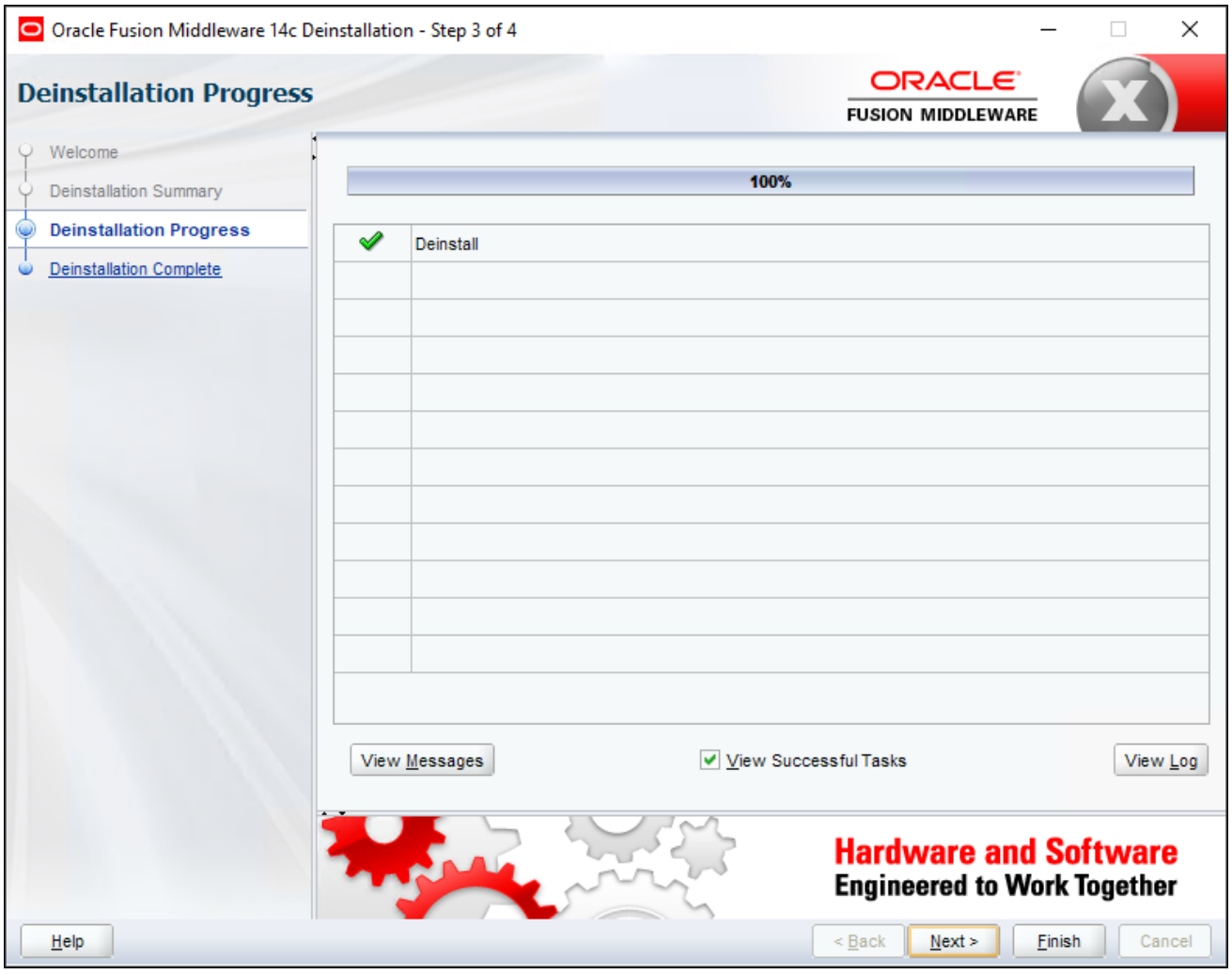


Oracle Fusion Middleware 14.1.2 Deinstallation - Step 2 of 4

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

4. Click the Save Response File button and browse to a location to save the file, which you can use for a silent mode deinstallation at another time.

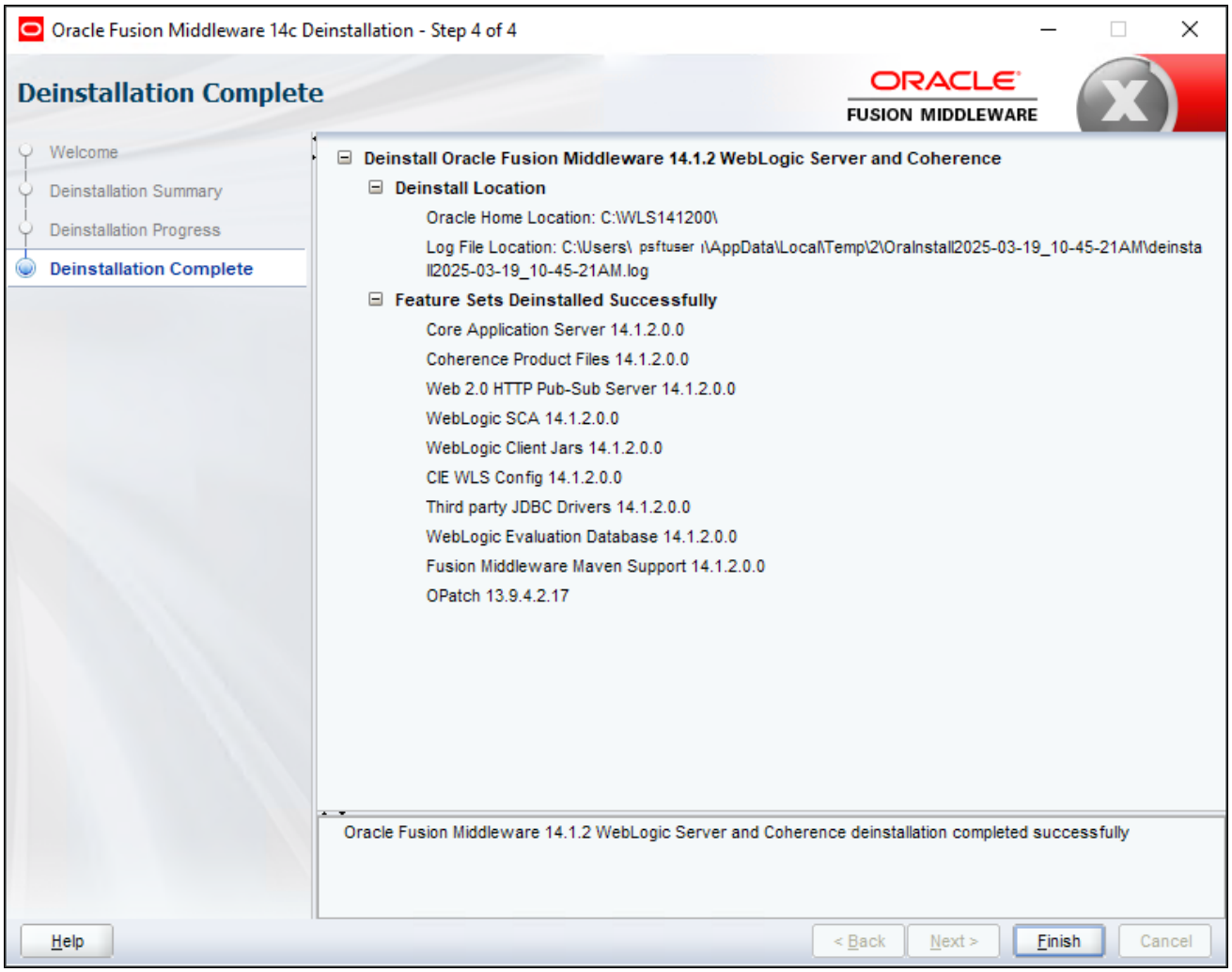
   Click Deinstall. A progress indicator appears. Click Next when the tasks are complete, as shown in this example.



Oracle Fusion Middleware 14.1.2 Deinstallation - Step 3 of 4

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

5. Click Finish on the Deinstallation Complete window.



Oracle Fusion Middleware 14.1.2 Deinstallation - Step 4 of 4

6. Remove the *WLS_HOME* directory manually after the deinstallation.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 13

Installing Oracle Tuxedo

This chapter discusses:

- Preparing to Install Oracle Tuxedo
- Obtaining Oracle Tuxedo
- Installing Oracle Tuxedo on Microsoft Windows

Preparing to Install Oracle Tuxedo

This section discusses:

- Understanding Oracle Tuxedo
- Prerequisites
- Reviewing Oracle Tuxedo Installation Errors

Understanding Oracle Tuxedo

This section describes a traditional installation of Oracle Tuxedo. When you use the PeopleSoft DPKs for either a full-tier installation using the PeopleSoft Application Images or for a mid-tier installation using the PeopleTools DPKs, Oracle Tuxedo is installed as part of the installation, and you do not need to carry out the separate installation in this section. If you choose to install Oracle Tuxedo independently of the DPK installation, you can obtain installation files for Oracle Tuxedo on the Oracle Software Delivery Cloud portal and use the steps in this section. The current PeopleSoft PeopleTools release supports Oracle Tuxedo 22c Release 1 (64-bit).

Note that to use a separate Oracle Tuxedo installation with a DPK deployment, you must use customizations to specify the Oracle Tuxedo installation location.

See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations," Preparing the Customization File for Component Software Locations.

The PeopleSoft application server uses the Oracle® Fusion Middleware product, Oracle Tuxedo, to perform transaction management, messaging, and administration. This task guides you through the installation of Oracle Tuxedo on your server. It is essential that you install Oracle Tuxedo 64-bit, version 22c Release 1 (22.1.0.0.0), which is available on Oracle Software Delivery Cloud. You need to install Oracle Tuxedo before you set up your application server and your PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture. After you perform the installation described here, you will configure the application server environment to incorporate Oracle Tuxedo with the PeopleSoft components.

You can locate the minimum patch level certified for running Oracle Tuxedo 22c Release 1 in My Oracle Support, Certifications. The certification notes for Oracle Tuxedo include the patch levels for the supported operating systems.

1. Go to My Oracle Support, Certifications.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

2. Search for PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.62.

   See PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.62 certifications, https://support.oracle.com/epmos/faces/CertifyHome?_adf.ctrl-state=ubz5osn41_4&_afrLoop=133087821078981.

3. Select Oracle Tuxedo from the Middleware category.
4. Select your operating system and look in the Notes section for the minimum Oracle Tuxedo patch level.

These installation instructions include the installation of the base Oracle Tuxedo 22c Release 1, followed by the patch installation.

Note. For the sake of brevity and convenience, this documentation shortens "Oracle Tuxedo 22c Release 1 (64-bit)" to "Oracle Tuxedo 22cR1."

If you have a previous version of Oracle Tuxedo installed, you need to install the new version of Oracle Tuxedo, and re-create your application server domains. (You must create your domains using PSADMIN; you cannot migrate existing domains.) You can also use the PSADMIN domain import utility.

While the Oracle Tuxedo product allows for more than one version of Tuxedo to be installed on the same machine, this configuration does not work properly with the current PeopleTools DPK installations and is not supported.

See Also

Oracle Tuxedo on Oracle Technology Network, http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/middleware/tuxedo/documentation/index.html

Oracle Tuxedo Release 22c Documentation, https://docs.oracle.com/en/database/oracle/tuxedo/22/index.html

PeopleTools: Portal Technology

PeopleTools: System and Server Administration

Clustering and High Availability for PeopleTools, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 747378.1

Prerequisites

Before you begin to install Oracle Tuxedo, make sure that you have the following resources in place:

- Before beginning the Oracle Tuxedo installation you must install a supported 64-bit Java JDK.

  The specific JDK required depends upon the operating system and vendor. Follow the instructions in the Oracle WebLogic section to install the appropriate Java JDK for your operating system.

  See "Installing Web Server Products," Installing JDK for Oracle WebLogic.

- TCP/IP connectivity (required for PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.50 or higher) between the client machine and the application server
- Enough free disk space on the application server to install the product.

  The disk space requirements vary by operating system. For free disk space requirements, see the Oracle Tuxedo documentation.

Reviewing Oracle Tuxedo Installation Errors

Here are a few tips to help with installation errors.

- Change the debug level.

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

If the Oracle Tuxedo installation fails with no error message, open a command prompt and enter the following command:

```
set LAX_DEBUG=1
```

After entering this command, start the installer again. If you are using GUI mode on Microsoft Windows, you must start the installer using the same command prompt.

- Change the default temporary space.

  The Oracle Tuxedo installer uses the default system temporary space. If there is not enough space for installation, it will stop with an error. To specify a different temporary directory on Microsoft Windows, use the following command before starting the installer:

  ```
  set IATEMPDIR=Complete_Path_Temp_Dir
  ```

  Replace *Complete_Path_Temp_Dir* with the full path to the temporary directory that you want to use for the installation.

- Install Microsoft Windows files.

  If you see a message saying certain DLL files can not be found, install vc_redist.x64.exe from %PS_HOME%\setup\psvccrt.

Task 13-1: Obtaining Oracle Tuxedo

This section discusses:

- Obtaining the Oracle Tuxedo Installation Files from Oracle Software Delivery
- Obtaining the Oracle Tuxedo Patches from My Oracle Support

Task 13-1-1: Obtaining the Oracle Tuxedo Installation Files from Oracle Software Delivery

You can obtain the files needed to install Oracle Tuxedo 22cR1 from the Oracle Software Delivery Cloud portal. At this point you should have already downloaded the necessary files. If you have not yet downloaded the files, this section includes additional information on finding and using the files for Oracle Tuxedo if necessary.

See "Preparing for Installation," Using Oracle Software Delivery Cloud to Obtain Installation Files.

See Oracle Software Delivery Cloud, https://edelivery.oracle.com.

1. After logging in to Oracle Software Delivery Cloud, read the export restrictions, and then click Accept.
2. Enter Oracle Tuxedo in the search field, and select Oracle Tuxedo 22.1.0.0.0 to add it to the download queue.
3. Click Continue at the top of the page.
4. From the Platforms/Languages drop-down list, select the operating system you are running on, and then click Continue.
5. Read the license agreement and select the check box to acknowledge that you accept the agreement.
6. Click Continue.
7. Click the filenames to download.

   Save the zip file to a temporary directory on your local system, referred to in this documentation as *TUX_INSTALL*.
8. After you download the installation files from Oracle Software Delivery Cloud, if it is necessary, transfer the

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

files to a UNIX computer using FTP. Unzip the file and change the permissions of the unzipped file to make it an executable, for example using the chmod +x command.

9. Extract the files into *TUX_INSTALL*.

   After you extract, you see a Disk1 folder with two subfolders, install and stage.

Note. If you are installing Oracle Tuxedo for the PeopleTools Client, install Oracle Tuxedo 22cR1 for Microsoft Windows (64-bit) to run with PeopleSoft PeopleTools.

Task 13-1-2: Obtaining the Oracle Tuxedo Patches from My Oracle Support

You can download the latest patch for Oracle Tuxedo 22cR1 from My Oracle Support.

Note. To obtain older Oracle Tuxedo patches, raise a service request through My Oracle Support.

To obtain the latest Oracle Tuxedo patch:

1. Sign in to My Oracle Support with your account name and password:

   https://support.oracle.com
2. Select the Patches & Updates tab.
3. Under Patch Search, select Product or Family (Advanced Search).
4. Select *Oracle Tuxedo* from the product drop-down list.
5. Select *Oracle Tuxedo 22.1.0.0.0* from the release drop-down list.
6. Select your platform.

   Note. For detailed supported platform information, see the certifications area on My Oracle Support.

   ---
7. Click Search.

   Download the necessary files from the list of results.

   Note. To begin a new search, select Edit Search in the top right of the results page.

   ---
8. Download the patch file for your operating system platform to a convenient directory, referred to here as *TUX_INSTALL*.
9. After you install a patch, use these steps to verify the installation:
   a. In a command prompt, change directory to *TUXDIR*\bin (where *TUXDIR* is the Oracle Tuxedo installation location).
   b. Execute the following command:

      ```
      tmadmin -v
      ```

      The command displays the patch level. For example:

      ```
      INFO: Oracle Tuxedo, Version 22.1.0.0.0, 64-bit, Patch Level 004
      ```

Task 13-2: Installing Oracle Tuxedo on Microsoft Windows

This section discusses:

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Removing Existing Oracle Tuxedo Installations from Microsoft Windows (Optional)
- Designating the Application Server Administrator on Microsoft Windows
- Installing Oracle Tuxedo on Microsoft Windows in GUI Mode
- Installing Oracle Tuxedo on Microsoft Windows in Silent Mode
- Installing Oracle Tuxedo Patch on Microsoft Windows
- Uninstalling the Oracle Tuxedo Patch on Microsoft Windows
- Uninstalling Oracle Tuxedo in GUI Mode
- Checking the Windows Service Account
- Restricting Domain Process Privileges
- Setting Up the Windows Services for Oracle Tuxedo
- Verifying the Server Installation on Microsoft Windows

Task 13-2-1: Removing Existing Oracle Tuxedo Installations from Microsoft Windows (Optional)

You may already have prior versions of Oracle Tuxedo installed on your system from an earlier version of PeopleSoft PeopleTools. If you are completely upgrading to PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.62 from an earlier version of PeopleSoft PeopleTools, then you must uninstall the existing version and patches. Multiple versions of Oracle Tuxedo do not work with the current PeopleTools release.

You may have to uninstall Oracle Tuxedo for these reasons:

- You are having problems starting Oracle Tuxedo and decide to reinstall.
- You no longer need Oracle Tuxedo on a machine.

To uninstall Oracle Tuxedo from Microsoft Windows:

1. Using PSADMIN, shut down all PeopleSoft domains that may be running on the machine.
2. Stop the processes for the Tuxedo Monitor and the Tuxedo Administrative Web Server (wlisten and tuxwsvr), if applicable.
   a. Right-click on the task bar and select Task Manager.
   b. Highlight wlisten, and click the End Task button.
   c. Highlight tuxwsvr and click the End Task button.
   d. Exit Task Manager.
3. Stop and set the TListen *VERSION* service to manual, if applicable.

   Replace *VERSION* with the version number for the existing service. For example, this would be TListen 10gR3 or TListen 12c.
   a. Select Start, Settings, Control Panel. Double-click Administrative Tools, and double-click the Services icon.
   b. Select TListen *VERSION* and click the Stop button.
   c. Choose the Startup Type and set to Manual.
4. Stop and set the ORACLE ProcMGR *VERSION* (or BEA ProcMGR *VERSION* for earlier releases) service to manual.
   a. Select Start, Settings, Control Panel. Double-click Administrative Tools, and double-click the Services icon.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

b. Select ORACLE ProcMGR *VERSION* and click the Stop button.

c. Choose the Startup Type and set to Manual.

5. Reboot your machine.
6. Uninstall Oracle Tuxedo in one of the following ways:
   - Using the Add/Remove Programs dialog, in sequence remove: Oracle Tuxedo*VERSION* RP and then Oracle Tuxedo *VERSION*.
   - If you still have the installation files and documentation, follow the instructions in the documentation to remove the installation.
7. Go to the Control Panel, double-click on the System icon, and then perform the following actions:
   a. Make sure *TUXDIR*\bin is deleted from the PATH environment variable definition.

      TUXDIR refers to the Oracle Tuxedo installation directory.

   b. Delete the environment variable TUXDIR.

   c. Make sure you click on Apply and OK to save your changes.
8. Using Explorer, delete the Tuxedo home directory, such as C:\bea\tuxedo9.1.

   If you are unable to delete any files, reboot your machine and retry.

Task 13-2-2: Designating the Application Server Administrator on Microsoft Windows

Before beginning the installation, you need to designate an existing user—or create a new user such as TUXADM or some other account—to be the Application Server Administrator. The Application Server Administrator, not the Windows Administrator, will install Oracle Tuxedo.

The designated user must be a local Microsoft Windows administrator and must have full system privileges. The Oracle Tuxedo installation program creates a new service for Microsoft Windows—called ORACLE ProcMGR V22.1.0.0.0—for which you need administrator privileges. This service was developed to port Oracle Tuxedo from UNIX to Microsoft Windows. Administrator rights are required since system registry settings are updated. Once this new service is created, you must reboot to start it.

When you configure your application server domain in a read-only *PS_HOME* environment, the user ID designated to be the Application Server Administrator must have read-only access to *PS_HOME,* read and write access to *PS_CFG_HOME,* and read-only access to the Oracle Tuxedo installation directory, *TUXDIR,* (for example, C:\tuxedo\tuxedo22.1.0.0.0).

See "Configuring the Application Server on Windows."

See "Preparing for Installation," Defining Installation Locations.

To designate the Application Server Administrator:

1. Add the user ID by selecting Start, Administrative Tools, Computer Management, Local Users and Groups.

   Keep in mind that you can also use an existing account if you do not care to create a new one. You can set this to the system account or an account that is a domain administrator (if there is a need to access files on the domain).
2. Expand Local Users and Groups.
3. If the user ID does not yet exist, highlight the Users folder, and select Action, New User.
4. On the New User dialog box, specify the information for the new account.

   Make sure to deselect the User must change password at next logon check box.
5. Expand the Groups folder.

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

6. Right-click the Administrators group, and select All Tasks, Add to Group, Add.
7. Click Locations to select the local machine or the network domain in which you created the new user.
8. Enter the new user name you created in the object names box.
9. Click OK, and click Apply and OK again to accept the changes.

Task 13-2-3: Installing Oracle Tuxedo on Microsoft Windows in GUI Mode

Installation in GUI mode is normally used for Microsoft Windows operating systems.

To install Oracle Tuxedo on Microsoft Windows, follow the instructions in the Oracle Tuxedo documentation.

See Oracle Tuxedo Installation Guide, https://docs.oracle.com/en/database/oracle/tuxedo/22/otxig/installing-oracle-tuxedo-using-gui-mode-installation.html#GUID-4FAB0624-AD42-4885-90AE-23D39FF2BCEB.

Make the following selections when installing Oracle Tuxedo for PeopleSoft environments:

Installation Window	Selection for PeopleSoft Environments
Select Installation Type	Full Install
TSAM Plus agent enable choice	No
Oracle Tuxedo Samples Installation Choice	No
Oracle Tuxedo tlisten configuration Choice	No
SSL Support Choice	No

Task 13-2-4: Installing Oracle Tuxedo on Microsoft Windows in Silent Mode

You can carry out a silent installation of Oracle Tuxedo 22cR1 by providing all the required settings in a response file. With silent installation there is little or no user interaction. Follow the instructions for silent mode installation in the Oracle Tuxedo documentation.

See Oracle Tuxedo Installation Guide, https://docs.oracle.com/en/database/oracle/tuxedo/22/otxig/installing-oracle-tuxedo-using-silent-installation.html#GUID-B0A705A7-7627-45B1-AF85-F987FCAB38CC.

Use a text editor to create the response file and specify the values according to your installation requirements. Here is a sample response file:

```
#
# .......... Silent Installation Properties file .........
#

RESPONSEFILE_VERSION=2.2.1.0.0

ORACLE_HOME="C:\Tuxedo22cR1"
ORACLE_HOME_NAME="Tuxedo22cR1"
DEINSTALL_LIST={"Tuxedo","22.1.0.0.0"}
SELECTED_LANGUAGES={"en"}
COMPONENT_LANGUAGES={"en"}
INSTALL_TYPE="Full Install"
```

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
ENABLE_TSAM_AGENT=false
LDAP_SUPPORT_SSL=false
INSTALL_SAMPLES=false
ENCRYPT_CHOICE=0
CONFIG_TLISTEN=false
MIN_CRYPT_BITS_CHOOSE=0
MAX_CRYPT_BITS_CHOOSE=3
```

Most of the entries are similar to those seen in the GUI installation. Note the following definitions:

- ORACLE_HOME: The high level installation directory, for example C:\Tuxedo22cR1.

  The installer creates the Oracle Tuxedo installation directory, *TUXDIR*, as *ORACLE_HOME*\tuxedo22.1.0.0.0.
- ORACLE_HOME_NAME: The name of the current Oracle installation, for example Tuxedo22cR1.

  This identifies the Oracle Tuxedo installation in the Oracle Universal Installer, when reviewing the Installed Products list.

Task 13-2-5: Installing Oracle Tuxedo Patch on Microsoft Windows

After installing the base Oracle Tuxedo 22cR1, download the platform-specific version of the latest rolling patch from My Oracle Support, Patches and Updates. Follow the instructions in the Read Me file included with the patch.

Before installing the patch, stop all PeopleSoft PeopleTools domains that are running and using your Oracle Tuxedo installation. Carry out the patch installation as a user with administrative privileges.

Task 13-2-6: Uninstalling the Oracle Tuxedo Patch on Microsoft Windows

To remove an Oracle Tuxedo installation, you must first remove the rolling patch.

1. Stop all PeopleSoft PeopleTools domains that are running and using your Oracle Tuxedo installation.
2. Select each of the following services, right-click, and select Stop:
   - ORACLE ProcMGR V22.1.0.0.0
   - TListen 22.1.0.0.0 (Port: 3050)

     Note. The port number is variable.
3. Follow the rollback instructions in the Read Me file included with the patch.

Task 13-2-7: Uninstalling Oracle Tuxedo in GUI Mode

To remove the Oracle Tuxedo 22cR1 installation, follow the instructions in the Oracle Tuxedo documentation.

See Oracle Tuxedo Installation Guide, https://docs.oracle.com/en/database/oracle/tuxedo/22/otxig/performing-installation-tasks.html#GUID-5B14DCEC-0D88-4862-9540-4FA0959C79AD.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Task 13-2-8: Checking the Windows Service Account

Use the information in this section to ensure that the Microsoft Windows services are properly configured. Oracle recommends installing the application server binaries locally on your C drive, for best performance. The procedure to set up the ORACLE ProcMGR V22.1.0.0.0 service in the next section includes options for the account type. Use the following guidelines to choose between the Local System account option and the This Account option. (For the option This Account, you must specify a user ID and password.)

Note. For the sake of brevity and convenience, this documentation sometimes shortens "ORACLE ProcMGR V22.1.0.0.0" to "Oracle ProcMGR."

- If you plan to install the PeopleSoft application server binaries (as in, psappsrv.exe and so on) on a remote file server, you must select the This Account option.
- If the PeopleSoft application server binaries are *local,* that is, they exist on your local hard drive, you can use either the Local System account or This Account option.
- If you intend to use this Microsoft Windows service to start Process Scheduler, you must *always* select the This Account option. Enter the name of your Domain/Windows user name—not the machine name—and your password.
- If you are running on Microsoft Windows and are configuring a search index that resides on a mapped network drive, you must ensure that the user ID of the Oracle ProcMGR service has access to network drives accessed by the search engine. The search engine stores the search indexes at *PS_HOME/*data/search. However, this path can be changed in the application or the Process Scheduler's configuration. If this path is changed in these configurations and it points to a network drive, you must ensure that the user ID that starts the Oracle ProcMGR service has access to these network drives. The application server and the Process Scheduler are started by the Oracle ProcMGR service and therefore inherit the same permissions as the Oracle ProcMGR service.

See Also

"Setting Up Process Scheduler on Windows," Setting Up Process Scheduler Security

Task 13-2-9: Restricting Domain Process Privileges

This section discusses:

- Understanding Domain Process Privileges
- Setting TM_CPAU Environment Variable

Understanding Domain Process Privileges

For PeopleSoft systems, the Oracle ProcMGR service (tuxipc.exe) is responsible for starting Oracle Tuxedo domain processes on Microsoft Windows. By default, domain processes run as the same user ID that the service is running as. In a default installation, the service is configured to log on to Microsoft Windows as the Local System user. Microsoft does not support assigning network privileges to the Local System user for security reasons, but the Local System user otherwise has full administrative access to the local system.

In this configuration, PeopleSoft PeopleTools domain processes also run as the Local System user, which presents several potential issues, including:

- PeopleSoft PeopleTools domain processes are unable to access network resources.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- PeopleSoft PeopleTools domain processes run with more privileges than are necessary. A compromised PeopleSoft PeopleTools process will have full access to the local system and could potentially be used to gain unauthorized access to the local system.
- All PeopleSoft PeopleTools domain processes on the system run as the same user ID.

These problems are not present on UNIX systems where domain processes are always started as the user that runs tmadmin (by way of PSADMIN for PeopleSoft installations) to boot the domain. UNIX systems therefore support multiple domains, each running under different user IDs, with only the desired local privileges, and with no undesirable restrictions to network resources.

For Microsoft Windows platforms, you can use the Oracle Tuxedo TM_CPAU environment variable to achieve behavior similar to UNIX systems. If TM_CPAU is set to *YES* before tuxipc is started, tuxipc creates an Oracle Tuxedo process that belongs to the user who initiated tmboot. If the Oracle ProcMGR service (tuxipc.exe) is started with the TM_CPAU=YES environment variable set, then domain processes will run as the user ID used to run tmadmin (PSADMIN) to boot the domain.

Using the TM_CPAU environment variable enables a variety of configuration options, including:

- The Oracle ProcMGR service can be run as the Local System user, but domain processes can be run using a minimally privileged user. This reduces the chance of a compromised PeopleSoft PeopleTools process being used to gain unauthorized access to the system. Note that the option "Allow services to interact with Desktop" should *not* be selected.
- The Oracle ProcMGR service can be configured to log on to Microsoft Windows using a minimally privileged user ID and PeopleSoft PeopleTools processes can run as a user with more privileges than the Oracle Tuxedo user ID. For example, the Oracle Tuxedo user ID could have read-only access to *PS_CFG_HOME*, but the PeopleSoft PeopleTools user could have read-write access. The Oracle Tuxedo user ID does not actually require read access to *PS_HOME*. When CreateProcessAsUser runs, access to the executable to start is evaluated using the user ID that the process will run as.
- Domain processes can be identified and managed in Windows Task Manager by a non-administrative user.

See File Formats, Data Descriptions, MIBs, and System Processes Reference, Oracle Tuxedo Reference Topics, https://docs.oracle.com/cd/E35855_01/tuxedo/docs12c/rf5/rf5.html.

Setting TM_CPAU Environment Variable

This is a recommended step. Perform this step only if Local System account is used in the task Setting Up the Windows Services for Oracle Tuxedo.

To set the TM_CPAU environment variable:

1. Access the Control Panel, and then select System and Security, System.
2. Select Advanced system settings.
3. Select the Advanced tab.
4. Click Environment Variables.
5. In the System variables area, click New to add a new environment variable.
6. Enter TM_CPAU as the variable name, YES as the value, and click OK three times to close the dialog boxes.
7. Restart your machine.

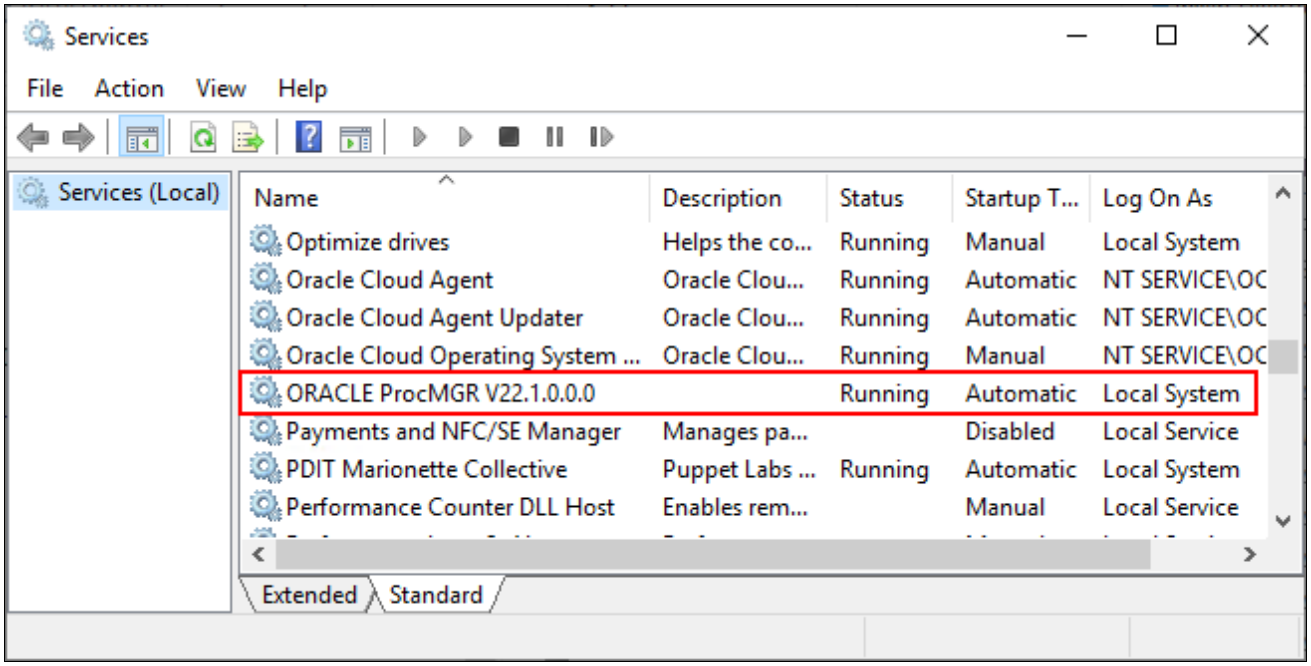
Task 13-2-10: Setting Up the Windows Services for Oracle Tuxedo

To set up the Microsoft Windows services for Oracle Tuxedo:

1. Log on again as the Application Server Administrator, TUXADM, or a designated user ID.

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

2. Access the Services dialog box, for example from Windows Administrative Tools.
3. Locate the service labeled *ORACLE ProcMGR V22.1.0.0.0*.



Services dialog box

4. Double-click ORACLE ProcMGR V22.1.0.0.0 to open the properties dialog box.
5. On the General tab, if the Stop button is enabled, click it to stop the current ORACLE ProcMGR V22.1.0.0.0 process.
6. Select Log On.

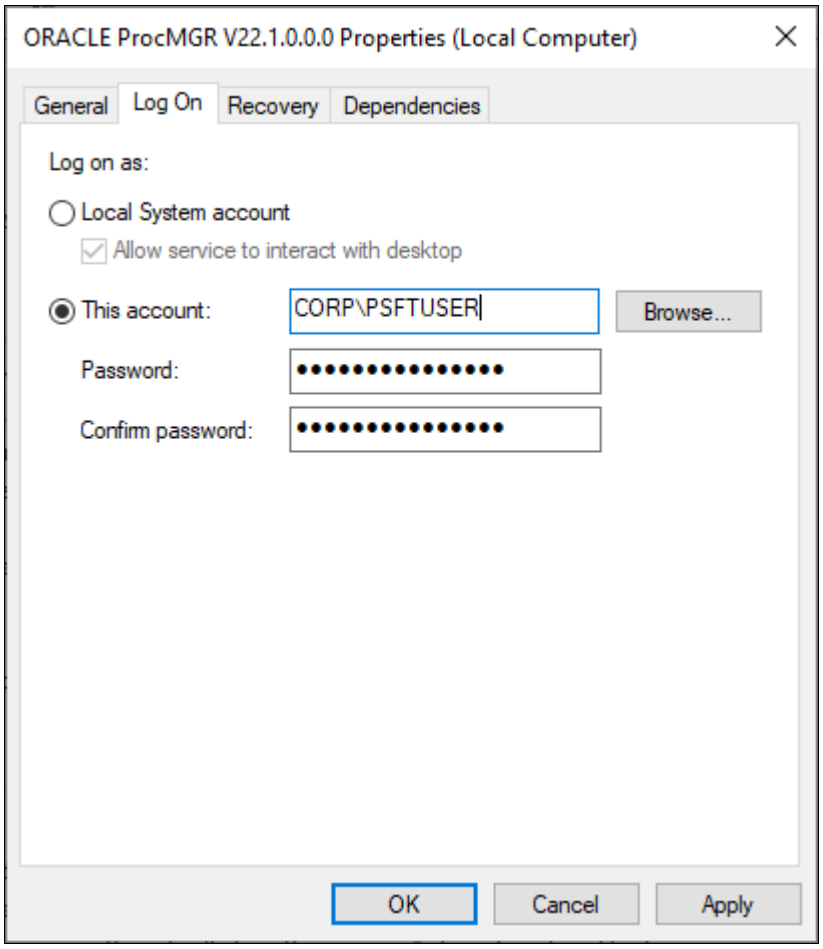
Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

7. Choose either Local System account or This account.

   If you select This account, as shown in this example, be sure to specify a user with the appropriate permissions, and then enter and confirm the password.

Note. The option used—Local System account or This account—must be consistent with your ODBC catalog definition, due to registry operations. For example, if you use the Local System Account option, you must also catalog your ODBC data source using System DSN.

See Checking the Windows Service Account.

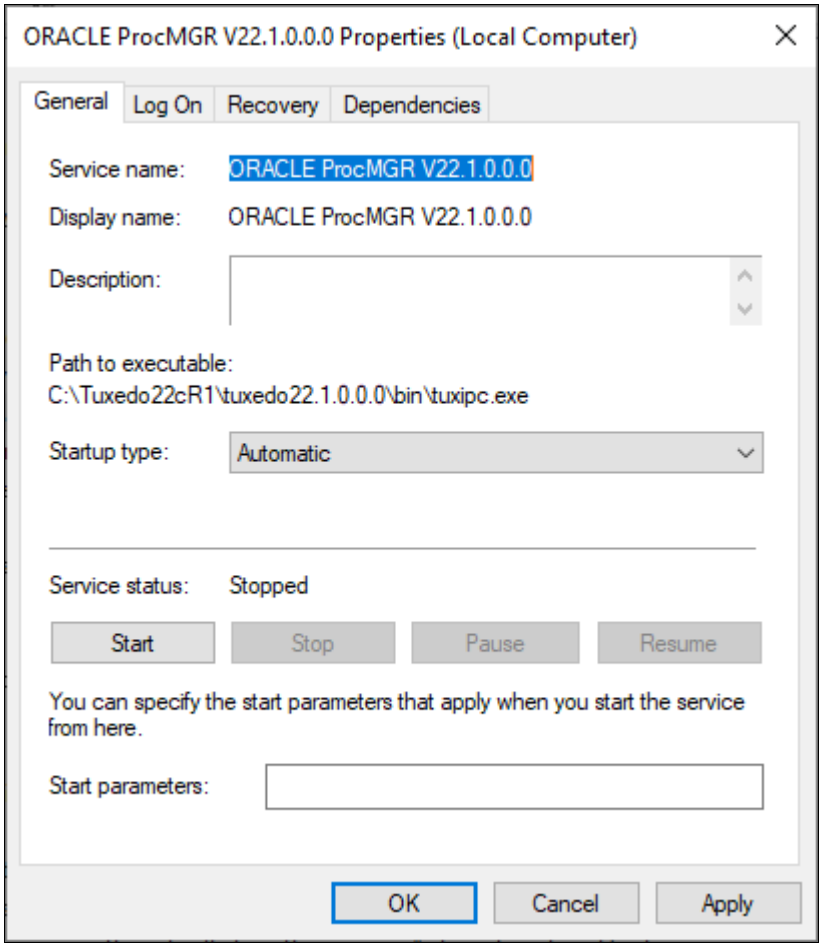


ORACLE ProcMGR V22.1.0.0.0 Properties dialog box: Log On tab

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

8. Select General.

   Make sure that Startup Type is set to *Automatic*, as shown in this example.



ORACLE ProcMGR V22.1.0.0.0 Properties dialog box: General tab

9. Click Start.

   The status Started appears both on the General tab of the Oracle ProcMGR V22.1.0.0.0 Properties dialog box and in the Services dialog box. Click OK to close the dialog box.

10. As mentioned, unless you intend to use the Tuxedo Web Monitor, you should disable the TListen 22.1.0.0.0 (Port: *PORT*) service, where *PORT* is the port number you entered during the installation. The default is 3050.

Task 13-2-11: Verifying the Server Installation on Microsoft Windows

At this point, you should verify that the server installation was successful.

To verify the installation:

1. Open a command prompt.
2. Set the TUXDIR environment variable; for example:

   ```
   set TUXDIR=C:\Tuxedo22cR1\tuxedo22.1.0.0.0
   ```

3. Go to the directory where you installed Oracle Tuxedo, *TUXDIR*, and then to the bin sub-directory. For example:

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
cd C:\Tuxedo22cR1\tuxedo22.1.0.0.0\bin
```

4. Issue this command:

   ```
   tmadmin -v
   ```

   The command will return the Oracle Tuxedo version that is installed. For example:

   ```
   INFO: Oracle Tuxedo, Version 22.1.0.0.0, 64-bit, Patch Level 004
   ```

   If you do not see the desired output, review your steps and reinstall Oracle Tuxedo 22cR1.

5. Open the Microsoft Windows registry, for example by selecting Start, Run, regedit.
   Verify that the following key is created in the Windows registry:
   HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\ORACLE\TUXEDO\22.1.0.0.0

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 14

Configuring the Application Server on Windows

This chapter discusses:

- Understanding the Application Server
- Prerequisites
- Creating a Wallet for the SSL/TLS Setup
- Setting Up COBOL for Remote Call
- Verifying Database Connectivity
- Creating, Configuring, and Starting an Initial Application Server Domain

Understanding the Application Server

The information in this chapter is provided to help you configure your PeopleSoft application server.

Note. COBOL is not needed for PeopleSoft PeopleTools or for PeopleSoft Applications that contain no COBOL programs. Check the information on My Oracle Support, and your application-specific documentation, for the details on whether your application requires COBOL.

Oracle supports a Microsoft Windows application server to use with any of our supported databases for the PeopleSoft installation. For detailed information, consult the certification information on My Oracle Support. The application server support can be found on the certification pages for PeopleSoft systems.

You can install the application server using either a "logical" or "physical" three-tier configuration.

- Installing the application server on the same machine as the database server is known as a logical three-tier configuration. For your initial PeopleSoft installation, Oracle suggests that you install a logical configuration to simplify setup.
- Installing the application server on a machine separate from the database server machine is known as a physical three-tier configuration.

The configuration and log files for application server domains reside in *PS_CFG_HOME.* If you do not set a PS_CFG_HOME environment variable before beginning the application server configuration, the system installs it in a default location based on the current user's settings, as follows:

`%USERPROFILE%\psft\pt\<peopletools_version>`

See "Preparing for Installation," Defining Installation Locations.

Note. You can start application servers as a Windows service, which means that administrators no longer need to manually start each application server that runs on a Windows machine.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

See Also

"Preparing for Installation," Understanding PeopleSoft Servers and Clients

"Setting Up Process Scheduler on Windows," Starting Process Scheduler as a Windows Service

PeopleTools: System and Server Administration, "Using PSADMIN Menus"

PeopleTools: Data Management

My Oracle Support, Certifications

"Setting Up the Install Workstation"

"Installing and Compiling COBOL on Windows"

Prerequisites

Before beginning this procedure, you should have completed the following tasks:

- Installed the application server files.

  See "Preparing for Installation," Planning Your Initial Configuration.

  See "Deploying Mid-Tier Components."
- Installed the supported version of Oracle Tuxedo

  See "Installing Oracle Tuxedo."
- Set up SSL/TLS protocol for the workstation connection.

  The Secure Socket Layers/Transport Layer Security (SSL/TLS) protocol is supported for Workstation Listener and Jolt Listener ports for the current PeopleSoft PeopleTools release. The application server domain configuration requires a wallet.

  See Creating a Wallet for the SSL/TLS Setup.

  See *PeopleTools: Security Administration,* "Installing Web Server-Based Digital Certificates."
- Granted authorization to a PeopleSoft user ID to start the application server.

  The database configuration procedure includes a step for setting up the user ID with authorization to start the application server. See the application-specific installation instructions for information on the user IDs for your PeopleSoft application. See the *PeopleTools: Security Administration* product documentation for information on PeopleSoft PeopleTools delivered user profiles.

  See "Creating a Database," Running the Database Configuration Wizard.

  See "Creating a Database Manually," Creating Data Mover Import Scripts.
- Run the following SQL statements on your database server to review and if needed, update the PSCLASSDEFN table:

```
SELECT CLASSID, STARTAPPSERVER FROM PSCLASSDEFN
WHERE CLASSID IN (SELECT OPRCLASS FROM PSOPRCLS WHERE OPRID='<OPRID>')
UPDATE PSCLASSDEFN SET STARTAPPSERVER=1 WHERE CLASSID='<CLASSID>'
```


Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Note. Installers typically use VP1 or PS to test the application server. If these users are deleted or their passwords are changed, the application server will no longer be available. To avoid this problem, you can set up a new operator (called PSADMIN or PSASID, for instance) with privileges to start the application server. If you do this, you can use the new operator for your application servers and you won't need to change the password each time VP1 or PS is changed.

Task 14-1: Creating a Wallet for the SSL/TLS Setup

This section discusses:

- Understanding Wallets
- Creating a Wallet with OpenSSL

Task 14-1-1: Understanding Wallets

Before you configure the application server to use the SSL/TLS protocol, you need a wallet. Use these instructions to create wallets for the application server and workstation client. Wallets store security credentials (for example, private key, server certificate, CA certificate) for the application server and workstation client. You can create a wallet using OpenSSL, or orapki for Oracle databases.

Note. The term "Oracle Wallet" is sometimes used in the software and documentation, for example in PSADMIN custom configuration, to refer to wallets on all RDBMS. In this context it does not refer to an entity specific to an Oracle RDBMS.

In addition to the application server wallet, you may need to configure the keystore for the Web server (PIA). Web server domains use Keystore files to contain security credentials. Keystore files are created and managed using keytool commands, or the PeopleSoft delivered pskeymanager.

In the case that the application server and Web server communicate by SSL, both the wallet and keystore should be configured. For example, suppose a connection request is initiated from the Web server (which is acting as a client), to the application server (which is acting as the server). The application server needs to produce a certificate from the configured Oracle Wallet, which it will provide to the Web server. The Web server's keystore should contain the CA certificate that the server certificate sent by the application server.

See Also

E-AS: / E-WL: How to Enable Jolt SSL Without Creating a Wallet? My Oracle Support, Doc ID 2961285.1

PeopleTools: System and Server Administration, "Implementing WebLogic SSL Keys and Certificates."

"Setting Up the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture in Silent Mode," Configuring the SSL/TLS Port for JSL

Task 14-1-2: Creating a Wallet with OpenSSL

This section discusses:

- Defining OpenSSL Options
- Creating a Server Wallet for the Application Server Domain with OpenSSL
- Creating a Client Wallet for the Workstation Client with OpenSSL
- Adding the Server's Certificate to the Client's Trust Store with OpenSSL

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Defining OpenSSL Options

An example of an OpenSSL command that can be used to create a wallet is as follows.

For more information, see the OpenSSL documentation.

```
openssl pkcs12 -export -out ewallet.p12 -inkey server.key -in server.crt -⇒
chain -CAfile caCert.crt -passout pass:<password>
```

- `-export`: indicates that a PKCS 12 file is being created
- `-chain`: specifies that an attempt is made to include the entire certificate chain of the user certificate
- `-inkey`: specifies the private key file
- `-in`: specifies the file that contains the user certificate and any other certificates in the certificate chain
- `-CAfile`: specifies a file containing trusted certificates
- `-out`: specifies the output file name, which must be ewallet.p12 for an Oracle Wallet for PeopleSoft installations.
- `-passin`: specifies the password for the private key file
- `-passout`: specifies the password for the newly created wallet

Creating a Server Wallet for the Application Server Domain with OpenSSL

This section gives an example of creating a wallet for the application server with the open-source tool OpenSSL.

1. Create a directory, for example wallet.server.

   For example on Microsoft Windows:

   ```
   mkdir C:\wallet.server
   ```

2. Change directory to wallet.server.

   ```
   cd wallet.server
   ```

3. Enter the following command:

   ```
   openssl genrsa -out server.key 4096
   ```

4. Enter the following command.

   ```
   openssl req -new -key server.key -out server.csr -subj <subject>
   ```

   For example:

   ```
   openssl req -new -key server.key -out server.csr -subj '/C=country/CN=⇒
   commonName'
   ```

   The <*subject*> values in this step and step 7 are used to replace the specified data in an input request, and output a modified request. The format for <*subject*> is `'/type0=value0/type1=value1/type2=....'`. Characters must be escaped with a backslash (\), and no spaces are skipped. Use the following fields:

   - /C — Country
   - /CN — Common name
   - /L — Location

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- /O — Organization
- /OU — Organizational Unit
- /ST — State

5. Enter the following command:

```
openssl genrsa -out caCert.key 4096
```

6. Enter the following command,

```
openssl req -new -x509 -days 1826 -key caCert.key -out caCert.crt -subj ⇒
<subject>
```

For example:

```
openssl req -new -x509 -days 1826 -key caCert.key -out caCert.crt -subj⇒
 '/C=US/OU=Class 2 Public Primary Certification Authority/O=My⇒
Organization'
```

7. Enter the following command:

```
openssl x509 -req -days 730 -in server.csr -CA caCert.crt -CAkey ca⇒
Cert.key -set_serial 01 -out server.crt
```

8. Enter the following command to create the wallet ewallet.p12 and specify the server password:

```
openssl pkcs12 -export -out ewallet.p12 -inkey server.key -in⇒
 server.crt -chain -CAfile caCert.crt -passout pass:<server_password>
```

Creating a Client Wallet for the Workstation Client with OpenSSL

This section gives an example of creating a client wallet with the open-source tool OpenSSL.

1. Create a directory, for example wallet.client, and change to that directory.

```
mkdir wallet.client
cd wallet.client
```

2. Copy the server's trust store to the client wallet.

```
cp wallet.server\caCert.crt wallet.client
cp wallet.server\caCert.key wallet.client
```

3. Enter these commands:

```
openssl genrsa -out client.key 4096
```

4. Run this command:

```
openssl req -new -key client.key -out client.csr -subj <subject>
```

For example:

```
openssl req -new -key client.key -out client.csr -subj '/C=country/CN=⇒
commonName'
```

5. Run this command:

```
openssl x509 -req -days 730 -in client.csr -CA caCert.crt -CAkey ca⇒
```

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
Cert.key -set_serial 01 -out client.crt
```

6. Enter the following command to create the wallet ewallet.p12 and specify the client password:

```
openssl pkcs12 -export -out ewallet.p12 -inkey client.key -in⇒
 client.crt -chain -CAfile caCert.crt -passout pass:<client_password>
```

7. Remove the client wallet password:
   a. Make a backup copy of the wallet, ewallet.p12:

      On Microsoft Windows:

      ```
      xcopy ewallet.p12 oldwallet.p12
      ```

   b. Run this command:

      ```
      openssl pkcs12 -clcerts -nokeys -in oldwallet.p12 -out⇒
       certificate.crt -password pass:<client_password> -passin pass:⇒
      <client_password>
      ```

   c. Run this command:

      ```
      openssl pkcs12 -cacerts -nokeys -in oldwallet.p12 -out ca-cert.ca -⇒
      password pass:C<client_password> -passin pass:<client_password>
      ```

   d. Run this command:

      ```
      openssl pkcs12 -nocerts -in oldwallet.p12 -out private.key -password⇒
       pass:<client_password> -passin pass:<client_password> -passout pass:⇒
      temp
      ```

   e. Run this command:

      ```
      openssl rsa -in private.key -out NewKeyFile.key -passin pass:temp
      ```

   f. Run the command to create the PEM.pem file.

      This file is created to copy the public key and root certificates.

      On Microsoft Windows:

      ```
      type certificate.crt ca-cert.ca >PEM.pem
      ```

   g. Run this command:

      ```
      openssl pkcs12 -export -nodes -in PEM.pem -inkey NewKeyFile.key -out⇒
       ewallet.p12 -passout pass:TrustedCertsOnlyNoPWNeeded
      ```

Adding the Server's Certificate to the Client's Trust Store with OpenSSL

To complete the setup, add the application server's certificate to the workstation client's trust store:

1. Change directory.

   ```
   cd %ORACLE_HOME%\jdk\bin
   ```

2. Add the certificate to the trust store found in the web server directory for the application server domain.

   ```
   keytool -import -file <server_wallet>/<certificate> -alias srvcert -⇒
   keystore <PIA_HOME>\webserv\<DOMAIN_NAME>\piaconfig\keystore\pskey -⇒
   ```

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
storepass password -noprompt
```

For example, on Microsoft Windows:

```
keytool -import -file wallet.server/caCert.crt -alias srvcert -keystore⇒
 C:\user\psft\pt\8.62\webserv\ps\piaconfig\keystore\pskey -storepass⇒
 password -noprompt
```

Task 14-2: Setting Up COBOL for Remote Call

Remote Call is a PeopleCode feature that launches a COBOL program from an application server, PeopleCode program or a batch Application Engine PeopleCode program and waits for it to complete execution before continuing. The execution of a COBOL program via Remote Call is completely independent of the Process Scheduler. You need to set up a COBOL runtime environment and COBOL executables on the application server to support Remote Call.

See "Installing and Compiling COBOL on Windows."

Note. If your application does not contain COBOL programs, you do not need to purchase or compile COBOL.

Task 14-3: Verifying Database Connectivity

Before continuing, it is critical to verify connectivity to the database that the application server domain will use. To verify connectivity, connect to the database server from the application server using the native SQL tool on the application server.

For Microsoft SQL Server use a supported ODBC driver for connectivity.

See "Installing Microsoft SQL Server 2022," Configuring the Connection to Use ODBC Driver for Microsoft SQL Server 2022.

Task 14-4: Creating, Configuring, and Starting an Initial Application Server Domain

This section discusses:

- Creating, Configuring, and Starting the Application Server Domain
- Testing the Three-Tier Connection
- Importing an Existing Application Server Domain Configuration
- Setting Up a Custom Application Server Domain Configuration
- Troubleshooting Common Errors

Task 14-4-1: Creating, Configuring, and Starting the Application Server Domain

To create, configure, and start the application server domain:

1. Run the `psadmin` command.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

You see the PeopleSoft Server Administration menu, as in this example:

```
-------------------------------
PeopleSoft Server Administration
-------------------------------

PS_CFG_HOME:  C:\Users\JSMITH\psft\pt\8.62
PS_HOME:      C:\psft\pt\ps_home8.62
PS_APP_HOME:  C:\psft\pt\hcm_app_home

1) Application Server
2) Process Scheduler
3) Search Server
4) Web (PIA) Server
5) Switch Config Home
6) Service Setup
7) Replicate Config Home
8) Refresh Config Home
q) Quit

Command to execute (1-8, q): 1
```

Note. Make sure you change the directory from the *PS_HOME* on the file server to the *PS_HOME,* or high-level directory, on the application server.

---

2. Depending on your environment, you may see a message after the initial menu, which indicates that PSADMIN has modified the *PS_CFG_HOME*/peopletools.properties file with the current *PS_HOME* location:

```
******************************************************
PS_CFG_HOME/peopletools.properties file has been updated.
You should use the Config Home Refresh feature in PSAdmin
to ensure that all of your domains are current.
Alternatively, you may recreate all of your domains.
Please press any key to continue...
******************************************************
```

   This indicates that one of these situations exists:

   - The *PS_CFG_HOME* that you are working with was used previously from a different *PS_HOME*. In this case, you should recreate any existing Application Server, Process Scheduler, Search, or PIA domains in this *PS_CFG_HOME*.
   - You configured your environment such that *PS_CFG_HOME* is the same as *PS_HOME*. The first time you use PSADMIN to create a domain, it updates the *PS_CFG_HOME*/peopletools.properties file. Continue with the next step.

3. Specify *1* for Application Server and press ENTER.
4. Specify *2* to Create a domain and press ENTER.

```
-----------------------------------------
PeopleSoft Application Server Administration
-----------------------------------------
  1) Administer a domain
  2) Create a domain
  3) Delete a domain
```

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
  4) Import domain configuration
  q) Quit

 Command to execute (1-4, q): 2
```

5. Specify the domain name.

   In this example the domain name is HRDMO:

   ```
   Please enter name of domain to create :HRDMO
   ```

   Domain names are case sensitive and must be eight US-ASCII characters or less. The domain name is used to create a directory name under the *PS_CFG_HOME*\appserv directory.

   See the information on *PS_CFG_HOME* and server domain configuration in the *PeopleTools: System and Server Administration* product documentation.

6. Specify *4* for small if this is your initial domain installation, press ENTER.

   See *PeopleTools: System and Server Administration.*

7. After the system creates the domain, the PeopleSoft Application Server Administration menu appears with a Quick-configure menu similar to this:

```
----------------------------------------------------------
Quick-configure menu -- domain: HRDMO
----------------------------------------------------------
         Features                                 Settings
        ==========                               ==========
  1) Pub/Sub Servers       : No        17) DBNAME          :[HRDMO]
  2) Quick Server          : No        18) DBTYPE          :[MICROSFT]
  3) Query Servers         : No        19) UserId          :[QEDMO]
  4) Jolt                  : Yes       20) UserPswd        :[]
  5) Jolt Relay            : No        21) DomainID        :[TESTSERV]
  6) WSL                   : No        22) AddToPATH       :[c:\Program⇒
 Files⇒
\Microsoft SQL Server\Client SDK\ODBC\170\Tools\Binn]
  7) PC Debugger           : No        23) ConnectID       :[people]
  8) Event Notification    : Yes       24) ConnectPswd     :[]
  9) MCF Servers           : No        25) DomainConnectPswd:[]
 10) Perf Collator         : No        26) PHC Remote Admin Settings:[]
 11) Analytic Servers      : Yes       27) WSL Port        :[7000]
 12) Domains Gateway       : No        28) WSL SSL Port    :[7010]
 13) Push Notifications    : No        29) JSL Port        :[9000]
                                       30) JSL SSL Port    :[9010]
                                       31) JRAD Port       :[9100]
     Actions
    =========
 14) Load config as shown
 15) Custom configuration
 16) Edit environment settings
  h) Help for this menu
  q) Return to previous menu

 HINT: Enter 17 to edit DBNAME, then 14 to load

 Enter selection (1-28, h, or q):
```

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Note. If your installation includes more than one application server domain on a given machine, read the troubleshooting section for more information.

See Troubleshooting Common Errors.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

8. If you need to change any of the features, type the number next to the feature name and press ENTER.

   If you need to modify the values for any of the settings, enter the number next to the parameter name, press ENTER, then type the new value, and press ENTER again. This table lists the parameters and gives brief descriptions.

Parameter	Description
WSL	Configure the WSL to boot by changing option 6 to Yes. To change the option, enter *6* and press ENTER.
Event Notification	To use the PeopleSoft Report Distribution system, select *Yes* for Event Notification. This enables the REN server, which is used by the "run to window" functionality of the Report Distribution system. *The Report Distribution system, MultiChannel Framework, and Optimization Framework use REN servers.* You must also remember to enter an Authentication Token Domain when installing the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture (PIA).
MCF Servers	If you are configuring an application server domain to support applications based on the PeopleSoft MultiChannel Framework (such as PeopleSoft CRM ERMS), select *Yes* for MCF Servers. See the information on configuring REN Servers in the product documentation. See *PeopleTools: MultiChannel Framework.*
AddToPATH	Enter the path to the 64-bit connectivity software. **Note.** You can skip this step if the PATH environment variable already includes the database connectivity path. The location of the connectivity software may vary depending on the version of Microsoft SQL Server or the options chosen during installation. Here is the default path for the currently supported versions: C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\Client SDK\ODBC\170\Tools\Binn
UserPswd	Enter the password value that you specified during the database configuration or installation. Reenter each password to verify the value. The password is hidden by masking characters as you type and in the Quick-configure menu.
ConnectPswd	Enter the password value that you specified during the database configuration or installation. Reenter each password to verify the value. The password is hidden by masking characters as you type and in the Quick-configure menu.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Parameter	Description
DomainConnectPswd	If you want to set a Domain Connection password, enter *25* and specify a password of 8 characters or less. Reenter the password to verify the value. The password is hidden by masking characters as you type and in the Quick-configure menu. The Domain Connection password is optional. You can specify a value or leave it blank. However, if you do specify a value, you must supply the same value when installing the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture, to ensure the connection to the Application Server.

9. Use setting 26) PHC Remote Admin Settings if you want to enable JMX agents for use with PeopleSoft Health Center (PHC).

   The remote administration settings are enabled by default. After you select this setting, you must supply a port, user name and password.

   Note. If you do not disable the setting and you do not supply any information, you see a message when you configure the Application Server domain, such as "Enable PS JMX is not 0, but some of PS JMX parameters (userId, userPwd) are empty. PHC will not be able to work."

   You can also enable SSL for the JMX agents for improved security. If you enable SSL, you are prompted to supply the location, password, and type for the SSL keystore and truststore.

   See *PeopleTools: Performance Monitor,* Configuring PeopleSoft Health Center.

   Note. You can also specify the necessary values using the custom configuration. The Enable Remote Administration parameters are in the PSTOOLS section.

   a. Enter *26* to access the PHC Remote Admin Settings.

   b. Accept the value *1* to enable remote administration, or change to *0* to disable.

      ```
      Enter new value for Enable Remote Administration [1]:
      ```

   c. Enter the port number to use for remote administration of domain processes.

      All embedded JMX agents will use the port in the JMX service URL.

      ```
      Enter new value for Remote Administration Port [10100]:
      ```

   d. Enter the user name for remote administration connections.

      ```
      Enter new value for Remote Administration UserId [psftuser]:
      ```

   e. Enter a user password two times.

      Note. You do not have to enter an encrypted password. The psadmin utility encrypts the password during configuration.

      ```
      Enter new value for Remote Administration Password []:
      Reenter the Remote Administration Password :
      ```

   f. Enter *1* if you want to enable SSL for the JMX agents, or *0* if you want to disable it.

      The default is *0,* disabled.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
Enter new value for Remote Administration SSL Enabled [1]:
```

g. If you enable SSL, enter the location for the SSL keystore.

```
Enter new value for Remote Administration SSL Keystore [piahome]:
```

h. Enter the password two times for the SSL keystore.

The password is masked.

```
Enter new value for Remote Administration SSL Keystore Password :
Reenter the Remote Administration SSL Keystore Password :
```

i. Enter the format for the keystore, PKCS12 or JKS.

```
Enter new value for Remote Administration SSL Keystore Type [PKCS12]:
```

j. Enter the location for the SSL truststore.

```
Enter new value for Remote Administration SSL Truststore [piahome]:
```

k. Enter the password two times for the SSL truststore.

```
Enter new value for Remote Administration SSL Truststore Password :
Reenter the Remote Administration SSL Truststore Password :
```

l. Enter the format for the truststore, PKCS12 or JKS.

```
Enter new value for Remote Administration SSL Truststore Type ⇒
[PKCS12]:
```

m. Continue with the Quick-configure menu.

10. To set up the Workstation Listener for SSL/TLS protocol, enter *28* for WSL SSL Port, and specify an available port number.

    The default port number is 7010.

11. To set up the Jolt listener for SSL/TLS protocol, enter *30* for JSL SSL Port, and specify an available port number.

    The default port number is 9010.

12. Use the custom configuration menu to specify the settings for SSL/TLS encryption and the wallet location.

    See *PeopleTools: Integration Broker*, "Installing Web Server-Based Digital Certificates."

    a. To specify the minimum and maximum encryption for SSL/TLS, select *15* for Custom Configuration.

    b. Reply *y*, and press ENTER, at this prompt:

```
Do you want to change any config values (y/n) [n]?
```

    c. Reply *n*, and press ENTER, at this prompt:

```
Do you want to change any values (y/n) [n]?
```

    Continue to enter *n*, for No, for all sections until you see the Workstation Listener section, and then answer *y*. (Be aware that there are several sections.)

    d. If necessary, change the values for WSL minimum and maximum encryption to correspond to your installed SSL/TLS cipher. The default minimum is 0 and the default maximum is 256. The maximum is the number of bits that indicates the highest level of encryption possible for the installed SSL/TLS version.

```
Values for config section - Workstation Listener
     Address=%PS_MACH%
```

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
Port=7000
SSL Port=7010
WSL Min Encryption=0
WSL Max Encrytion=256
Min Handlers=1
Max Handlers=2
Max Clients per Handler=40
Client Cleanup Timeout=60
Init Timeout=5
Tuxedo Compression Threshold=5000
```

e. Accept the defaults for the next series of questions until asked if you want Oracle Wallet configured. In this case, answer *y*.

f. Specify the values for the location, name, and password for the Oracle Wallet that you created.

```
Values for config section - Oracle Wallet
     SEC_PRINCIPAL_LOCATION=%PS_SERVDIR%\security
     SEC_PRINCIPAL_NAME=psft
     SEC_PRINCIPAL_PASSWORD=
```

g. Accept the defaults for the next series of questions until asked if you want the JOLT Listener configured. In this case, answer *y*

h. If necessary, change the values for JSL minimum and maximum encryption to correspond to your installed SSL/TLS cipher. The default minimum is 0 and the default maximum is 256. The maximum is the number of bits that indicates the highest level of encryption possible for the installed SSL/TLS version.

```
Values for config section - JOLT Listener
     Address=%PS_MACH%
     Port=9000
     SSL Port=9010
     JSL Min Encryption=0
     JSL Max Encrytion=256
     Min Handlers=1
     Max Handlers=2
     Max Clients per Handler=40
     Client Cleanup Timeout=10
     Init Timeout=5
     Client Connection Mode=ANY
     Jolt Compression Threshold=1000000
```

i. Accept the default for the remaining questions; the configuration will load automatically.

13. If you are installing a REN server:

a. Enter *15* for Custom configuration.

b. Reply *y*, and press ENTER, at this prompt:

```
Do you want to change any config values (y/n) [n]?
```

c. Reply *n*, and press ENTER, at this prompt:

```
Do you want to change any values (y/n) [n]?
```

Continue to enter *n*, for No, for all sections until you see the PSRENSRV section, and then answer *y*. (Be aware that there are several sections.)

d. Leave the defaults for all settings except for default_auth_token, which you should set to the domain name

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

for your web server.

Note. The default_auth_token setting should be identical to the Authentication Token Domain that you set during PIA installation.

Note. When you use the DPK setup script, the psft_configuration.yaml file includes the value for auth_token_domain in the pia_domain_list area.

See "Setting Up the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture in Silent Mode."

e. Accept the defaults for the next series of questions until asked if you want Event Notification configured. In this case, answer *y*.

f. Accept the default for the remaining questions; the configuration will load automatically.

14. If you are not installing a REN server, after you update the settings you can load the configuration by entering *14*, for Load config as shown, from the Quick-configure menu.

15. To start the application server (whether you installed a REN server or not), select *1*, Boot this domain, from the PeopleSoft Domain administration menu.

16. Select *1*, Boot (Serial Boot) or *2*, Parallel Boot, from the PeopleSoft Domain Boot Menu.

Note. The messages you see and the number of processes started will depend on the options you chose during configuration.

17. If you plan to continue with PIA installation and testing, do not shut down the application server at this time.

18. If you want to shut down your PeopleSoft application server domain later, follow these simple steps:

a. From the PeopleSoft Domain Administration menu, enter *2* for Domain shutdown menu.

b. From the PeopleTools Domain Shutdown Menu, enter *1* for Normal shutdown.

You see messages about the application server processes being shut down. The number of processes stopped will vary depending on the number of processes that started when you booted the domain.

c. Enter *q* to quit the PeopleSoft Domain Administration Menu.

Task 14-4-2: Testing the Three-Tier Connection

If you get an error message when you try to sign in to the Application Server in Application Designer (that is, three-tier mode), it may be due to an incorrect server name or port number, because the database server is not running, or because the application server was not booted. To test a three-tier connection from the PeopleTools Development Environment (the Windows-based client):

1. Start Configuration Manager with one of these methods:

- Locate PeopleTools 8.62, Configuration Manager in the list of programs, for example from the Start menu or the Apps screen.
- Run *PS_HOME*\bin\client\winx86\pscfg.exe.

2. Select the Profile Tab. Highlight Default and select Edit.

3. On the Edit Profile dialog box, select *Application Server* as the Connection Type.

4. Enter values for these parameters:

- Application Server Name
- Machine Name or IP Address
- Port Number (WSL)

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Enter the WSL port that you specified when creating the application server domain. If you want to use the SSL/TLS protocol for connection, enter the WSL SSL port number (the default is 7010). If you want to use the LLE protocol, enter the non-SSL WSL port (the default is 7000).

- Domain Connection Password and Domain Connection Password (confirm)

  Specify a value for the password, and repeat your entry for confirmation. The password must be 8 characters or less.

  This password is optional. If you did not set the Domain Connection Password in Configuration Manager or in the Application Server configuration, leave it blank. If you specify a password, you must supply the same password during the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture installation for a successful connection between the Application Server and PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture.

  See the *PeopleTools: System and Server Administration* product documentation for information on using PeopleSoft Configuration Manager and PSADMIN.

- Wallet Location

  Enter the location that you specified for the client wallet.

- Wallet Name

  Enter the name for the client wallet that you specified.

5. Select Set to add the definition to the list and select OK to close the dialog box.
6. On the Configuration Manager dialog box, select the Startup tab.
7. Select *Application Server* from the Database Type list. Your application server name should be displayed.
8. Enter the values for User ID, Connect ID, and password.
9. Click OK.

Note. Confirm that the application server is running by booting it from PSADMIN. Select *1,* Boot this domain, from the PeopleSoft Domain administration menu. Select option *1,* Boot (Serial Boot) or *2,* Parallel Boot, from the PeopleSoft Domain Boot menu.

---

10. Start Application Designer with one of these methods:
    - Locate PeopleTools 8.62, Application Designer, in the list of programs, for example from the Start menu or the Apps screen.
    - Run *PS_HOME*\bin\client\winx86\pside.exe.
11. In the PeopleSoft Signon dialog box:
    - Select *Application Server* as the Connection Type.
    - Confirm that the Application Server Name is correct.
    - Enter values for User ID and password.
12. Select OK to open Application Designer.

If you see the following error message when you try to sign in to the Application Server in Application Designer:

```
Network API: "Could not connect to application server 'Application Server⇒
 Name' Make sure the PeopleTools authentication server (PSAUTH) is booted."
```

This may indicate a problem with the Domain Connection Password. For example, if the password set in the Application Server configuration file does not match the value in Configuration Manager, you may get this error message when you sign in to Application Designer in three-tier mode. Check the Application Server logs for more information.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Task 14-4-3: Importing an Existing Application Server Domain Configuration

If you have an existing application server configuration for a previous PeopleSoft PeopleTools release, you can import it to create a new domain. You can import an existing domain configuration by specifying a file or by specifying the path to an existing domain. To import from a file, you must use the psappsrv.cfg file found inside an existing application server domain folder (you must specify the full path to psappsrv.cfg). This file can be located anywhere in the file system, but must be named psappsrv.cfg. To import from an existing domain configuration that you created in the current PeopleSoft PeopleTools release, you must specify *PS_CFG_HOME* and the name of an existing application server domain. (If you are importing a domain from a release before PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.50, note that the domains were created in *PS_HOME,* and that is the path that you should provide.)

To import an existing application server domain configuration:

1. Go to the *PS_HOME*\appserv directory and run the `psadmin` command.

   You see the PeopleSoft Server Administration menu, as in this example:

   ```
   ---------------------------------
   PeopleSoft Server Administration
   ---------------------------------

   PS_CFG_HOME:  C:\Users\JSMITH\psft\pt\8.62
   PS_HOME:      C:\psft\pt\ps_home8.62
   PS_APP_HOME:  C:\psft\pt\hcm_app_home

   1) Application Server
   2) Process Scheduler
   3) Search Server
   4) Web (PIA) Server
   5) Switch Config Home
   6) Service Setup
   7) Replicate Config Home
   8) Refresh Config Home
   q) Quit

   Command to execute (1-8, q): 1
   ```

   The PS_CONFIG_HOME location, also referred to as Config Home, corresponds to the current working directory. For information on how Config Home is set, see the *PeopleTools: System and Server Administration* product documentation.

   Note. Make sure you change the directory from the *PS_HOME* on the file server to the *PS_HOME* on the application server.

   ---

2. Depending on your environment, you may see a message after the initial menu, which indicates that PSADMIN has modified the *PS_CFG_HOME*/peopletools.properties file with the current *PS_HOME* location:

   ```
   ******************************************************
   PS_CFG_HOME/peopletools.properties file has been updated.
   You should use the Config Home Refresh feature in PSAdmin
   to ensure that all of your domains are current.
   ```

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
Alternatively, you may recreate all of your domains.
Please press any key to continue...
*********************************************************
```

This indicates that one of these situations exists:

- The *PS_CFG_HOME* that you are working with was used previously from a different *PS_HOME*. In this case, you should recreate any existing Application Server, Process Scheduler, Search, or PIA domains in this *PS_CFG_HOME*.
- You configured your environment such that *PS_CFG_HOME* is the same as *PS_HOME*. The first time you use PSADMIN to create a domain, it updates the *PS_CFG_HOME*/peopletools.properties file. Continue with the next step.

3. Specify *1* for Application Server.
4. Specify *4* for Import domain configuration.

```
-----------------------------------------
PeopleSoft Application Server Administration
-----------------------------------------
  1) Administer a domain
  2) Create a domain
  3) Delete a domain
  4) Import domain configuration
  q) Quit

 Command to execute (1-4, q): 4
```

5. Specify *1* for Import regular domain.

```
-----------------------------------------
PeopleSoft Import Application Server Configuration
-----------------------------------------

  1) Import regular domain
  2) Import IB Master Configuration
  q) Quit

Command to execute (1-2, q) : 1
```

6. Specify whether to import the domain configuration from a file (option 1) or from an existing application domain configuration (option 2).

```
-----------------------------------------
PeopleSoft Import Application Server Configuration
-----------------------------------------
  1) Import from file
  2) Import from application domain
  q) Quit

Command to execute (1-2, q) :
```

7. If you selected *1*, provide the full path to the file psappsrv.cfg, and then specify the name of the domain you want to create. If you selected 2, go to the next step.

```
Enter full path to configuration file
  :C:\temp\oldconfig\psappsrv.cfg
```


Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
Enter domain name to create
  :HRDMO
```

8. If you selected *2*, to Import from application domain, provide the full path to the *PS_CFG_HOME* of the existing domain.

```
If importing from PeopleTools 8.49 or earlier, provide PS_HOME for PS_⇒
CFG_HOME.

Enter PS_CFG_HOME of domain you wish to import: C:\Users\JSMITH\psft\pt⇒
\8.62
```

If applicable, choose among the existing application server domains in the specified *PS_CFG_HOME*:

```
Tuxedo domain list:
  1)  HRDBA
  2)  HRDBB

Select domain number to import: 1

Enter a name for new domain:  HRDMO
```

After you create the domain, continue to the next task to verify that the imported configuration parameters are appropriate for the newly created domain. You may need to change the following values:

- DBName

  DBName can be the same or different, depending on which database the application server needs to point to.
- DBType

  DBType depends on the database type of DBName.
- UserId and UserPswd

  UserId and UserPswd are the user's choice.
- Workstation Listener Port

  Workstation Listener Port will need to be modified if the old domain will be up and running in the same machine.
- Jolt Listener Port

  Jolt Listener Port will also need a different number if the old domain will be up and running in the same machine.
- Jolt Relay Adapter Listener Port

  Jolt Relay Adapter Listener Port will need a different number if the old domain will be up and running in the same machine, and will be using Jolt Relay Adapter.

Task 14-4-4: Setting Up a Custom Application Server Domain Configuration

The Quick-configure menu is initially displayed when you choose to configure your domain. This menu is intended for the commonly adjusted parameters—those most likely to change from domain to domain. However, there are additional configuration parameters that are not available through the Quick-configure menu. For such configuration parameters, you must use the Custom Configuration option, which you can access from the Quick-configure menu. Feel free to skip this procedure if you have already created and configured your Application Server using the Quick-configure menu and want to move forward.

The following steps assume you will be using PSADMIN to specify parameter settings.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

To reconfigure an application server domain:

1. Go to the *PS_HOME*\appserv directory and run the `psadmin` command.

   Note. Make sure you change the directory from the *PS_HOME* on the file server to the *PS_HOME* on the application server.

2. Depending on your environment, you may see a message after the initial menu, which indicates that PSADMIN has modified the *PS_CFG_HOME*/peopletools.properties file with the current *PS_HOME* location:

   ```
   ********************************************************
   PS_CFG_HOME/peopletools.properties file has been updated.
   You should use the Config Home Refresh feature in PSAdmin
   to ensure that all of your domains are current.
   Alternatively, you may recreate all of your domains.
   Please press any key to continue...
   ********************************************************
   ```

   This indicates that one of these situations exists:

   - The *PS_CFG_HOME* that you are working with was used previously from a different *PS_HOME*. In this case, you should recreate any existing Application Server, Process Scheduler, Search, or PIA domains in this *PS_CFG_HOME*.
   - You configured your environment such that *PS_CFG_HOME* is the same as *PS_HOME*. The first time you use PSADMIN to create a domain, it updates the *PS_CFG_HOME*/peopletools.properties file. Continue with the next step.
3. Specify *1* for Application Server and press ENTER.
4. Specify *1* for Administer a domain and press ENTER.
5. Select the domain to administer and press ENTER.
6. Specify *4* for Configure this domain and press ENTER.

   The option Configure this domain performs the following tasks:

   - Shuts down the application server, if it is running. (Shutdown is required since the binary file PSTUXCFG must be deleted and re-created to enable new configuration values. If there are no processes running when shutdown is attempted, an error will be displayed but the script continues on. This is normal.)
   - Initiates an interactive dialog, prompting for configuration parameters.
   - Updates psappsrv.cfg, generates psappsrv.ubb, and internally invokes Tuxedo's tmloadcf executable to create binary file PSTUXCFG used during the domain boot process.
7. Specify *15* for Custom Configuration and press ENTER.
8. Respond to this prompt:

   ```
   Do you want to change any config values (y/n):
   ```

   - Specify *y* to start an interactive dialog to change or examine parameter values, as described in the next step.

     Oracle recommends this option for more experienced users.
   - Specify *n* if you have already edited psappsrv.cfg, skip the next step, and continue with the step to select server process options.
9. Complete the interactive dialog to specify configuration parameters.

   Configuration parameters are grouped into sections. For each section, you are asked whether you want to

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

change any parameters in that section, as in the following example:

```
Values for config section - Startup
                DBName=
                DBType=
                UserId=
                UserPswd=
                ConnectId=
                ConnectPswd=
                ServerName=
                StandbyDBName=
                StandbyDBType=
                StandbyUserId=
                StandbyUserPswd=
                InMemoryDBName=
                InMemoryDBType=
Do you want to change any values (y/n)? [n]:  y
```

- Specify *y* to change any parameter values for the current configuration section displayed.

  You are prompted for each parameter value. Either specify a new value, or press ENTER to accept the default if applicable. After pressing ENTER, you are positioned at the next parameter in that section. When you are done with that section, you are again asked whether you want to re-edit any of the values you changed.
- Enter the user ID and user password that has security to start the application server. All application databases are delivered with one or more application server security users, usually PS or VP1.

  The password you enter is hidden by masking characters.
- The parameters StandbyDBName, StandbyDBType, StandbyUserId, and StandbyUserPswd, are used for a standby database in an Oracle environment.

  See *PeopleTools: Data Management,* "Implementing Oracle Active Data Guard."
- The parameters InMemoryDBName and InMemoryDBType are reserved for internal use.
- The WSL, JSL, and JRAD port numbers, which are found in other sections of the configuration parameters, have default values of 7000, 9000, and 9100, respectively. These values must be unique for each application server domain. You may alter the port values if necessary to ensure that they are unique
- If you do not wish to change any values, specify *n* and you will be prompted for the next configuration section.

Note. When setting up your application server, make a note of the values you use for Database Name, Application Server Name (the machine name), and JSL Port. You will need to use these same values when installing the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture.

See *PeopleTools: System and Server Administration.*

10. Select server process options.

    At this point, you will be prompted to select server process options. If this is your initial installation, we suggest you accept the defaults. A message similar to this appears:

    ```
    Setting Log Directory to the default... [PS_SERVDIR\LOGS]
    Configuration file successfully created.
    Loading new configuration...
    ```

    The message "Loading new configuration" indicates that PSADMIN is generating a binary file named PSTUXCFG, which is used to boot the application server. At this point, your application server should be

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

properly configured.

Task 14-4-5: Troubleshooting Common Errors

For troubleshooting help, you can access a log file through the PSADMIN PeopleSoft Domain Administration menu. The following list includes possible errors and troubleshooting tips.

- Use PSADMIN menu option 6 for Edit configuration/log files menu to check for errors in <*PS_CFG_HOME*>\appserv\<*domain*>\LOGS\APPSRV_mmdd.log and <*PS_CFG_HOME*>\appserv\<*domain*>\LOGS\TUXLOG.mmddyy.
- If a PeopleSoft server such as PSAPPSRV fails, examine your configuration parameters. The failure of the PSAPPSRV process is often signalled by the message "Assume failed"—which means the process has failed to start. Check the SIGNON section for misspelled or invalid database name, an invalid or unauthorized OprId, or ConnectId or ServerName is missing or invalid. Finally, make sure the database connectivity is set correctly.
- If a WSL (or JSL) fails to start, try specifying another port number (it may be in use already by another application server domain process).
- If you are unable to start the BBL, check that your Tuxedo is installed fully and that the directory really exists.
- If the installation includes more than one application server domain on a single machine, before booting the second domain, adjust the REN server configuration to avoid conflict in one of these ways:
  - Use PSADMIN to disable Event Notification (option 8 on the Quick-configure menu) for the second and subsequent application server domains.
  - Change default_http_port to a value other than 7180.

See Also

PeopleTools: System and Server Administration

PeopleTools: MultiChannel Framework

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 15

Setting Up the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture in Silent Mode

This chapter discusses:

- Understanding PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture
- Using Authentication Domains in the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture Installation
- Installing the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture in Silent Mode
- Configuring the SSL/TLS Port for JSL
- Testing and Administering the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture Installation
- Completing Post-Installation Steps

Understanding PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture

Use the silent mode installation described in this chapter to install and configure a web server domain. This is an optional installation. You may choose to use the silent mode installation for situations that are not covered by the DPK setup.

See "Preparing for Installation," Planning Your Initial Configuration.

- The files needed for the PIA silent-mode installation are included as part of the PeopleTools installation, in *PS_HOME*/setup/PsMpPIAInstall/scripts.

  You must use the DPK setup script to install at least *PS_HOME*.
- You must install the Oracle WebLogic software before you install the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture.

  Oracle WebLogic is the certified web server for the current PeopleSoft PeopleTools release. If you did not install the Oracle WebLogic software using the DPK setup script, see the chapter "Installing Web Server Products."
- Before you install the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture, you must also have configured an application server, either with the DPK setup script or with PSADMIN.

  See "Configuring the Application Server on Windows."
- If your web server is on a different machine than your application server, make sure you have a supported version of JRE installed on your web server to run the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture installation, and that its path is in the system's environment variable PATH.
- If you want to connect between multiple application databases, you need to implement single signon.

  See *PeopleTools: Security Administration,* "Understanding Single Signon."
- You must use the silent mode installation to create a multi-server domain.

  You cannot use the DPK setup script or PSADMIN.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Enter passwords in clear text.

  The sample response file in this section includes placeholders for several passwords. When creating the response file for silent mode installation, enter the passwords in clear text. Do not enter encrypted passwords.

- The URL that you use to invoke the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture must conform to ASN.1 specifications.

  That is, it may contain only alphanumeric characters, dots ("."), or dashes ("-"). The URL must not begin or end with a dot or dash, or contain consecutive dots (".."). If the URL includes more than one portion, separated by dots, do not use a number to begin a segment if the other segments contain letters. For example, "mycompany.second.country.com" is correct, but "mycompany.2nd.country.com" is wrong.

- If you are setting up the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture on a Microsoft Windows platform, the directory and path that you specify for the installation directory may include spaces. However, parentheses in the directory name (for example, "C:\Program Files (x86)") are *not* allowed.

The location where you install the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture is under *PS_CFG_HOME.* After you complete the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture installation, you can locate the installation files in the directory *PS_CFG_HOME/*webserv.

Note. The documentation sometimes refers to the installation location for the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture as *PIA_HOME.*

The initial PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture setup automatically creates the default PeopleSoft site named ps. In subsequent PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture setups, change the site name from *ps* to a unique value. We recommend using the database name. This is handy for easy identification and ensures that the database web server files are installed in a unique web site.

The PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture installation includes the following products:

- *PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture.* This product is the centerpiece of the PeopleSoft architecture that enables users to work on a machine with only a supported browser installed. This option installs the servlets required for deploying PeopleSoft Applications and for the PeopleSoft portal. The portal packs and PeopleSoft Portal Solutions have their own installation instructions, which are available on My Oracle Support. For an overview of the various types of portals, consult the *PeopleTools: Portal Technology* product documentation.
- *PeopleSoft Report Repository.* This product works in conjunction with Process Scheduler to allow report distribution over the web.
- *PeopleSoft Integration Gateway.* This product is the entry and exit point for all messages to and from the Integration Broker. Its Java-based Connector architecture allows asynchronous and synchronous messages to be sent over a variety of standard protocols, many that are delivered at install, or through custom connectors.

  Important! Review the product documentation concerning security properties for Integration Gateway. When setting the properties in the integrationGateways.properties file, the property secureFileKeystorePasswd must be encrypted, and the secureFileKeystorePath must be set.

  See *PeopleTools: Integration Broker Administration.*

- *PeopleSoft CTI Console.* This product works in conjunction with CTI vendor software to enable call center agents to take advantage of browser-based teleset management and automatic population of application pages with relevant data associated with incoming calls, such as customer or case details.

  See *PeopleTools: MultiChannel Framework.*

- *Environment Management Hub.* The Environment Management hub is a web application that is installed with the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture and portal. It is started along with the rest of the web applications when the user boots the web server. You cannot start the Environment Management Hub on a server that is configured to run HTTPS; in other words, if you plan to run Environment Management, your PIA server needs to be configured in HTTP mode.

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

See *PeopleTools: Change Assistant and Update Manager*.

See Also

PeopleTools: Security Administration

PeopleTools: System and Server Administration

Using Authentication Domains in the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture Installation

You have the option to specify an authentication domain when you install the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture on Oracle WebLogic.

Note. The authentication domain was referred to as the Authentication Token Domain in previous releases, and that term is still seen in the software.

When an authentication domain is specified during the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture installation, that value gets used as the Cookie domain in the web server configuration. The main requirements when setting a cookie domain are:

- The cookie domain value being set must begin with a dot (.ps.com is valid, ps.com is NOT valid).
- The cookie domain value being set must contain at least 1 embedded dot (.ps.com is valid, .corp.ps.com is valid, .com is NOT valid).
- The cookie domain value can only be a single domain name. It cannot be a delimiter-separated list of domains.

By default, the browser only sends cookies back to the machine that set the cookie. So if web server crm.yourdomain.com sets a cookie, the browser will only send it back there. You can make the browser send the single signon cookie to all servers at yourdomain.com by typing your domain name in the Authentication Token Domain list box of web server crm.

Specifying the authentication domain may be necessary in certain cases. For example, if you plan to use the PeopleSoft portal technology, be sure to read the supporting documentation on configuring the portal environment, to determine whether setting the authentication domain is required for correct operation.

See *PeopleTools: Portal Technology.*

Specify an authentication domain if you plan to run a REN Server. REN Servers are required for PeopleSoft MultiChannel Framework, Reporting, and some PeopleSoft CRM applications supported by PeopleSoft MultiChannel Framework.

See *PeopleTools: MultiChannel Framework.*

Task 15-1: Installing the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture in Silent Mode

This section discusses:

- Understanding the Silent Installation and the Response File
- Editing the Response File

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Running the Silent Mode Installation

Understanding the Silent Installation and the Response File

You can carry out a silent installation of the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture by providing all the required settings in a response file. With silent installation there is no user interaction. Silent mode installation of PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture is supported for both Microsoft Windows and UNIX operating systems platforms.

Task 15-1-1: Editing the Response File

You need a response file to start the installer in silent mode. The PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture installer comes with a response file template (resp_file.txt) that can be found under *PS_HOME*\setup\PsMpPIAInstall\. Modify the values in the response file according to your installation requirements. To exclude sections that are not needed, begin the line with a pound sign (#).

Note. When specifying paths on Microsoft Windows operating systems, use forward slashes (/), as shown in the examples in the response file.

The response file should contain all the input parameters that are needed for deploying PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture. Modify the following sections in the response file for your environment:

- The location where you want to install the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture.

  ```
  PS_CFG_HOME=<Specify PS Config Home Location>
  ```

  - The default is the same as the same as the *PS_CFG_HOME*.
  - You can specify any directory on your machine, including *PS_HOME*.
  - To specify the path on both Microsoft Windows and UNIX operating systems, use a forward slash (/), not a back slash (\).
- The PIA Domain name, for example *peoplesoft.*

  ```
  DOMAIN_NAME=peoplesoft
  ```

- Enter *weblogic* for the Web server type.

  ```
  SERVER_TYPE=weblogic
  ```

- Enter the Oracle WebLogic installation location for the BEA_HOME parameter.

  ```
  BEA_HOME=<Specify Weblogic Home>
  ```

- Specify the login ID for the Oracle WebLogic administration console, such as system.

  ```
  # Specify WebLogic administration console credential
  USER_ID=<Specify User Name e.g. system>
  ```

- Specify the password for the Oracle WebLogic administrator, following the guidelines for special characters.

  ```
  #The password for the WebLogic Administrator account. The password must⇒
   be at least eight characters, and must contain at least one numeric⇒
   character or at
  #least one of the following characters: ! " # $ % & ' ( ) * + , - . / :⇒
   ; < = > ? @ [ \ ] ^ _ ` { | } ~
  USER_PWD=<Specify password>
  ```


Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Enter one of the installation actions listed for the INSTALL_ACTION parameter.

```
# Install action to specify the core task that installer should perform.
# For creating new PIA domain - CREATE_NEW_DOMAIN.
# For redeploying PIA - REDEPLOY_PSAPP.
# For recreating PIA domain - REBUILD_DOMAIN.
# For installing additional PSFT site - ADD_SITE
# For installing Extensions - ADD_PSAPP_EXT
INSTALL_ACTION=CREATE_NEW_DOMAIN
```

  - CREATE_NEW_DOMAIN

    Create a new PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture domain.

  - REDEPLOY_PSAPP

    On an Oracle WebLogic web server, this option affects all of the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture web applications installed to the local Oracle WebLogic domain. Select this option to redeploy all of the web components of the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture. The redeployment process updates all of the web components of the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture, without modifying the configuration files or scripts that belong to the Oracle WebLogic server domain.

  - REBUILD_DOMAIN

    This option affects Oracle WebLogic Server domain configuration and all of the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture web applications installed to the local Oracle WebLogic domain. Select this option to completely remove an existing Oracle WebLogic domain and deploy the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture components to create the newly specified PeopleSoft site.

    Warning! Re-creating an existing domain will delete everything previously installed into that domain.

  - ADD_SITE

    This option is relevant only to the PeopleSoft PORTAL web application, and does not modify or revert any other configuration settings. Select this option to install only the necessary files for defining an additional PeopleSoft site onto an existing Oracle WebLogic configuration. The new site will be accessed using its name in the URL. A site named "CRM" would be accessed using a URL similar to http://mywebserver_machine/CRM. To reset or re-create an existing PeopleSoft site, simply enter that site's name as the site to create. On your web server, a PeopleSoft site is comprised of the following directories within the PORTAL web application:

    <WEBLOGIC_DOMAIN>\applications\peoplesoft\PORTAL\<site>*

    <WEBLOGIC_DOMAIN>\applications\peoplesoft\PORTAL\WEB-INF\psftdocs\<site>*

  - ADD_PSAPP_EXT

    This option is solely for use with PeopleSoft applications. PeopleSoft application extensions are provided with certain PeopleSoft applications, and this option allows you to deploy those extensions. Consult the installation documentation for your PeopleSoft application to see if this option is appropriate. PeopleSoft PeopleTools does not use application extensions.

- For the DOMAIN_TYPE parameter, enter NEW_DOMAIN to create a new domain or EXISTING_DOMAIN to modify an existing domain.

```
DOMAIN_TYPE=NEW_DOMAIN
```

- Specify the installation location for the PeopleSoft application software, *PS_APP_HOME*.

  Specify the PS_APP_HOME location only when you are installing extensions for a PeopleSoft application. If you are not installing PeopleSoft application extensions, do not remove the comment character. The silent installer can detect any deployable application extensions present in the PS_APP_HOME.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
# PS_APP_HOME=<Specify PS_APP_HOME location>
```

- Enter one of the following parameters for INSTALL_TYPE to specify whether the installation is a single server, multi-server, or distributed server installation.

  ```
  INSTALL_TYPE=SINGLE_SERVER_INSTALLATION
  ```

  - SINGLE_SERVER_INSTALLATION

    The single server domain configuration contains one server named PIA, and the entire PeopleSoft application is deployed to it. This configuration is intended for single user or very small scale, non-production environments.

  - MULTI_SERVER_INSTALLATION

    The multi-server domain configuration contains seven unique server definitions, an Oracle WebLogic cluster, and the PeopleSoft application split across multiple servers. This configuration is intended for a production environment.

  - DISTRIBUTED_SERVER_INSTALLATION

    The distributed server option is an extension of the Multi-Server Domain selection and installs the necessary files to boot a managed server.

    This option requires a Multi Server installation to be performed to some other location, which will contain the configuration for this managed server.

- The PeopleSoft web site name.

  Warning! The site name can include underscores (_), but an underscore cannot be followed by a numeric character or the string "newwin" (for example, my_site_3 or my_newwin_site).

  ```
  WEBSITE_NAME=<Specify web site name>
  ```

- Use the optional PSSERVER parameter to enable Jolt failover and load balancing.

  For information on the optional PSSERVER parameter, see the information on configuring Jolt failover and load balancing in the *PeopleTools: System and Server Administration* production documentation.

  ```
  # To enable jolt failover and load balancing, provide a list
  # of application server domains in the format of;  PSSERVER=AppSrvr:⇒
  JSLport,...
  # For example:  PSSERVER=SERVER1:9000,SERVER2:9010,SERVER3:9020
  # PSSERVER is optional, but if set will have precedence
  # over APPSERVER_NAME & JSL_PORT.
  PSSERVER=
  ```

- Specify the application server name, its JSL (Jolt Station Listener) port number, its HTTP and HTTPS port numbers, and the Authentication Token Domain (optional).

  ```
  # AppServer Name
  APPSERVER_NAME=<Specify Application Server name e.g. HOSTNAME.DOMAIN⇒
   NAME>

  # Appserver JSL Port
  JSL_PORT=9020

  # HTTP Port
  HTTP_PORT=8060
  ```


Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
# HTTPS Port
HTTPS_PORT=4433

# Authentication Domain (optional)
AUTH_DOMAIN=
```

- APPSERVER_NAME — the name of your application server
- JSL_PORT — the JSL port number you specified when setting up your application server.
- HTTP_PORT — the port to access the software in a browser using HTTP.
- HTTPS_PORT — the port to access the software in a browser using HTTPS.
- AUTH_DOMAIN

  This is optional. The value you enter for Authentication Token Domain must match the value you specify when configuring your application server, as described earlier in this book. In addition, certain installation configurations require that you specify an authentication domain.

  If you enter a value for Authentication Token Domain, the URL to invoke PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture must include the network domain name in the URL. For example, if you do not enter an authentication domain, the URL to invoke PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture is http://MachineName/ps/signon.html. If you do enter a value for the authentication domain (for example, .myCompany.com), the URL to invoke PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture is http://MachineName.myCompany.com/ps/signon.html. In addition, if the web server for the database is using an http port other than the default port of 80, the URL must include the port number, for example http://MachineName:8080/ps/signon.html if there is no authentication domain, or http://MachineName.myCompany.com:8080/ps/signon.html if there is an authentication domain. The URL must also comply with the naming rules given earlier in this chapter.

  See Using Authentication Domains in the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture Installation.

- Web profile name and password

  Enter a Web Profile Name, and enter the password two times. The example below shows the default web profile name, PROD, and default user ID, PTWEBSERVER. The web profile name will be used to configure this web site. You can specify one of the other delivered web profiles, DEV, TEST, or KIOSK, or enter a different name. If you intend to use a Web Profile User ID other than the default, PTWEBSERVER, be sure to review the information on web profile configuration and security in the *PeopleTools: Portal Technology* product documentation.

  ```
  # Web Profile Name Possible Values are "DEV","TEST","PROD","KIOSK"
  WEB_PROF_NAME=PROD

  # Web Profile password for User "PTWEBSERVER"
  WEB_PROF_PWD=<Specify password>
  ```

- Enter the Integration Gateway user name and password.

  The default user name is administrator.

  See *PeopleTools: Integration Broker Administration.*

  ```
  # Integration Gateway user profile.
  IGW_USERID=administrator
  IGW_PWD=<Specify password>
  ```

- Enter the Integration Gateway keystore password.

  ```
  # KEYSTORE password for Integration Gateway
  ```

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
KEYSTORE_PWD=<Specify password>
```

- AppServer Domain Connection password (optional).

  If you configured your Application Server domain to require a Domain Connection password, enter it here. Otherwise, leave it blank as shown in this example. This password will be propagated to the Integration Gateway. For more information about Application Server domain configuration and setting domain parameters, see the product documentation *PeopleTools: System and Server Administration.*

  ```
  # AppServer connection user profile
  APPSRVR_CONN_PWD=
  ```

- The root directory for the Report Repository

  Make sure that the report repository directory is shared. You must have write access to the Report Repository directory.

  Note. In setting up the Process Scheduler to transfer reports, if you choose the FTP transfer protocol, use the same directory for the Home Directory as you use here for the report repository.

  See *PeopleTools: Portal Technology.*

  See "Setting Up Process Scheduler on Windows," Setting Up Process Scheduler to Transfer Reports and Logs to the Report Repository.

  ```
  # Directory path for reports
  REPORTS_DIR=<Specify Reports storage location>
  ```

- If you want to deploy additional PeopleSoft application packages, remove the comment character (#) and enter the PS_APP_HOME path.

  Remove the comment character in front of the desired the package.

  ```
  #For Deploying additional Application packages give the path of PS_APP_⇒
  HOME and name of the packages.
  #PS_APP_HOME=<Specify PS_APP_HOME location>
  #APP Package to deploy: to deploy uncomment the line
  #APP_PKG=CRM PeopleSoft CTI Integration
  #APP_PKG=CRM PeopleSoft Order Capture
  #APP_PKG=CRM PeopleSoft Order Capture Self Service
  #APP_PKG=CRM PeopleSoft PSFT CRM PIM Server Sync
  ```

Task 15-1-2: Running the Silent Mode Installation

Use the response file that you modified for your configuration. Substitute the location where you saved the response file for <*path_to_response_file*> in the following procedures.

To install the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture in silent mode on Microsoft Windows:

1. In a command prompt, go to *PS_HOME*\setup\PsMpPIAInstall.
2. Run the following command, using forward slashes (/) to specify the path:

   ```
   setup.bat -i silent -DRES_FILE_PATH=<path_to_response_file>
   ```

   For example:

   ```
   setup.bat -i silent -DRES_FILE_PATH=C:/psft/ps_home8.62/setup/PsMp⇒
   PIAInstall/resp_file.txt
   ```


Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Task 15-2: Configuring the SSL/TLS Port for JSL

Supply the SSL/TLS port for JSL in the configuration.properties file for the web server.

The default Keystore file, in PKCS12 format, used for the SSL/TLS configuration for JSL ports is located in <*PS_CFG_HOME*>\webserv\<*DOMAIN_NAME*>\piaconfig\keystore\pskey. If you change the Keystore password in this file, you must also provide the password in the PIA configuration.properties file at <*PS_CFG_HOME*>\webserv\<*DOMAIN_NAME*>\application\peoplesoft\PORTAL.war\WEB-INF\psftdoc\ps.

1. Using a text editor, open the configuration.properties file in the web server deployment folder located here: <*PS_CFG_HOME*>\webserv\<*DOMAIN_NAME*>\application\peoplesoft\PORTAL.war\WEB_INF\psftdoc\ps.
2. Locate the psserver section and enter the application server name and the SSL/TLS port.

   Enter the SSL/TLS port that you specified for the JSL SSL Port when setting up the application server domain.

   See Creating, Configuring, and Starting an Initial Application Server Domain.

   ```
   psserver=<machine_name>:<SSL_port_for_JSL>
   ```

3. Locate the section Keystore password for ssl connection.

   If you reset the SSL/TLS Java Keystore password, enter it here. Otherwise, accept the default value. The default Java Keystore file is located in <*PS_CFG_HOME*>\webserv\<*DOMAIN_NAME*>\piaconfig\keystore\pskey.

   ```
   #Keystore password for ssl connection
   KeyStorePwd=={V1.1}encrypted password==
   ```

4. Save and close the file.

See Also

PeopleTools: System and Server Administration, "Implementing WebLogic SSL Keys and Certifications"

PeopleTools: Security Administration, "Working with SSL/TLS and Digital Certificates"

Task 15-3: Testing and Administering the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture Installation

This section discusses:

- Verifying the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture Installation
- Starting and Stopping Oracle WebLogic
- Using PSADMIN to Start and Stop Web Servers
- Accessing the PeopleSoft Signon

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Verifying the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture Installation

After installing the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture, you should make sure that your configuration is functional. You can test this by signing on to PeopleSoft, navigating within the menu structure, and accessing pages. (Make sure the application server is configured and booted.) This section includes procedures to start and stop the Oracle WebLogic web server whenever necessary.

Task 15-3-1: Starting and Stopping Oracle WebLogic

When using the Oracle WebLogic web server, you need to sign on to Oracle WebLogic before using these commands. Use the following commands in the Oracle WebLogic domain directory.

Note. Starting from Oracle WebLogic 9.2 and later releases, all the Life-cycle management scripts and other batch scripts for the PIA server on Oracle WebLogic are located in <*PIA_HOME*>\webserv\<*domain_name*>\bin folder.

- To start Oracle WebLogic Server as a foreground process on a single server, use the following commands:

  On Microsoft Windows:

  ```
  startPIA.cmd
  ```

- To start Oracle WebLogic Server as a foreground process on multiple-servers or distributed servers, use the following commands:

  1. Execute the following command:

     On Microsoft Windows:

     ```
     startWebLogicAdmin.cmd
     ```

  2. Then execute:

     On Microsoft Windows:

     ```
     startManagedWebLogic.cmd ManagedServerName
     ```

- To stop the server, use the following commands:

  - Single Server on Microsoft Windows:

    ```
    stopPIA.cmd
    ```

  - Multiple Servers or Distributed Servers on Microsoft Windows:

    ```
    stopWebLogic.cmd ManagedServerName
    ```

For more information on working with Oracle WebLogic multiple servers or distributed servers, see the *PeopleTools: System and Server Administration* product documentation.

Note. For more information on working with Oracle WebLogic multiple or distributed servers, search My Oracle Support.

Task 15-3-2: Using PSADMIN to Start and Stop Web Servers

In addition to the methods given in the previous sections for starting and stopping Oracle WebLogic web servers, you can use PSADMIN to administer a web server domain.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

See *PeopleTools: System and Server Administration.*

To start and stop web servers:

1. Specify *4* for Web (PIA) Server.

   The location of Config Home is the current working directory. The PSADMIN utility determines the Config Home directory by checking for the PS_CFG_HOME environment variable. If that is not set, it checks for the presence of domains in the default *PS_CFG_HOME* location. If none exists, it uses the *PS_HOME* location from which it was launched.

   See "Preparing for Installation," Defining Installation Locations.

2. Select *1* for Administer a domain.

   The PSADMIN utility determines the PIA Home location displayed here by first checking for a PIA_HOME environment variable. If none is set, it checks for the PS_CFG_HOME environment variable. If neither is set, it uses the default PS_CFG_HOME directory.

3. Select the domain you want to administer by entering the appropriate number.

```
------------------------------------------------------
PeopleSoft PIA Domain Administration - Choose a Domain
------------------------------------------------------
1) psftTST
2) peoplesoft

q) Quit

Command to execute: 2
```

4. To start a web server domain, enter *1,* Boot this domain.

```
Starting the domain.................
...
Verifying domain status..
The domain has started.
```

5. To stop a web server domain, select *2,* Shutdown this domain.

```
Stopping the domain.....
.....
Verifying domain status..........
The domain has stopped.
```

6. Select *1* to install a service, or *2* to remove it.

   This command invokes the installNTservice script, and creates a service named *WebLogicDomain-WebLogicServer.*

```
--------------------
Windows Service Setup
--------------------

  PIA Home:      C:\psft_websrv
  PIA Domain:    peoplesoft
  Domain status: started

  1) Install Service
  2) Uninstall Service
```

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
    q) Quit

  Command to execute:
```

Task 15-3-3: Accessing the PeopleSoft Signon

To access the PeopleSoft signon:

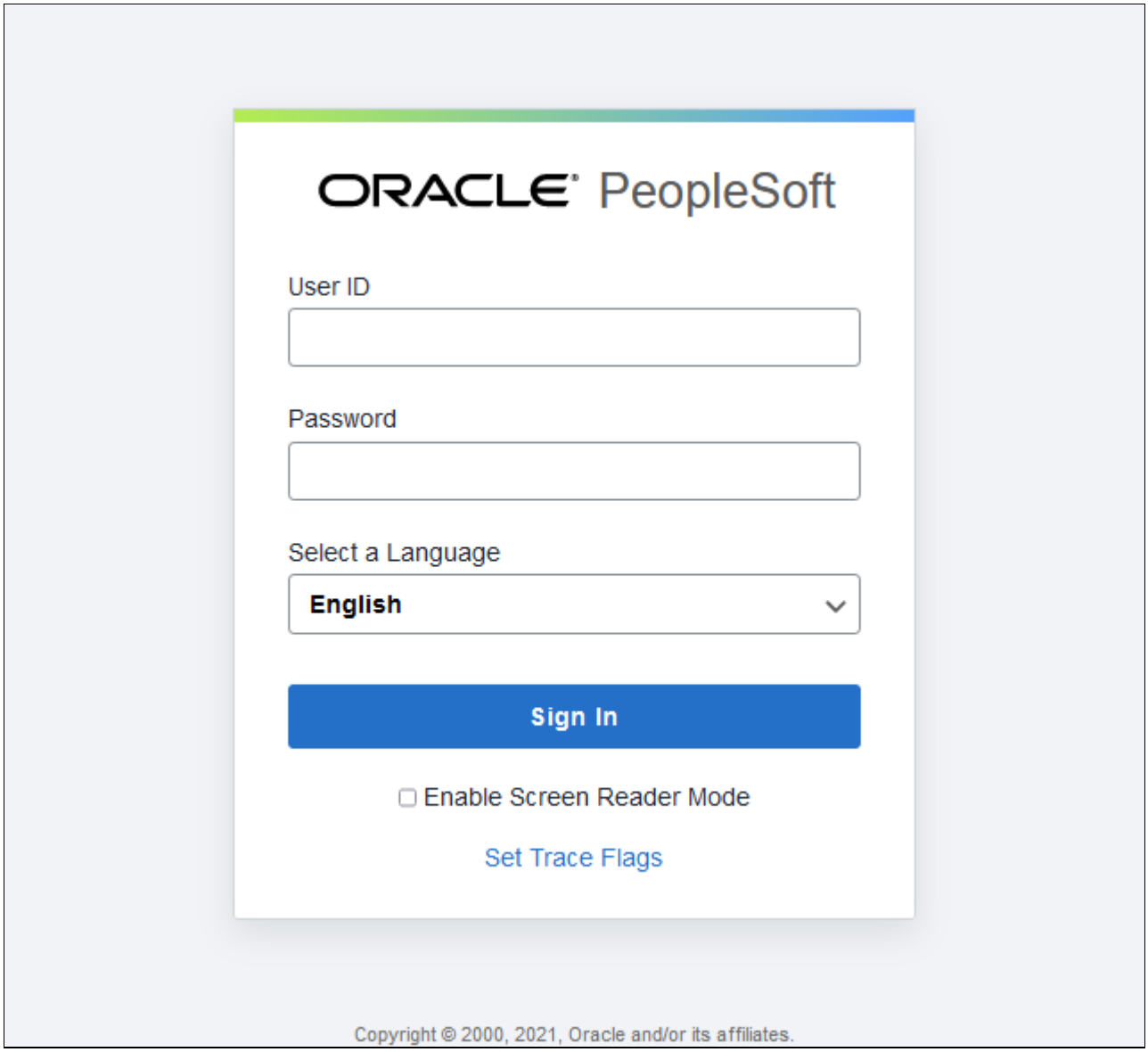
1. Open your web browser.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

2. Enter the name of the site you want to access—for example (the default value for <*site_name*> is ps):

   `http://<machine_name>:<http_port>/<site_name>/signon.html`

   This will take you to the sign-in window corresponding to your browser's language preference, as shown in this example:



Oracle PeopleSoft Enterprise Sign in window

Note. If you do not see the signon screen, check that you supplied all the correct variables and that your application server and the database server are running.

---

3. Sign in to the PeopleSoft system by entering a valid user ID and password.

   The user ID and password are case sensitive.

Note. The user ID and password were set during the database configuration and also used to boot the application server.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

The PeopleSoft PeopleTools and PeopleSoft applications include various default user IDs. For information on using the user IDs delivered with your PeopleSoft application demo database, see the application-specific installation instructions. For information on using and securing PeopleSoft PeopleTools default user IDs, see the information on administering user profiles in the *PeopleTools: Security Administration* product documentation.

Task 15-4: Completing Post-Installation Steps

This section discusses:

- Updating the Installation Table
- Setting Options for Multilingual Databases
- Updating PeopleTools Options
- Updating Time Zone Information
- Updating Database Information
- Building a New Encryption Key and Re-encrypting Passwords
- Installing the fontconfig Package for Download to Excel

Task 15-4-1: Updating the Installation Table

After you complete the installation process, creating the database, installing the Application Server, and installing the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture, you must complete this additional step. This post-installation step ensures that only the products you are entitled to use are active in the installation. The location of the installation table in the PeopleSoft system varies depending upon the PeopleSoft application that you installed.

Note. For information on the products you are entitled to use, contact your Oracle Support representative.

1. Sign on to the PeopleSoft system in a browser.
2. Select Set Up *Application_name* (where Application_name is the PeopleSoft application you installed), Install, Installation Table.
3. Select the Products tab.
4. Clear the check boxes for the products that you are not entitled to use.

Task 15-4-2: Setting Options for Multilingual Databases

Setting the Data Field Length Checking Option

The value to specify data field length checking must be set correctly in order for PeopleSoft applications to perform correctly in a browser. Use one of these methods to set the data field length checking option:

- Select PeopleTools > Utilities > Administration > PeopleTools Options, and select the Data Field Length Checking option from the drop-down list.
  - If your database uses the Shift-JIS character set for Japanese, select MBCS.
  - For all other databases, verify that the option is set to Others, the default setting.
- Alternatively, use the SQL tool for your database platform to modify the DBLENGTHTYPE parameter in the PSOPTIONS table.

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- If your database uses the Shift-JIS character set for Japanese, enter M.
- For all other databases, verify that the option is set to N, the default setting.

See *PeopleTools: Global Technology,* "Setting Data Field Length Checking."

See *PeopleTools: Global Technology,* "Selecting Character Sets."

Setting the Unicode Enabled Option

If you are running a Unicode database, verify that the UNICODE_ENABLED parameter in the PSSTATUS table is set correctly. For example:

- For non-Unicode databases, including those using the Shift-JIS character set for Japanese, set UNICODE_ENABLED=0.
- For Unicode databases, set UNICODE_ENABLED=1.

See the information on converting to Unicode in the *PeopleTools: Global Technology* product documentation.

Task 15-4-3: Updating PeopleTools Options

You can set the following options on the PeopleTools Options page:

- Multi-Currency — Select this check box if you plan to use currency conversion.

  See *PeopleTools: Global Technology*, "Using System-Wide Multicurrency Settings."
- Base Time Zone — Enter a value for the base time zone for your PeopleTools database.

  See *PeopleTools: Global Technology*, "Setting the Base Time Zone."
- Sort Order Option — If you specified a non-binary sort order for your database, choose the Sort Order Option that most closely approximates your database sort order.

  See *PeopleTools: Global Technology*, "Setting the Sort Order."

Task 15-4-4: Updating Time Zone Information

Additional steps may be required to configure your time zone after you complete the installation.

See *PeopleTools: Global Technology,* "Maintaining Time Zones."

Task 15-4-5: Updating Database Information

The database information updated in this procedure is used by the PeopleSoft software update tools to identify your PeopleSoft database when searching for updates. These steps should be followed for all additional databases that you create to enable the accurate identification of your databases.

1. Sign on to your PeopleSoft database.
2. Navigate to PeopleTools > Utilities > Administration > PeopleTools Options.
3. Specify long and short names for your environment. For example:
   - Environment Long Name — Customer HR Demo Database
   - Environment Short Name — HR Demo DB
4. Select a system type from the drop-down list. For example, Demo Database.
5. Save your changes.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Task 15-4-6: Building a New Encryption Key and Re-encrypting Passwords

The PeopleTools installation includes a default encryption key (psvault), which is used to encrypt the passwords that you enter during the installation. For security reasons, create a new key after you complete the installation and use the new key to re-encrypt passwords included in your PeopleSoft environment files.

1. Use the PSCipher utility to build a new key.

   See *PeopleTools: Security Administration,* "Generating a Unique Encryption Key."

   For example, run the following command from <*PIA_HOME*>/webserv/<*DOMAIN_NAME*>/piabin:

   ```
   pscipher.bat -buildkey
   Your environment has been set.
   A new key of version {V2.2} is generated successfully
   ```

2. Use the new key from step 1 to re-encrypt passwords that you supply as plain text.

   See *PeopleTools: Security Administration,* "Using the PSCipher Utility."

3. Replace the existing encrypted values for the passwords in web server files with the newly created encrypted passwords.

   Ensure that the password values begin with {V2.2}, which indicates the AES implementation. This table lists web server files and passwords to check.

   See *PeopleTools: Security Administration,* "Understanding the Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) Implementation."

Location	File	Examples of Password Text
<*PIA_HOME*>\webserv\<*DOMAIN_NAME*>\applications\peoplesoft\PSIGW.war\WEB-INF	integrationGateway.properties	• ig.isc.NODE_NAME.password={V2.2}XXXXXX • ig.isc.NODE_NAME.DomainConnectionPwd={V2.2}XXXXXX • Others as needed. There are several sections including passwords. Be sure to update all that apply to your environment.
<*PIA_HOME*>\webserv\<*DOMAIN_NAME*>\applications\peoplesoft\PSIGW.war\WEB-INF	gatewayUserProfile.xml	<password>{V2.2}XXXXXX</password>
<*PIA_HOME*>\webserv\<*DOMAIN_NAME*>\applications\peoplesoft\PORTAL.war\WEB-INF\psftdocs\<*SITE_NAME*>	configuration.properties	• KeyStorePwd={V2.2}XXXXXX • DomainConnectionPwd={V2.2}XXXXXX • WebUserId={V2.2}XXXXXX • WebPassword={V2.2}XXXXXX

4. After building the new key, copy psvault from the web server location to the application server location.

   Copy from <*PIA_HOME*>\webserv\<*DOMAIN_NAME*>\piaconfig\properties.

   Copy to <*PS_HOME*>\secvault.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Task 15-4-7: Installing the fontconfig Package for Download to Excel

The fontconfig package is required for the download to Excel feature, which downloads query results or data from a grid to a Microsoft Excel spreadsheet. The package is available in *PS_HOME/*setup/fontconfig. This applies to installations on Linux.

To install the fontconfig package:

1. If necessary, sign out of PIA.
2. In a terminal window, log in to the PeopleSoft environment as the root user.
3. Enter this command:

   ```
   yum info fontconfig
   ```

   If the package is installed in the environment, the command lists it. If it is not present, the command lists the repository where it is available.
4. If the package is not installed, as the root user, enter this command to install it from *PS_HOME/*setup:

   ```
   yum install fontconfig
   ```

5. Sign in to PIA and try the download to Excel again.

   Note. Restarting the Application Server should not be necessary.

If you are still unable to use download to Excel, check to be sure the machine can access the Internet.

See Also

PeopleTools: Applications User's Guide, "Navigating Through Data"

PeopleTools: Query, "Downloading Queries"

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 16

Setting Up Process Scheduler on Windows

This chapter discusses:

- Prerequisites
- Setting Up Process Scheduler Security
- Setting Up Process Scheduler to Transfer Reports and Logs to the Report Repository
- Setting Environment Variables
- Setting Up Process Scheduler Server Agent
- Starting Process Scheduler as a Windows Service (Optional)
- Configuring the Process Scheduler for Microsoft Word (Optional)
- Installing Products for PS/nVision

Prerequisites

Before setting up your Process Scheduler, you must:

- Install Tuxedo.

  See "Installing Additional Components."
- Install database connectivity to be able to communicate with your database server (Process Scheduler requires a direct connection to the database).

  See "Preparing for Installation."
- Set up the web server with the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture, as described in the previous chapter. This is required to set up the Process Scheduler to transfer reports or log files to the Report Repository.
- Set up your COBOL batch environment if you need to run COBOL processes through Process Scheduler. If the PeopleSoft modules purchased do not contain any COBOL modules, the COBOL run time libraries are not required. Also, COBOL is not required for applications that contain no COBOL programs. Consult My Oracle Support for the details on whether your application requires COBOL.

  See "Preparing for Installation," Planning Your Initial Configuration.
- Install the Microsoft Office products Microsoft Word and Microsoft Excel.
- Have both your application server and the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture started. In this chapter, you must modify security options of the designated PeopleSoft user ID that will be used to boot up Process Scheduler. This requires that the user ID's profile be modified through the User Security component. Please refer to earlier chapters for the details on starting the application server and the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture.

In the current PeopleTools release, the configuration and log files for Process Scheduler server domains reside in *PS_CFG_HOME*. If you do not set a PS_CFG_HOME environment variable before beginning the application server configuration, the system installs it in a default location based on the current user's settings, as follows:

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

`%USERPROFILE%\psft\pt\<peopletools_version>`

See "Preparing for Installation," Defining Installation Locations.

See the product documentation *PeopleTools: System and Server Administration* for more information on the PS_CFG_HOME environment variable and working with server domain configuration.

See Also

PeopleTools: Process Scheduler

My Oracle Support, Certifications

Task 16-1: Setting Up Process Scheduler Security

This section discusses:

- Understanding Process Scheduler Security
- Changing User Account to Start ORACLE ProcMGR V22.1.0.0.0
- Granting Process Scheduler Administrative Rights

Understanding Process Scheduler Security

This task—in which you set up the PeopleSoft User ID that will be used to boot Process Scheduler server so it has administrative rights to both Process Scheduler and Report Manager—guarantees that security is set up properly both in Microsoft Windows and within your PeopleSoft database.

You must carry out this task to start Process Scheduler successfully.

In the next section you set up ORACLE ProcMGR V22.1.0.0.0 with a network user ID. When you install Oracle Tuxedo, the ORACLE ProcMGR V22.1.0.0.0 service is set up by default to be started by local system account—a user account that does not have access to the Windows network. If the Process Scheduler server or processes initiated through Process Scheduler will be using a network printer, accessing files from a network drive, or using Microsoft Windows utilities such as XCOPY that may access UNC paths, you need to change the user account used to start ORACLE ProcMGR V22.1.0.0.0 with a network user account.

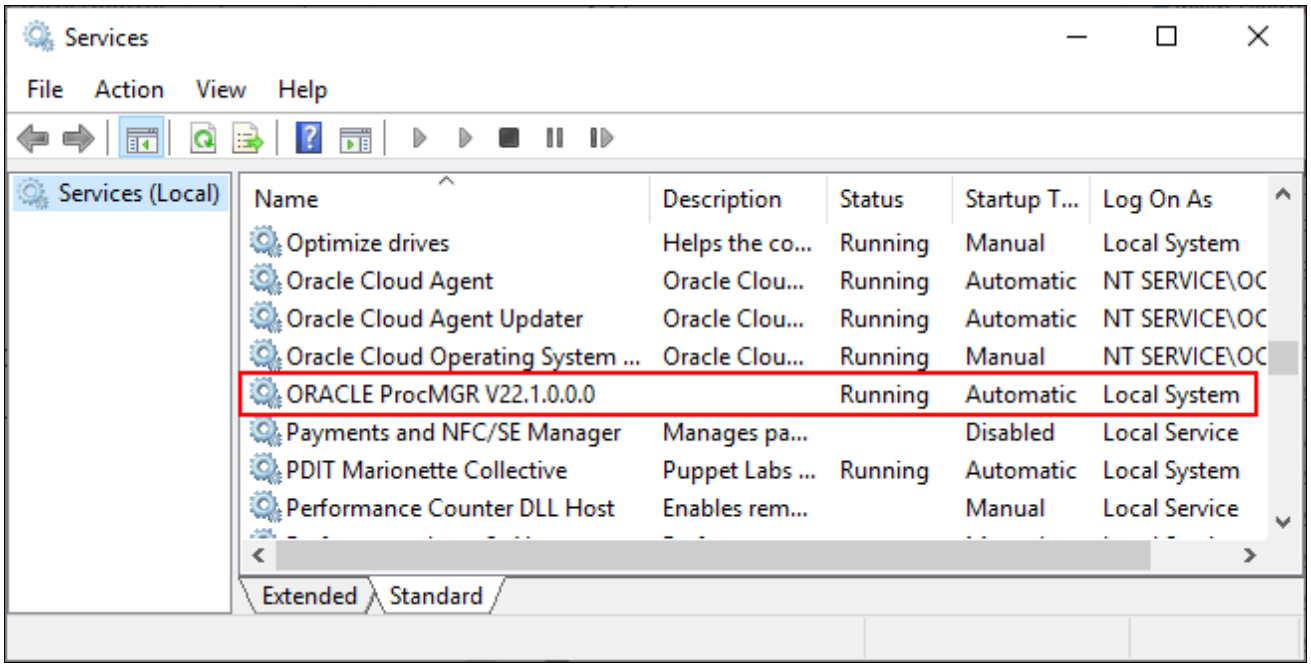
Task 16-1-1: Changing User Account to Start ORACLE ProcMGR V22.1.0.0.0

To change User Account to start ORACLE ProcMGR V22.1.0.0.0:

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

1. Launch the Services dialog box; for example, select Administrative Tools, Services.

   In the Services dialog box, find the service labeled *ORACLE ProcMGR V22.1.0.0.0*. This service is installed automatically when you install Tuxedo, and is highlighted in this example.



Microsoft Windows Services dialog box with ORACLE ProcMGR service highlighted

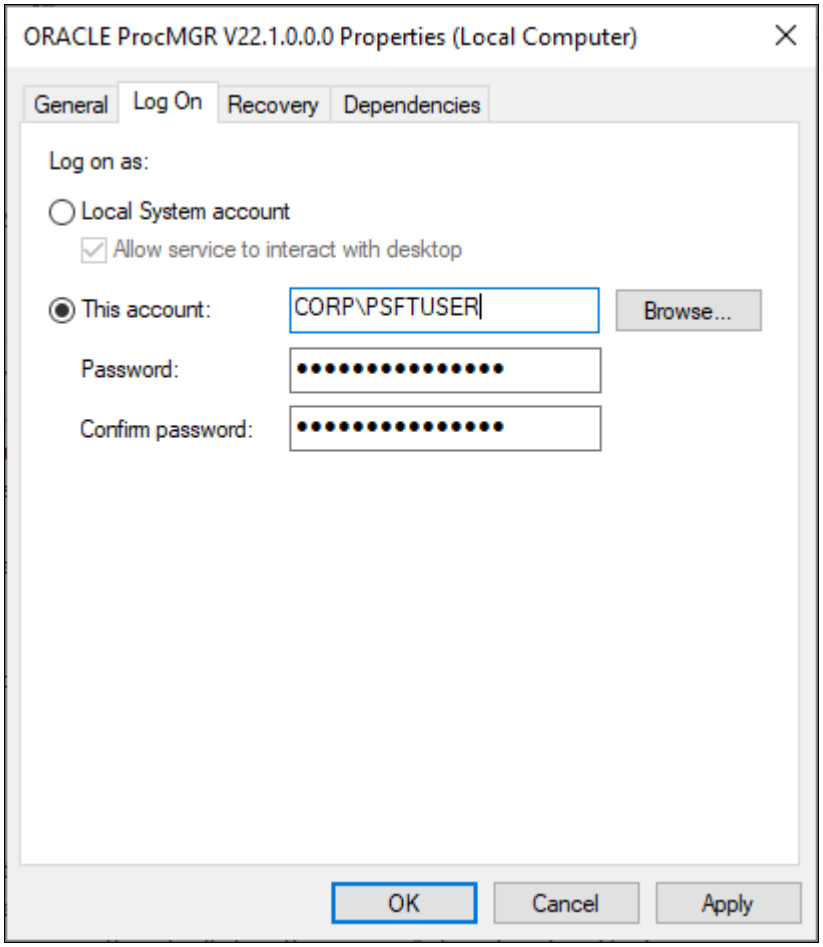
2. If the Stop button is enabled, click it to stop the current ORACLE ProcMGR V22.1.0.0.0 process.
   a. Click Yes when a message informs you of the status change.
   b. Double-click ORACLE ProcMGR V22.1.0.0.0.

      The Properties dialog box appears.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

3. Select the option This account on the Log On tab.

   Enter an account name and password. In this example, the account name is CORP\PSFTUSER.



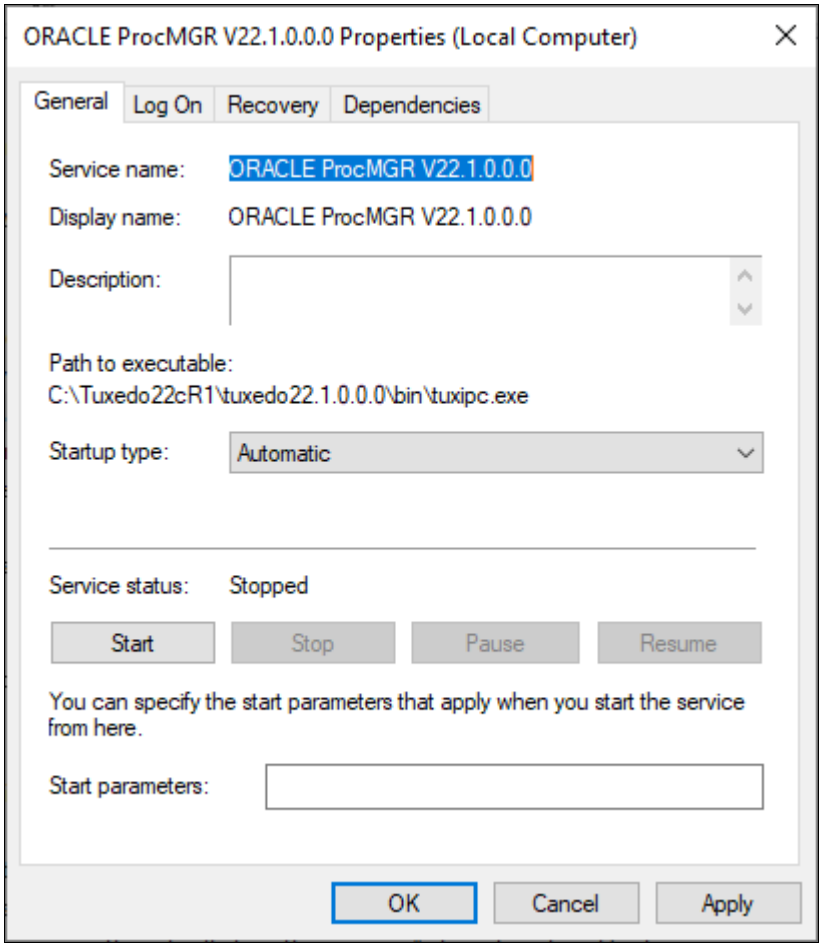
ORACLE ProcMGR V22.1.0.0.0 Properties dialog box: Log On tab

Note. When you configure your Oracle Tuxedo server as outlined in the chapter, "Configuring the Application Server on Windows," the user ID designated to be the Application Server Administrator must have read/write permissions to the PeopleSoft file directory and read permission to the %TUXDIR% directory, such as C:\oracle\tuxedo22.1.0.0.0.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

4. Select the General tab.

   Make sure that Startup Type is set to Automatic, as shown in this example, and click OK.



ORACLE ProcMGR V22.1.0.0.0 Properties dialog box: General tab

5. Click Start.

   A message in the Properties dialog box will indicate the "Started" status. You also see the status in the Services dialog box. Click OK to close the dialog box.

Task 16-1-2: Granting Process Scheduler Administrative Rights

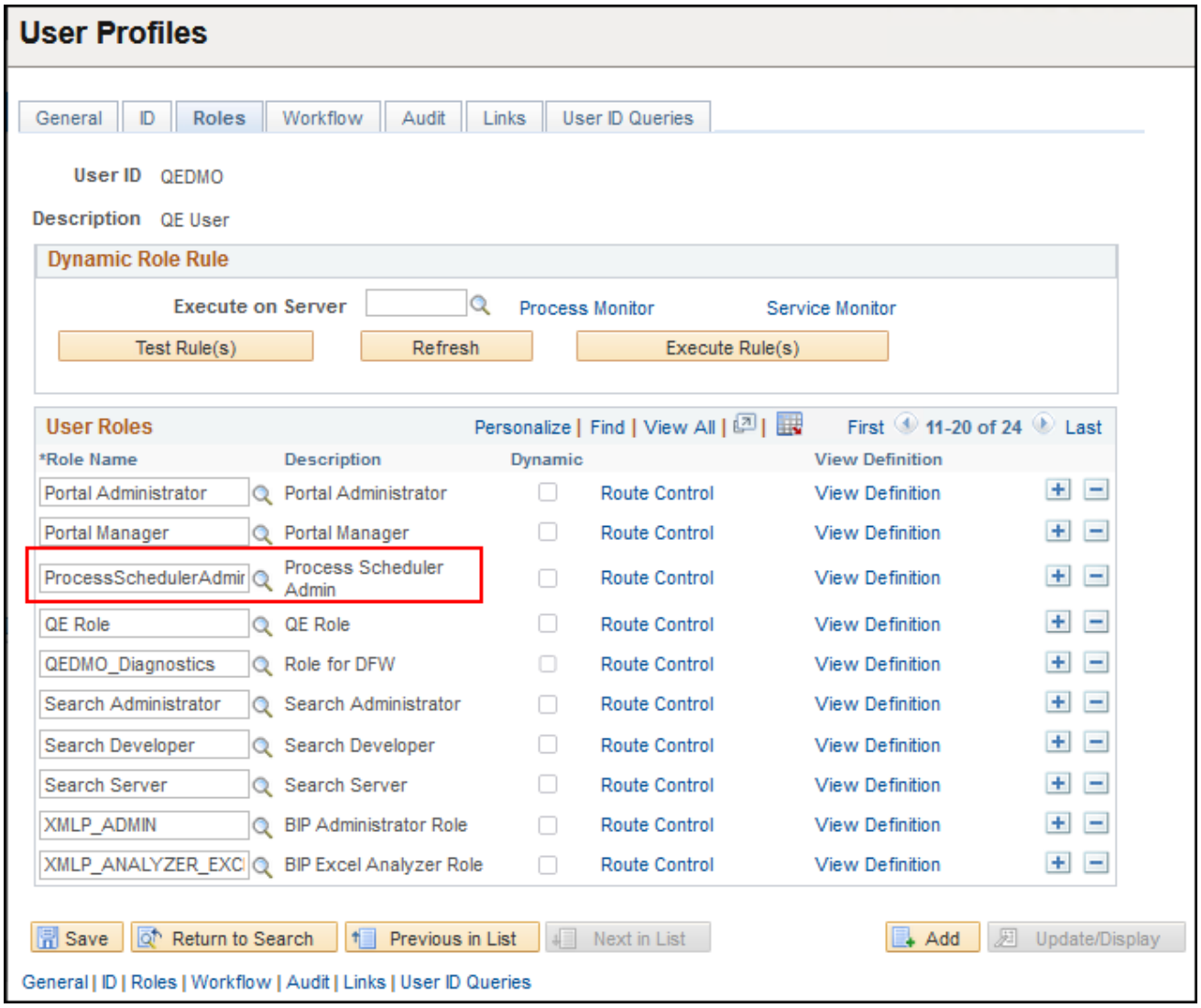
To grant Process Scheduler administrative rights:

1. Log onto your PeopleSoft database through the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture.
2. Select PeopleTools > Security > User Profiles.
3. Select the User Profiles component. Use the Search dialog to select the PeopleSoft User ID you plan to use to boot the Process Scheduler server.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

4. Click the Roles tab, click the plus icon to insert a new row, and there enter the *ProcessSchedulerAdmin* role to grant the user ID with administrative rights in the Process Scheduler components.

   This example shows the Roles page with the ProcessSchedulerAdmin role.



User Profiles page: Roles tab

5. Repeat the instructions in step 4 to add the role *ReportDistAdmin.*

   This will grant the user ID administrative rights to the Report Manager component. Carry out this step only if the same user is also responsible for maintaining the content of Report Manager.

6. Click Save to save your changes.
7. Select the General tab and make a note of the Permission List name assigned to the Process Profile field.
8. Select PeopleTools > Security > Permissions & Roles > Permission Lists.
9. In the Search dialog, enter the Permission List you noted in step 7.
10. Select the Can Start Application Server check box.
11. Click Save to save your changes.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Task 16-2: Setting Up Process Scheduler to Transfer Reports and Logs to the Report Repository

This section discusses:

- Understanding Report Distribution
- Setting Up Single Signon to Navigate from PIA to Report Repository
- Determining the Transfer Protocol
- Starting the Distribution Agent
- Setting Up the Report Repository
- Setting Up the Distribution for Your Process Scheduler Server
- Setting Up Sending and Receiving of Report Folders in the Report Manager

Understanding Report Distribution

The PeopleSoft PeopleTools Report Distribution lets you access reports and log files generated from process requests run by a Process Scheduler Server Agent. Using the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture, you can view reports and log files from the web browser through the Report Manager or Process Monitor Detail page. Report Distribution enables you to restrict access to these reports to authorized users based either on user ID or role ID.

This product also includes the Distribution Agent component, which runs on the same server as the Process Scheduler Server Agent. The Distribution Agent, a process that runs concurrently with the Process Scheduler Server Agent, transfers to the Report Repository files generated by process requests initiated by the Process Scheduler Server Agent.

The Distribution Agent transfers files to the Report Repository when one of these criteria is true:

- The Process Scheduler Server Agent is set up in the *Server Definition* to transfer all log files to the Report Repository.
- The process request output destination type is *Web/Window*.

In either case, the Process Scheduler Server Agent inserts a row in the Report List table (PS_CDM_LIST). The server agent then updates the distribution status for a process request to *Posting* upon completion of the program associated with the process request. The distribution status of Posting signals that the files for the process request are ready for transfer to the Report Repository. The Distribution Agent is notified by Process Scheduler for any process requests that are ready for transferring. As part of the process to transfer files to the Report Repository, the Distribution Agent performs the following steps:

- *Transfer files to the Report Repository.* All the report and log files are transferred to the Report Repository. For each process request transferred, a directory is created in the Report Repository using the following format: \<database name\<date yyyymmdd>\<report id>. All the files for a process request are stored in this directory.
- *Delete the directory from the Process Scheduler Agent's Log/Output directory.* When the output destination type specified for a process request is Web/Window, all the files and directory associated with the process request are deleted from the Process Scheduler Log/Output directory after the files are transferred to the Report Repository.

The following diagram illustrates the Process Scheduler and Report Repository architecture. The diagram includes the following items:

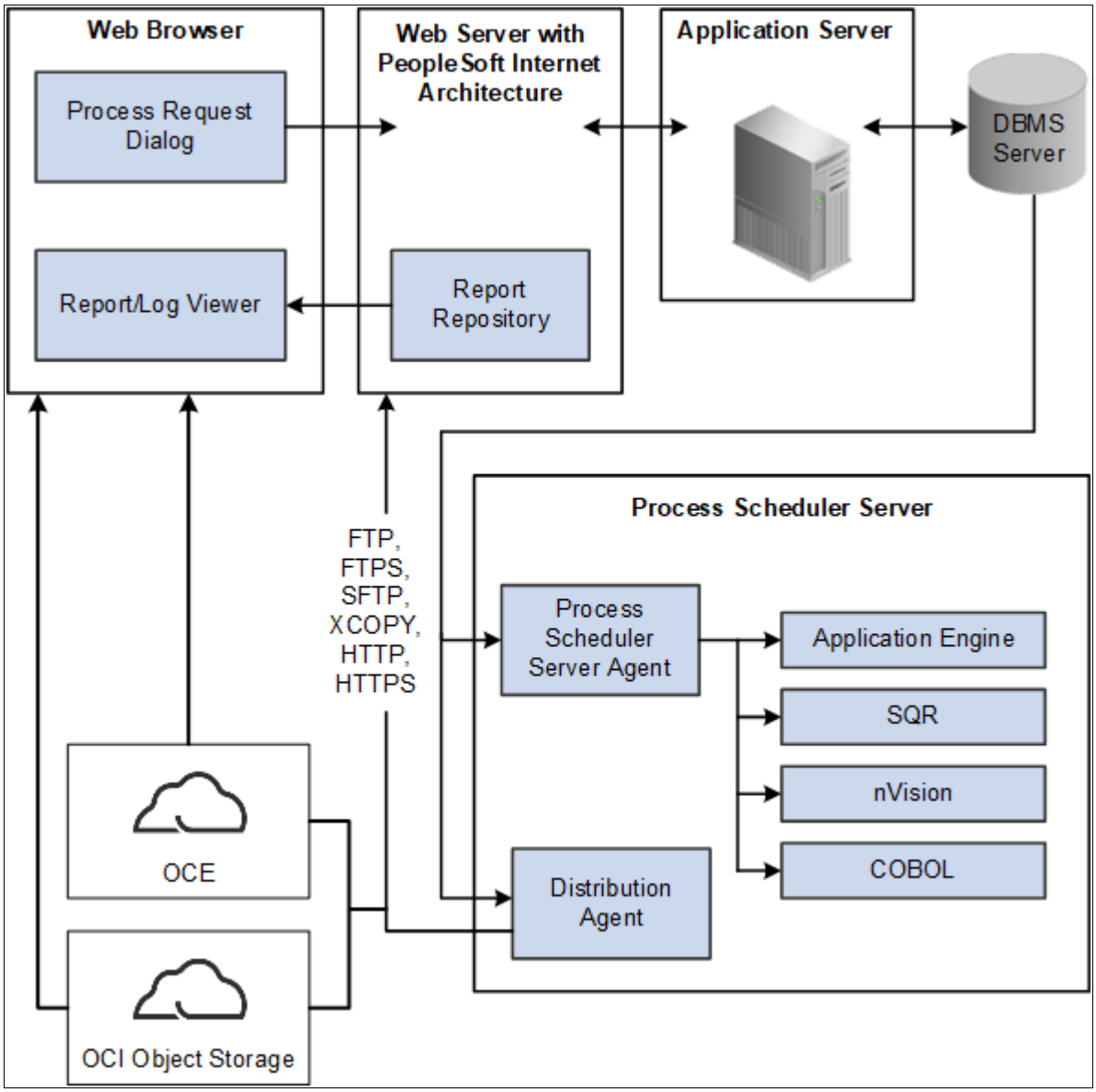
- The web browser gives access to the Process Request dialog and the Report or Log Viewer.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- The Report Repository is part of the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture.

  Note. The PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture must be installed for Process Scheduler to be able to transfer reports to the Report Repository.

- The Process Scheduler Server includes the Process Scheduler Server Agent and the Distribution Agent.
- The transfer protocol between Process Scheduler and the Report Repository may be FTP/FTPS, XCOPY, HTTP/HTTPS, or SFTP.



Process Scheduler and Report Repository Architecture

Before users can view a report, they are authenticated against the PeopleSoft database.

You should set up single signon if you do not want users to have to log on an additional time to view reports in the Report Repository. For the details on setting up single signon, consult the security documentation.

See *PeopleTools: Security Administration.*

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Task 16-2-1: Setting Up Single Signon to Navigate from PIA to Report Repository

To view reports (log files or system files) from Report Repository, you need to pass the authentication. Report Repository should be treated as a separate PeopleSoft application. To navigate from PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture (PIA) to Report Repository, you need to set up single signon to avoid getting a prompt for a second signon. This section includes some considerations for setting up single signon to navigate from PIA to Report Repository.

If Report Repository resides on the same web server as PIA, make sure your Local Message Node is set up to be a "trusted" node for single signon for your system.

If Report Repository resides on a different web server than PIA, do the following:

- Make sure your Local Message Node is set up to be a "trusted" node for single signon for your system.
- Use a fully qualified domain name when addressing the web server for both PIA and Report Repository. For example, enter http://<*machineName*>.peoplesoft.com/<*site_name*>/signon.html instead of http://<*machineName*>/<*site_name*>/signon.html.
- Specify the Authentication Domain for your application during installation. If you have multiple applications, and you want them to employ single signon, it is important to specify the same Authentication Domain for all applications.

  See the information on implementing single signon in the *PeopleTools: Security Administration* product documentation.
- Set up single signon with a password, like this:
  - Choose PeopleTools, Integration Broker, Integration Setup, Nodes.
  - Click Search and then select the node marked as Default Local Node.
  - Select *Password* for the Authentication Option.
  - Enter a password of your choice.
  - Enter the password again in the Confirm Password field.
  - Enter the user ID for which you are setting up single signon in the Default User ID field.
  - Save the Node Definition.
  - Sign out from the PeopleSoft application.
  - Reboot your application server.

See Also

PeopleTools: Security Administration

Task 16-2-2: Determining the Transfer Protocol

We recommend using HTTP as your transfer protocol.

Before transferring the files to the Report Repository, you need to determine which transfer protocol to use. You can use either an XCOPY, FTP/FTPS, SFTP, or HTTP/HTTPS protocol. (If FTP information is not specified, Process Scheduler will perform an XCOPY.)

Note. If you are using FTP/FTPS or SFTP, the corresponding service must be set up in your web server.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Note. JRE is installed automatically on your Process Scheduler server.

Task 16-2-3: Starting the Distribution Agent

The Distribution Agent is automatically started as another Oracle Tuxedo server when a Process Scheduler Server is booted. If a Process Scheduler Server was set up without specifying a Distribution Node in the *Server Definition* page, the Process Scheduler server will have a status in Process Monitor of "Running with No Report Node." After a node is defined for the Process Scheduler server, in the next cycle the Process Scheduler server checks the state of the system, and the Distribution Agent dynamically sets up its environment.

Task 16-2-4: Setting Up the Report Repository

This section discusses:

- Defining ReportRepositoryPath
- Defining the Report Node to Use HTTP/HTTPS
- Defining the Report Node to Use XCOPY
- Defining the Report Node to Use FTP
- Defining the Report Node to Use FTPS
- Defining the Report Node to Use SFTP
- Defining the Report Node for Cloud Repositories

Defining ReportRepositoryPath

The ReportRepositoryPath specifies the location of a directory for the Report Repository. You can specify the location for the Report Repository Path on the General page of the Web Profile during installation. If you do not set the location in the Web Profile, the location given by ReportRepositoryPath in the configuration.properties file is used for the default location. Note that the value entered for Report Repository Path in the Web Profile overrides any entry in the configuration.properties file.

See *PeopleTools: Portal Technology,* "Configuring Web Profiles."

Use the following formats to enter the name for the directory that you want to use for the ReportRepositoryPath. The examples below give the default values. Note that you must use a forward slash ('/') in both cases:

Microsoft Windows: ReportRepositoryPath=c:/psreports

Defining the Report Node to Use HTTP/HTTPS

To define the report node to use HTTP/HTTPS:

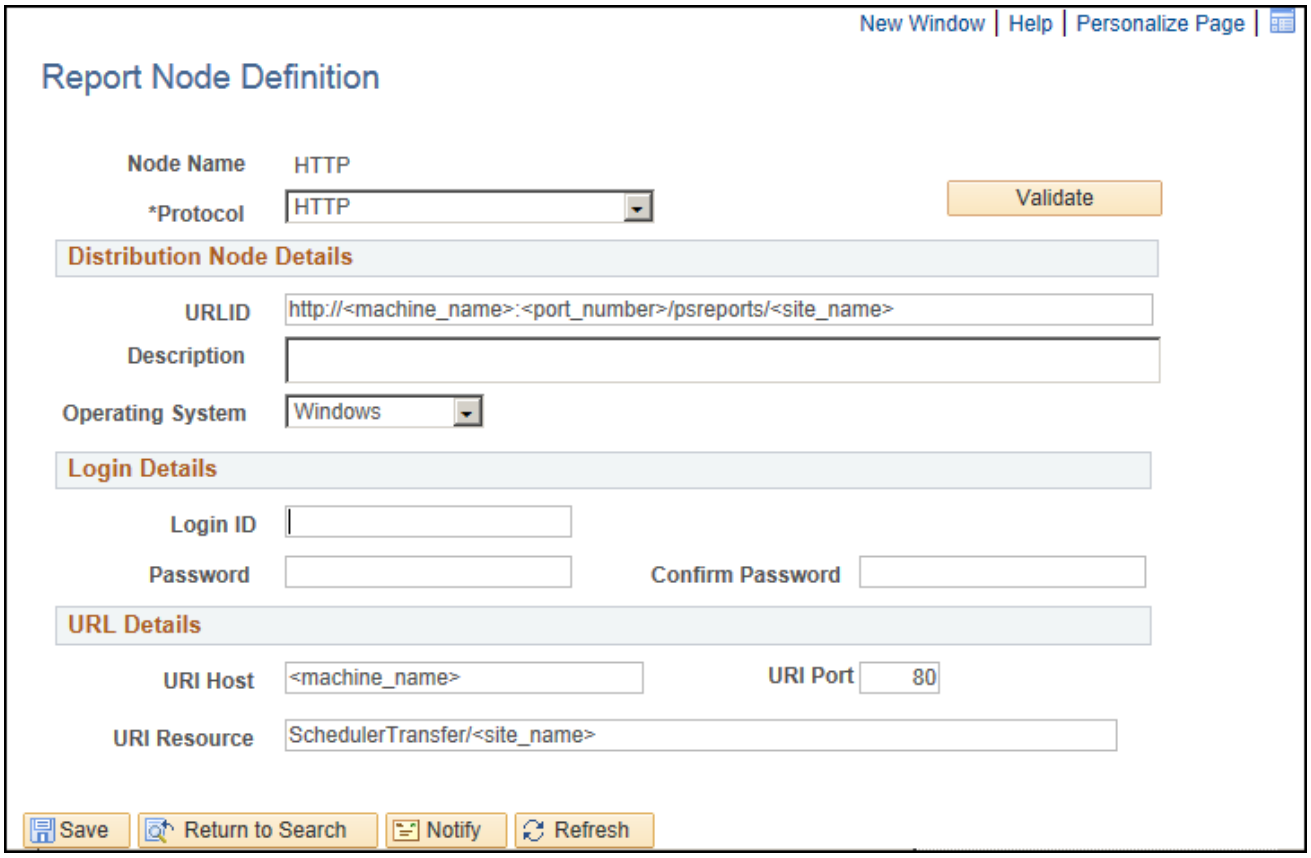
1. Select PeopleTools > Process Scheduler > Process Scheduler Report Nodes.
2. Select the Add a New Value link and enter the Report node name.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

3. On the Report Node Definition page, select HTTP or HTTPS from the Protocol drop-down list.

   Select the HTTP option if you are *not* using SSL. Select the HTTPS option if you are using SSL. The pages for HTTP and HTTPS have the same fields. These examples show HTTP.

   Note that if you are using SSL you need to have Client Certificates installed on your web server.



Report Node Definition page for the HTTP protocol

4. Enter the following information in the Distribution Node Details area:

   - *URLID*: Enter the URL of the web server using the following format:

     `http://<machine_name>:<port_number>/psreports/<site_name>`

     Replace <*machine_name*> with the name of your machine. Use the fully qualified host name for your web server. If you are using an HTTP or HTTPS port other than the defaults, you need to specify the port number.

     Note. If you specify the Authentication Token Domain name during the PIA installation, you must include a fully qualified domain name for the URL instead of the IP address.

   - *Description:* Enter a description of the server (optional).
   - *Operating System:* Select the web server operating system, Windows or UNIX.

5. Enter the following information in the Login Details area:

   - *Login ID*: Enter the Login ID. This is not required, unless basic authentication has been set up on the web server by the Web Administrator.
   - *Password and Confirm Password*: Enter the password, and confirm it, for the user ID specified in the Login ID field. This is not required, unless basic authentication has been set up on the web server by the

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Web Administrator.

Note. The setup of authentication is optional, but is recommended for security of the Report Repository when using the HTTP to transfer files. For information on setting up authentication on the web server where the Report Repository resides, refer to the *PeopleTools: Security Administration* product documentation.

6. Enter the following information in the URI Details area:
   - *URI Host:* Enter the machine name for the report repository.

     Note. In a basic setup, the machine name for the report repository will match the machine name of the web server URL. However, under certain circumstances—for example, if you are using a reverse proxy server—the URL and URI Host may have different machine names.

   - *URI Port:* Enter the port number, which must match the port number of your web server (defaults are HTTP = 80, HTTPS = 443). If you change a port number you will lose the default values for both protocols.
   - *URI Resource:* Enter SchedulerTransfer/<*site name*>.
7. Click Save to save your entries.
8. Click Validate to confirm that your entries are complete and correct.

   The validation confirms that the necessary parameters are present and correct, and simulates a file transfer with the entered information. You either see a message that confirms the success of the validation, or a message that displays an error for missing parameters or an unsuccessful transfer simulation.
9. To add additional report nodes, click Add to return to the Search page.

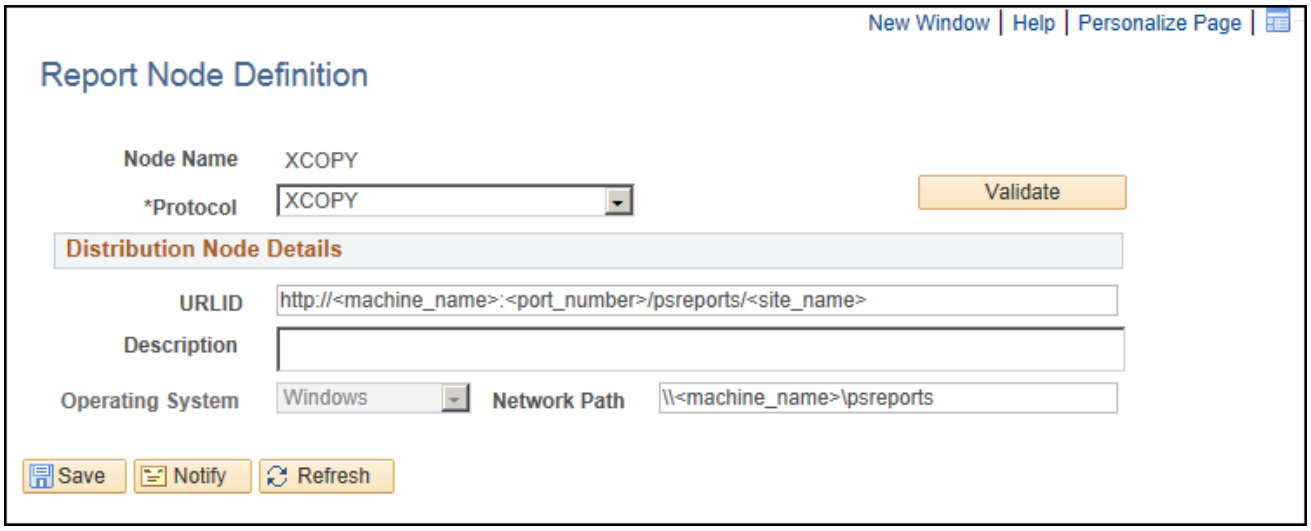
Defining the Report Node to Use XCOPY

To define the report node to use XCOPY:

1. Select PeopleTools > Process Scheduler > Process Scheduler Report Nodes.
2. Select Add a New Value, enter the Report node name, and click Add.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

3. On the Report Node Definition page, select XCOPY from the Protocol drop-down list.



Report Node Definition page for the XCOPY protocol

4. Enter the following information in the Distribution Node Details area:
   - *URLID*: Enter the URL of the web server using this format:

     `http://<machine_name>:<port_number>/psreports/<site_name>`

     Replace <*machine name*> with the name of your web server. Replace <*site name*> with the directory where you installed the PIA files.

     If you installed the web server software with the default TCP port of 80, you do not need to specify the port number in the URL path. However, if you installed the web server to some other port, you must specify the port number in the URL path.
   - *Description*: Enter an optional description for the node.
   - *Network Path*: Enter the path that points to your Report Repository share, using this format (where <*machine_name*> refers to the web server machine):

     `\\<machine_name>\psreports`

     Make sure that this directory is shared with the login accounts used to start Process Scheduler. Use UNC format instead of mapped drive format.
5. Select Save to save your entries.
6. Click Validate to confirm that your entries are correct.

   The validation confirms that the necessary parameters are present and correct, and simulates a file transfer with the entered information. You either see a message that confirms the success of the validation, or a message that displays an error for missing parameters or an unsuccessful transfer simulation.
7. To add additional report nodes, select Add to return to the Search page.

Defining the Report Node to Use FTP

If you use the FTP report node protocol, note that:

- If your FTP server is a Microsoft Windows server, you may have to set up the FTP service.
- The Distribution Agent will perform a validation after FTP has transferred files into the Report Repository by sending a query request to the web server. For this task to be completed, it is critical that the value entered in

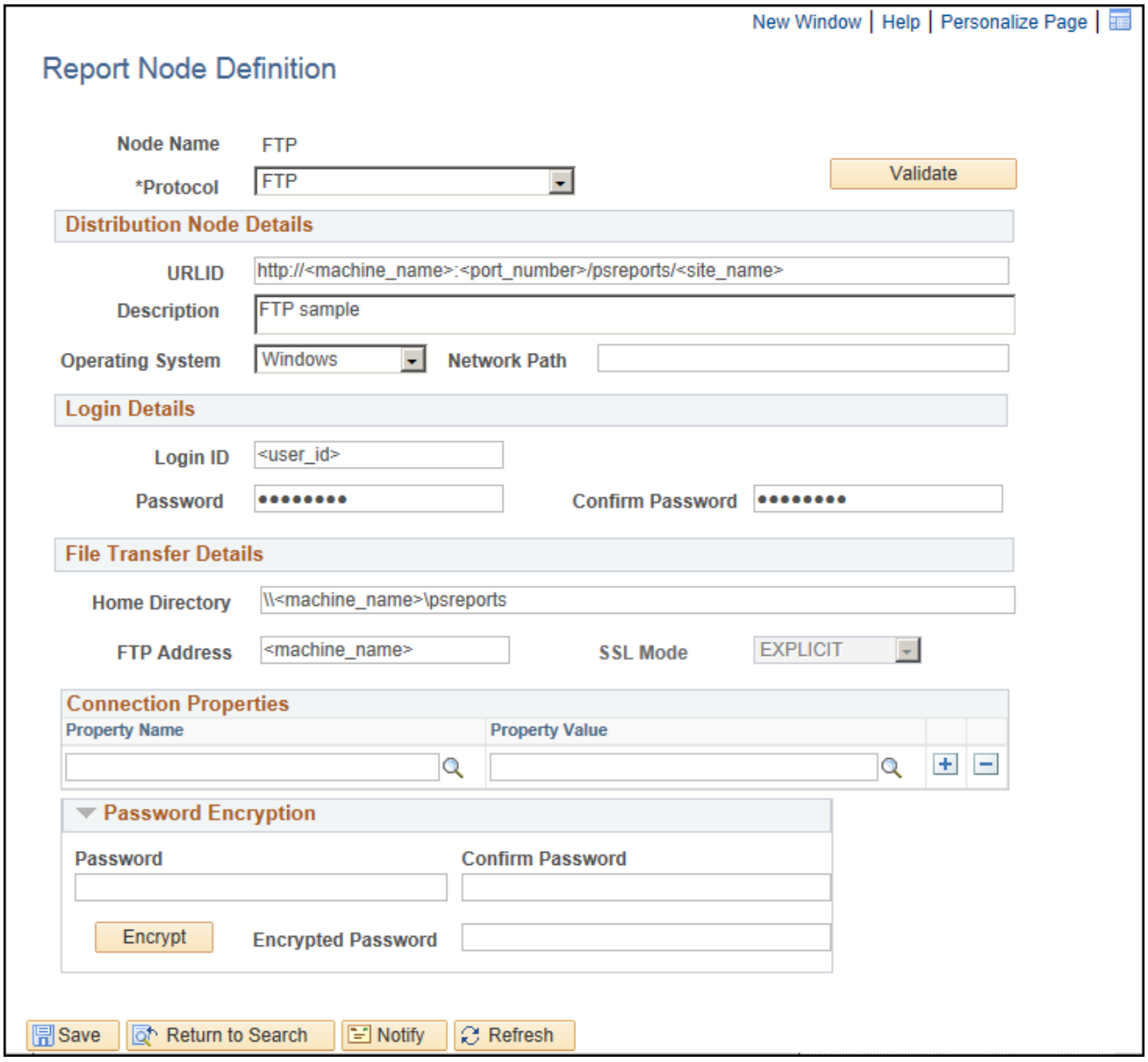
Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

the URL is accurate. Verify that the machine name, port number, and site number that you specify are correct.

If this setup is not completed, the process request will get a status of NOT POSTED in the Process Monitor Detail page and will log the message "Unable to verify files posted."

To define the report node to use FTP:

1. Select PeopleTools > Process Scheduler > Process Scheduler Report Nodes.
2. Select Add a New Value, enter the Report node name, and click Add.
3. On the Report Node Definition page, select FTP from the Protocol drop-down list.



Report Node Definition page for the FTP protocol

4. In the Distribution Node Details area, enter the following information:
   - *URLID*: Enter the URL of the web server using this format:
     `http://<machine_name>:<port_number>/psreports/<site_name>`

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Replace <*machine name*> with the name of your web server. If you are using an HTTP port other than 80, you need to specify the port number. The variable <*site name*> refers to the directory where you installed the PIA files; this will default to ps for the first installation.

Note. If you specify the Authentication Token Domain name during the PIA installation, you must include a fully qualified domain name for the URL instead of the IP address.

Note. If you installed the web server software with the default TCP port of 80, you do not need to specify the port number in the URL path. However, if you installed the web server to some other port, you must specify the port number in the URL path.

- *Description*: Enter a description of the server (optional).
- *Operating System*: Select the operating system of the Report Repository, Windows or UNIX.
- *Network Path*: This information is not required for the FTP protocol

5. In the Login Details area, enter the following information:
   - *Login ID*: Enter the FTP User ID.
   - *Password and Confirm Password*: Enter the password, and enter it a second time, for the FTP User ID specified in the Login ID field.
6. In the File Transfer Details area, enter the following information:
   - *Home Directory:* Enter the directory specified during the PIA installation as the Report Repository. The FTP User ID must have write access to this directory. Note that this is not a required field for FTP transfer, as the system uses the Report Repository directory specified at install time or the current directory assigned to ReportRepositoryPath in configuration.properties. Note that the value you enter for the Report Repository Path in the Web Profile at install time overrides any entry for ReportRepositoryPath in configuration.properties.

     For Microsoft Windows operating systems, the directory needs to match the Report Repository path. Make sure that you do not include any drive information—as in c:\psreports\—because you are using the FTP protocol to interpret this parameter.
   - *FTP Address:* Enter the machine name or the IP address of the Report Repository. If the name of the machine is used, it must be included on a DNS server.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

7. If you need to specify additional properties, use the Connection Properties area. Specifying the Connection Properties is optional.

   Click the lookup button (magnifying glass) and select one of the properties in the following table. Click the plus sign to add another connection property.

Property Name	Property Value
ACTIVEMODE	To enable active mode, add the ACTIVEMODE property to the URL and set it to *Y*. The default FTP connection mode is extended passive mode.
ACTIVEPORTOPTION	This property can be used along with ACTIVEMODE. When active mode is enabled, you can use ACTIVEPORTOPTION to specify the IP address and port on which the FTP server can be accessed. This is useful when the server is behind a firewall. By default, ACTIVEPORTOPTION uses the default IP address of your system. If you want to use a particular IP address, set the ACTIVEPORTOPTION value to either the full IP address, a host name to resolve to an IP address, or a local network interface name. You can also specify a port range. For example: *10.176.147.111:10000-13000*
ENABLEEPRT	This option can be used only with Active Mode. If Active Mode is enabled and ENABLEEPRT is set to *N*, then the system will use a PORT (IPv4) Active Mode connection. By default, ENABLEEPRT is Y, if Active Mode is set to Y.
EXTENDEDPASSIVEMODE	• *0*: Disable EPSV • *1*: Enable EPSV This property enables you to control whether extended passive mode (EPSV) will be used by FTP. EPSV is used by default. That is, by default, this value is considered to be 1. If the client fails to connect to the server with EPSV, then the system will try passive mode (PASV). To use PASV only, add EXTENDEDPASSIVEMODE to the URL Properties and set it to 0.
JKSPASSWORD	Specify the Java keystore (JKS) password.
JKSPATH	Specify the Java keystore (JKS) path.
PASSWORD	Specify the password associated with the USER property, which identifies the FTP User ID.
USER	Specify the FTP User ID used for authentication when accessing the FTP site.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

8. If you need to specify an encrypted password in any of the property fields, use the Password Encryption area to generate the encrypted password, as follows:
   a. In the Password field, enter a password.
   b. In the Confirm Password field, enter the password again.
   c. Click Encrypt.

      The encrypted password is displayed in the Encrypted Password field.
   d. From the Encrypted Password field, cut the encrypted password and then copy the encrypted value to the appropriate location.
9. Select Save to save your entries.
10. Click Validate to confirm that your entries are correct.

    The validation confirms that the necessary parameters are present and correct, and simulates a file transfer with the entered information. You either see a message that confirms the success of the validation, or a message that displays an error for missing parameters or an unsuccessful transfer simulation.
11. To add additional report nodes, click Add to return to the Search page.

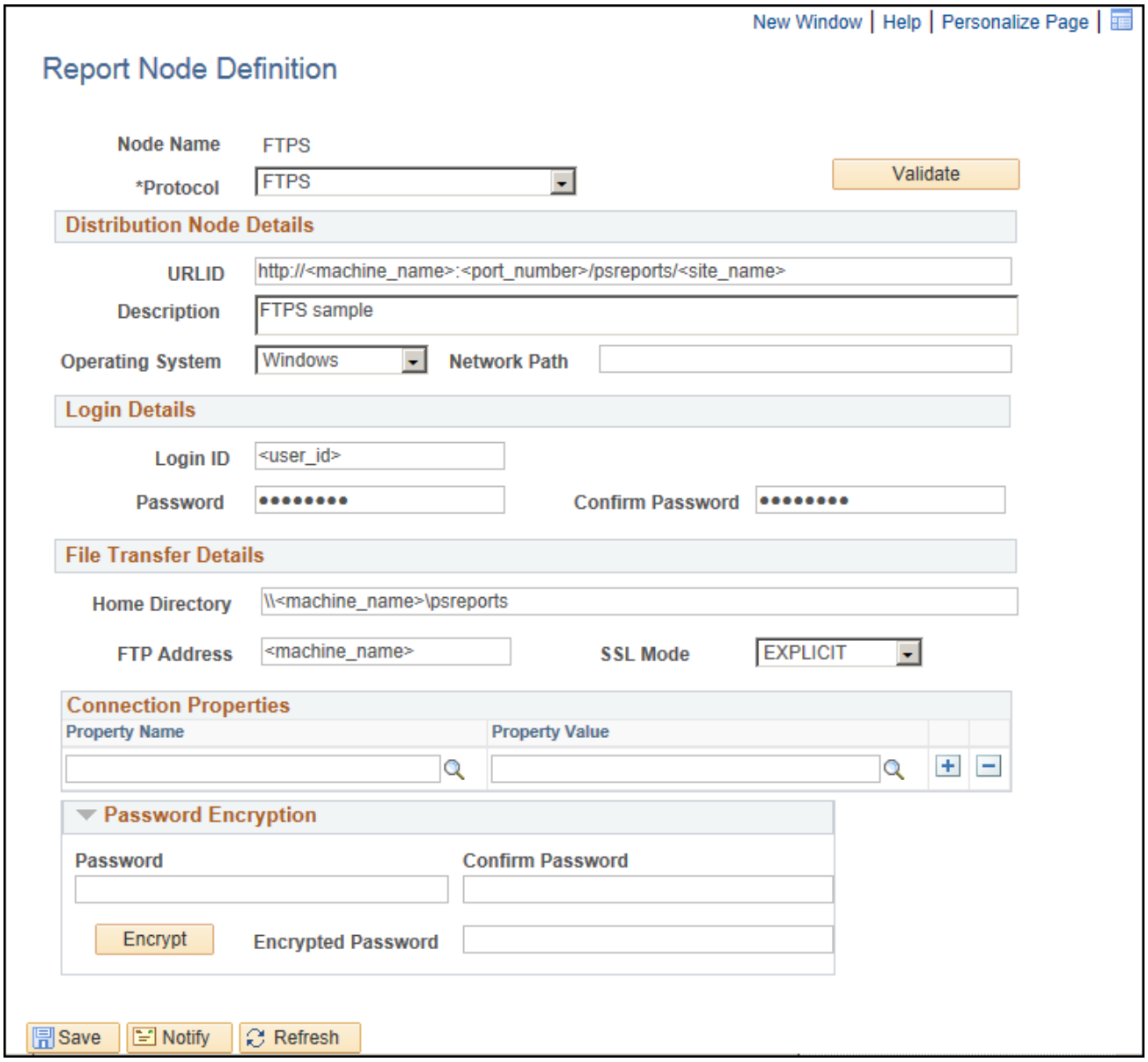
Defining the Report Node to Use FTPS

To define the report node to use FTPS:

1. Select PeopleTools > Process Scheduler > Process Scheduler Report Nodes.
2. Select Add a New Value, enter the Report node name, and click Add.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

3. On the Report Node Definition page, select FTPS from the Protocol drop-down list.



Report Node Definition page for the FTPS protocol

4. In the Distribution Node Details area, enter the following information:

   - *URLID*: Enter the URL of the web server using this format:

     `http://<machine_name>:<port_number>/psreports/<site_name>`

     Replace <*machine name*> with the name of your web server. If you are using an HTTP port other than 80, you need to specify the port number. The variable <*site name*> refers to the directory where you installed the PIA files; this will default to ps for the first installation.

     Note. If you specify the Authentication Token Domain name during the PIA installation, you must include a fully qualified domain name for the URL instead of the IP address.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Note. If you installed the web server software with the default TCP port of 80, you do not need to specify the port number in the URL path. However, if you installed the web server to some other port, you must specify the port number in the URL path.

- *Description*: Enter a description of the server (optional).
- *Operating System*: Select the operating system of the Report Repository, Windows or UNIX.
- *Network Path*: This information is not required for the FTPS protocol.

5. In the Login Details area, enter the following information:
   - *Login ID*: Enter the FTP User ID.
   - *Password and Confirm Password*: Enter the password, and enter it a second time, for the user ID specified in the Login ID field.
6. In the File Transfer Details area, enter the following information:
   - *Home Directory:* Enter the directory specified during the PIA installation as the Report Repository. The FTP User ID must have write access to this directory. Note that this is not a required field for FTP transfer, as the system uses the Report Repository directory specified at install time or the current directory assigned to ReportRepositoryPath in configuration.properties. Note that the value you enter for the Report Repository Path in the Web Profile at install time overrides any entry for ReportRepositoryPath in configuration.properties.

     For Microsoft Windows operating systems, the directory needs to match the Report Repository path. Make sure that you do not include any drive information—as in c:\psreports\—because you are using the FTP protocol to interpret this parameter.
   - *FTP Address:* Enter the machine name or the IP address of the Report Repository. If the name of the machine is used, it must be included on a DNS server.
   - *SSL Mode*: Select Explicit or Implicit from the drop-down list.

     These are two separate methods developed to invoke the client security for use with FTP clients. With the explicit mode, FTPS-aware clients can invoke security with an FTPS-aware server without breaking overall FTP functionality with non-FTPS-aware clients. The implicit method requires that all clients of the FTPS server be aware that SSL is to be used on the session, and thus is incompatible with non-FTPS-aware clients.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

7. In the Connection Properties area, click the lookup button (magnifying glass) and select one of the properties in the following table:

   Click the plus sign to add another connection property.

Property Name	Property Value
ACTIVEMODE	To enable active mode, add the ACTIVEMODE property to the URL and set it to *Y*. The default FTPS connection mode is extended passive mode.
ACTIVEPORTOPTION	This property can be used along with ACTIVEMODE. When active mode is enabled, you can use ACTIVEPORTOPTION to specify the IP address and port on which the FTP server can be accessed. This is useful when the server is behind a firewall. By default, ACTIVEPORTOPTION uses the default IP address of your system. If you want to use a particular IP address, set the ACTIVEPORTOPTION value to either the full IP address, a host name to resolve to an IP address, or a local network interface name. You can also specify a port range. For example: *10.176.147.111:10000-13000*
CERTALIAS	Certificate Alias: The Certificate Alias must be an alias name of a certificate stored in the database (using the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Digital Certificates page). **Note.** Currently, only PEM certificates are supported for FTPS.
ENABLEEPRT	This option can be used only with Active Mode. If Active Mode is enabled and ENABLEEPRT is set to *N*, then the system will use a PORT (IPv4) Active Mode connection. By default, ENABLEEPRT is Y, if Active Mode is set to Y.
EXTENDEDPASSIVEMODE	• *0*: Disable EPSV • *1*: Enable EPSV This property enables you to control whether extended passive mode (EPSV) will be used by FTP. EPSV is used by default. That is, by default, this value is considered to be 1. If the client fails to connect to the server with EPSV, then the system will try passive mode (PASV). To use PASV only, add EXTENDEDPASSIVEMODE to the URL Properties and set it to 0.
JKSPASSWORD	Specify the Java keystore (JKS) password.
JKSPATH	Specify the Java keystore (JKS) user.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Property Name	Property Value
KEYSTOREPASSWORD	This property is required for FTPS and HTTPS repositories. For attachments transferred from the PeopleSoft system to the FTPS or HTTPS repository, the system retrieves the key pair for the client certificate from the digital certificate store and writes the pair to a file in PKCS12 format with password protection. The value of this property will be used as the password for the PKCS12 file. The PKCS12 file enables connection and file transfer, and it exists only temporarily in <PS_SERVDIR>\files\<CERT ALIAS NAME> for the duration of the file transfer. The system deletes the file after the file transfer transaction. **Note.** If the system fails to delete the certificate alias file, a message will be written to the application server log. The maximum number of files that can exist at any time is equal to the total number of FTPS and HTTPS URL identifiers defined in the system. For information on setting the PS_SERVDIR environment variable, see the *PeopleTools: Integration Broker* product documentation.
PASSWORD	Specify the password associated with the USER property, which identifies the FTP User ID.
SSLUAGELEVEL	• *0 - No SSL*: No SSL will be used. • *1 - Try SSL*: Try using SSL, but proceed as normal otherwise. • *2 - Control*: Require SSL for the control connection. • *3 - SSL Only*: (Default) Require SSL for all communication.
USER	Specify the FTP User ID used for authentication when accessing the FTP site.
VERIFYHOST	• *0:* Do not verify the server for host name. • *1*: Check if there exists any value in the common name field in the server certificate. This check does not verify if it matches with what the client specifies. • *2*: (Default) Check for a match with the host name in the URL with the common name or Subject Alternate field in the server certificate.
VERIFYPEER	• *False*: Do not verify the peer. • *True*: (Default) Verify the peer by authenticating the certificate sent by the server.

8. If you need to specify an encrypted password in any of the property fields, use the Password Encryption area to generate the encrypted password, as follows:

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

a. In the Password field, enter a password.
b. In the Confirm Password field, enter the password again.
c. Click Encrypt.

   The encrypted password is displayed in the Encrypted Password field.

d. From the Encrypted Password field, cut the encrypted password and then copy the encrypted value to the appropriate location.

9. Select Save to save your entries.
10. Click Validate to confirm that your entries are correct.

    The validation confirms that the necessary parameters are present and correct, and simulates a file transfer with the entered information. You either see a message that confirms the success of the validation, or a message that displays an error for missing parameters or an unsuccessful transfer simulation.

11. To add additional report nodes, click Add to return to the Search page.

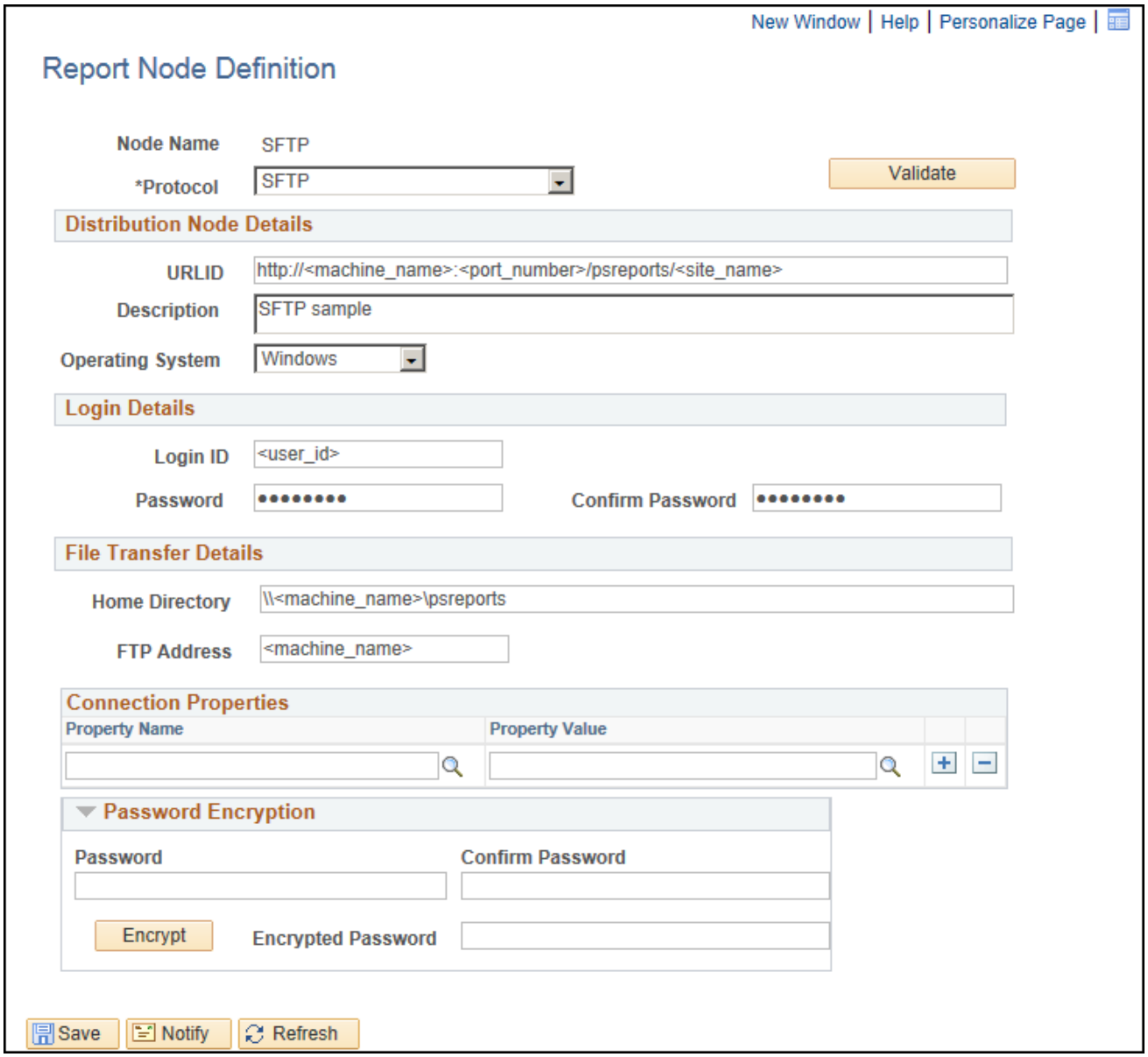
Defining the Report Node to Use SFTP

To define the report node to use SFTP:

1. Select PeopleTools > Process Scheduler > Process Scheduler Report Nodes.
2. Select Add a New Value, enter the Report node name, and click Add.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

3. On the Report Node Definition page, select SFTP from the Protocol drop-down list.



Report Node Definition page for the SFTP protocol

4. In the Distribution Node Details area, enter the following information:

   - *URLID*: Enter the URL of the web server using this format:

     `http://<machine_name>:<port_number>/psreports/<site_name>`

     Replace <*machine name*> with the name of your web server. If you are using an HTTP port other than 80, you need to specify the port number. The variable <*site name*> refers to the directory where you installed the PIA files; this will default to ps for the first installation.

     Note. If you specify the Authentication Token Domain name during the PIA installation, you must include a fully qualified domain name for the URL instead of the IP address.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Note. If you installed the web server software with the default TCP port of 80, you do not need to specify the port number in the URL path. However, if you installed the web server to some other port, you must specify the port number in the URL path.

- *Description*: Enter a description of the server (optional).
- *Operating System*: Select the operating system of the Report Repository, Windows or UNIX.
- *Network Path*: This information is not required for the SFTP protocol.

5. In the Login Details area, enter the following information:
   - *Login ID*: Enter the FTP User ID.
   - *Password and Confirm Password*: Enter the password, and enter it a second time, for the user ID specified in the Login ID field.
6. In the File Transfer Details area, enter the following information:
   - *Home Directory:* Enter the directory specified during the PIA installation as the Report Repository. The FTP User ID must have write access to this directory. Note that this is not a required field for FTP transfer, as the system uses the Report Repository directory specified at install time or the current directory assigned to ReportRepositoryPath in configuration.properties. Note that the value you enter for the Report Repository Path in the Web Profile at install time overrides any entry for ReportRepositoryPath in configuration.properties.

     For Microsoft Windows operating systems, the directory needs to match the Report Repository path. Make sure that you do not include any drive information—as in c:\psreports\—because you are using the FTP protocol to interpret this parameter.
   - *FTP Address:* Enter the machine name or the IP address of the Report Repository. If the name of the machine is used, it must be included on a DNS server.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

7. In the Connection Properties area, click the lookup button (magnifying glass) and select one of the properties in the following table.

   Click the plus sign to add additional connection properties.

Property Name	Property Value
AUTHTYPE	Select one of the following the authentication types: • *PUBLICKEY* • *PASSWORD* • *ANY*
PASSWORD	Specify the user password. You can enter the password in the Password Encryption box, click Encrypt, and then copy the encrypted value to the Password property.
PASSWORDKEY	Enter the password for the private key.
PRIVATEKEY	Select the private key.
PUBLICKEY	Select the public key.
SSHKEYALIAS	Select the SSH certificate saved to the database using the PeopleTools Security, Digital Certificates page (select PeopleTools > Security > Security Objects > Manage Digital Certificates). The SSH certificate added through the Digital Certificates page contains both the public and private key data, identified by the Alias column value on the Digital Certificates page. If using the SSHKEYALIAS URL property, the Property Value prompt displays only the list of SSH certificates that have been added to the Digital Certificates page. If you have added the SSH certificate using the Digital Certificates page, and you have assigned an SSH certificate to the SSHKEYALIAS URL property, the system ignores the PUBLICKEY and PRIVATEKEY properties, regardless of whether they refer to valid key files in the file system. If you provided a password (or passphrase) when generating your SSH certificate, specify that value using the PASSWORDKEY URL property. See *PeopleTools: Security Administration,* "Configuring Digital Certificates."
USER	Specify the user ID to be authenticated.

8. If you need to specify an encrypted password in any of the property fields, use the Password Encryption area to generate the encrypted password, as follows:
   a. In the Password field, enter a password.
   b. In the Confirm Password field, enter the password again.
   c. Click Encrypt.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

The encrypted password is displayed in the Encrypted Password field.

d. From the Encrypted Password field, cut the encrypted password and then copy the encrypted value to the appropriate location.

9. Select Save to save your entries.
10. Click Validate to confirm that your entries are correct.

    The validation confirms that the necessary parameters are present and correct, and simulates a file transfer with the entered information. You either see a message that confirms the success of the validation, or a message that displays an error for missing parameters or an unsuccessful transfer simulation.

11. To add additional report nodes, click Add to return to the Search page.

Defining the Report Node for Cloud Repositories

You can use the following cloud storage provider as repositories for your Process Scheduler reports.

- Oracle Cloud Infrastructure Object Storage service — an internet-scale, high-performance storage platform that offers reliable and cost-efficient data durability

  See Overview of Object Storage, https://docs.oracle.com/en-us/iaas/Content/Object/Concepts/objectstorageoverview.htm.

- Oracle Content and Experience Cloud — a cloud-based content hub to drive omni-channel content management and accelerate experience delivery

  See Oracle Content and Experience on the Oracle Help Center, https://docs.oracle.com/en/cloud/paas/content-cloud/.

See *PeopleTools: Process Scheduler,* "Defining Report Nodes."

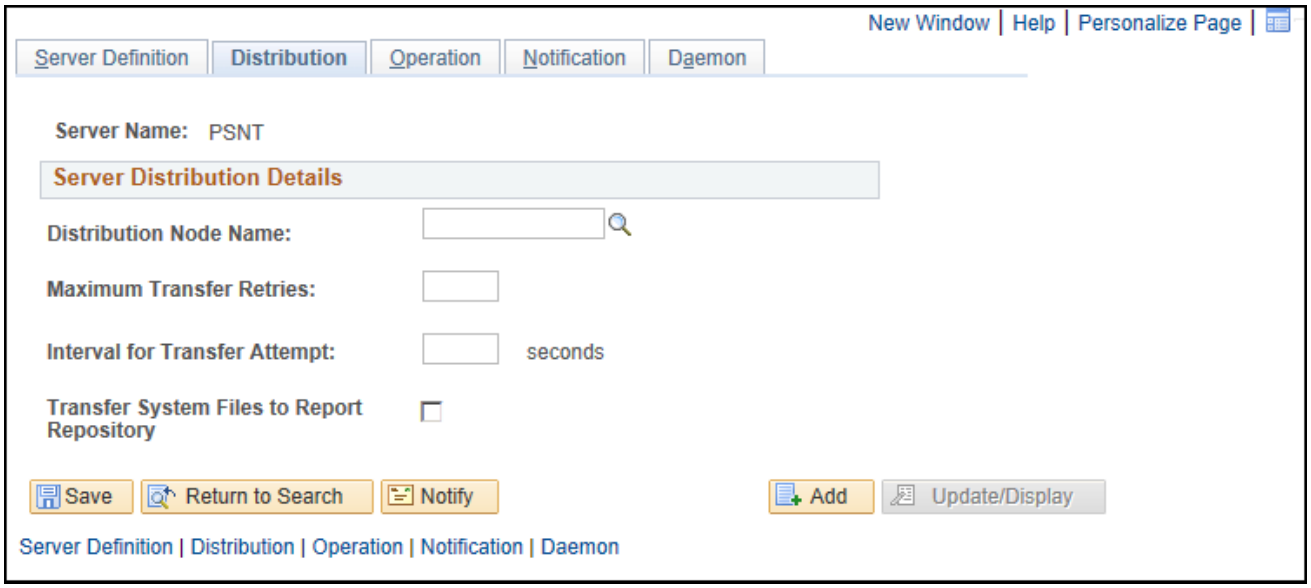
Task 16-2-5: Setting Up the Distribution for Your Process Scheduler Server

To set up the Distribution Settings for your Process Scheduler Server:

1. Select PeopleTools > Process Scheduler > Process Scheduler Servers.
2. Enter the Server Name (such as PSNT). The Server Definition page appears.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

3. Select the Distribution tab.



Server Definition page for PSNT: Distribution tab

4. Click the lookup button for Distribution Node Name to display the report node names and select the name of the required report node.
5. Enter a number for the Maximum Transfer Retries. This is the maximum number of times the server can try to send a report before it errors out.
6. Enter the number of seconds for the Interval for Transfer Attempt field. This is the interval between attempts to send the report.
7. Select the check box Transfer Log Files to Report Repository if you want to transfer all log and trace files from processes that do not generate reports.
8. Click Save to save your entries.
9. If Process Scheduler is running, you must reboot for any new settings to take effect.

To view reports (log files or system files) from Report Repository, you need to pass the authentication. Report Repository should be treated as a separate PeopleSoft application. To navigate from PIA to Report Repository, you need to set up single signon in order to avoid getting a prompt for a second signon.

Task 16-2-6: Setting Up Sending and Receiving of Report Folders in the Report Manager

To be able to view reports in the Report Manager Explorer and List pages, you need to set up the sending and receiving of report folders in the Report Manager by activating the domain on which a sending and receiving server resides. Consult the documentation covering the PeopleSoft Integration Broker to learn how to activate the sending and receiving server domain.

See *PeopleTools: Integration Broker.*

See *PeopleTools: Integration Broker Service Operations Monitor.*

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Task 16-3: Setting Environment Variables

To set the appropriate Tuxedo environment variables, carry out these steps. (If you have already set these variables on the machine you are using as your Process Scheduler Server, you can skip this task.)

See "Installing Oracle Tuxedo," Installing Oracle Tuxedo on Microsoft Windows.

To set the variables:

1. Choose Start, Settings, Control Panel.
2. Double-click the System icon.
3. Make sure that the NLSPATH environment variable is set.

   NLSPATH does not need to be explicitly set since Oracle Tuxedo sets NLSPATH in its own registry tree. This value can be displayed using Control Panel, Tuxedo, on the Environment tab. However, the installation of certain products sets NLSPATH to a value that causes Oracle Tuxedo to fail. The solution is to either set NLSPATH=c:\tuxedo\locale\c, or to delete it entirely and let Oracle Tuxedo pick up the value from its registry tree.

Search the Oracle Tuxedo documentation for additional information on NLSPATH.

Task 16-4: Setting Up Process Scheduler Server Agent

This section discusses:

- Understanding Process Scheduler Server Agent
- Creating and Configuring a Process Scheduler Server
- Reconfiguring a Process Scheduler Server
- Verifying the Process Scheduler Server Status

Understanding Process Scheduler Server Agent

For installation purposes, you can use predefined server names and other definitions. The predefined name that you might use is as follows:

Server Name	Operating System
PSNT	Microsoft Windows

To test this, use processes already defined in your PeopleSoft database. To set up a new server definition in your PeopleSoft database, refer to the *PeopleTools: Process Scheduler* product documentation.

Note. When creating multiple Process Scheduler Servers for the same database, each server must have a unique server name. For example, two Process Scheduler Servers, both named PSNT, cannot run against the same database.

Task 16-4-1: Creating and Configuring a Process Scheduler Server

This section describes how to create and configure a Process Scheduler server.

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

You can set Process Scheduler configuration parameters either by using PSADMIN, which provides an interactive dialog, or by editing the configuration file psprcs.cfg located in the *PS_CFG_HOME*\appserv\prcs*database name* directory. The following steps assume you are using PSADMIN to specify parameter settings.

Note. For Cube Builder users, if Essbase Server is installed on a different machine than the Process Scheduler, you must install Essbase Client 11.1.2.1 on the process scheduler server machine. You must also ensure that the %ESSBASEPATH% and %ARBORPATH% environmental variables are properly set in the Process Scheduler.

Note. If you use the configuration file psprcs.cfg, be aware that the section [Output Dest Exceptions] is written to trap metastring exceptions not only in the output destination but in other process parameters as well. In this section the entry `OUTDEST_EXCEPT01=%ANYMETASTRING%` that was used in older releases has been changed to `PARAMETER_EXCEPT01=%ANYMETASTRING%`.

To create and configure a Process Scheduler Server:

1. From *PS_HOME*\appserv on the batch server, type `psadmin`.

   You see the PeopleSoft Server Administration menu, as in this example:

```
-----------------------------------------
PeopleSoft Server Administration
---------------------------------
PS_CFG_HOME          C:\User\JSMITH\psft\pt\8.62
PS_HOME              C:\psft\pt\ps_home8.62
PS_APP_HOME          C:\psft\pt\hcm_app_home

1) Application Server
2) Process Scheduler
3) Web (PIA) Server
4) Switch Config Home
5) Service Setup
6) Replicate Config Home
7) Refresh Config Home
q) Quit

Command to execute (1-7 q):
```

2. Depending on your environment, you may see a message after the menu selection, which indicates that PSADMIN has modified the *PS_CFG_HOME*/peopletools.properties file with the current *PS_HOME* location:

```
**********************************************************
PS_CFG_HOME/peopletools.properties file has been updated.
You should use the Config Home Refresh feature in PSAdmin
to ensure that all of your domains are current.
Alternatively, you may recreate all of your domains.
Please press any key to continue...
**********************************************************
```

   This indicates that one of these situations exists:

   - The *PS_CFG_HOME* that you are working with was used previously from a different *PS_HOME*. In this case, you should recreate any existing Application Server, Process Scheduler, Search, or PIA domains in this *PS_CFG_HOME*.
   - You configured your environment such that *PS_CFG_HOME* is the same as *PS_HOME*. The first time you use PSADMIN to create a domain, it updates the *PS_CFG_HOME*/peopletools.properties file.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Continue with the next step.

3. Select *2* to access the Process Scheduler submenus.
4. Select *2* for Create a domain from the PeopleSoft Process Scheduler Administration menu.

```
-----------------------------------------
PeopleSoft Process Scheduler Administration
-----------------------------------------
1) Administer a domain
2) Create a domain
3) Delete a domain
4) Import domain configuration

q) Quit

Command to execute (1-4, q) : 2
```

5. Enter the name of the domain at the following prompt, such as HRDMO in this example, and press ENTER:

```
Please enter name of domain to create : HRDMO
```

6. After the system creates the domain, the Quick-configure menu appears:

```
-----------------------------------------------------------
Quick-configure menu -- domain: HRDMO
-----------------------------------------------------------
     Features                       Settings
    ==========                     ==========
  1) App Engine Server : Yes   10) DBNAME     :[HRDMO]
  2) Master Scheduler  : Yes   11) DBTYPE     :[MICROSFT]
  3) Perf Collator     : No    12) PrcsServer :[PSNT]
  4) Domains Gateway   : No    13) UserId     :[PS]
  5) Push Notifications: No    14) UserPswd   :[]
  6) Real Time Indexing: Yes   15) ConnectID  :[people]
                               16) ConnectPswd:[]
                               17) Log/Output Dir:[%PS_SERVDIR%\log_⇒
output]
                               18) SQRBIN     :[%PS_HOME%\bin\sqr\MSS⇒
\binw]
                               19) AddToPATH  :[%WINDIR%;%WINDIR%⇒
\SYSTEM32]
                               20) DBBIN      :[C:\<connectivity⇒
 directory>]
                               21) PHC Remote Admin Settings:[]
     Actions
    =========
  7) Load config as shown
  8) Custom configuration
  9) Edit environment settings
  h) Help for this menu
  q) Return to previous menu

HINT: Enter 10 to edit DBNAME, then 7 to load

Enter selection (1-20, h, or q):
```


Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

7. If you need to modify any of these settings, enter the number next to the parameter name, type the new value, and press ENTER. This table lists the parameters and gives brief descriptions.

Parameter	Description
Master Scheduler	Select this option to enable the Master Scheduler Server (PSMSTPRC). The default is to enable the server. See *PeopleTools: Process Scheduler.*
App Engine	Select this option to initiate Application Engine programs through the AE Tuxedo Server (PSAESRV). The default is set to run AE using PSAESRV. See *PeopleTools: Process Scheduler.*
Perf Collator	Select this option to enable the PSPPMSRV server process. See *PeopleTools: Performance Monitor,* "Enabling the Required Elements on the Monitoring System."
Domain Gateways	Select this option to enables inter domain communication, for example between Application Server and Process Scheduler domains. See *PeopleTools: Fluid User Interface Developer's Guide,* "Configuring the System for Push Notifications."
Push Notifications	Select this option to enables pushing server events from PeopleSoft PeopleTools server runtime, such as Application Server and Process Scheduler, to browser clients and other PeopleSoft PeopleTools server runtime components. See *PeopleTools: Fluid User Interface Developer's Guide,* "Configuring the System for Push Notifications."
Real Time Indexing	Select this option to enable the process for Real Time Indexing (PSRTISRV). With real-time indexing, data is indexed as it is added, updated, or deleted to ensure up-to-date data in PeopleSoft Search. The default is to enable real-time indexing. See *PeopleTools: Search Technology.* See *PeopleTools: Process Scheduler,* "Editing the PeopleSoft Process Scheduler Configuration File"
Load config as shown	Load the selections you made in the Quick Configure menu.
Custom configuration	Make custom selections in PSADMIN, using options that are not available in the Quick Configure menu.
Edit environment settings	Edit, add, remove, comment out, and review domain-level environment variables.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Parameter	Description
DBNAME	Specify the database name that is associated with a PeopleSoft Process Scheduler Server Agent, such as HRDMO, FSDMO, CSDMO, and so on.
DBTYPE	Specify the database type: MICROSFT.
PrcsServer	Specify the process server name. This must match the name defined in the Server Definition table, such as *PSNT* or *PSUNX*.
UserId	Enter the user ID, such as VP1 or PS.
UserPswd	Enter the password for the user ID, as you specified during the database configuration. The password is hidden by masking characters as you type, in the Quick-configure menu after entry.
ConnectID	Enter the connect ID. This value is required.
ConnectPswd	Enter the connect password, as you specified during the database configuration. This value is required. The password is hidden by masking characters as you type, in the Quick-configure menu after entry.
Log/Output Dir	Specify the directory in which files that are generated by the program are written. When PeopleSoft Process Scheduler initiates a process request, it creates a subdirectory in the format <Process Type ID>_<Program Name>_<Process Instance> that contains the generated files. For instance, the SQR program XRFWIN that ran with process instance 20 has all reports, trace, and log files in the subdirectory SQR_XRFWIN_20. It is also the optional directory used with the Output Destination field when scheduling a request. This variable (%%OutputDirectory%%) can be used in the File/Printer field of the Process Scheduler Request dialog box.
SQRBIN	Enter the path to the SQR executables.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Parameter	Description
AddToPATH	(Optional for Tuxedo) Specify an additional directory that is appended to the PATH environment variable. For a Microsoft SQL Server installation, specify the 64-bit connectivity software. The location of the connectivity software varies depending upon the version of Microsoft SQL Server that you are using. The location may also vary depending on the options chosen during installation. **Note.** For the supported Microsoft SQL Server versions, the default path is C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\Client SDK\ODBC\170\Tools\Binn. **Note.** If the PATH environment variable already includes the database connectivity location, you do not need to change the setting for AddToPATH.
DBBIN	Enter the path to the database drivers; that is, your connectivity software.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Parameter	Description
PHC Remote Admin Settings	Use this setting to enable embedded JMX Agents for use with PeopleSoft Health Center (PHC). The setting is enabled by default. Enter *1* to enable, and *0* to disable. **Note.** If you do not disable the setting and you do not supply any information, you see a message when you configure the Process Scheduler domain, such as "Enable PS JMX is not 0, but some of PS JMX parameters (userId, userPwd) are empty. PHC will not be able to work." When you enter *1* to enable Remote Administration, you must supply the port, user ID, and password. You may also set up SSL. You see prompts for: • Remote Administration Port • Remote Administration UserID • Remote Administration Password • Remote Administration SSL Enabled Enter *1* to enable SSL for JMX agents, or *0* to disable it. You see prompts for other SSL parameters. The default is 0, disabled. • Remote Administration SSL Keystore — Specify the keystore location. • Remote Administration SSL Keystore Password • Remote Administration SSL Keystore Type — Specify PKCS12 or JKS. • Remote Administration SSL Truststore — Specify the truststore location. • Remote Administration SSL Truststore Password • Remote Administration SSL Truststore Type — Specify PKCS12 or JKS.

For descriptions of the PSADMIN options that do not appear in the Quick-configure menu, see the information on using PSADMIN in the *PeopleTools: Process Scheduler* product documentation. For a basic installation, in most cases you can accept the defaults.

8. When you have updated the settings as needed, choose *5*, *Load config as shown*, from the Quick-Configure menu to save your settings to the Process Scheduler configuration file, pstuxcfg.
9. To start Process Scheduler, choose *1*, for Administer Domain.
10. On the PeopleSoft Process Scheduler Administration menu, choose *1* for Boot this domain.

```
------------------------------
PeopleSoft Process Scheduler Administration
------------------------------

Domain Name: HRDMO
```


Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
1) Boot this domain
2) Domain shutdown menu
3) Domain status menu
4) Configure this domain
5) TUXEDO command line (tmadmin)
6) Edit configuration/log files menu
7) Clean IPC resources of this domain
q) Quit

Command to execute (1-7, q) :
```

11. Choose *1*, Boot (Serial Boot), or *2*, Parallel Boot, from the PeopleSoft Domain Boot Menu.

    Note. The messages you see and the number of processes started will depend on the options you chose during configuration.

12. If you want to stop Process Scheduler Server, from the PeopleSoft Domain Administration menu, choose *2*, for Domain Shutdown menu, and then enter the number corresponding to the name of the appropriate database.

    Note. If you see the following message, then the server is already down:

    ```
    Command to execute (1-2, q) [q]: 1 Loading command line administration
    utility ... tmadmin - Copyright (c) 2007-2008, Oracle. Portions *
    Copyright 1986-1997 RSA Data Security, Inc. All Rights Reserved.
    Distributed under license by Oracle. Tuxedo is a registered trademark. No
    bulletin board exists. Entering boot mode. > TMADMIN_CAT:111: ERROR: No
    such command.
    ```

Task 16-4-2: Reconfiguring a Process Scheduler Server

If you create and then immediately configure a Process Scheduler server, you can use the Quick-configure menu. Alternatively, you can use PSADMIN as described in this section. Feel free to skip this procedure if you have already created and configured your Process Scheduler Server using the Quick-configure menu and want to move forward with your installation.

Note. If you want to configure the Process Scheduler Server while it is running, you need to stop and restart the server to load the new settings.

To reconfigure a Process Scheduler Server:

1. Go to *PS_HOME*\appserv and enter:

   ```
   psadmin
   ```

2. Depending on your environment, you may see a message after the initial menu, which indicates that PSADMIN has modified the *PS_CFG_HOME*/peopletools.properties file with the current *PS_HOME* location:

   ```
   ************************************************************
   PS_CFG_HOME/peopletools.properties file has been updated.
   You should use the Config Home Refresh feature in PSAdmin
   to ensure that all of your domains are current.
   Alternatively, you may recreate all of your domains.
   Please press any key to continue...
   ```

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
************************************************************
```

This indicates that one of these situations exists:

- The *PS_CFG_HOME* that you are working with was used previously from a different *PS_HOME*. In this case, you should recreate any existing Application Server, Process Scheduler, Search, or PIA domains in this *PS_CFG_HOME*.
- You configured your environment such that *PS_CFG_HOME* is the same as *PS_HOME*. The first time you use PSADMIN to create a domain, it updates the *PS_CFG_HOME*/peopletools.properties file. Continue with the next step.

3. Select *2* for Process Scheduler in the PeopleSoft Server Administration menu.
4. In the PeopleSoft Process Scheduler Administration menu, select *1* for Administer a domain.
5. Select the database for which the Process Scheduler needs to be configured.
6. You see the following prompt:

   ```
   Do you want to change any config values (y/n)? [n]:
   ```

   Specify *y* to start an interactive dialog that lets you examine or change parameter values.
7. Specify the configuration parameters one by one.

   Configuration parameters are grouped into sections. At each section, you are asked whether to change any parameters—for example:

   ```
   Values for config section - Startup
     DBName=
     DBType=
     UserId=
     UserPswd=
     ConnectId=
     ConnectPswd=
     ServerName=
     StandbyDBName=
     StandbyDBType=
     StandbyUserId=
     StandbyUserPswd=
     InMemoryDBName=
     InMemoryDBType=
   Do you want to change any values (y/n)? [n]:
   ```

   - Specify *y* to change any parameter values for the current section. You are prompted for each parameter value. Either specify a new value or press ENTER to accept the default. After you press ENTER, you are positioned at the next parameter in that section. When you are done with that section, you are again asked whether you want to re-edit any of the values you changed.
   - The parameters StandbyDBName, StandbyDBType, StandbyUserID, and StandbyUserPswd are used for a standby database in an Oracle database environment.

     See the information on implementing Oracle Active Data Guard in the *PeopleTools: Data Management*, product documentation.
   - The parameters InMemoryDBName and InMemoryDBType are reserved for internal use.
   - If you do not want to change any values, specify *n* and you are prompted for the next configuration section.
8. After you have selected all your parameters, you see this message:

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
You will need to shut down and start up the server to read the new⇒
 settings.
```

For descriptions of the Process Scheduler options in the PSADMIN, see the *PeopleTools: Process Scheduler* product documentation. In most cases you can accept the defaults.

Task 16-4-3: Verifying the Process Scheduler Server Status

At this stage it is a good idea to verify the Process Scheduler Server status.

To verify the Process Scheduler Server status:

1. From the PeopleSoft Process Scheduler Administration menu, choose option *3*, for Domain status menu.

```
--------------------------------
PeopleSoft Process Scheduler Administration
--------------------------------

Domain Name: HRDMO

1) Boot this domain
2) Domain shutdown menu
3) Domain status menu
4) Configure this domain
5) TUXEDO command line (tmadmin)
6) Edit configuration/log files menu
7) Clean IPC resources of this domain
q) Quit

Command to execute (1-7, q) : 3
```

2. To verify the status of the Process Scheduler Server for a specific database, type the number corresponding to the appropriate database.

   For example:

```
Database list:

  1)  HRDMO

Select item number to start: 1

Loading command line administration utility ...
tmadmin - Copyright (c) 2007-2008 Oracle.
Portions * Copyright 1986-1997 RSA Data Security, Inc.
All Rights Reserved.
Distributed under license by Oracle.
Tuxedo is a registered trademark.

> Prog Name      Queue Name  Grp Name      ID RqDone Load Done Current⇒
 Service
---------      ----------  --------      -- ------ --------- -----------⇒
----
BBL.exe        46845       PSSERVER+      0      9       450 (  IDLE )
PSMONITORSRV.e MONITOR     MONITOR        1      0         0 (  IDLE )
```

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

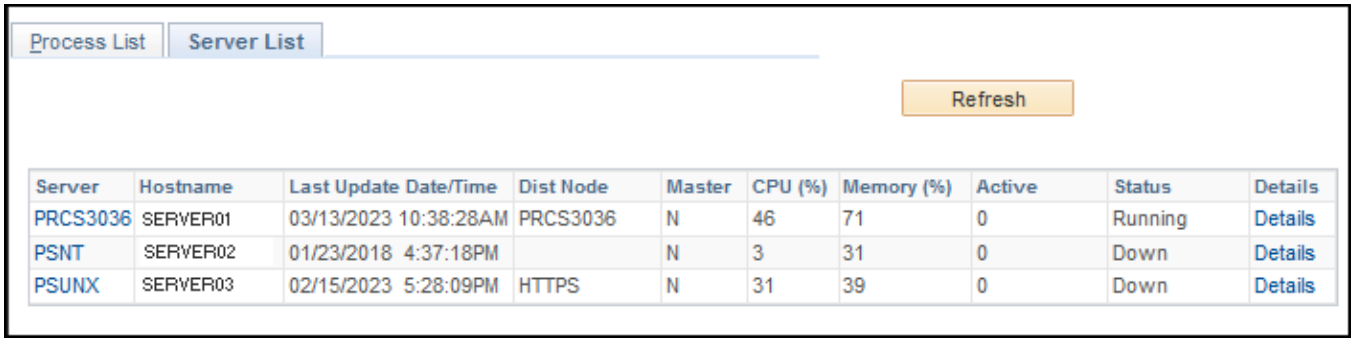
```
PSAESRV.exe     00101.00001 AESRV          1       0          0 (  IDLE )
PSAESRV.exe     00101.00002 AESRV          2       0          0 (  IDLE )
PSAESRV.exe     00101.00003 AESRV          3       0          0 (  IDLE )
PSPRCSRV.exe    SCHEDQ      BASE         101       0          0 (  IDLE )
PSMSTPRC.exe    MSTRSCHQ    BASE         102       0          0 (  IDLE )
PSDSTSRV.exe    DSTQ        BASE         103       0          0 (  IDLE )
PSRTISRV.exe    00030.00030 RTI           30       0          0 (  IDLE )
>
```

You can also verify the status of the Process Scheduler Server from Process Monitor in PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture. To verify the Process Scheduler Server status from the Process Monitor page, go to PeopleTools > Process Scheduler > Process Monitor, and select *Server List.*

If the user has the process security rights to update the server status, the *Refresh* button can be used to refresh the screen, too.

See Setting Up Process Scheduler Security.

This example of the Server List page shows two Process Scheduler servers with status Down, and one with status Running.



Process Monitor page: Server List tab

Task 16-5: Starting Process Scheduler as a Windows Service (Optional)

You can start the Process Scheduler server as a Windows service. This means that administrators do not need to manually boot each Process Scheduler server that runs on a Microsoft Windows machine. Instead, each time you boot the Microsoft Windows server where the Process Scheduler server resides, the Process Scheduler Server will boot automatically. You can also still manually boot Process Scheduler Servers on your Microsoft Windows server.

Note. If you have set up TUXDIR and TEMP as new SYSTEM variables, you need to reboot your machine before any Windows services will pick up the value of these environment variables.

Note. You can also set up application servers and search servers as a Windows service using the instructions provided here.

The following directions assume that the Process Scheduler is already configured on the Microsoft Windows server.

To set up the Windows Service for a Process Scheduler Server:

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

1. Open the System utility within the Control Panel, and set the variables, listed with a brief explanation in the following table, in the System Variables section of the Environment tab.

   Note. Even if the following variables are in the User Variables section, they must also be in the System Variables section because the Windows service will be started under the System Account.

Variable	Value
TEMP	Specify the location of the TEMP directory on the Windows server, as in C:\TEMP.
TUXDIR	Specify the location of the Tuxedo directory on the Windows server, as in C:\tuxedo.

2. Reboot the Windows computer if any changes or additions were made for the system variables.
3. Run the PeopleSoft PSADMIN utility (psadmin.exe in the *PS_HOME*\appserv directory), and press ENTER.
4. Select *5* for Service Setup from the PeopleSoft Server Administration menu.

```
 ------------------------------
PeopleSoft Server Administration
 ------------------------------
  PS_CFG_HOME             C:\Users\JSMITH\psftuser\psft\pt\8.62
  PS_HOME                 C:\psft\pt\ps_home8.62
  PS_APP_HOME             C:\psft\pt\hcm_app_home

  1) Application Server
  2) Process Scheduler
  3) Web (PIA) Server
  4) Switch Config Home
  5) Service Setup
  6) Replicate Config Home
  7) Refresh Config Home
  q) Quit

Command to execute (1-7, q): 6
```

5. Select *1* from the PeopleSoft Services Administration menu.

```
-----------------------------------------
PeopleSoft Services Administration
-----------------------------------------
 1) Configure Windows Service
 2) Install Windows Service
 3) Delete Windows Service
 4) Edit Service Configuration File
 q) Quit

Command to execute (1-4, q) : 1
```

   When asked if you want to change configuration values, enter *y*.

6. Enter the name of the Process Scheduler databases that you intend to include as part of the Windows service.

```
Values for config section - NT Services
```

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

```
  Service Start Delay=60
  Application Server Domains=HRDMO
  Process Scheduler Databases=HRDMO
  Search Server Domains=HRDMO

Do you want to change any values (y/n)? [n]:
```

If you specify more than one Process Scheduler database, separate each entry with a comma.

Note. You can use PSADMIN to set up Process Scheduler Servers, application servers, or search servers as a Windows service. The Windows Service psntsrv.exe automatically starts application servers, Process Scheduler servers, and search servers that reside on the same Microsoft Windows machine. Occasionally, psntsrv.exe would attempt to initiate a connection between an application server, Process Scheduler server, or search server and a database on the same machine that was not ready to receive requests. As a result the connection would fail. When you set up these servers as a Windows Service, you can specify a Service Start Delay, in seconds, that elapses before a service attempts to start any application server domains, Process Scheduler servers, or search servers. This allows the RDBMS to boot and become available to accept requests. The default setting for the Service Start Delay parameter is 60 seconds.

Note. The NT Services section of the PSADMIN modifies the psntsrv.cfg file located in the *PS_CFG_HOME*\appserv directory. You can edit this file manually by selecting *4, Edit Service Configuration File* from the PeopleSoft Services Administration menu. If you edit it, you need to delete and then install the service again.

7. Select option *2* from the PeopleSoft Services Administration menu.

```
 ------------------------------------------
PeopleSoft Services Administration
 ------------------------------------------
   1) Configure Windows Service
   2) Install Windows Service
   3) Delete Windows Service
   4) Edit Service Configuration File
   q) Quit

Command to execute (1-4, q) : 2
```

8. Return to the Control Panel, choose *Administrative Tools,* and launch the Services utility.
9. On the Services dialog, scroll to find the entry that adheres to the following naming convention, and select it:

   ```
   PeopleSoft <PS_CFG_HOME>
   ```

   For example:

   ```
   PeopleSoft C:\Users\JSMITH\psftuser\psft\pt\8.62
   ```

   Note. The default Startup mode is Manual.

10. Click *Startup.*
11. On the Service dialog in the Startup Type group, select *Automatic,* and in the Log On As group, select *Local System Account.* Then click OK.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Note. The *Log On As* setting needs to reflect that which you set for your ORACLE ProcMGR V22.1.0.0.0 and Tlisten processes. Oracle recommends that you set these services to *Local System Account* when you install Tuxedo. The *Log On As* value only affects the application server because Process Scheduler runs independently from Tuxedo. See the chapter "Installing Additional Components" for more information on installing Tuxedo, and refer to the chapter "Configuring the Application Server on Windows" for the details on configuring the application server.

12. On the Services dialog, make sure the PeopleSoft service is selected, and click Start.
13. Use the Process Monitor to verify that the Process Scheduler Server is running. You can also use Task Manager to verify that the executables involved with the service are running.

For the Process Scheduler, make sure that the psprcsrv.exe is running. If you have customized the name of psprcsrv.exe, make sure the appropriate executable is running.

Task 16-6: Configuring the Process Scheduler for Microsoft Word (Optional)

This section discusses:

- Configuring Process Scheduler
- Executing Winword on Mapped Drive

Task 16-6-1: Configuring Process Scheduler

Some applications process documents using Microsoft Word. Here is how to configure Microsoft Word to work with the Process Scheduler.

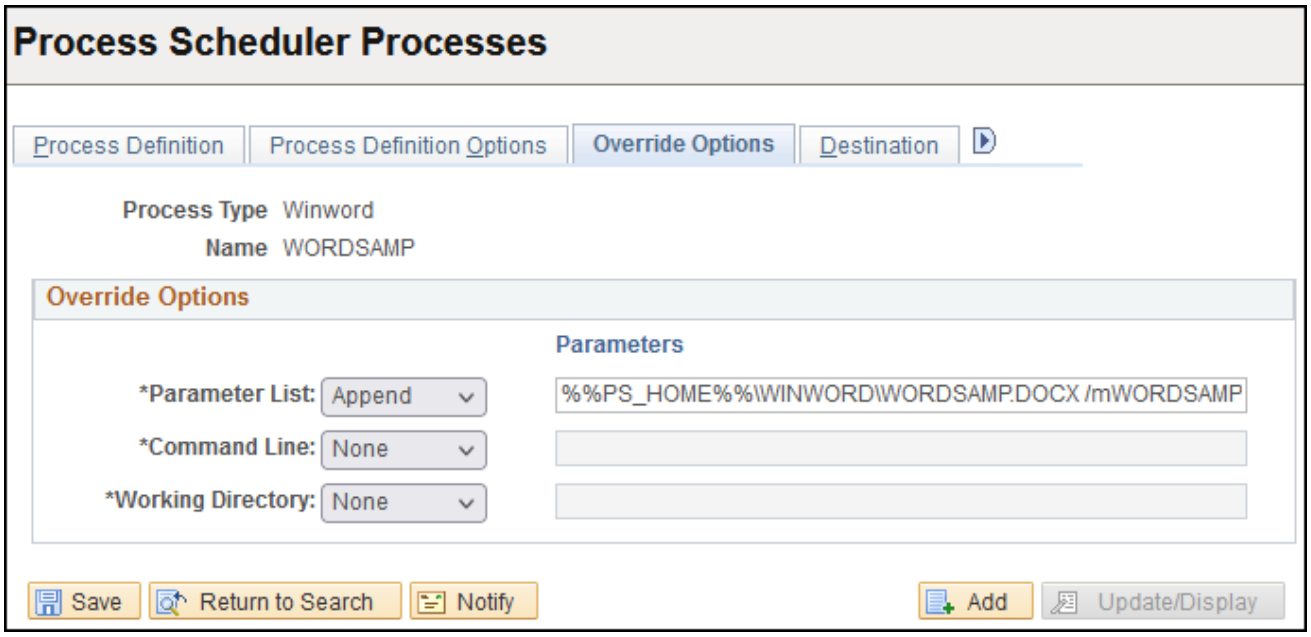
Note. Microsoft Word must already be installed on the server; it is not included with the PeopleSoft PeopleTools install.

To configure Process Scheduler for Microsoft Word:

1. Log in to the PeopleSoft application in a browser and select PeopleTools > Process Scheduler > Process Scheduler Processes.
2. Search for Process Type *Winword* and select a process.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

3. On the Process Definition page, select Override Options, as shown in this example.



Process Definition page: Override Options

4. In the Parameter List field, enter %%PS_HOME%%\WINWORD\WORDSAMP.DOCX/mWORDSAMP and save.
5. Locate the Process Scheduler configuration file psprcs.cfg in *PS_CFG_HOME*\appserv\prcs\<*database_name*> directory and open it for editing.
6. In the [Process Scheduler] section, edit the WINWORD entry so that it points to the directory where winword.exe is installed—for example, "WINWORD=C:\Program Files\Microsoft Office\OFFICE 12" (include the quotes in the entry).
7. If spaces exist in the WINWORD path in the Process Scheduler configuration file (psprcs.cfg), Microsoft Word reports will fail. You will need to modify the Process Type Definition and add quotes around the entry in the Command Line field, for example " %%WINWORD%%\winword.exe".
8. Change the Microsoft Word macro security to allow macros to be run.

   Start Microsoft Word and select Tools, Macro, Security. Select the *Low* security setting and click OK.
9. If you are running on Microsoft Windows, modify your macros to include the following line:

   ```
   Application.AutomationSecurity=msoAutomationSecurityLow
   ```

   You can see an example by viewing the macros in *PS_HOME*\winword\Wordsamp.doc.
10. Make sure that all the servers (that is, Application Server and Process Scheduler servers) are running in the context of the logged-in user, as WinWord is executed in the same context.

Task 16-6-2: Executing Winword on Mapped Drive

If you encounter a problem in executing the WinWord process on a mapped drive, there are a couple of solutions to try. If the first solution does not work, try the second one. Try the following workaround suggestions in the order given.

To perform the first workaround:

1. Copy the file WORDSAMP.dotm from *PS_HOME*\WINWORD\.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

2. Locate the WinWord templates folder and place the file WORDSAMP.dotm there.

   In general, you can find the templates folder under the logged-in user's directory. For example, for user psftuser, this would be:

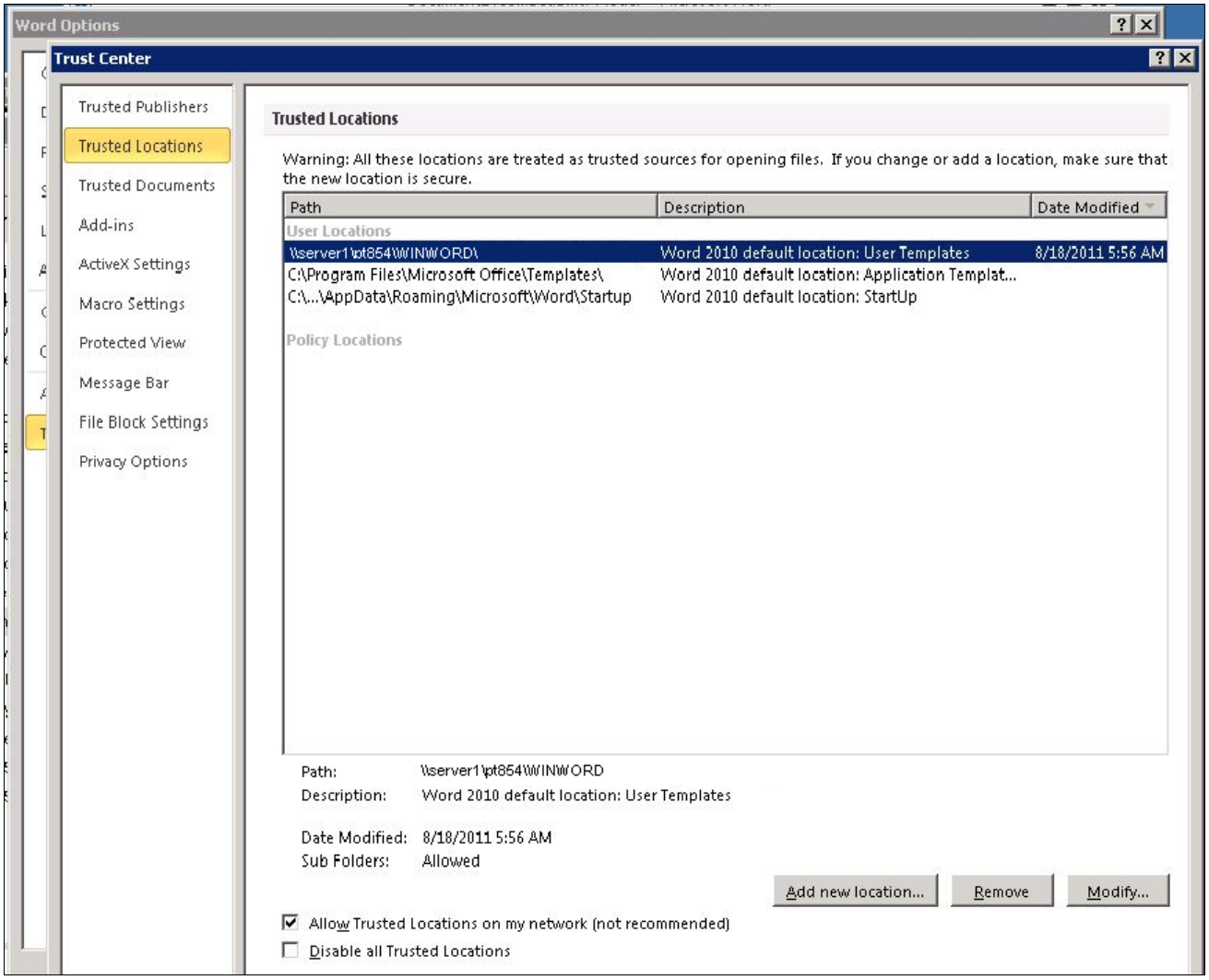
   C:\Users\psftuser\Microsoft\Templates
3. Open the WinWord.docx file under *PS_HOME*\WINWORD folder and verify macro is present.
4. Sign in to the PeopleSoft application to execute the WinWord process and verify its status in Process Monitor.

To perform the second workaround:

1. In Microsoft Word, click the Microsoft Office button, and click Word Options.
2. Select Trust Center, and then click Trust Center Settings, Trusted Locations.
3. Select the check box for Allow Trusted Locations on my network, and clear the check box Disable all Trusted Locations.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

4. Create a new trusted location with path pointing to the *PS_HOME*\WINWORD folder on your mapped drive. In this example, the trusted location is \\server1\pt854\WINWORD:



Microsoft Word Trusted Locations window

Task 16-7: Installing Products for PS/nVision

This section discusses:

- Understanding the PS/nVision Setup
- Installing Products for PS/nVision in Excel Automation Mode

Understanding the PS/nVision Setup

PS/nVision can operate in the following three modes for PS/nVision:

- OpenXML mode

  OpenXML is the default mode for PeopleSoft PeopleTools.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Excel automation mode
- Cross-platform mode

The different modes of executing PS/nVision are enabled by setting the UseExcelAutomation parameter in the Process Scheduler configuration file (psprcs.cfg) as follows:

- 0 - OpenXML mode
- 1 - Excel Automation mode
- 2 - Cross Platform mode

See Also

PeopleTools: PS/nVision

PeopleTools: Process Scheduler

Task 16-7-1: Installing Products for PS/nVision in Excel Automation Mode

To set up PS/nVision in Excel automation mode:

- For all batch servers, install 64-bit Microsoft Excel on the batch server.

  See My Oracle Support, Certifications, for PeopleSoft PeopleTools, to find the versions of Microsoft Excel that are supported for the current release.

  Note. The 32-bit version of Microsoft Excel should not be installed on the machine where PS/nVision needs to run in Excel Automation Mode, as that would cause issues with running PS/nVision with 64-bit Microsoft Excel.

- If the batch server is on a 64–bit Microsoft Windows machine, create an empty "Desktop" folder with this path:

  C:\Windows\System32\config\systemprofile\Desktop

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 17

Installing PeopleSoft Change Assistant

This chapter discusses:

- Understanding PeopleSoft Change Assistant
- Using the Change Assistant Setup Script to Install, Upgrade, or Uninstall
- Configuring and Using PeopleSoft Change Assistant
- Validating Change Assistant Settings

Understanding PeopleSoft Change Assistant

Oracle's PeopleSoft Change Assistant is a standalone tool, provided with PeopleSoft PeopleTools, that enables you to assemble and organize the steps necessary to apply patches and fixes for maintenance updates as well as perform PeopleSoft upgrades. You use different modes of Change Assistant to carry out maintenance both for PeopleSoft applications using the PeopleSoft Update Manager, and those using the classic patching method.

To take advantage of all of the Change Assistant features, you must install on a Microsoft Windows-based operating system. On Linux, you can use a command-line version of Change Assistant, and run in Update Manager mode only.

When you run the setup script for the PeopleTools Client DPK, you can choose to install Change Assistant as part of the client installation. If you need to install, upgrade, or remove Change Assistant independently of the PeopleTools Client DPK deployment, use the instructions in this chapter.

See "Deploying the PeopleTools Client DPK."

For the current PeopleSoft PeopleTools release, the Change Assistant installation includes the following features:

- You can run the setup.bat script located in *PS_HOME*\setup\PsCA to install, update, or remove Change Assistant.

  The *PS_HOME*/setup/PsCA directory includes setup.bat and a sample response file, resp_file.txt. The *PS_HOME*/setup/PsCA folder is available in both the PeopleTools Client DPK deployment and PeopleTools DPK server deployments.

  Note. The *PS_HOME*\setup\PsCA directory includes scripts and files that are reserved for use by the software. You can ignore these files, including silentInstall.bat and CA-silentInstall-response-file.txt.

- You must run from *PS_HOME*/setup/PsCA.

  Do not copy the PsCA folder alone to another location and try to install.

- You can specify the installation location on the command line, in response to the script prompts, or in a text file.

  If you do not supply the installation location, the script prompts you for the necessary information. To upgrade or remove an existing installation, you run the script with no options, and the script prompts you for the necessary information.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- You can install multiple instances of Change Assistant from the current release on one physical machine.

  Note. Multiple instances of Change Assistant can run in parallel on the same machine. However, when configuring Change Assistant, for example to set up update or upgrade jobs, you cannot run multiple instances against the same target database. That is, you cannot specify the same target database on different Change Assistant instances.

  See *PeopleTools: Change Assistant and Update Manager,* "Running Multiple Instances of Change Assistant."

- You must remove installations of Change Assistant from PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.55 or earlier before installing from the current release. Change Assistant from PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.62 cannot coexist with that from earlier releases.
- You must install each Change Assistant instance in a separate installation location.
- You can remove or upgrade each Change Assistant instance separately.
- When you remove an installation instance, you have the option to save the existing configuration information in a group of files gathered in a zip archive. You can configure Change Assistant at a later time by importing the zip file.

For more information on using Change Assistant for updates and for software upgrades, see the PeopleSoft product documentation.

See Also

PeopleTools: Change Assistant and Update Manager

PeopleTools: Application Designer Lifecycle Management Guide

Task 17-1: Using the Change Assistant Setup Script to Install, Upgrade, or Uninstall

This section discusses:

- Running the Change Assistant Setup Script with Command-Line Parameters
- Running the Change Assistant Setup Script with a Response File
- Running the Change Assistant Setup Script Interactively to Install
- Running the Change Assistant Setup Script Interactively to Upgrade
- Running the Change Assistant Setup Script Interactively to Uninstall

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Task 17-1-1: Running the Change Assistant Setup Script with Command-Line Parameters

You can use the following command-line parameters with the Change Assistant setup script.

Command-line Parameter	Description
`-p <installation_path>`	Supply the full path for the Change Assistant installation location. If the location includes spaces, surround it with double quotes, such as "C:\PS\Change Assistant".
`-t <action_type>`	Use one of the following value for <action_type>. • NEW or new Create a new Change Assistant instance. • UPGRADE or upgrade Upgrade an existing instance that was installed from the current PeopleSoft PeopleTools release. • UNINSTALL or uninstall Remove an existing Change Assistant instance.
`-bkp <backup or no backup>`	Use one of these values: • BACKUP or backup Create a zip file containing files with configuration information. The backup file, changeassistantcfgbak.zip, is saved in the installation location. • NOBACKUP or nobackup Do not create a backup file with the configuration information.
`-lp <log_file_location>`	Specify the full path where you want the log file to be saved.

To use the Change Assistant setup script with command-line options:

1. Open a command prompt and change directory to *PS_HOME*\setup\PsCA.
2. Enter the following command to specify the installation location for a new installation.

   For <installation_path>, supply the full path to the location where you want to install Change Assistant.

   ```
   setup.bat -p <installation_path> -t new
   ```

   For example:

   ```
   setup.bat -p "C:\PS\Change Assistant" -t new
   ```

3. If you want to specify the installation location and a location for the log file, enter the following command.

   For <installation_path>, supply the full path to the location where you want to install Change Assistant. For <log_file_location>, supply the full path to the location for the installation log file.

   ```
   setup.bat -p <installation_path> -lp <log_file_location> -t new
   ```

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

4. If you want to upgrade an existing installation, enter the following command:

   ```
   setup.bat -t upgrade
   ```

5. If you want to remove an existing installation, and save a backup, enter the following command:

   ```
   setup.bat -t uninstall -bkp backup
   ```

Task 17-1-2: Running the Change Assistant Setup Script with a Response File

To use the Change Assistant setup script with the installation location in a text file:

1. Open the sample response file *PS_HOME*\setup\PsCA\resp_file.txt for editing, for example in Notepad.
2. Modify the parameter `INSTALL_PATH="C:\PS\Change Assistant"` to specify the desired installation path.

   If the installation location includes spaces, enclose it in double quotes. Save the file.
3. Open a command prompt and change directory to *PS_HOME*\setup\PsCA.
4. Run this command:

   ```
   setup.bat -f resp_file.txt
   ```

Task 17-1-3: Running the Change Assistant Setup Script Interactively to Install

To use the Change Assistant setup script interactively, run without supplying parameters.

1. Open a command prompt and change directory to *PS_HOME*\setup\PsCA.
2. Run the script with no parameters.

   ```
   setup.bat
   ```

   The script checks for a response file and old installations, then prompts you for the necessary information.
3. Enter *1* for New Installation:

   ```
   -------------------------------
   PeopleSoft Change Assistant
   -------------------------------
     1) New Installation
     2) Maintain or Update
     q) Quit
   Command to execute (1-2, q):1
   ```

4. Enter an installation location, or accept the default, C:\PS\Change Assistant.

   ```
   PeopleSoft will install Change Assistant to the following directory .
   Destination Folder [C:\PS\Change Assistant] :
   ```

5. Wait until the script completes.

   ```
   PeopleSoft Change Assistant Successfully Installed in  C:\PS\Change⇒
    Assistant
   ```


Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Task 17-1-4: Running the Change Assistant Setup Script Interactively to Upgrade

Run the setup script with no parameters to upgrade an existing Change Assistant installation. You can only upgrade an existing Change Assistant instance that was installed from the same, current PeopleTools release. For example, upgrade Change Assistant based on PeopleTools 8.62.09 to Change Assistant based on PeopleTools 8.62.12.

1. Open a command prompt, and change directory to *PS_HOME*\setup\PsCA.
2. Run the script with no parameters:

```
setup.bat
```

3. Enter *2* for Maintain or Update.

```
-------------------------------
PeopleSoft Change Assistant
-------------------------------
  1) New Installation
  2) Maintain or Update
  q) Quit
Command to execute (1-2, q):2
```

4. Select the instance of Change Assistant to update.

```
Please select the instance of Change Assistant :
1) Change Assistant  1 8.62.03 C:\Program Files\Change Assistant 2
2) Change Assistant  2 8.62.04 C:\Program Files\PeopleSoft\Change⇒
 Assistant
3) Change Assistant  3 8.62.09 C:\PS\Change Assistant

q)Quit
Command to execute (1-3, q): 3
Selected
Change Assistant  3 8.62.09 C:\PS\Change Assistant
```

5. Enter *1* to update to the current PeopleTools patch release.

```
Please select the activity :
1) Upgrade Selected Instance
2) Uninstall Selected Instance
q)Quit
Command to execute (1-3, q):1
Selected
Change Assistant  3 8.62.09 C:\PS\Change Assistant
```

6. Enter 1 to upgrade without saving a configuration file.

   Alternatively, if you want to retain a configuration file, enter 2 to create a zip file containing files with configuration information. The backup file, changeassistantcfgbak.zip, is saved in the installation location.

```
Please select the activity :
1)Without Retaining existing configuration
2)Retaining existing configuration
q)Quit
Command to execute (1-3, q):1
```

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Task 17-1-5: Running the Change Assistant Setup Script Interactively to Uninstall

Run the setup script with no parameters to remove an existing Change Assistant installation.

1. Open a command prompt, and change directory to *PS_HOME*\setup\PsCA.
2. Run the script with no parameters:

```
setup.bat
```

3. Enter *2* for Maintain or Update.

```
-------------------------------
PeopleSoft Change Assistant
-------------------------------
  1) New Installation
  2) Maintain or Update
  q) Quit
Command to execute (1-2, q):2
```

4. Select the instance of Change Assistant to remove.

```
Please select the instance of Change Assistant :
1) Change Assistant  1 8.62.03 C:\Program Files\Change Assistant 2
2) Change Assistant  2 8.62.04 C:\Program Files\PeopleSoft\Change⇒
 Assistant
3) Change Assistant  3 8.62.12 C:\PS\Change Assistant

q)Quit
Command to execute (1-3, q): 2
Selected
Change Assistant  3 8.62.04 C:\PS\Change Assistant
```

5. Enter *2* to remove the selected instance.

```
Please select the activity :
1) Upgrade Selected Instance
2) Uninstall Selected Instance
q)Quit
Command to execute (1-3, q):2
Selected
Change Assistant  3 8.62.04 C:\PS\Change Assistant
```

6. Enter *1* to uninstall without saving a configuration file.

   Alternatively, if you want to retain a configuration file, enter *2* to create a zip file containing files with configuration information. The backup file, changeassistantcfgbak.zip, is saved in the installation location.

```
Please select the activity :
1)Without Retaining existing configuration
2)Retaining existing configuration
q)Quit
Command to execute (1-3, q):1
```


Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Task 17-2: Configuring and Using PeopleSoft Change Assistant

This section discusses:

- Verifying the Path Variable
- Specifying Options
- Scanning the Workstation
- Exporting Jobs to XML, HTML, or Microsoft Excel Format

Task 17-2-1: Verifying the Path Variable

After installing PeopleSoft Change Assistant, verify that the following values are the first entries in the PATH environment variable:

- *PS_HOME*\bin\client\winx86
- *PS_HOME*\jre\bin

See *PeopleTools: Change Assistant and Update Manager,* "Setting Up Change Assistant."

Task 17-2-2: Specifying Options

You can configure PeopleSoft Change Assistant modes to carry out updates, upgrades, work with upgrade templates, or access PeopleSoft Update Manager. The mode selection determines which menu options you see when you use PeopleSoft Change Assistant.

See Also

PeopleTools: Change Assistant and Update Manager

PeopleSoft Update Manager (PUM) Home Page, My Oracle Support, Doc ID 1641843.2

Task 17-2-3: Scanning the Workstation

The first time you use PeopleSoft Change Assistant, it automatically scans your workstation for applications that it will use in order to automate the steps. For example, it automatically finds the SQL Query tool and uses it to run SQL commands or scripts.

If you add a new application or update an existing application, PeopleSoft Change Assistant must perform a scan of the system in order to discover the changes. To perform this scan, select Tools, Scan Configuration.

Task 17-2-4: Exporting Jobs to XML, HTML, or Microsoft Excel Format

Change Assistant allows users to export jobs to XML, HTML, or Microsoft Excel file formats. Do this by selecting File, Export Job in Change Assistant. Then, enter the desired exported filename and select the desired file type format.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Task 17-3: Validating Change Assistant Settings

After you have set up and configured PeopleSoft Change Assistant and the Environment Management components, you should validate your PeopleSoft Change Assistant and environment settings.

PeopleSoft Change Assistant validates settings by:

- Locating valid SQL query tools required to run SQL scripts.
- Testing the Environment Management hub and ensuring that PeopleSoft Change Assistant can communicate with it.
- Testing My Oracle Support and ensuring that PeopleSoft Change Assistant can communicate with it.

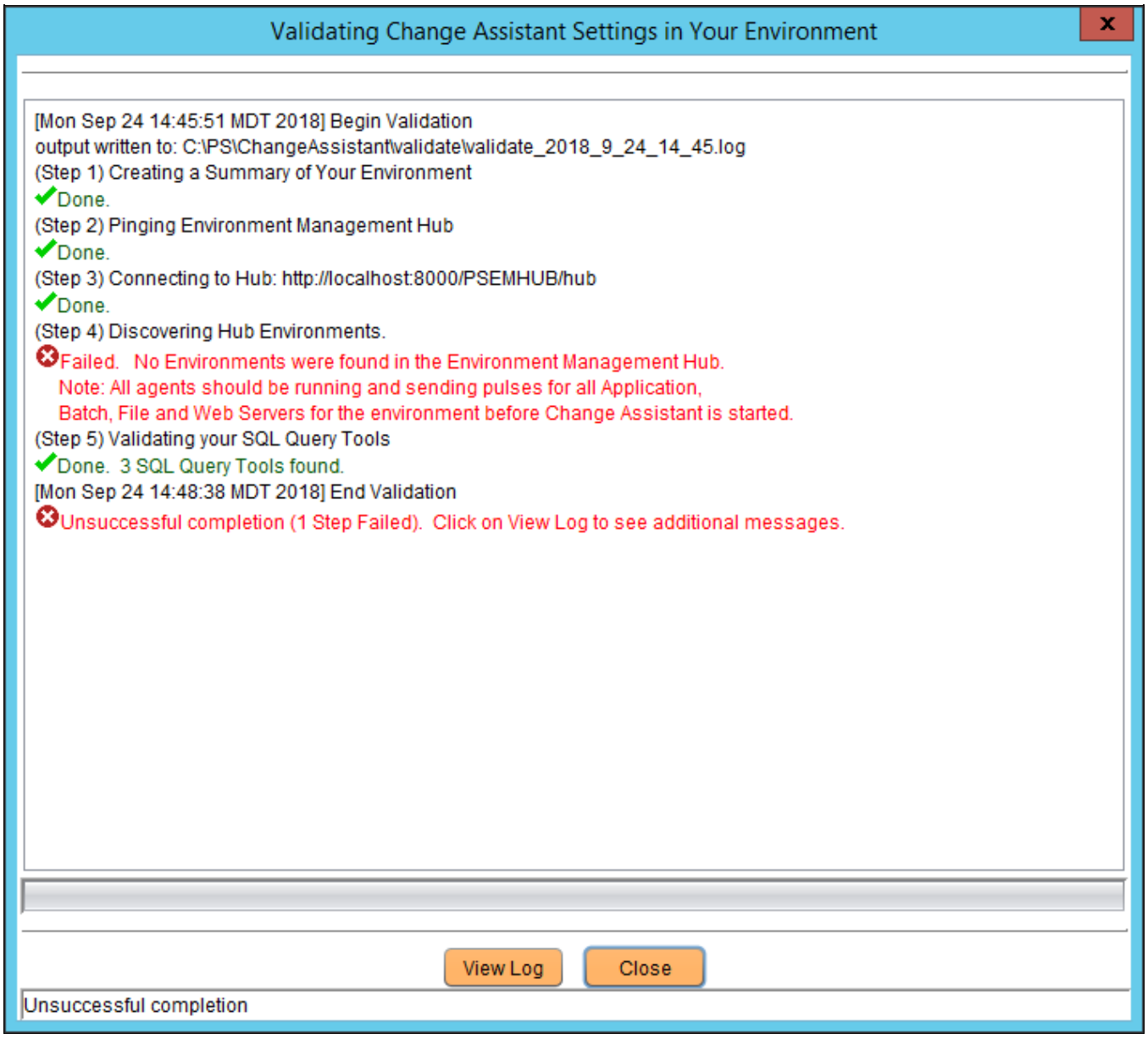
  PeopleSoft Change Assistant sends a ping to My Oracle Support and then tests the connection. In order for the validation to succeed, the machine where you have PeopleSoft Change Assistant installed must have the ping feature enabled.

You can also print a summary of your environment, which can facilitate the diagnosis of problems by Oracle Software Support.

To validate your environment, select Tools, Options, Validate. Click Start Validation.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

If any of the steps were unable to complete successfully, open the log file to determine the cause. This example shows a summary with both successful messages ("Done") and unsuccessful ("Failed" or "Unsuccessful completion"):

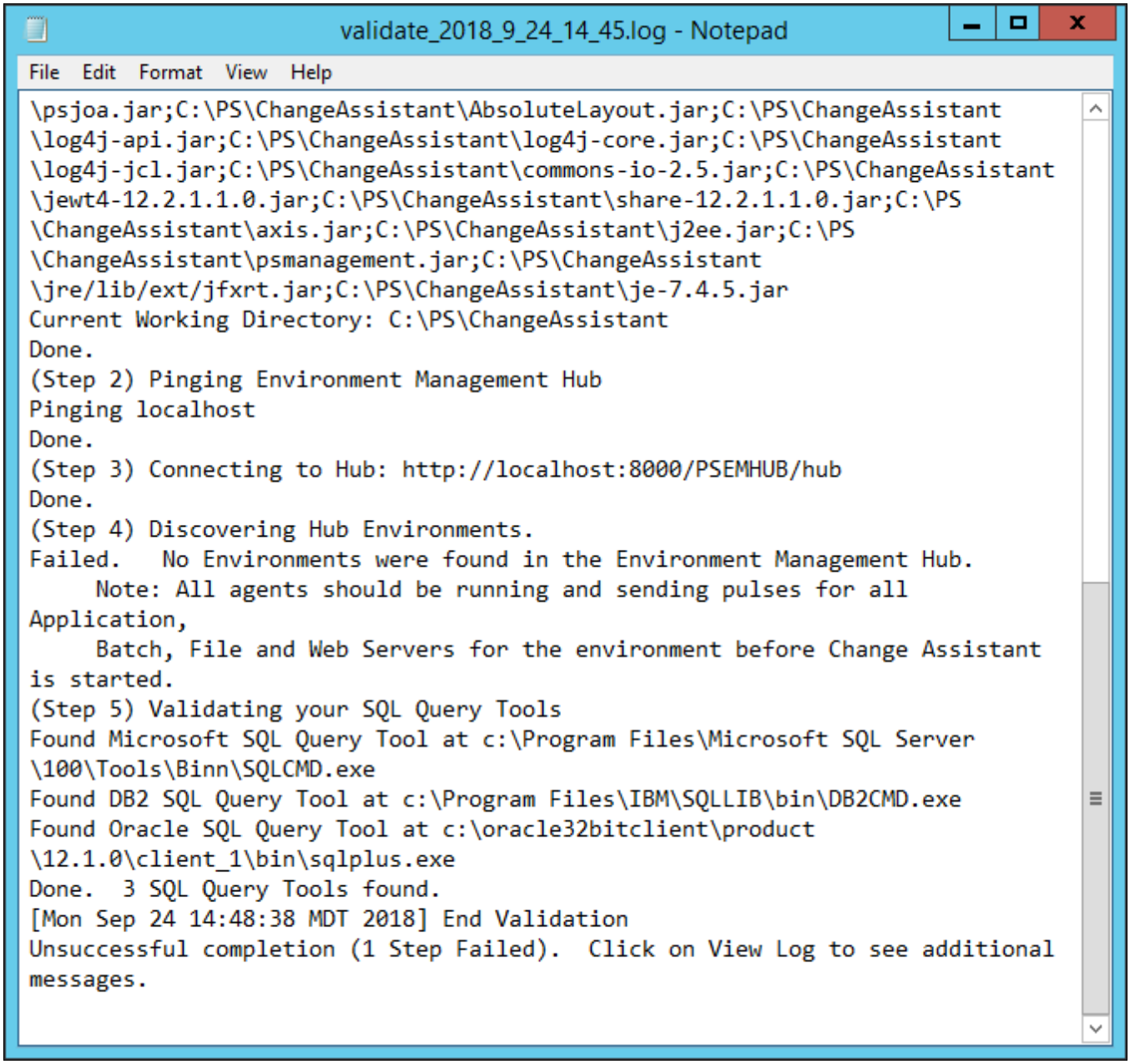


Validating Change Assistant Settings in Your Environment

Note. If you use proxy servers, the system will ping those and prompt for proxy server user ID and password. In this case, the validation step numbers would be different from the example.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

To review the log file, click the View Log button at the bottom of the screen. This example shows the first several lines of a log file:



Change Assistant Validation log

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 18

Installing PeopleSoft Change Impact Analyzer

This chapter discusses:

- Understanding PeopleSoft Change Impact Analyzer
- Using the PeopleSoft Change Impact Analyzer Script to Install or Uninstall

Understanding PeopleSoft Change Impact Analyzer

Oracle's PeopleSoft Change Impact Analyzer is a tool you can use to evaluate the effect of changes you make on your installation. PeopleSoft Change Impact Analyzer can help you monitor the impact a Change Package has on your system, as well as monitor the impact from other changes such as customizations.

Ensure that your system meets the following requirements before you begin this installation:

- PeopleSoft Change Impact Analyzer runs on Microsoft Windows platforms. For database platforms that do not run on Microsoft Windows, install PeopleSoft Change Impact Analyzer on the Windows client.
- When you run the setup script for the PeopleTools Client DPK, you can choose to install PeopleSoft Change Impact Analyzer as part of the client installation. If you need to install, upgrade, or remove Change Assistant independently of the PeopleTools Client DPK deployment, use the instructions in this chapter.

  See "Deploying the PeopleTools Client DPK."
- You can run the setup.bat script located in *PS_HOME*\setup\PsCIA to install or remove Change Impact Analyzer.

  The *PS_HOME*/setup/PsCIA directory includes setup.bat and a sample response file, resp_file.txt. You modify the response file to correspond to your installation requirement.

  The *PS_HOME*/setup/PsCIA folder is available in both the PeopleTools Client DPK deployment and PeopleTools DPK server deployments.

  Note. The *PS_HOME*\setup\PsCIA directory includes scripts and files that are reserved for use by the software. You can ignore these files, including silentInstall.bat and CIA-silentInstall-response-file.txt.

- These instructions assume you have installed PeopleSoft PeopleTools on the machine on which you want to run PeopleSoft Change Impact Analyzer, and have completed the PeopleSoft Change Assistant installation.
- You must install JDBC drivers for connectivity to your database platform. PeopleSoft Change Impact Analyzer uses Type 4 JDBC drivers by default.

  You can normally obtain JDBC drivers from your RDBMS vendor. Search the vendor's web site or contact the vendor for information.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

See Also

PeopleTools: Change Impact Analyzer

Task 18-1: Using the PeopleSoft Change Impact Analyzer Script to Install or Uninstall

This section discusses:

- Installing PeopleSoft Change Impact Analyzer
- Removing PeopleSoft Change Impact Analyzer

Task 18-1-1: Installing PeopleSoft Change Impact Analyzer

To install, edit the response text file and then run the Change Impact Analyzer setup script.

1. Open the file *PS_HOME*\setup\PsCIA\resp_file.txt for editing, for example in Notepad.
2. Modify the following items, and then save the file.
   - Installation location

     The default location is C:\Program Files\PeopleSoft\Change Impact Analyzer. You can install to any location.

     ```
     INSTALL_PATH="C:\Program Files\PeopleSoft\Change Impact Analyzer"
     ```

   - JDBC driver type

     Specify MSS for Microsoft SQL Server.

     ```
     JDBC_TYPE=MSS
     ```

   - Path to JDBC driver

     Enter the full path to the JDBC driver.

     ```
     DB_PATH=C:\jdbc_drivers
     ```

3. In a command prompt, go to *PS_HOME*\setup\PsCIA and run the following command.

   ```
   setup.bat -f resp_file.txt
   ```

Task 18-1-2: Removing PeopleSoft Change Impact Analyzer

To remove an existing installation of PeopleSoft Change Impact Analyzer::

1. Open a command prompt and change directory to *PS_HOME*\setup\PsCIA.
2. Enter the following command:

   ```
   setup.bat -u U
   ```

Note. You may need to remove the Change Impact Analyzer shortcut on your desktop manually.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 19

Adding New Product Modules

Task 19-1: Adding New Modules to PeopleSoft Installations

This task explains how to add new application modules to an existing PeopleSoft installation. Follow this procedure if, for example, you already installed HCM Benefits Administration and now you need to install Pension Administration.

When you add new application modules to an existing installation, you may overwrite files that were included as part of a patch or fixes, or customizations that you applied. For example, suppose you customize a report that is updated in a subsequent PeopleSoft release. If you install the update into your current working directory, your customized report will be overwritten with the newly installed, updated report.

The PeopleSoft system does not currently provide an automated way to notify you before overwriting customized modules or patch files. You can make preparations to protect important files from being overwritten. For your customized modules, you need to maintain a backup of any customizations. It is also a good idea to make a copy of your *PS_HOME* directory before beginning this process, so that you can find and restore necessary patch files. Check My Oracle Support to identify any patches or fixes required for your installation.

See My Oracle Support, Patches & Updates.

To add new module(s) to PeopleSoft installations:

1. Back up the database, file server, application server, Process Scheduler Server, and web server components of your current system.
2. Install the PeopleSoft Application software on the file server.
3. Launch Data Mover in bootstrap mode by logging on with the access ID and password.

   Data Mover is located in *PS_HOME*\bin\client\winx86\psdmt.exe.

   See Checking the Log Files and Troubleshooting, Running Data Mover, in the chapters on creating a database.
4. Select File, Database Setup and choose your database type in the resulting dialog.
5. Select Next and select add new product.
6. Select Finish and a Data Mover script will be generated in Data Mover.
7. Select File, Run script and your database updates are complete.
8. Install software to your batch server.

   See the chapters on setting up Process Scheduler in this documentation.
9. Reapply all code customizations if needed.

   Note. Remember to maintain backup copies of your customizations.
10. Compile and link COBOL.

    See the chapters on installing and compiling COBOL in this documentation.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

11. Verify that the appropriate Installation Records are selected.

    If they are not checked, check them and save the page. To open the page, select Set Up <*apptype*>, Install, Installation Options, where <*apptype*> is CRM, Financials/Supply Chain Management, and so on. For example, Set Up CRM, Install, Installation Options. (For HCM the navigation is Set Up HCM, Install, Installation Table.)

12. Run the dddaudit and sysaudit SQR reports.

    If you are swapping the base language, also run swpaudit.sqr.

    See "Completing the Database Setup," Checking the Database.

13. Shut down all application servers.
14. Install software to your application server.

    See the chapters on configuring the Application Server in this documentation.

15. Restart all required application servers.
16. Shut down all web servers.
17. Install software to your web server.

    See the chapters on setting up the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture in this documentation.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 20

Using PeopleSoft Online Help

This chapter discusses:

- Understanding PeopleSoft Online Help (PeopleBooks)
- Installing PeopleSoft Online Help Locally

Understanding PeopleSoft Online Help (PeopleBooks)

The documentation for PeopleSoft PeopleTools and PeopleSoft software applications, formerly known as PeopleBooks, is now available in a dynamic, interactive, accessible HTML version, the hosted PeopleSoft Online Help Web site. The PeopleSoft Online Help documentation that is accessed with the Help link in the PeopleSoft navigation bar, and the Oracle's PeopleSoft Online Help on the Oracle Help Center, are developed for advanced users, administrators, and implementers of the application. End users should utilize embedded help for more specific help assistance.

PeopleSoft software applications will include translated embedded help. PeopleSoft documentation aligns with the other Oracle applications in focusing on embedded help. We offer very direct translated help at crucial spots within our application through our embedded help widgets. Additionally, we have a one-to-one mapping of application and help translations. This means that the software and embedded help translation footprint are identical, something we were never able to accomplish in the past.

The PeopleSoft Online Help is delivered for on-premises installations of PeopleSoft PeopleTools and every PeopleSoft application. You have several options for deploying PeopleSoft Online Help to benefit your organization.

- *Hosted PeopleSoft Online Help:* Use PeopleSoft Online Help over the Internet with the hosted content on the hosted PeopleSoft Online Help.

  You can access the PeopleSoft online help from the PeopleSoft area on Oracle Help Center. Select PeopleTools or your PeopleSoft application from the menu on the left. Select your PeopleTools release or PeopleSoft application update image, and locate the section Online Help and PeopleBooks.

  See Oracle Help Center, PeopleSoft, https://docs.oracle.com/en/applications/peoplesoft/index.html.

- *Context-sensitive help:* Configure PeopleSoft PeopleTools to call PeopleSoft Online Help as context-sensitive help from both Internet applications (that is, accessing PIA in a browser) and Microsoft Windows-based programs. For instance, when a user clicks the Help link in a browser or presses F1 in Windows, the appropriate documentation appears. You can set up context-sensitive help for both local installations and to access the hosted content on the PeopleSoft Online Help Web site.

  Note. The F1 button accesses PeopleSoft Online Help only for the PeopleTools Development Environment (the Windows-based client). If you press F1 while using the portal, you invoke the help for your current browser. For context-sensitive help in the portal, users need to click the Help link to call PeopleSoft Online Help.

  In the PeopleSoft Hosted Online Help, select the link *About This Help* from the navigation pane on the left to

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

find information on configuring context-sensitive help.

- *PDF format*: You can download a PDF version of PeopleSoft Online Help, organized in the traditional PeopleBooks format, from the PeopleSoft area on the Oracle Help Center.

  Select PeopleTools or your PeopleSoft application from the menu on the left. Select your PeopleTools release or PeopleSoft application update image, and locate the section Online Help and PeopleBooks.

  See Oracle Help Center, PeopleSoft, https://docs.oracle.com/en/applications/peoplesoft/index.html.
- *Local installation*: For on-premises environments, use the instructions in this section to install and configure PeopleSoft Online Help so you can deploy the documentation at your site. You can also install a search utility for full-text search.

  See Installing PeopleSoft Online Help Locally.

See Also

PeopleTools: Applications User's Guide, "Accessing Embedded Help"

About This Help, PeopleSoft Hosted Online Help, https://docs.oracle.com/en/applications/peoplesoft/index.html

Task 20-1: Installing PeopleSoft Online Help Locally

This section discusses:

- Understanding the PeopleSoft Online Help Local Installation
- Prerequisites
- Obtaining the PeopleSoft Documentation Files from Oracle Software Delivery Cloud
- Installing the PeopleSoft Online Help on a Web Server
- Installing the PeopleSoft Online Help and the Search Utility
- Removing the PeopleSoft Online Help Deployment
- Setting Up Help for Multiple Product Lines on the Same Machine

Understanding the PeopleSoft Online Help Local Installation

This section explains using the installation files for PeopleSoft Online Help and the search utility for a local installation. You can install the online help with an Oracle WebLogic web server to view the web site. You can also install a search utility based on OpenSearch, which enables full-text search.

Prerequisites

Before installing the PeopleSoft online help:

- Obtain the installation file for the PeopleSoft Online Help from Oracle Software Delivery Cloud, as described in the next section.
- Install a supported web server and verify that it is up and running.

  This task describes the steps for Oracle WebLogic on Microsoft Windows. Determine the URL, user name, and password for the Oracle WebLogic Remote Console.

  You can find instructions for installing Oracle WebLogic elsewhere in "Installing Web Server Products."

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Note. If you install Oracle WebLogic as part of the PeopleSoft DPK deployment, you can find the port number (pia_http_port) and user name (webserver_admin_user) in the psft_configuration.yaml file. In this case, the default port is 8000 and the default name is system. You supply the password during the deployment.

- You have the option of using the search utility documented here to set up the PeopleSoft Online Help for full-text search.

  The "Search Utility for locally installed PeopleSoft Documentation" contains a customized version of OpenSearch for PeopleSoft Online Help that is independent of the OpenSearch that is used for the PeopleSoft search framework. The search utility is available on Oracle Software Delivery Cloud in the same delivery package as the PeopleSoft online help documentation. The downloaded zip file includes a text file with instructions.

  Note. For the sake of brevity, this task refers to the "Search Utility for locally installed PeopleSoft Documentation" as the "search utility."

- The PeopleSoft Online Help installation requires Java 11.

Task 20-1-1: Obtaining the PeopleSoft Documentation Files from Oracle Software Delivery Cloud

To obtain files for the PeopleSoft Online Help installation:

1. Sign in to Oracle Software Delivery Cloud.

   See Oracle Software Delivery Cloud, https://edelivery.oracle.com.
2. Search for the current PeopleSoft PeopleTools release.
3. In the search results, locate the PeopleSoft PeopleTools download package (DLP), and click it to add it to your download queue.
4. If you want to obtain the PeopleSoft Online Help installation files for a PeopleSoft application, search for the name of a specific PeopleSoft application product, and locate the download package.

   For example, for PeopleSoft Human Capital Management, enter and select PeopleSoft Enterprise Human Resources. For PeopleSoft Financials and Supply Chain Management, enter and select PeopleSoft Enterprise Financials.
5. Click Continue.
6. On the page listing your selections, locate and select the PeopleSoft PeopleTools or PeopleSoft application documentation files.

   Clear the check boxes for any software you do not want.
7. Read the license agreement, select the check box to acknowledge that you accept the agreement, and then click Continue.
8. On the file download window, select the links for the online help zip file and the search utility.
9. Download the zip files into a convenient local directory.

Task 20-1-2: Installing the PeopleSoft Online Help on a Web Server

After you download the online help installation files, use these steps to view the PeopleSoft Online Help web site on your local system. If you want to set up the help with full-text search, skip this section and go to the section, Installing the PeopleSoft Online Help and the Search Utility.

To install the PeopleSoft Online Help with web server software:

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

1. Go to the directory where you downloaded the PeopleSoft Online Help installation zip file.
2. Extract the contents of the zip file.

   The zip file contains a folder with a name based on the product line and release, such as pt862pbr2. The folder includes the following:

   - buildindex.bat — batch file used on Microsoft Windows to create a context-sensitive help index for the online help for several products
   - buildindex.sh — shell script file used on UNIX and Linux to create a context-sensitive help index for the online help for several products
   - online-help.zip — the PeopleSoft Online Help content files
   - psHelpIndexBuilder.jar — jar file that is invoked by buildindex.bat or buildindex.sh to generate a context-sensitive help index
   - README.txt
3. Extract the contents of the online-help.zip file to your web server root.

   The zip file includes a folder with the same name as that of the initial extracted file, such as pt862pbr2, which is referred to here as the *docroot*.

   For example, if you installed the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture (PIA) to <*PIA_HOME*>, with PIA domain name <*domain_name*>, the web server root directory is:

   <*PIA_HOME*>/webserv/<*domain_name*>/applications/peoplesoft/PORTAL.war
4. To view PeopleSoft Online Help, open a browser and enter a URL with the following format:

   http://<*weblogic_server*>:<*weblogic_port*>/<*docroot*>/eng/<*product_line*>/index.html.

   For example:

   http://server.example.com:8000/pt862pbr2/eng/pt/index.html

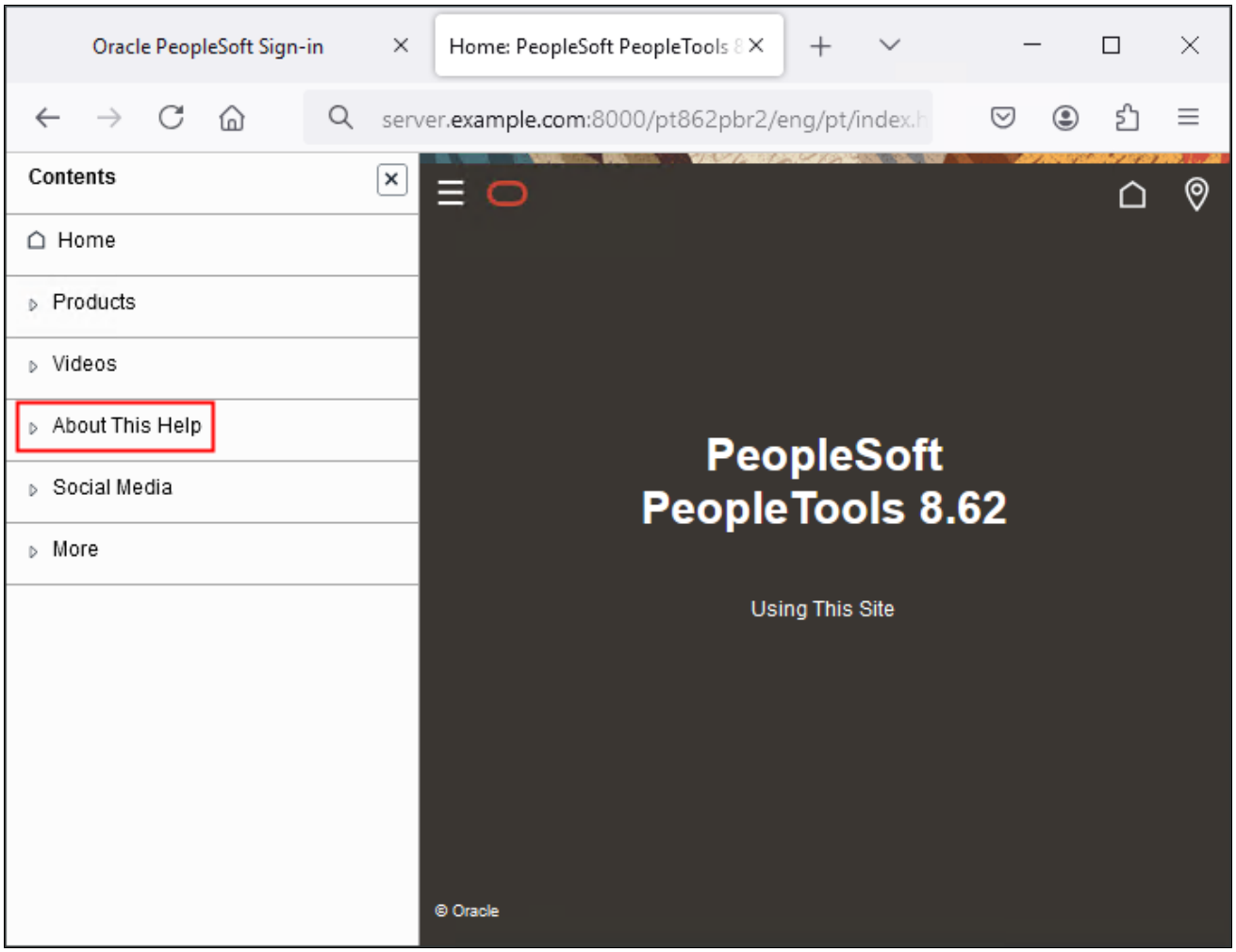
   The URL is comprised of these components:

   - <*weblogic_server*> — the fully-qualified machine name for the Oracle WebLogic server
   - <*weblogic_port*> — the port for the web root server
   - <*docroot*> — the extracted PeopleSoft Online Help contents folder
   - <*product_line*> — an abbreviation for the product line, such as pt for PeopleSoft PeopleTools or hcm for PeopleSoft Human Capital Management

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

5. For information on the file structure of the downloaded online help and using the buildindex scripts, see About This Help.

   From the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Online Help site, select About This Help from the Contents frame, and review the information on managing locally installed PeopleSoft Online Help.



PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.62 Online Help home page

Task 20-1-3: Installing the PeopleSoft Online Help and the Search Utility

Setting Up the Search Utility

After you download the online help installation files and the search utility, use these steps to set up the PeopleSoft Online Help web site with the search utility. This task uses the PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.62 online help as an example.

1. Go to the folder where you downloaded the PeopleSoft Online Help installation zip file.
2. Extract the contents of the zip file.

   The zip file contains a folder with a name based on the product line and release, such as pt862pbr2. The folder includes the following:

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- buildindex.bat — batch file used on Microsoft Windows to create a context-sensitive help index for the online help for several products
- buildindex.sh — shell script file used on UNIX and Linux to create a context-sensitive help index for the online help for several products
- online-help.zip — the PeopleSoft Online Help content files
- psHelpIndexBuilder.jar — jar file that is invoked by buildindex.bat or buildindex.sh to generate a context-sensitive help index
- README.txt

3. Extract the contents of the online-help.zip file to a convenient folder.

   The zip file includes a folder with the same name as that of the initial extracted file, such as pt862pbr2, which is referred to here as the *docroot*.

   For the examples given in these instructions, the *docroot* folder, with the PeopleSoft Online Help file contents, resides under a higher-level folder, *doc_global*. In these examples, *<doc_global>\<docroot>* is C:\PeopleBooks\pt862pbr2.

4. Install and set up the search utility.

   Follow the instructions in the INSTALL.txt file included with the search utility zip file to complete these steps:

   - Set up OpenSearch for PeopleSoft Online Help.

     This documentation refers to the location where you extract the search utility zip file as *srch_utility_install*.
   - After you complete the deployment, follow the instructions at the end of the script and in INSTALL.txt to copy the psossearch folder from the OpenSearch installation directory to the application root, which is *doc_global* in these examples.
   - If desired, follow the instructions in INSTALL.txt to create a service to manage OpenSearch on Microsoft Windows.

     Note. Before creating the OpenSearch service on Microsoft Windows, close the cmd.exe window that is running opensearch.bat. Alternatively, stop it in the Services dialog box.

5. Create a folder WEB-INF under the *doc_global* folder.
6. In the WEB-INF folder create a file named "web.xml" that has the following content:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>

<!DOCTYPE web-app PUBLIC

"-//Sun Microsystems, Inc.//DTD Web Application 2.3//EN"

"http://java.sun.com/j2ee/dtds/web-app_2_3.dtd">

<web-app>

</web-app>
```

   This allows Oracle WebLogic to recognize the *doc_global* folder as a valid deployment.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Deploying in the Oracle WebLogic Remote Console

To deploy the online help in the Oracle WebLogic Remote Console:

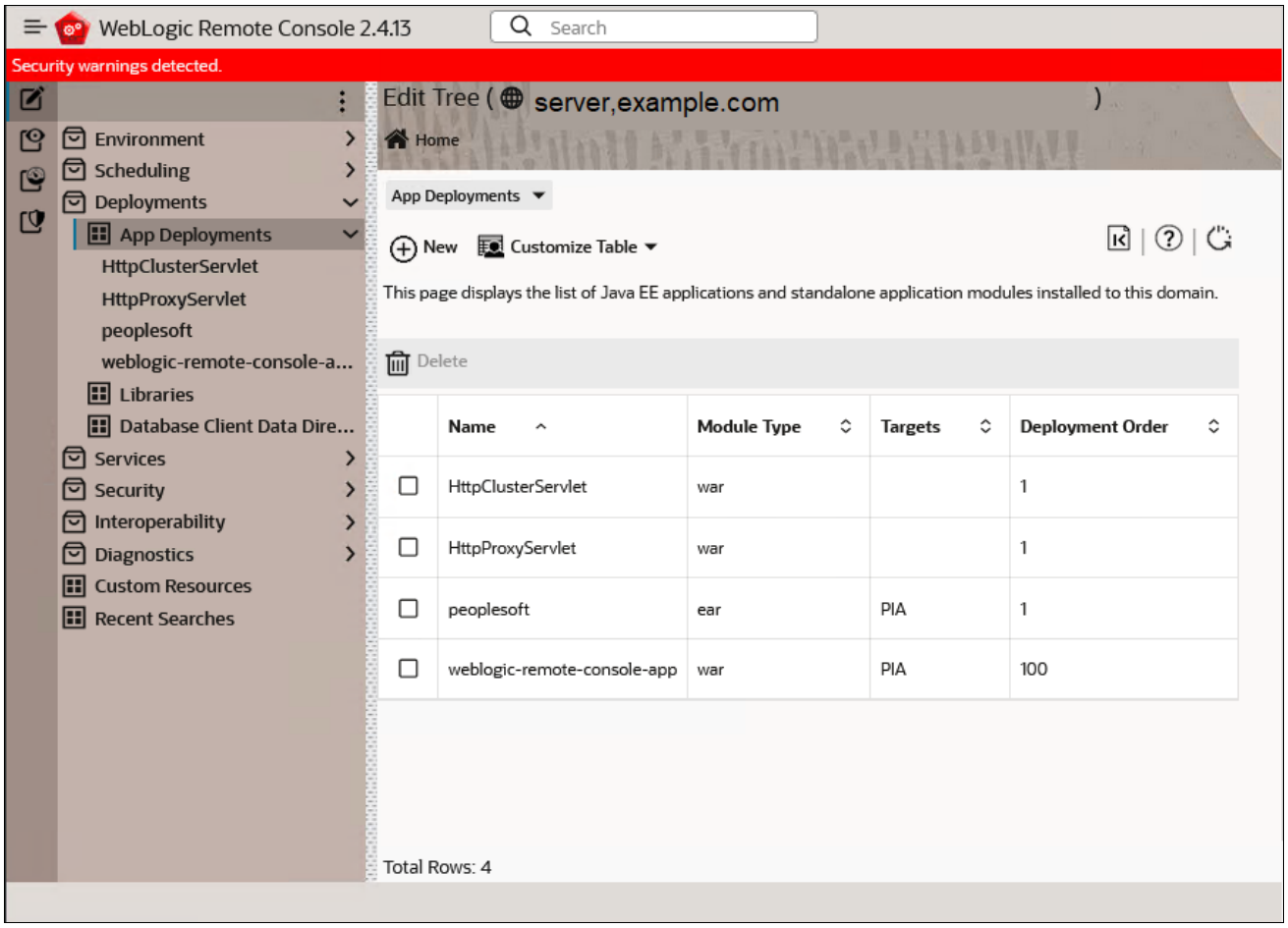
1. Open the Oracle WebLogic Remote Console as described in the PeopleTools: System and Server Administration product documentation.

   See *PeopleTools: System and Server Administration*, "Using WebLogic Remote Console."

2. Under Providers, select Add Admin Server Connection Provider, and supply the required connection information.
3. Select Edit Tree from the tile on the home page or the icon on the left panel, and then select Deployments, > App Deployments.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

4. Click New.



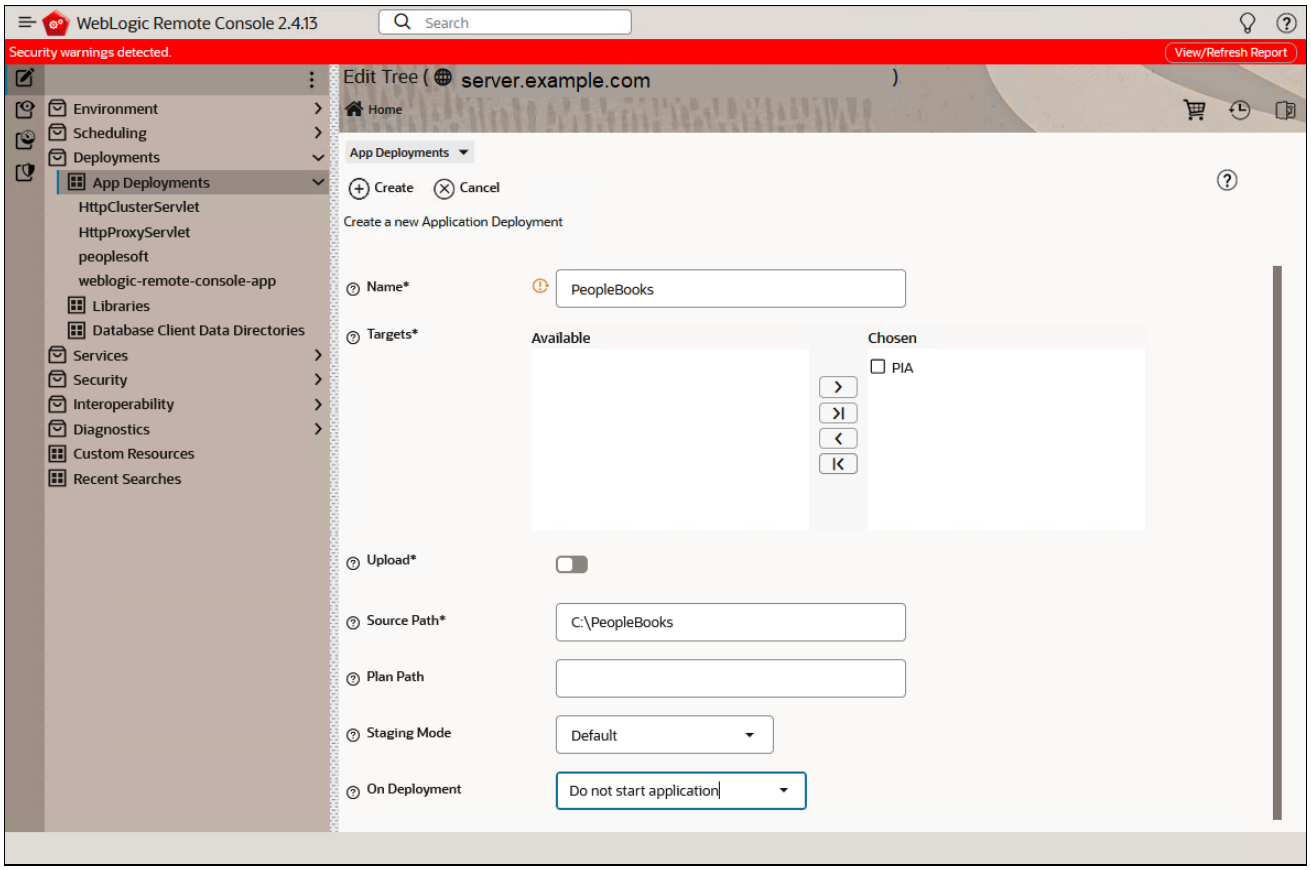
Oracle WebLogic Remote Console, App Deployments page

5. Enter a name, for example PeopleBooks.
6. In the Targets area, use the arrow to move PIA from Available to Chosen.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

7. Disable the Upload option, and enter the location for the *doc_global* location containing the online help files as the Source Path.

   In this example, the Source Path is C:\PeopleBooks.



App Deployments page, Create a New App Deployment

8. Click Create.
9. Click the Cart icon at the top of the page and select Commit Changes.

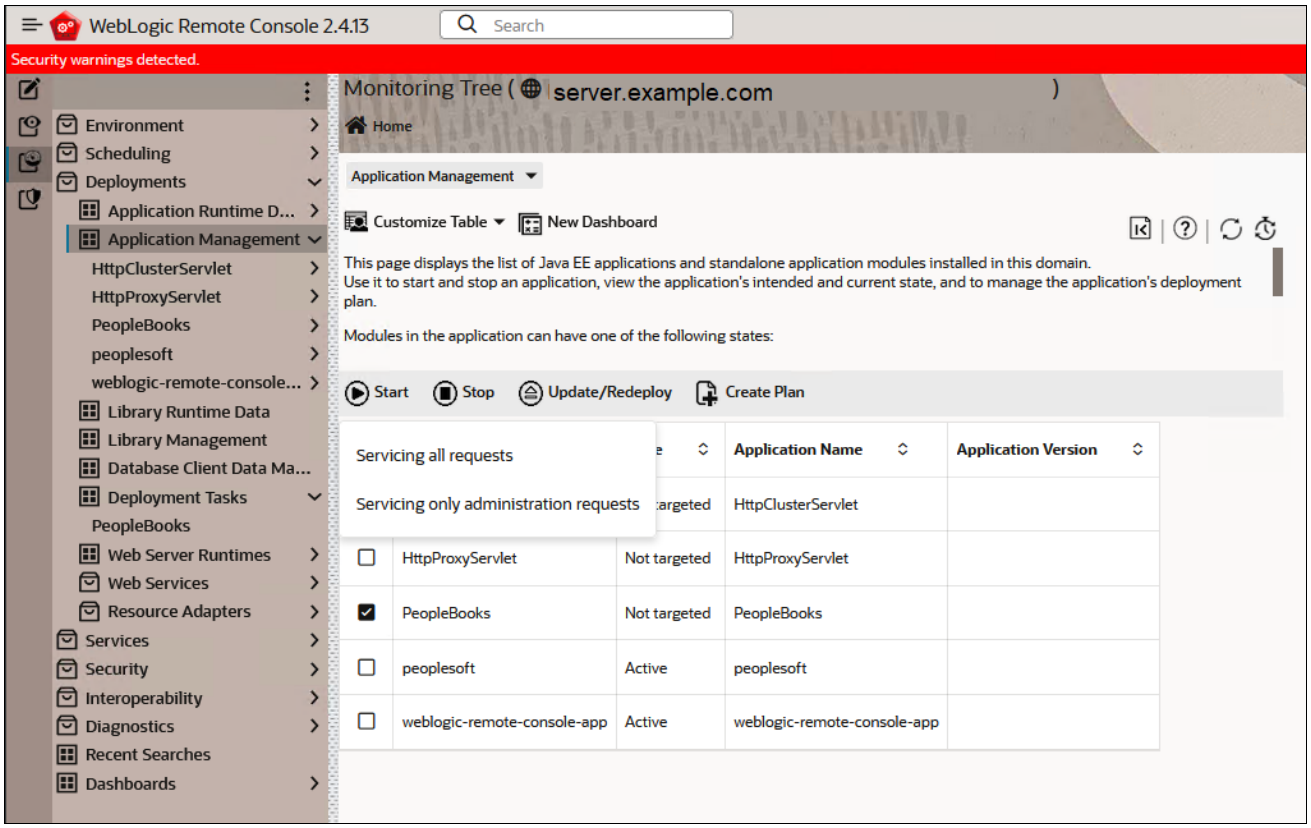
   You see a confirmation message.
10. Select Monitoring Tree > Deployments > Application Management.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

11. Select the check box for the deployment, and click Start.

    Choose Servicing all requests from the Start menu.

    You see a message that the deployment was started. You can track progress for the deployment task under Monitoring Tree > Deployment > Deployment Tasks.



Application Management page

12. When the deployment is complete, you can close the Oracle WebLogic Remote Console.
13. To compose the URL that you use to access the online help, referred to in this section as *online help URL*, use this format:

    http://<*weblogic_server*>:<*weblogic_port*>/<*help_deployment_name*>/<*docroot*>/eng/<*product_line*>/index.html

    - <*weblogic_server*> — the fully-qualified machine name for the Oracle WebLogic server
    - <*weblogic_port*> — the port for the Oracle WebLogic server
    - <*help_deployment_name*> — the name for the deployment in the Oracle WebLogic Remote Console
    - <*docroot*> — the extracted PeopleSoft Online Help contents folder
    - <*product_line*> — the product line abbreviation, such as pt for PeopleSoft PeopleTools, or hcm for PeopleSoft Human Capital Management.

Crawling the Help Indexes

To crawl the online help site to list the help indexes:

1. In a command prompt, change directory to *srch_utility_install*\pscrawler.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

For example, on Microsoft Windows, C:\apps\PSOnlineHelpSearchUtilities\pscrawler.

Note. Make sure that OpenSearch is running before running the next command.

2. Run the following command.

Note. If you see a prompt for JAVA_HOME when you use the crawler script, enter the location installed by the search utility, such as C:\apps\PSOnlineHelpSearchEngine\pt\opensearch-2.3.0\jdk.

Crawling the online help site requires a few minutes.

```
crawler.<ext>  <opensearch host>  <opensearch port> index <online help⇒
 URL>
```

For example, on Microsoft Windows:

```
crawler.bat hostname.example.com 9260 index http://hostname.example.com:⇒
8000/PeopleBooks/pt862pbr2/eng/pt/index.html
```

- Enter the fully qualified machine name for <*opensearch host*>.
- Enter the search engine port for <*opensearch port*>.
- Enter the <*online help URL*>, as described in the section Deploying in the Oracle WebLogic Administrator Console.

3. To list all indexes, run this command, and enter the fully qualified machine name for <*opensearch host*> and the search engine port for <*opensearch port*>.

```
crawler.<ext>  <opensearch host>  <opensearch port> display
```

For example, on Microsoft Windows:

```
crawler.bat hostname.example.com 9260 display
```

Accessing the Online Help and Online Help Search Console

To enable the search capability on the PeopleSoft Online Help pages, so that when you click the search icon the PeopleSoft Online Help Search Console appears:

1. Locate the common.js file and open it for editing.

   The common.js file is located in <*doc_global*>\<*docroot*>\js, for example, C:\PeopleBooks\pt862pbr2\js.

2. Edit the variables searchURL, searchOpt and queryTextParamName.

Note. The lines beginning with two slashes (//) in common.js are sample entries. Enter text as shown here.

For example:

```
var searchURL = "/PeopleBooks/psossearch/index.html";
var altHelpURL = "";
var searchOpt = "product=PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.62";
var queryTextParamName = "query";
```

3. Save the file.
4. To access the PeopleSoft Online Help in a browser, enter the <*online help URL*>, as described in the section Deploying in the Oracle WebLogic Administration Console.

   http://<*weblogic_server*>:<*weblogic_port*>/<*help_deployment_name*>/<*docroot*>/eng/<*product_line*>/

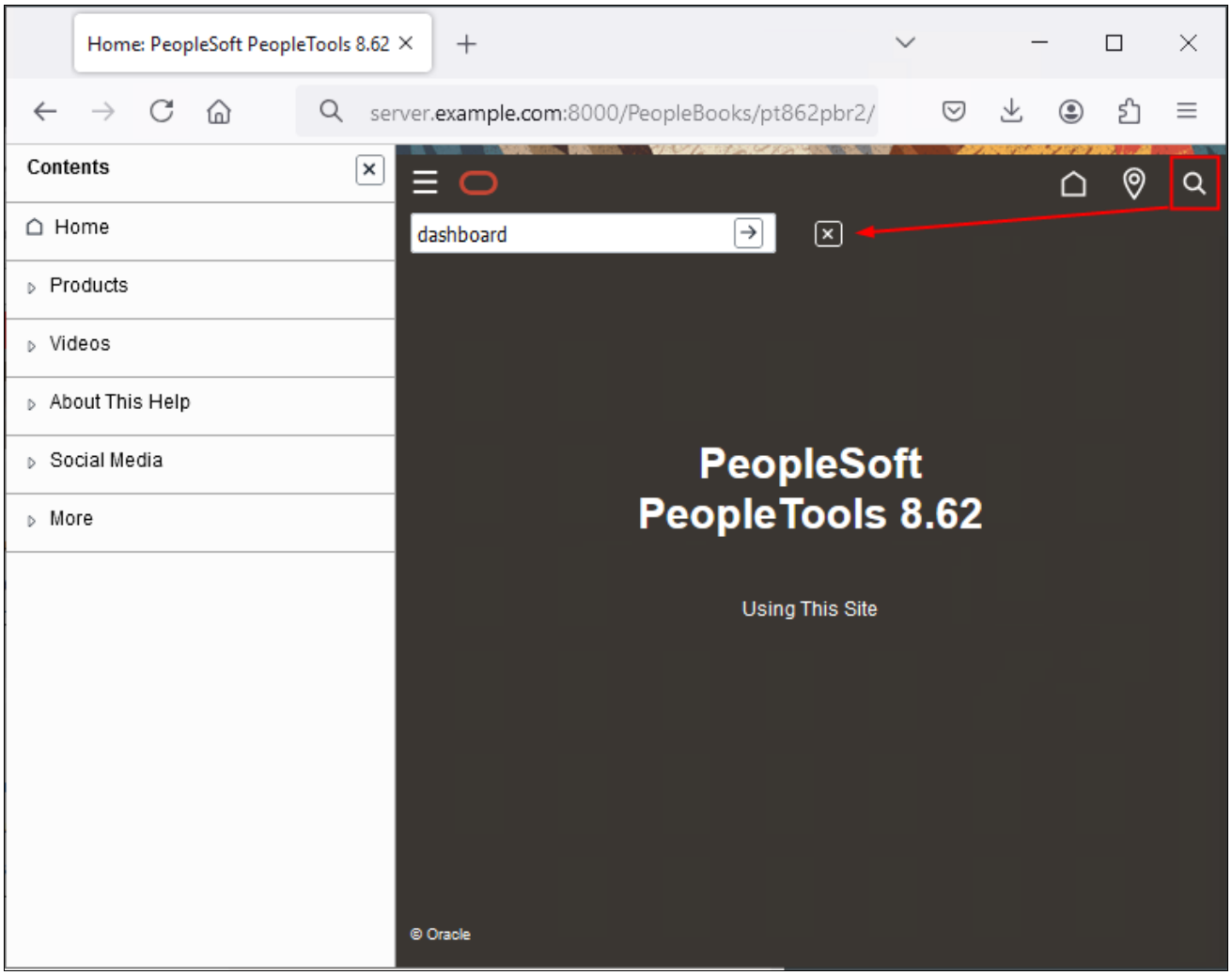
Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

index.html

For example, this URL displays the PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.62 documentation home page:

http://server.example.com:8000/PeopleBooks/pt862pbr2/eng/pt/index.html

5. Click the search icon at the top right of the page and enter the search term.

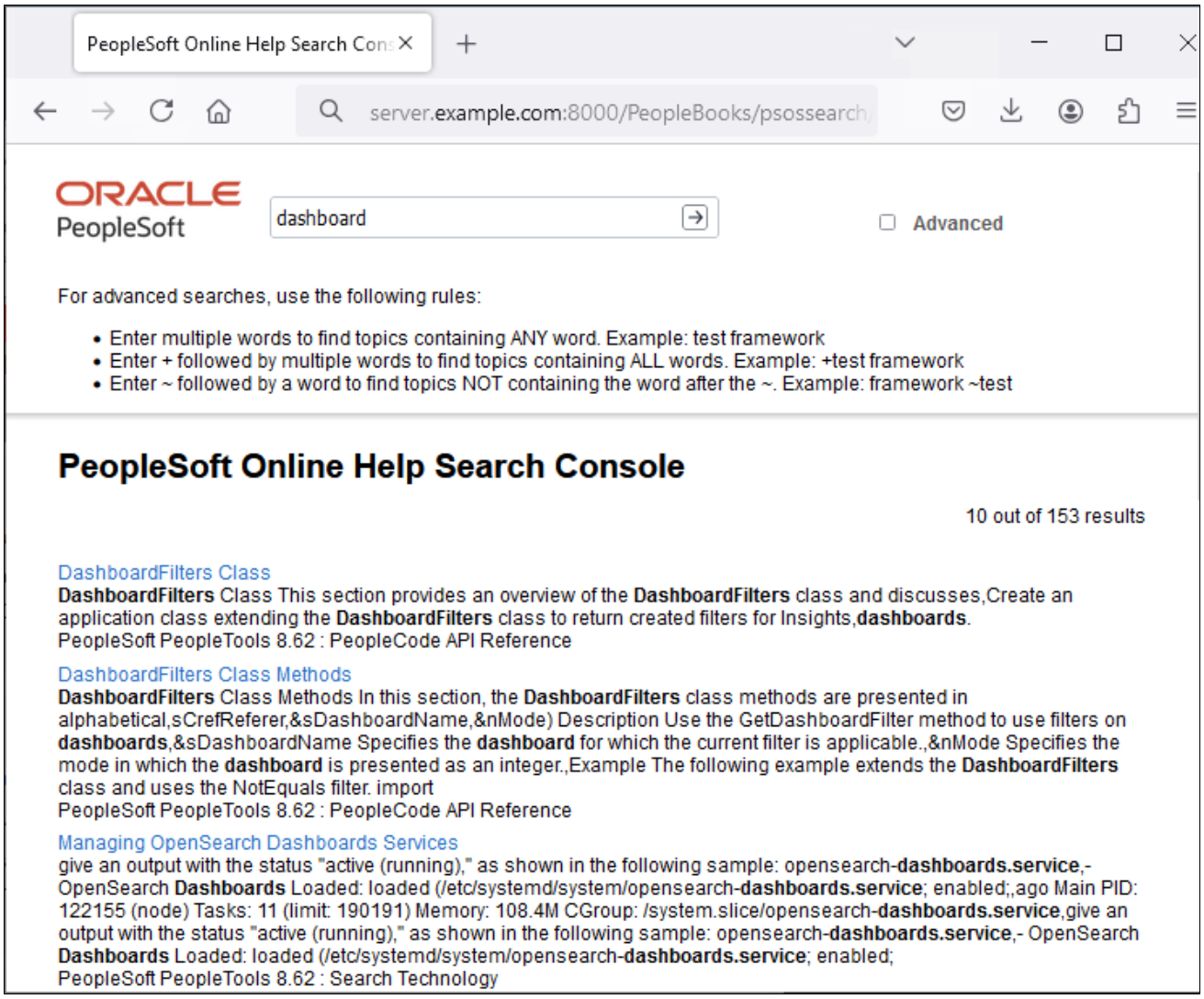


PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.62 Online Help home page with search icon

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

6. Select the search result links that appear in the PeopleSoft Online Help Search Console to view the help topics.

   The search is case insensitive.



PeopleSoft Online Help Search Console

7. If you want to limit the search results, select the Advanced option and use these formats for the queries:

   - Enter words separated by a space to find topics with either of the words.

     For example, to find topics with either of the words test or framework, use the query *"test framework"*. This is similar to the Boolean expression "test OR framework".

   - Enter a plus sign (+) followed by two or more words to find topics with both the words.

     For example, to find topics with both the words fluid and dashboard, use the query *"+fluid dashboard"*. This is similar to the Boolean expression "fluid AND dashboard".

   - Use a tilde (~) to exclude a word.

     For example, to find topics that contain SQL but not SQR, use the query *"sql ~ sqr"*. This is similar to the Boolean expression "sql NOT sqr".

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

For more information on using locally installed online help, see About This Help. From the PeopleSoft PeopleTools Online Help site, select About This Help from the Contents frame. Then select Managing Locally Installed PeopleSoft Online Help, Enabling the Search Button and Field.

Resetting the Online Help Installation

In some cases you may want to reset the online help installation, for example if you change something and find you can no longer see the help. Here are steps to try to reset the installation:

1. In the Oracle WebLogic Remote Console, stop and restart the deployment.
   a. Select Monitoring Tree > Deployments > Application Management.
   b. Select the PeopleBooks item, then Stop, Force stop now.
   c. Click Start, Servicing All Requests.
2. Stop and restart the OpenSearch service.
3. Crawl the indexes again.

Task 20-1-4: Removing the PeopleSoft Online Help Deployment

Use this procedure if you need to remove the deployed PeopleSoft Online Help to redeploy or upgrade. You must first remove the deployment from the Oracle WebLogic Remote Console, and then remove the index in the search crawler.

1. If the PeopleSoft Online Help and the search console are open, close them.
2. Log in to the Oracle WebLogic Remote Console using Oracle WebLogic administrator credentials.

   If necessary, select Providers, Add Admin Server Connection Provider, and supply the connection information.
3. Select Monitoring Tree > Deployments > Application Management.
4. Select the check box beside the PeopleBooks deployment, and click Stop.
5. Select Force stop now.

   You see a message saying you can track the progress under Monitoring Tree > Deployment > Deployment Tasks. The deployment tasks displays a status of "success" when the deployment has been stopped.
6. Select Edit Tree > Deployments > App Deployments.
7. Select the check box beside the PeopleBooks deployment, and click Delete.
8. Go to the Cart at the top of the page and select Commit Changes.

   You see a message saying the changes were committed.
9. Verify that the deployment name, for example, PeopleBooks, does not appear in the Deployments section.
10. Close the Oracle WebLogic Remote Console.
11. Open a command prompt and change directory to the location where the search utility was installed; for example:

    ```
    cd srch_utility_install\pscrawler
    ```

12. Run this command to remove the search index:

    ```
    crawler.<ext>  <opensearch host>  <opensearch port> delete <product_line>
    ```

    Enter the fully qualified machine name for <*opensearch host*>, the search engine port for <*opensearch port*>, and the PeopleSoft product name for <*product_line*>.

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

For example, on Microsoft Windows:

```
crawler.bat server.example.com 9260 delete "PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.62"
```

13. Wait until the process is complete, as indicated by "Deletion completed"

```
SUCCESS: Specified value was saved.
Checking for running OpenSearch instance
Starting deletion of product-PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.62
Deletion completed
```

14. If you created a service for OpenSearch, follow the instructions in INSTALL.txt to remove it.

Task 20-1-5: Setting Up Help for Multiple Product Lines on the Same Machine

Use these steps if you want to deploy multiple product line online help sites, such as PeopleSoft PeopleTools and Financials/Supply Chain Management (FSCM) on a single server, with the search utility.

This section assumes that you have set up a web server and the search utility as previously mentioned.

1. Extract the contents of the documentation library zip file for product line 1 (referred to as *docroot,* for example, pt862pbr2.zip) to the folder where the psossearch folder resides; *doc_global.*

   In the examples earlier in this section *doc_global* is C:\PeopleBooks.

2. Extract the contents of the documentation library zip file for product line 2 (for example, fscm92pbr52.zip) to the same folder where the product line 1 was extracted.
3. Repeat step 2 for other product lines as needed. The contents of the folder includes these folders (plus others depending upon your web server):

   doc_global\fscm92pbr52

   doc_global\psossearch

   doc_global\pt862pbr2

   doc_global\WEB-INF

4. Open a command prompt and change directory to the location where the search utility was installed; for example:

   Microsoft Windows

   ```
   cd srch_utility_install\pscrawler
   ```

5. Run this command for each product line:

   ```
   crawler.<ext>  <opensearch host>  <opensearch port> index <online help⇒
    URL>
   ```

   For example, to crawl FSCM and PeopleTools on Microsoft Windows:

   ```
   crawler.bat server.example.com 9260 index http://server.example.com⇒
   /PeopleBooks/pt862pbr2/eng/pt/index.html
   crawler.bat server.example.com 9260 index http://server.example.com⇒
   /PeopleBooks/fscm92pbr52/eng/fscm/index.html
   ```

   - Enter the fully qualified machine name for the online help web server <*opensearch host*>
   - Enter the search engine port for <*opensearch port*>.
   - The <*online help URL*> is the URL used to view the documentation home page.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

6. For each product line, locate the common.js file and open it for editing.

   The common.js file is located in <*doc_global*>\<*docroot*>\js, such as C:\PeopleBooks\pt862pbr2\js and C:\PeopleBooks\fscm92pbr52\js.

7. For all product lines, edit the variables searchURL, searchOpt and queryTextParamName.

   Note. The lines beginning with two slashes (//) are sample entries.

   For example, for product line 1, pt862pbr2:

```
var searchURL = "/PeopleBooks/psossearch/index.html";  //"http://host:⇒
port/search/query";
var altHelpURL = "";//"https://docs.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?id=⇒
%CONTEXT_ID%&ctx=fscm92pbr52"
                      //"http://host/path/help.html?ContextID=%CONTEXT_⇒
ID%&LangCD=%Lang%
var searchOpt = "product=PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.62";
var queryTextParamName = "query";
```

   For product line 2, fscm92pbr52:

```
var searchURL = "/PeopleBooks/psossearch/index.html";  //"http://host:⇒
port/search/query";
var altHelpURL = "";//"https://docs.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?id=⇒
%CONTEXT_ID%&ctx=fscm92pbr52"
                      //"http://host/path/help.html?ContextID=%CONTEXT_⇒
ID%&LangCD=%Lang%
var searchOpt = "product=PeopleSoft Financials and Supply Chain⇒
 Management 9.2";
var queryTextParamName = "query";
```


Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 21

Installing Software for PS/nVision Drilldowns

This chapter discusses:

- Understanding PS/nVision DrillDown Add-ins
- Installing the DrillToPIA Add-In
- Installing the nVisionDrill Add-In
- Installing the nVisionDrill Add-Ins for Multi-Language Installations
- Setting Up PeopleSoft Integration Broker for Using Web Service Capability with nVision Drill Add-in

Understanding PS/nVision DrillDown Add-ins

When you use PS/nVision to view reports, you can use the DrillDown feature to select a cell in your report and expand it according to criteria contained in a special DrillDown layout.

See *PeopleTools: PS/nVision,* "Using DrillDown."

To use the PS/nVision DrillDown feature with Microsoft Excel reports, you need to install one of the following add-ins, as described in this chapter:

Note. DrillToPIA and nVisionDrill VSTO add-ins do not coexist. You can use only one add-in at a time.

- DrillToPIA add-in
- nVisionDrill VSTO add-in (Visual Studio tools for Microsoft Office SE Runtime).

See *PeopleTools: PS/nVision,* "Understanding PS/nVision Reporting on the Web."

Here is the way the two drilldown add-ins work with the supported version of Microsoft Excel:

If the nVisionDrill VSTO add-in was installed, the nVisionDrill add-in runs and the nVisionDrill VSTO drilldown menu is available when Microsoft Excel opens.

Optionally, you can disable the nVisionDrill VSTO add-in and run the DrillToPIA add-in.

Note. To disable the nVisionDrill VSTO add-in and use the DrillToPIA add-in, access the Add-Ins dialog box and select the DrillToPIA check box. This selection replaces the nVisionDrill VSTO add-in with the DrillToPIA add-in, and the DrillToPIA drilldown menu appears until you reinstall the nVisionDrill VSTO add-in.

To reinstall the nVisionDrill VSTO, double-click the setup.exe file and select the Repair option.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Task 21-1: Installing the DrillToPIA Add-In

This section discusses:

- Understanding Drilldown with DrillToPIA Add-in
- Installing the DrillToPIA Add-in on the Microsoft Excel Environment

Understanding Drilldown with DrillToPIA Add-in

DrillDowns are run on the PS/nVision report server – like Report Requests and Report Books – and are accessible through Report Manager. You can also select to run the DrillDown using the output type of *Window,* which automatically delivers the results to a new browser window. A copy of the results will also be accessible through Report Manager.

You can drill down on individual cells within the report by selecting the cell and using Drill from the nVisionDrill menu for a Microsoft Excel report.

Note. A drilldown result report inherits the output format of its parent report. So, if the parent instance is in Excel format, then the drilldown result is in Excel format.

DrillDown in a web browser does not include the AutoDrill, Drill-to-Query, and Drill-to-Panel options.

Task 21-1-1: Installing the DrillToPIA Add-in on the Microsoft Excel Environment

To drill down on Microsoft Excel reports, the Microsoft Visual Basic Application (VBA) add-in DrillToPIA.xla file needs to be installed on the Microsoft Excel environment. This file is stored in the *PS_HOME*\Excel directory on the Application Server. Your System Administrator needs to distribute a copy of this file to all users who need to drill down on Microsoft Excel reports on the Web.

Note. If a non-English version of Microsoft Excel is used, translated versions of DrillToPIA.xla can be found in the <*PS_HOME*>\Excel\<*Language*> directory on the Application Server.

In Apple Macintosh systems, PS/nVision DrillToPIA add-in launches Microsoft Internet Explorer for the drilldown page when drilling is performed on a Microsoft Excel report, regardless of the browser from which the original report is opened.

To install the add-in DrillToPIA.xla file into the Microsoft Excel environment:

1. Copy the *PS_HOME*\Excel\DrillToPIA.xla file, and paste it into the Excel add-in directory.

   If Microsoft Office is installed in the directory *MS_OFFICE,* the Excel add-ins directory is *MS_OFFICE*\Office\Library.
2. Launch Microsoft Excel and select Tools, Add-ins from Excel toolbar.
3. Select the DrillToPIA option in the Add-ins dialog box.

   The nVisionDrill menu appears in the Excel menu bar.

Note. To remove the add-in from the Excel menu, clear the DrillToPIA option from the Add-Ins dialog box.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Task 21-2: Installing the nVisionDrill Add-In

This section discusses:

- Understanding PS/nVision DrillDown Using Web Services
- Understanding Security for DrillDown Using nVisionDrill VSTO Add-in
- Installing the nVisionDrill Add-in for Microsoft Excel

Understanding PS/nVision DrillDown Using Web Services

For the current PeopleSoft PeopleTools release you are able to use the web service capability when drilling from summarized to detailed PS/nVision reports using the nVisionDrill VSTO add-in.

See My Oracle Support, Certifications, for the current PeopleSoft PeopleTools release, to find the versions of Microsoft Excel that are supported for the nVisionDrill VSTO add-in.

Note. During the installation for the nVisionDrill VSTO add-in, if there is a message that pre-requisites are not found, run PIARedist.exe and vstor_redist.exe available in the *PS_HOME*\setup\nVisionDrill folder.

In addition, take note of the following requirements:

- You must set up and configure Integration Broker to use the nVision Drilldown feature as a web service.

  See Setting Up Integration Broker for Using Web Service Capability with nVisionDrill Add-in.
- The web servers should be SSL enabled.

  This is because all the web service calls happen through secure channels.

  When you create the SSL-enabled web server domain, you need to provide the optional parameter Authentication Token Domain with the appropriate domain name.

Note. The new nVisionDrill VSTO add-in is mainly designed for remote standalone file drilldown (where the end user doesn't have access to the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture system). For all other purposes and Web drilldown, the nVision users are still encouraged to use the DrillToPIA add-in.

Understanding Security for DrillDown Using nVisionDrill VSTO Add-in

The nVisionDrill VSTO Add-in allows users to perform drilldown without having to access the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture pages. This necessitates that the end users of nVisionDrill must sign in to the PeopleSoft system to be able to submit the drilldown process and access the subreports. The users of nVisionDrill VSTO add-in will be prompted to enter a user ID and password for the first time. This user ID and password are validated. If the users have access, they are taken to the menu with the list of DrillDown layouts for further drilldown operation.

When the users attempt another drilldown using the same parent report instance which is already open, the system does not prompt for the credentials, and the credentials of the first login are re-used. But for each new report instance or new drilldown report instance, the credentials must be entered again.

Note. All web service calls between the Microsoft Excel and PeopleSoft applications are SSL-enabled.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Task 21-2-1: Installing the nVisionDrill Add-in for Microsoft Excel

To install the nVisionDrill VSTO add-in for Microsoft Excel:

1. Go to *PS_HOME*\setup\nVisionDrill.
2. Run the nVisionDrillSetup.msi file.

   If all required software items have been installed, the nVisionDrill add-in installation will run to success.

   During the installation, if you see a message that pre-requisites are not found, run PIARedist.exe and vstor_redist.exe available in the *PS_HOME*\setup\nVisionDrill folder.
3. Ensure that the web server domain's SSL Root certificate is installed on the machine where the nVisionDrill VSTO add-in is installed.

   The Root Certificate should be installed correctly on the default browser of the machine.

Task 21-3: Installing the nVisionDrill Add-Ins for Multi-Language Installations

If you have a multi-language installation, first install NVisionDrillSetup.msi for English, as described above, and then install the NVisionDrillSetup_*xxx*.msi for the desired languages, where the extension *xxx* is the three-letter language code.

See *PeopleTools: Global Technology.*

Task 21-4: Setting Up PeopleSoft Integration Broker for Using Web Service Capability with nVision Drill Add-in

To set up Integration Broker for using web service capability with PS/nVisionDrill add-in:

1. Select PeopleTools > Integration Broker > Configuration > Integration Gateways.
2. Select the Integration Gateway ID for which the Local Gateway is enabled from the search results.

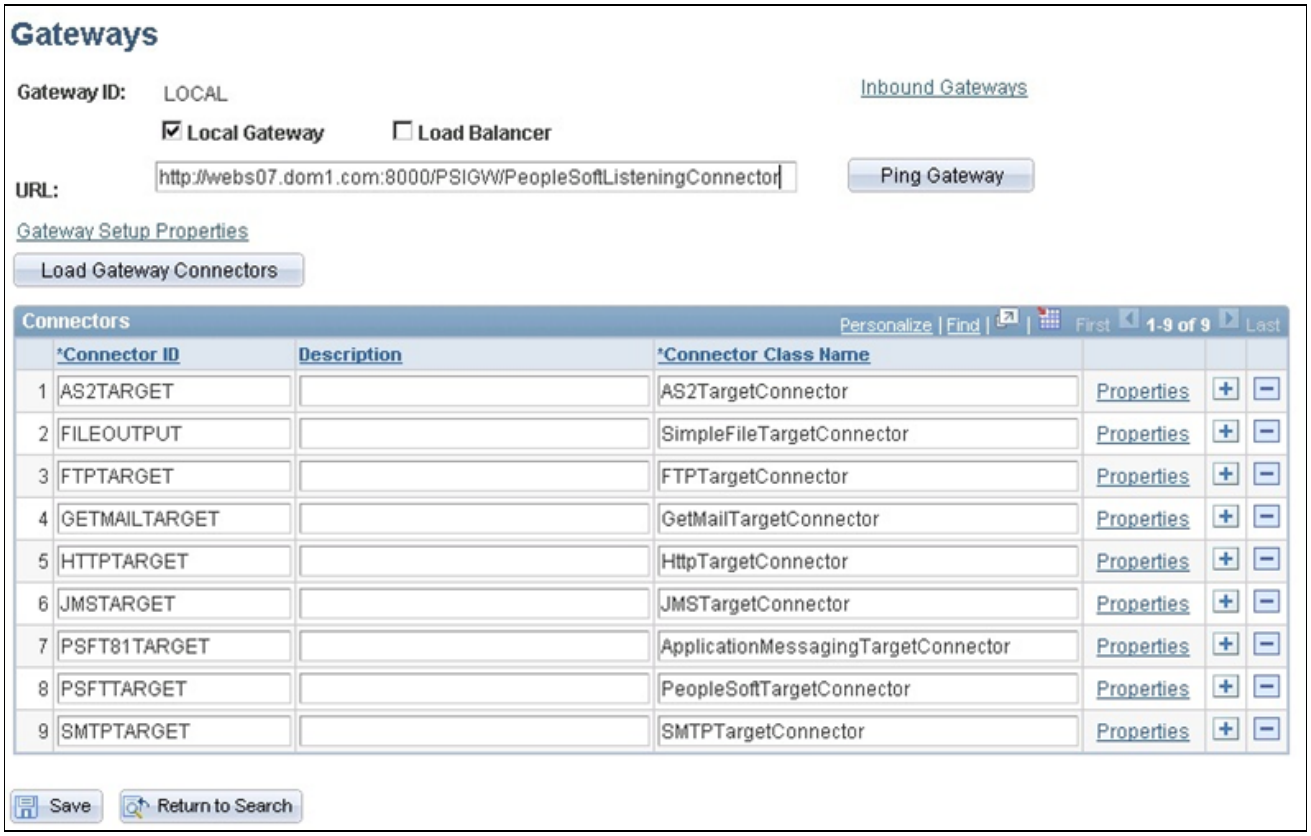
   An enabled Local Gateway is marked as "Y" in the search results.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

3. In the URL field, enter the following value, where <machine_name> is the Web server machine name, including the domain name, and <port> is the HTTP port number of the PeopleSoft web server:

   http://<*machine_name*>:<*port*>/PSIGW/PeopleSoftListeningConnector

   This example shows the Integration Broker Gateways page with the URL http://webs07.dom1.com:8000/PSIGW/PeopleSoftListeningConnector, where webs07.dom1.com is the combined machine name and domain name, and 8000 is the HTTP port:



Integration Broker Gateways page

4. Click Ping Gateway.

   A message appears saying "Gateway URL has changed. Existing connector information will be cleared". Click OK on this message.

   You should see a message with the status ACTIVE, indicating a successful connection. Close this message.

5. On the Gateways page, click the Load Gateway Connectors button to load the list of connectors, and then click Save.

   If the ping is unsuccessful, check the Web server URL entered, and also make sure Pub/Sub servers are enabled in the Application Server configuration.

6. Select PeopleTools > Integration Broker > Service Operations Monitor > Administration > Domain Status.

7. Purge the unnecessary domains and enable the required domain.

   You should be able to see at least three dispatchers under Dispatcher Status. This is required for running asynchronous requests through Integration Broker.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Note. PeopleSoft Integration Broker must process all nVision web service requests that are sent from nVisionDrill VSTO add-in, so the Local PeopleSoft Node of PeopleSoft Integration Broker gateway must include at least three dispatchers.

8. Select PeopleTools > Integration Broker > Configuration > Integration Gateways.

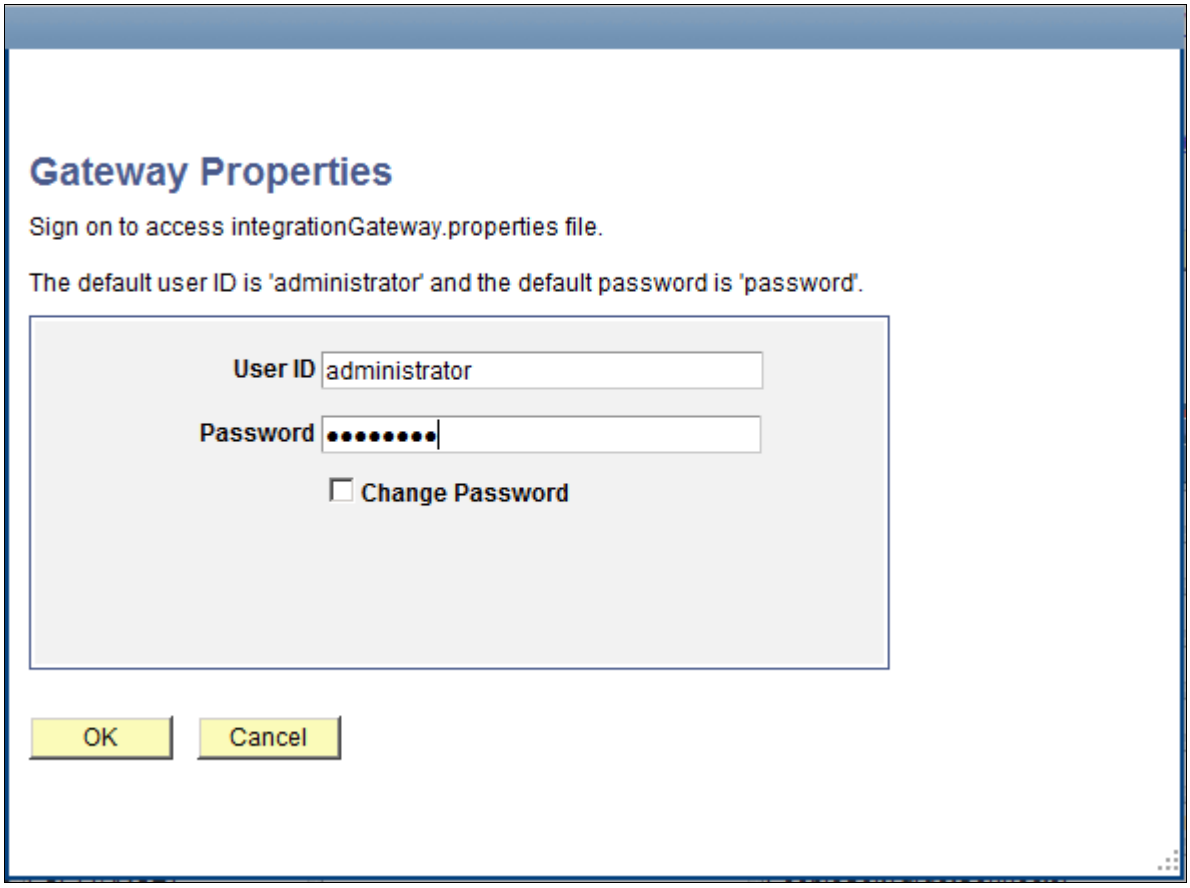
   Select the same Integration Gateway ID that you chose in step 1.

9. On the Gateways page, select the link Gateway Setup Properties.

   The Gateways Properties page appears.

10. Enter the Integration Gateway administrator user ID and password.

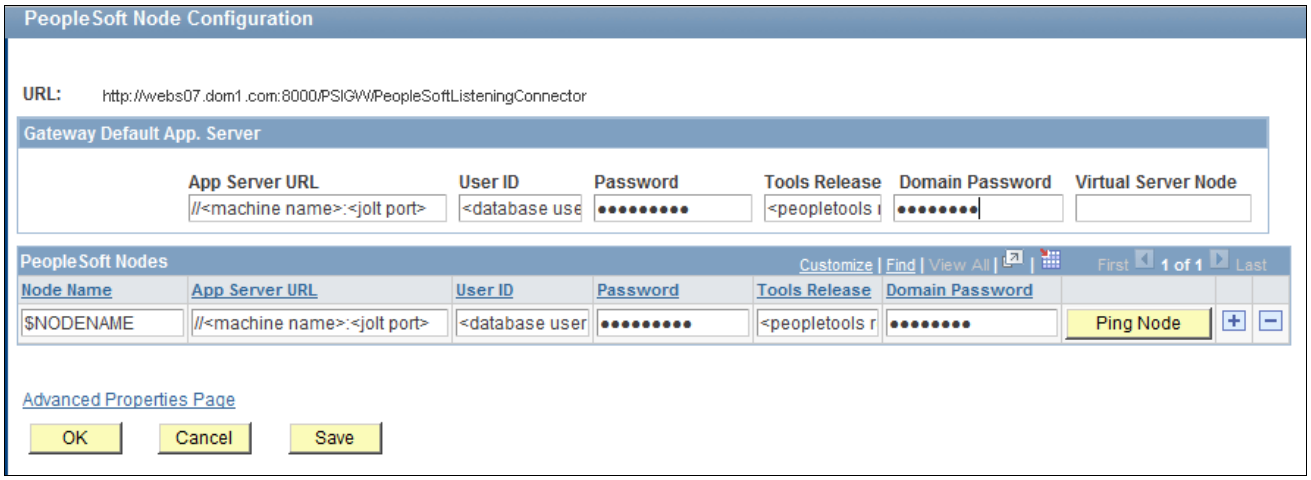
    The default User ID is administrator, as shown in this example. Enter the password that you specified when setting up the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture.



Gateway Properties sign on page

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

11. Add a new node in the PeopleSoft Node Configuration page.



PeopleSoft Node Configuration page

Node Name: Enter the name of the active default node.

This example uses $NODENAME.

To find the active default node, navigate to Integration Broker > Integration Setup > Node Definitions. Do a search, and choose the node for which the Local Node value is "1" and the Default Local Node value is "Y".

Enter the following values to complete the page:

Note. The following information can be retrieved by pressing CTRL+J on the PeopleSoft Node Configuration page.

- App Server URL: Enter the application server machine name and the Jolt port.
- User ID: Enter PeopleSoft user ID
- Password: Enter the password for the PeopleSoft user ID specified in the User ID field.
- Tools Release: Provide the exact PeopleSoft PeopleTools release that your application server is using.

12. Click Save.
13. Click Ping Node to be sure the node is accessible, and then exit.

    See *PeopleTools: Integration Broker Administration.*

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 22

Synchronizing the ACCESSID User

This chapter discusses:

- Understanding the ACCESSID User Synchronization
- Creating the ACCESSID
- Updating the ACCESSID Information

Understanding the ACCESSID User Synchronization

The following procedure applies only to Microsoft SQL Server customers upgrading from PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.49 or earlier to PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.50 or later. This procedure must be run by both a PeopleSoft administrator and the DBA for a PeopleSoft database. No other user should run this procedure.

As of PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.50, the ACCESSID user does not have administrator privileges and is not the database owner. After completing the upgrade process to PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.50 or later, customers utilizing Microsoft SQL Server need to update their ACCESSID user. The ACCESSID user is the database user utilized by PeopleSoft applications to access all the data for all the application users. The following instructions will guide you on creating the new ACCESSID and then enabling the new ACCESSID.

See Also

PeopleTools: Security Administration

PeopleTools: Data Management

"Preparing for Installation," Planning Database Creation

Task 22-1: Creating the ACCESSID

Create the new ACCESSID by editing, and then running *PS_HOME*\scripts\CREATE_ACCESSID.sql. This script must be executed by both a database administrator and a PeopleSoft administrator. Once the new ACCESSID is defined you must update the PeopleSoft metadata using the instructions in the next section in order to be able to log in to the database using your PeopleSoft user ID.

Task 22-2: Updating the ACCESSID Information

Use these instructions after running CREATE_ACCESSID.SQL to update the PeopleSoft metadata:

1. Run Data Mover in bootstrap mode.

   To access Data Mover in bootstrap mode log in with the database user utilized to create the database. This

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

user is the database owner or dbo and should have all the necessary permissions to access the database with Data Mover without the need to grant any additional permissions.

Note. Use the newly created ACCESSID to log in.

2. Execute *PS_HOME*\scripts\UPDATE_ACCESS.dms.

   This script updates the catalog information and re-encrypts the ACCESSID password. Running this script updates the necessary tables to utilize the new ACCESSID defined by CREATE_ACCESSID.sql.

3. Launch Application Designer and verify it is possible to log in to the database with the new ACCESSID.
4. Make sure the Connect ID information in the Configuration Manager is updated and the Data Source information is updated utilizing the ODBC Data Source Administrator.

When you connect to the database with Application Designer utilizing the new ACCESSID you validate that the update was successful. In case an error is found please verify the configuration information at Configuration Manager or run a trace to verify if there is a connection problem.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 23

Installing Microsoft SQL Server 2022

This chapter discusses:

- Understanding the Microsoft SQL Server 2022 Installation
- Installing Microsoft SQL Server 2022 on the Database Server
- Starting and Stopping Microsoft SQL Server 2022
- Configuring the Connection to Use ODBC Driver for Microsoft SQL Server 2022

Understanding the Microsoft SQL Server 2022 Installation

This chapter describes how to install Microsoft SQL Server 2022 for use with a PeopleSoft installation. For complete step-by-step instructions on installing Microsoft SQL Server 2022 and for prerequisite details, refer to the SQL Server 2022 online documentation (support.microsoft.com or Microsoft support services). Contact your Microsoft vendor for information on obtaining Microsoft SQL Server 2022.

Note. If you are upgrading from an existing installation on Microsoft SQL Server 2019 see the chapter "Upgrading to Microsoft SQL Server 2022."

Microsoft .NET Framework is a prerequisite for Microsoft SQL Server 2022.

Microsoft .NET Framework 4.7.2 is installed as part of the Microsoft SQL Server 2022 setup. If you need to install it separately, see the Microsoft SQL Server hardware and software requirements.

See Also

Hardware and Software Requirements for Installing SQL Server 2022, Microsoft online documentation

Task 23-1: Installing Microsoft SQL Server 2022 on the Database Server

This task describes how to install Microsoft SQL Server 2022 on the database server. You may need to reboot your server after the installation.

Note. There are different editions of Microsoft SQL Server 2022. Make sure that the edition you install is appropriate for your requirements. Some editions are not compatible with certain operating systems. Consult the SQL Server online documentation and Microsoft support for information about editions. If you have an existing Microsoft SQL Server installation, you can check the version on the SQL Server Installation Center by selecting Tools, Installed SQL Server features discovery report.

To install Microsoft SQL Server 2022 on the database server:

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

1. If you want to uninstall your previous Microsoft SQL Server software before installing Microsoft SQL Server 2022, you can use Control Panel, Add/Remove Programs.

   Note. We recommend that you install only one SQL Server version per server. This should simplify the administration. However, in some instances you may need to install multiple versions, and it is possible to have side-by-side installations of Microsoft SQL Server 2022 and earlier versions.

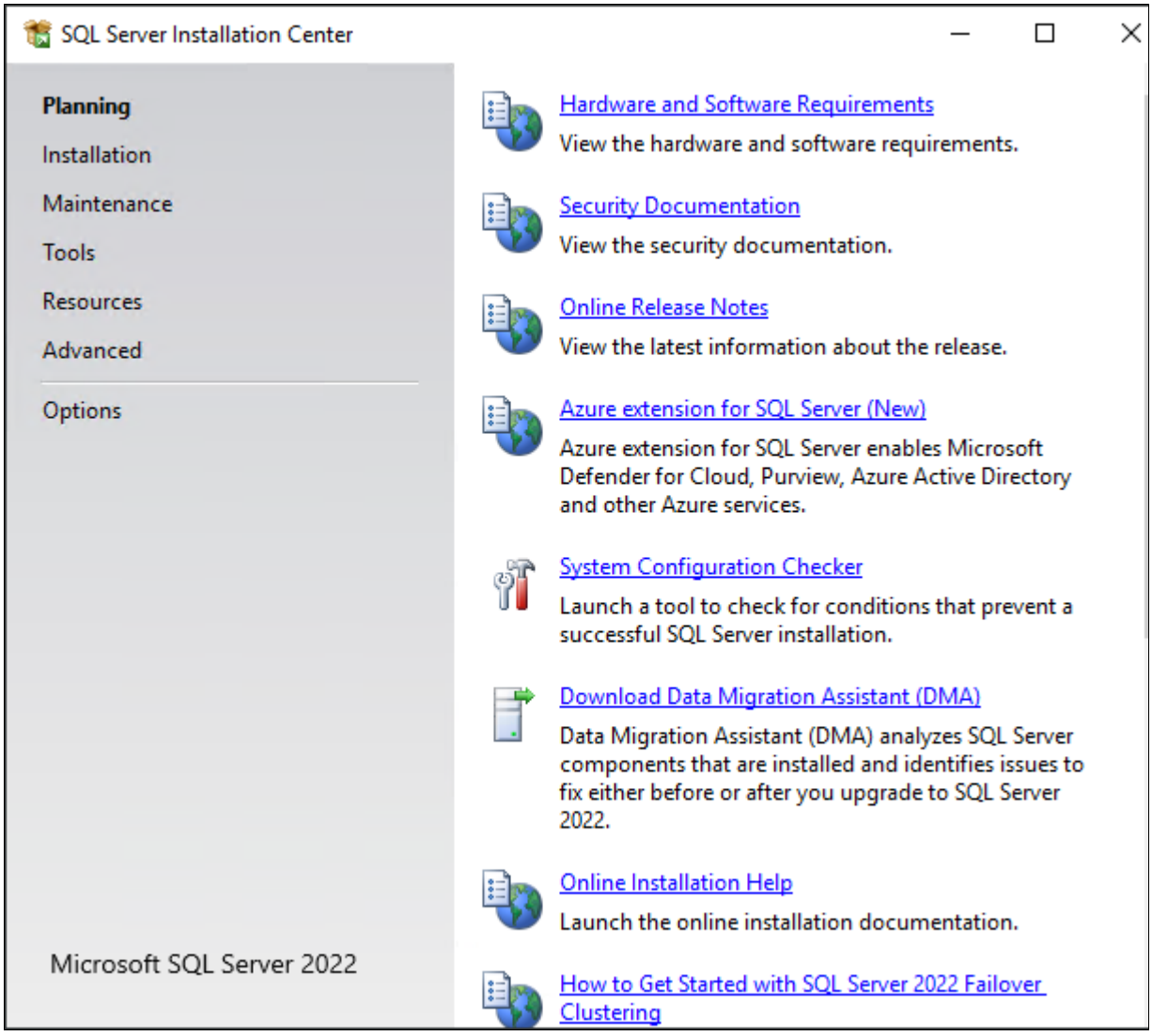
   ---

2. If you downloaded the Microsoft SQL Server 2022 installation files, go to the directory where you saved the installation files and run `setup.exe`.

   If you obtained the installation files on a DVD, insert the Microsoft SQL Server 2022 DVD into the DVD drive. The installation should start automatically, but if it does not, run `setup.exe` from the DVD-ROM's directory.

   For both installation methods, an initialization message box appears asking you to wait. After initialization is complete, the SQL Server Installation Center window appears.

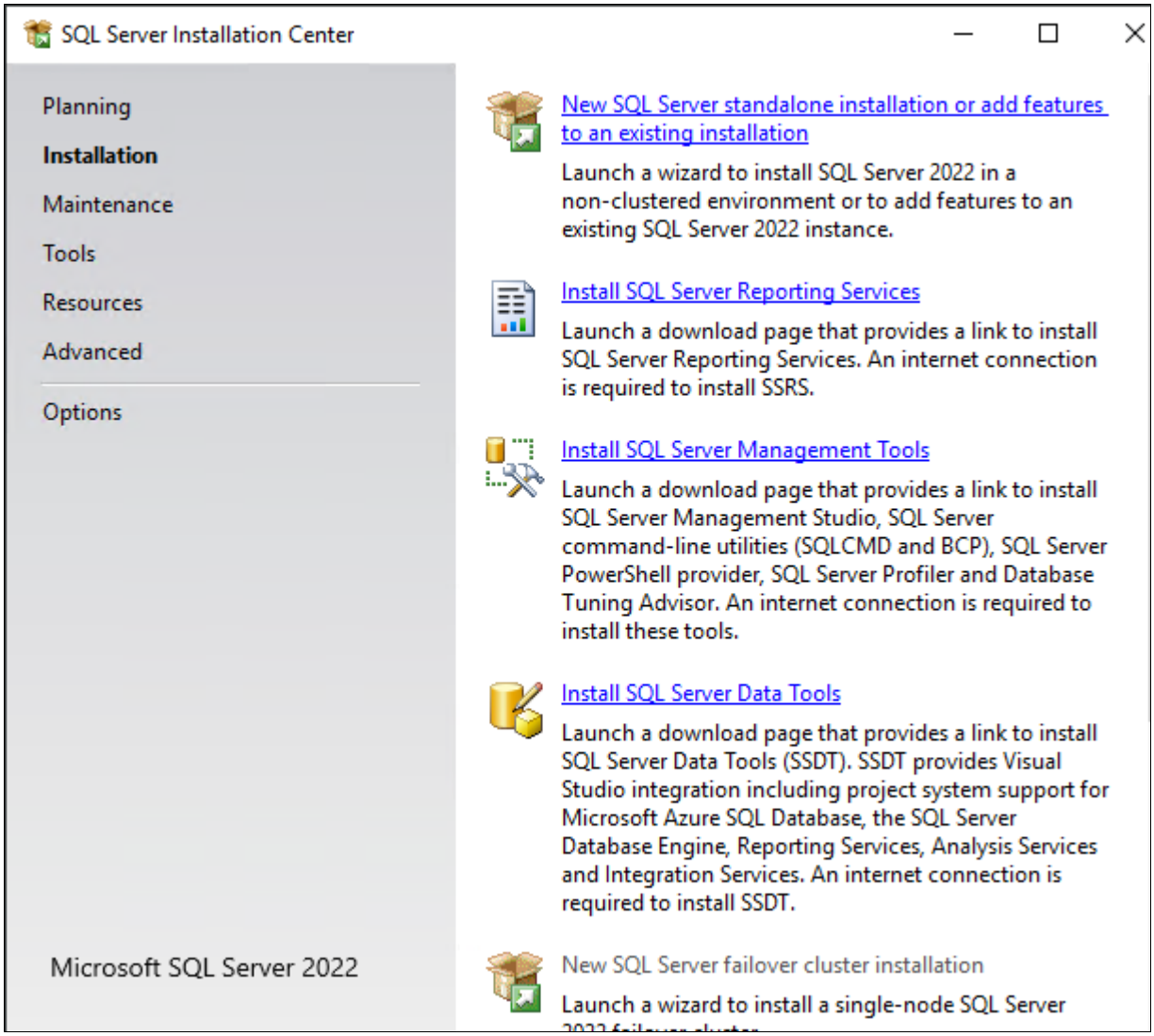
3. Select the Installation link in the left-hand navigation tree.



SQL Server Installation Center Planning window

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

4. In the frame on the right, select the link New SQL Server stand-alone installation or add features to an existing installation, which is the first link in this example:



SQL Server Installation Center Installation window

A message box appears asking you to wait while Microsoft SQL Server 2022 Setup processes the current operation.

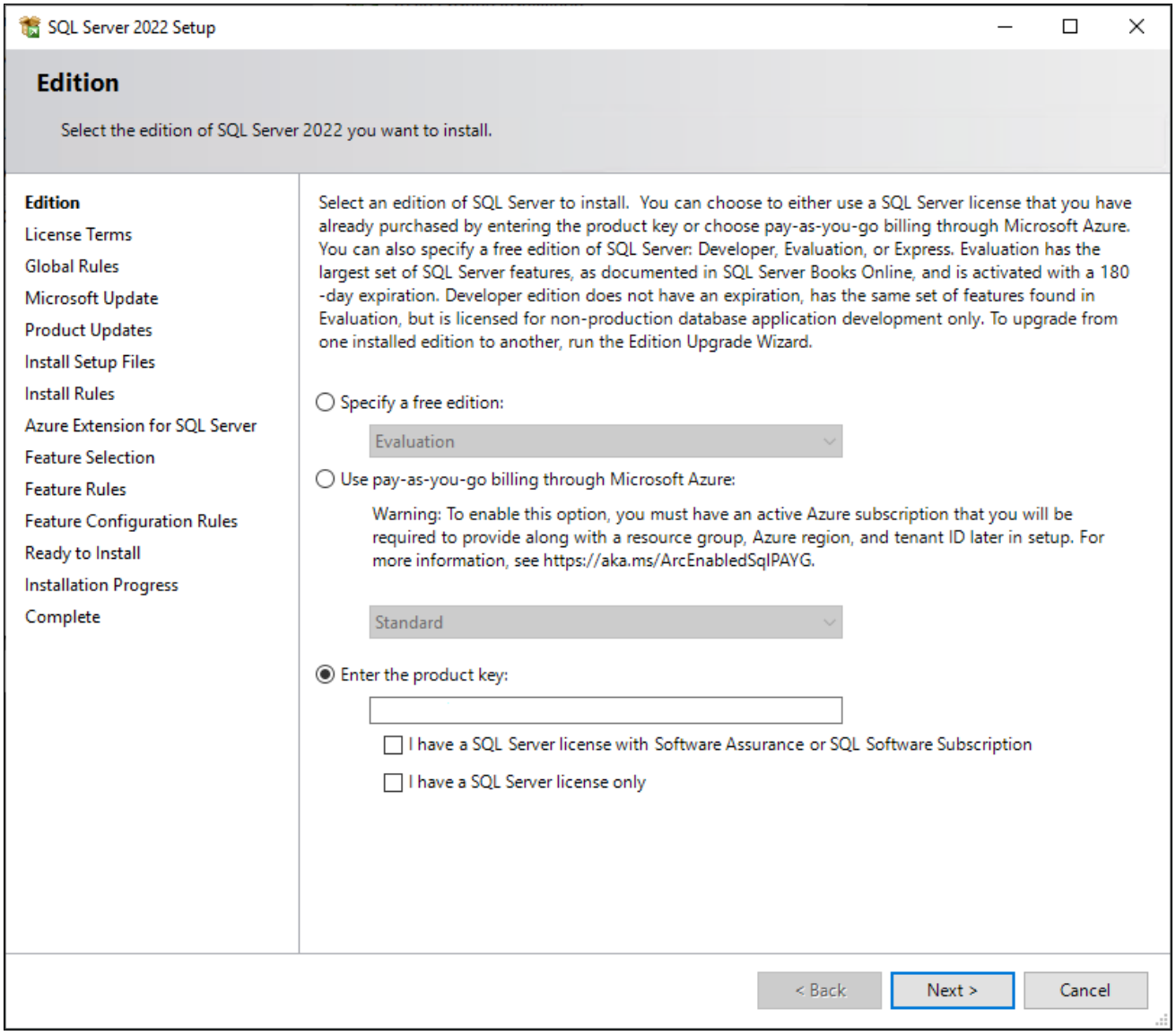
After the process is complete the Product Key window appears.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

5. Enter your product key value and select the option that describes your license.

   Choose the option for either "I have a SQL Server license with Software Assurance or SQL Software Subscription" or "I have a SQL Server license only."

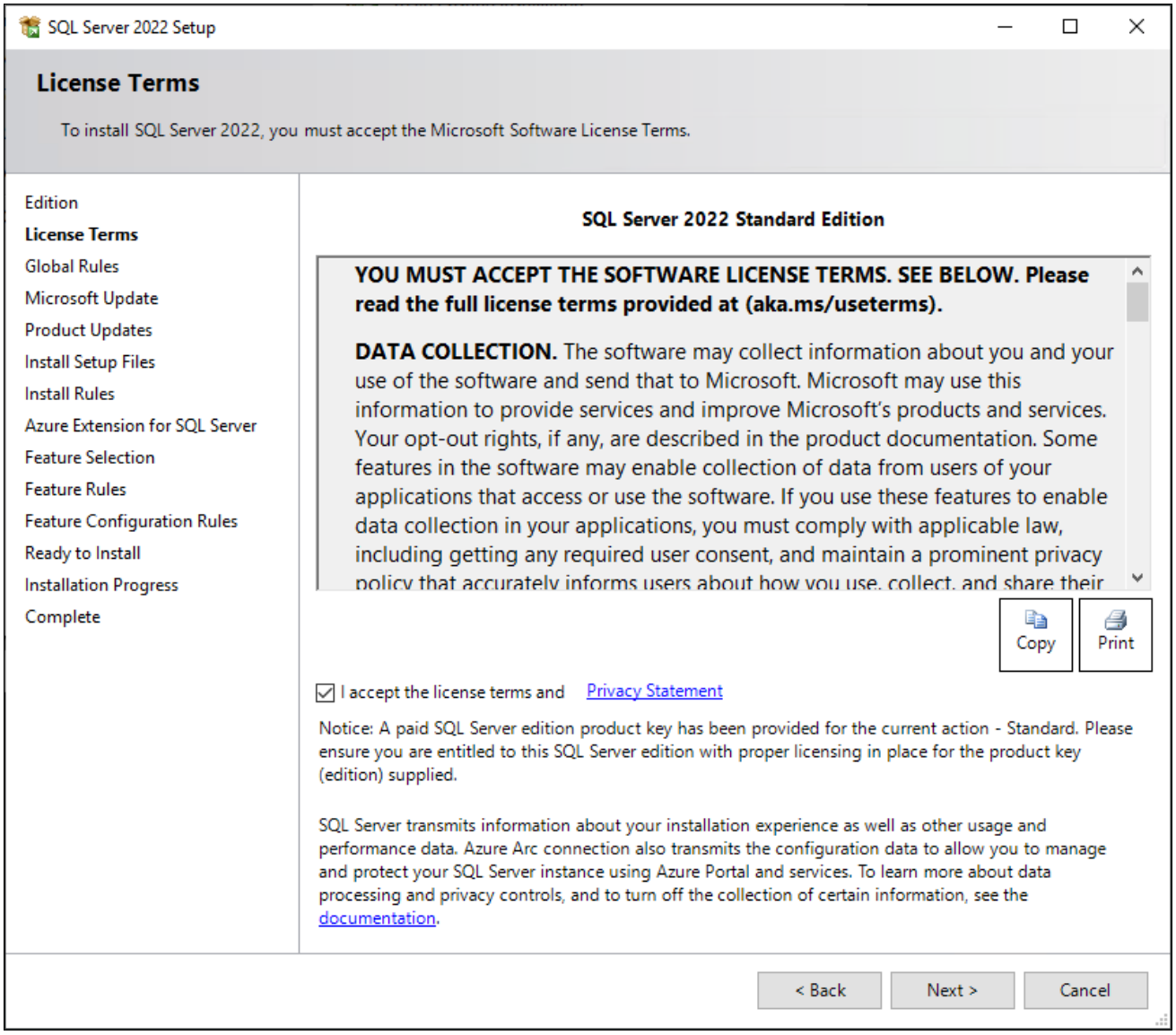
   If the product key value field is already populated, ignore this step and click Next to continue to the License Terms window. In this example the field for Enter the product key is blank:



SQL Server 2022 Setup: Product Key window

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

6. Read the terms and conditions carefully and select the check box I accept the license terms, as shown in this example:



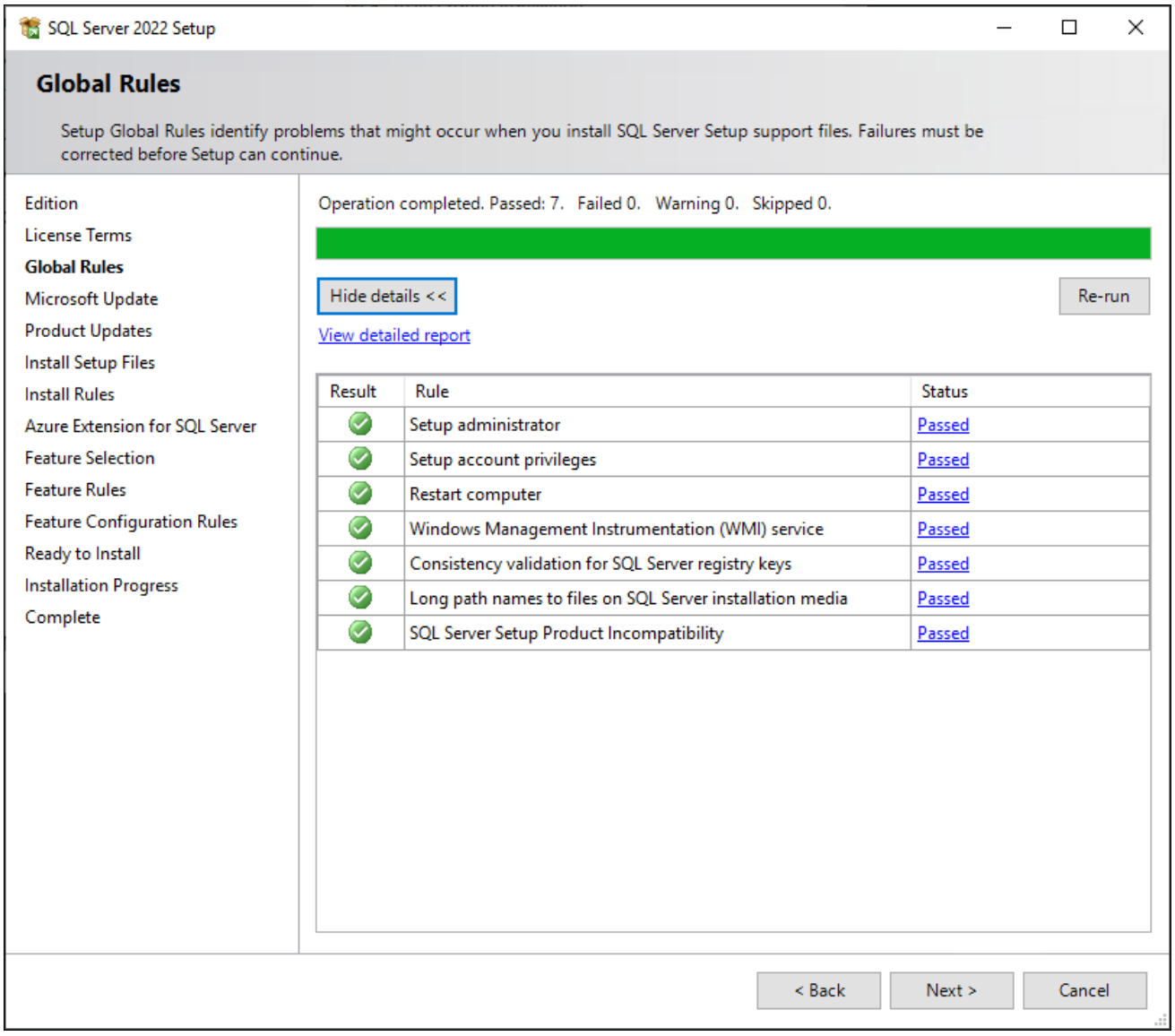
SQL Server 2022 Setup: License Terms window

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

7. Click Next.

   The Global Rules window appears. Wait until the process verifying global rules is complete. Verify that all the rules have passed, as shown in the Status column in this example:

Note. If all of the rules pass, the process may bypass this window. You can click Back if you want to review it.

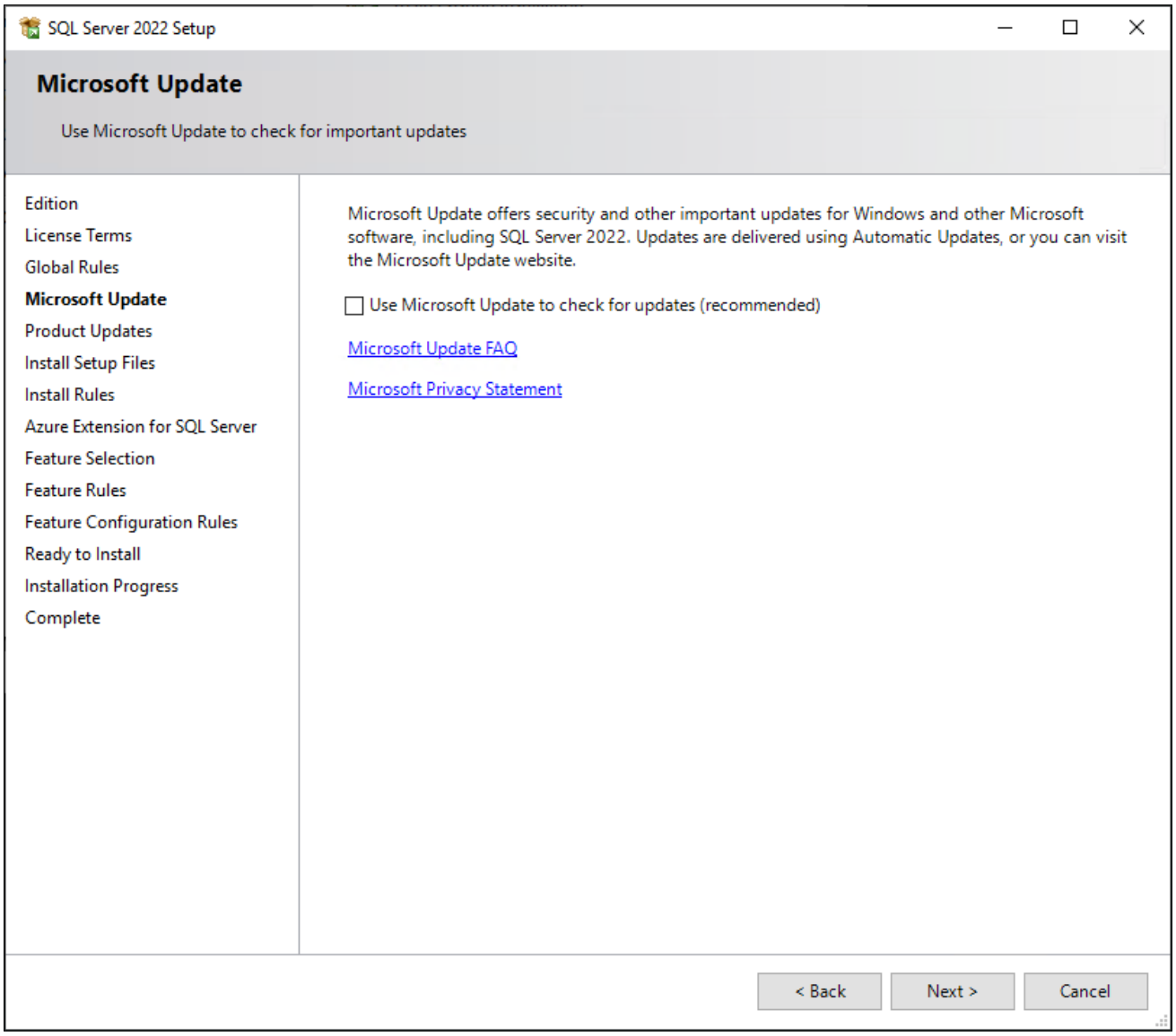


SQL Server 2022 Setup: Global Rules window

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

8. Click Next.

   The Microsoft Update window appears. Clear the check box for "Use Microsoft Update to check for updates (recommended)", as shown in this example:



SQL Server 2022 Setup: Microsoft Update window

9. Click Next.

   The Install Setup Files window appears. Wait until the progress bar indicates that the process to install setup files and scan for product updates is complete.

10. Click Next.

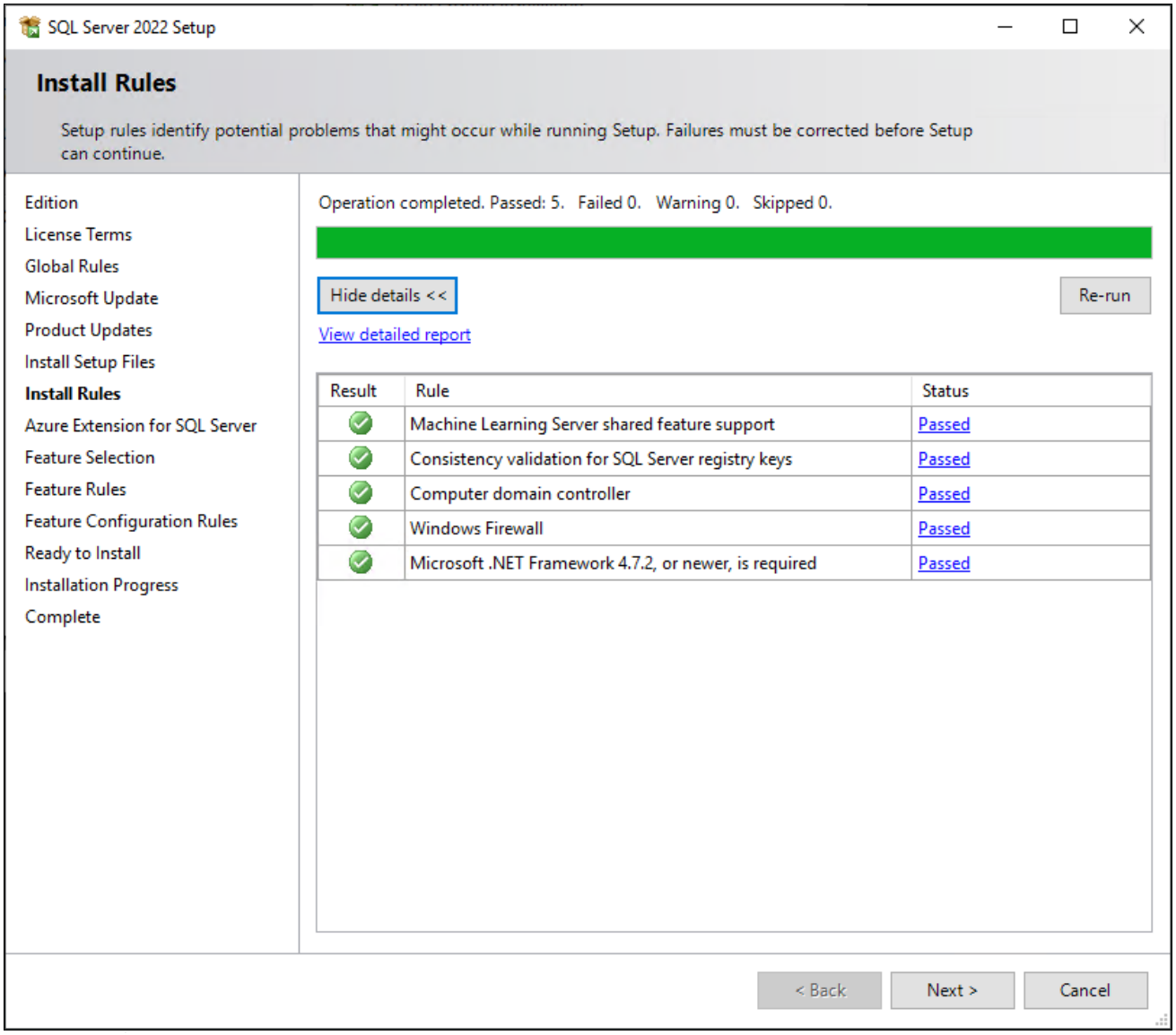
    The Install Rules window appears. The setup operation checks for problems that might occur when you install support files. Click Show Details.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

11. Verify that all of the listed Rules display Passed in the Status column, as shown in this example.

    If any one of the rules has not passed, select the link in the Status column to check the reason for the failure.

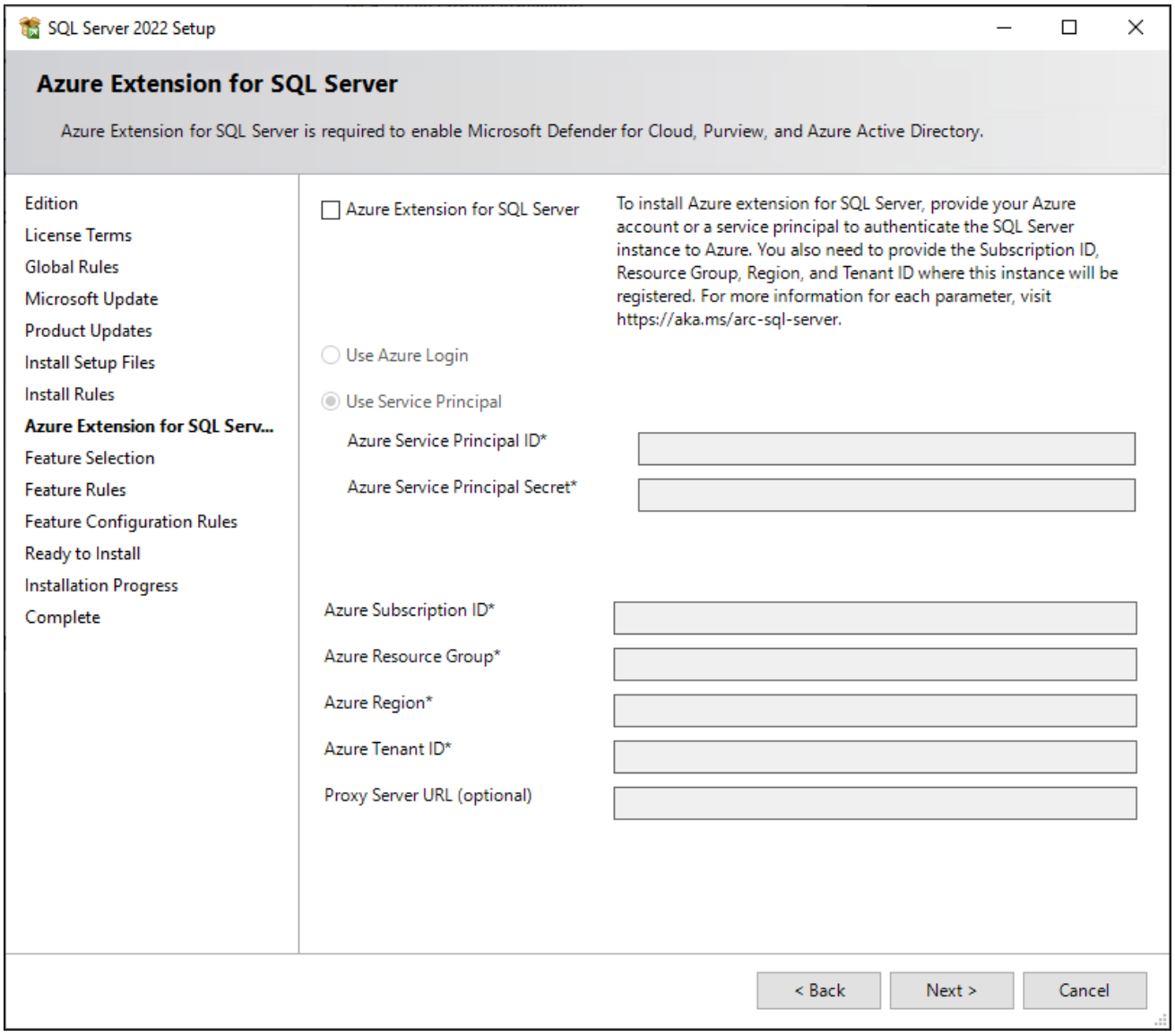
Note. If all of the rules pass, the process may bypass this window. You can click Back if you want to review it.



SQL Server 2022 Setup: Install Rules window

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

12. Clear the check box for Azure Extension for SQL Server and click Next.

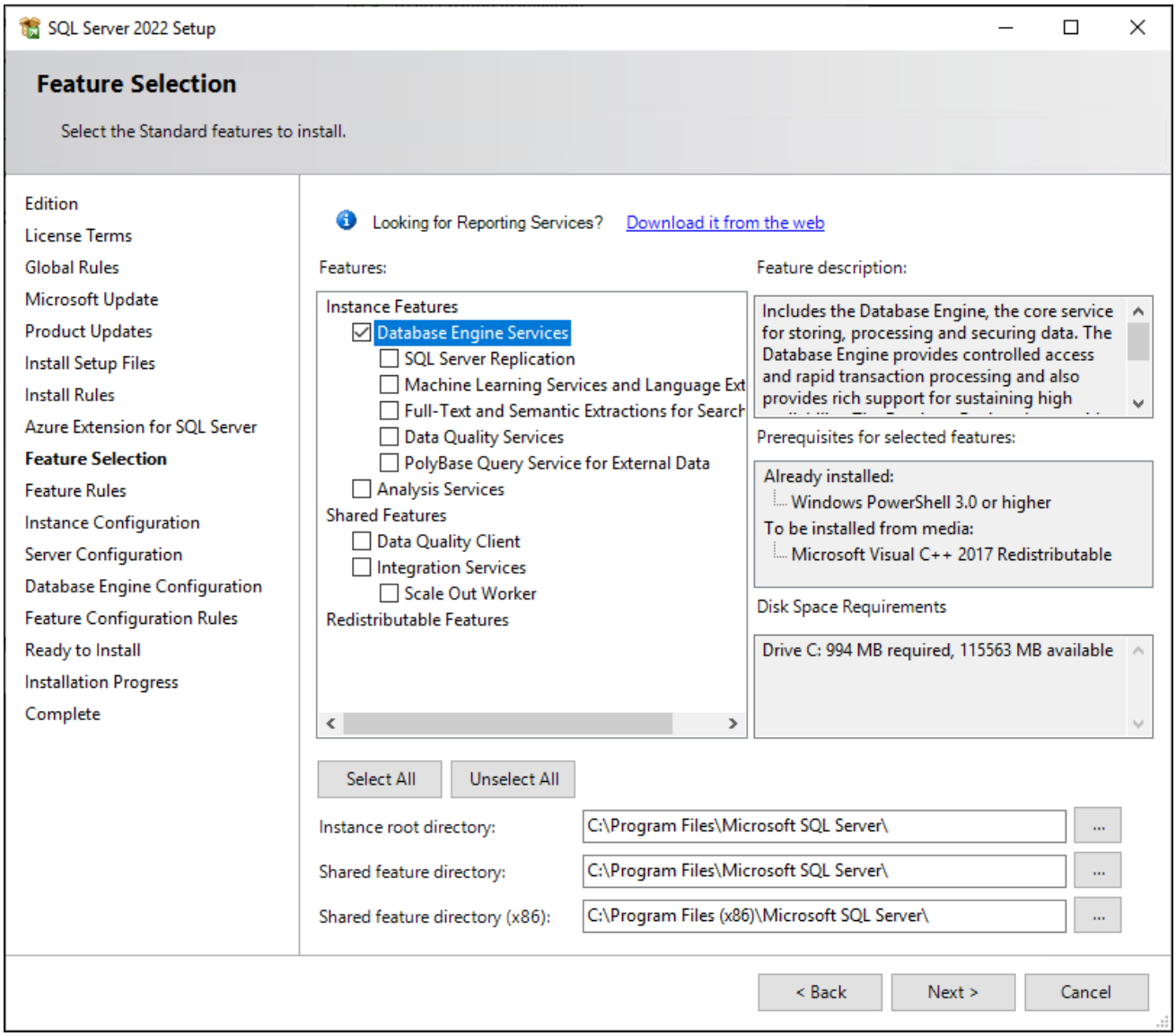


SQL Server 2022 Setup: Azure Extension for SQL Server window

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

13. A Feature Selection window appears that lists all the features of Microsoft SQL Server 2022 that are available to be installed.

    This example shows the Feature Selection window with the features required for a PeopleSoft installation selected. These features are listed following the example.



SQL Server 2022 Setup: Feature Selection window

    For your PeopleSoft installation, select Database Engine Services.

14. Clear the check boxes beside the remaining features.
15. Click Next.

    The Feature Rules window appears, and the setup operation runs rules to determine whether the installation will be blocked.

16. Click Show Details on the Feature Rules window.

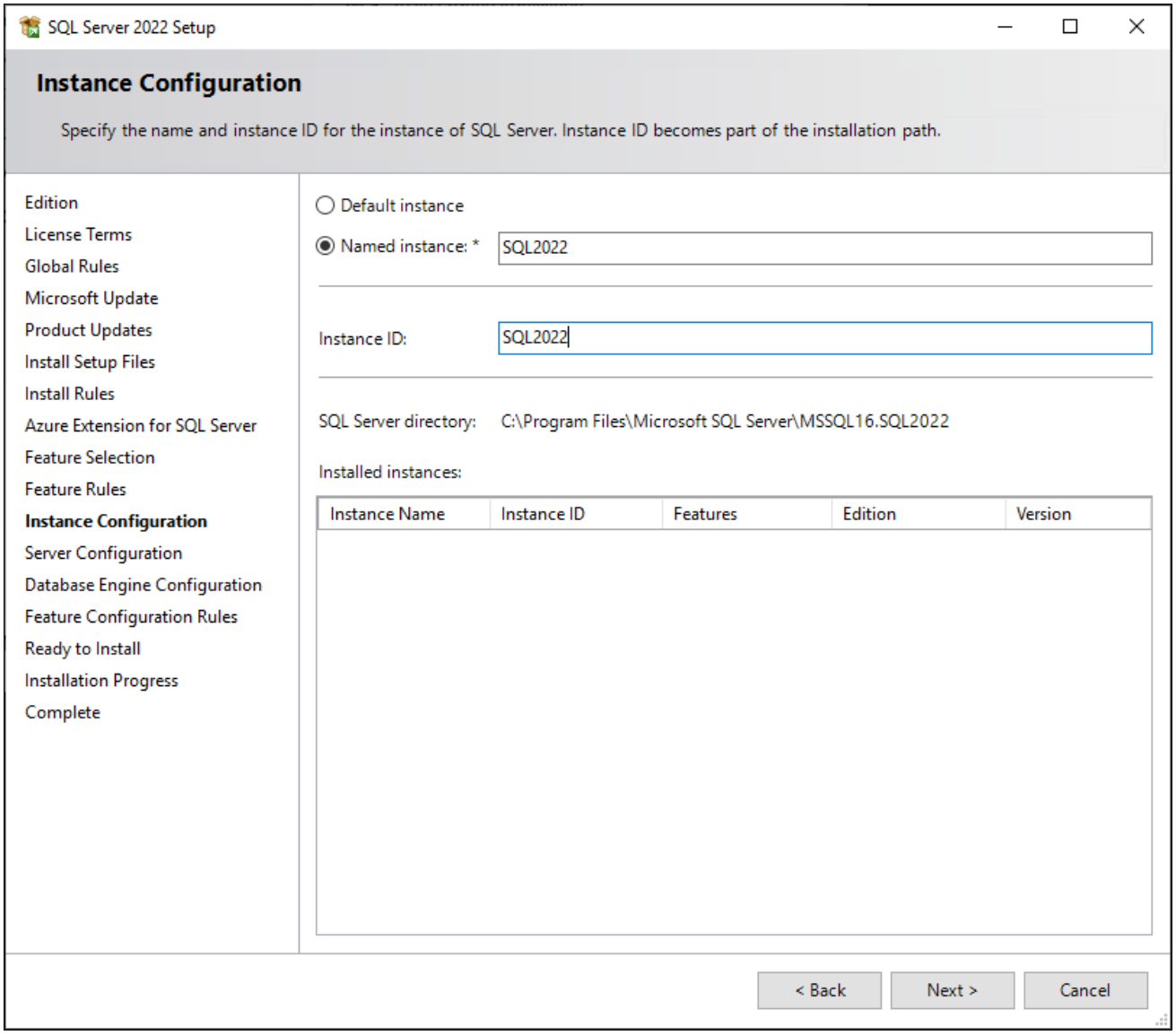
    Verify that all of the listed Rules display Passed in the Status column. If any one of them has not passed, select the link in the Status column to check the reason for the failure.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Note. If all of the rules pass, the process may bypass the window. You can click Back if you want to review it.

17. Click Next.

    The Instance Configuration window appears. Enter *SQL2022* as the named instance and the Instance ID, as shown in this example. The window also displays the SQL Server directory, in this example C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\MSSQL16.SQL2022.

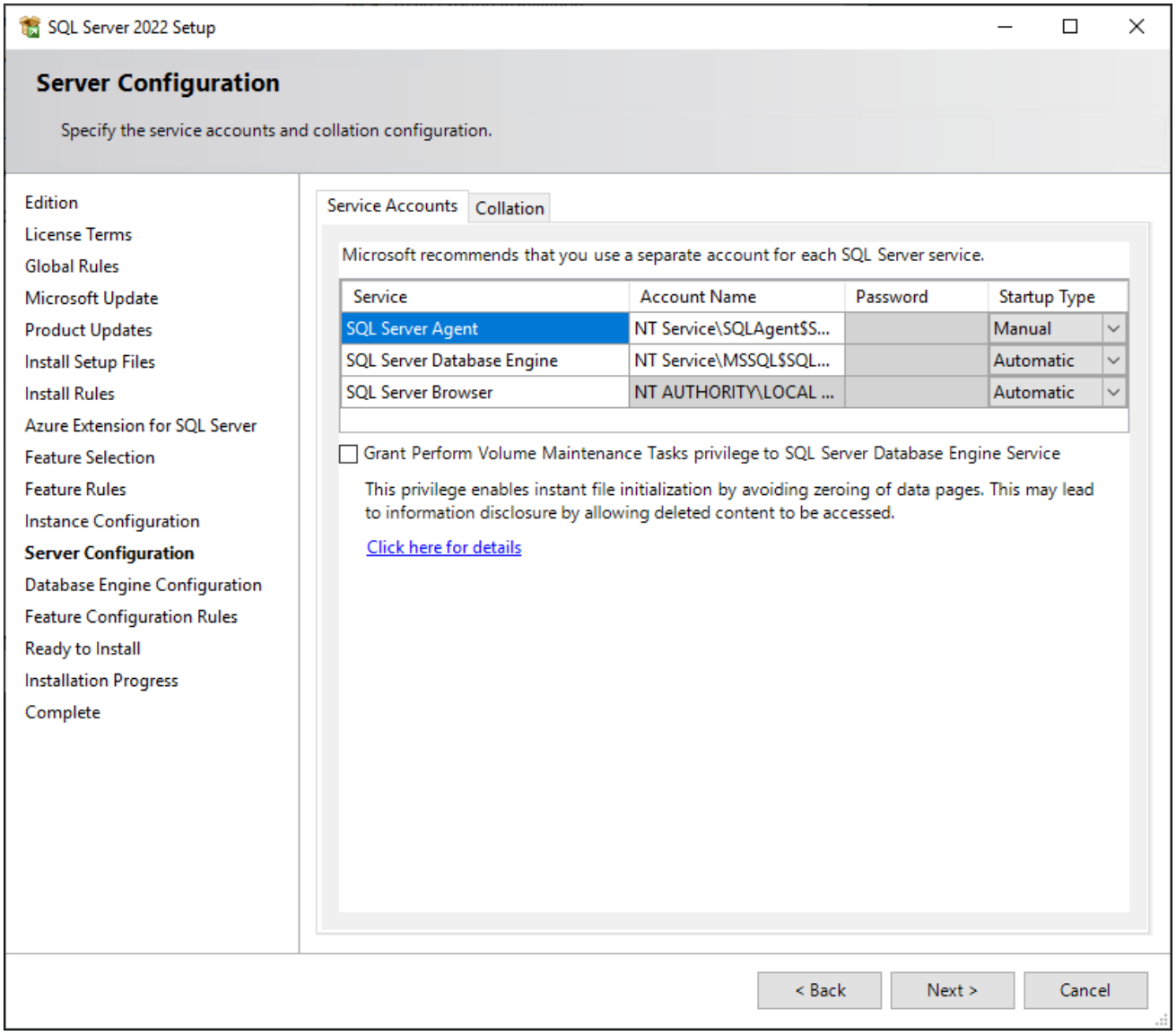


SQL Server 2022 Setup: Instance Configuration window

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

18. Click Next.

The Server Configuration window appears, as shown in this example.

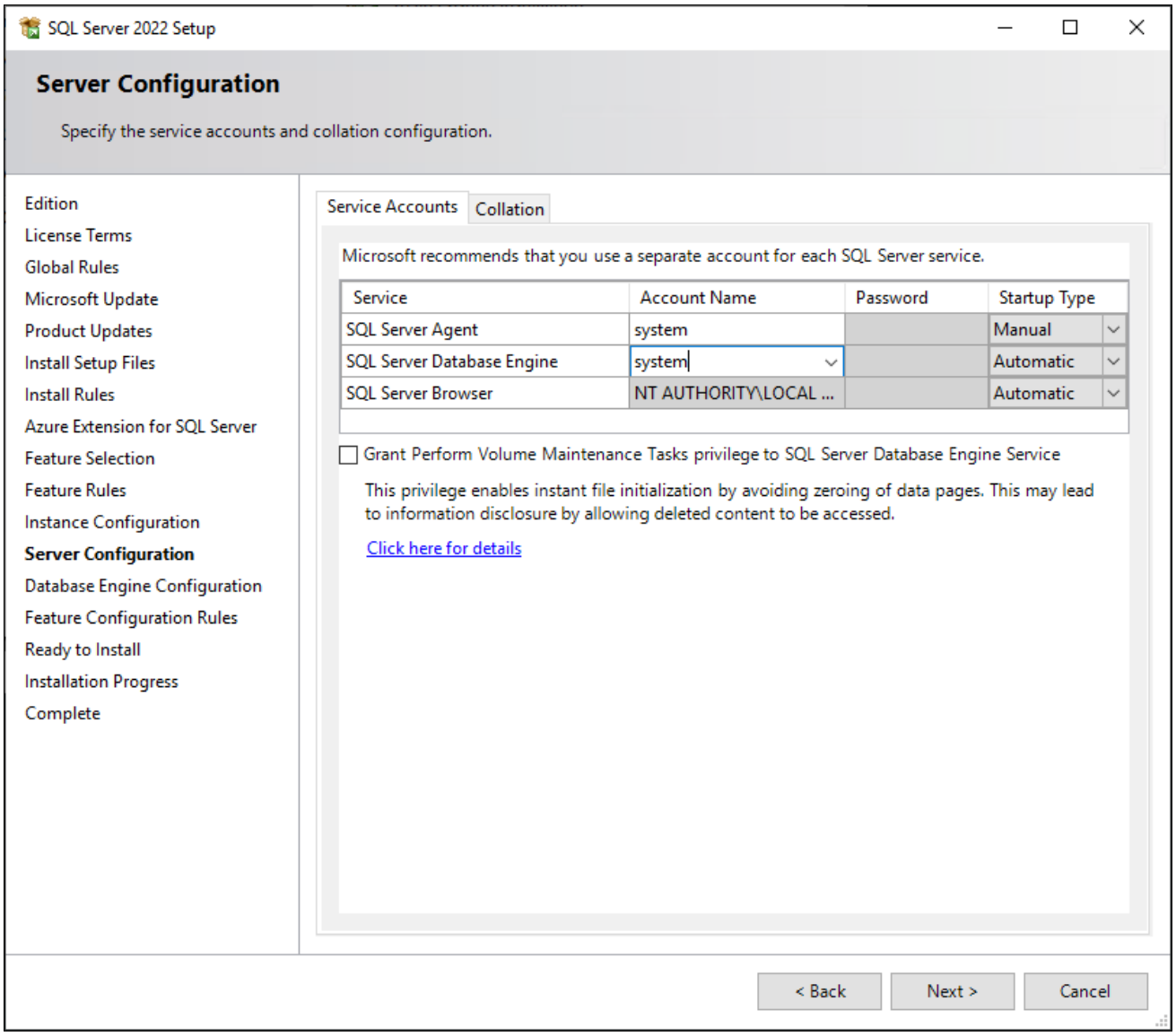


SQL Server 2022 Setup: Server Configuration window

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

19. Specify the service accounts in the Account Name fields.

    This example uses the same account for the Database Engine and Agent, however, be aware that Microsoft recommends that you configure each of the SQL Server services separately.



SQL Server 2022 Setup: Server Configuration window

a. Enter *system* as the account name for SQL Server Agent and SQL Server Database Engine to use the local system account.

   Do not use a domain user account.

b. Select *Manual* startup type for SQL Server Agent.

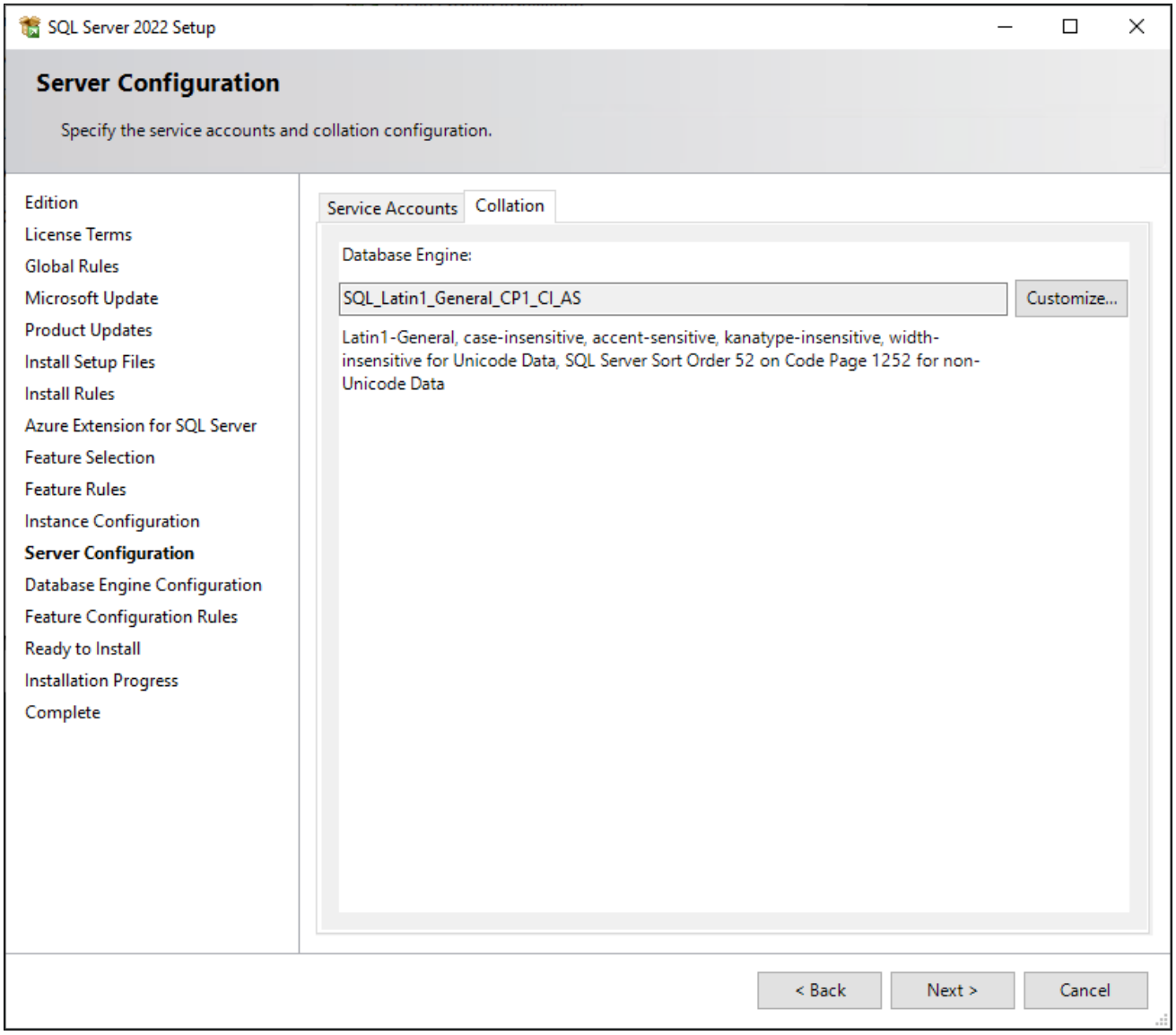
c. Select *Automatic* startup type for SQL Server Database Engine.

d. Select *Automatic* startup type for SQL Server Browser.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

20. Still on the Server Configuration window, select the Collation page.

    This example shows the default collation, SQL_Latin1_General_CP1_CI_AS.

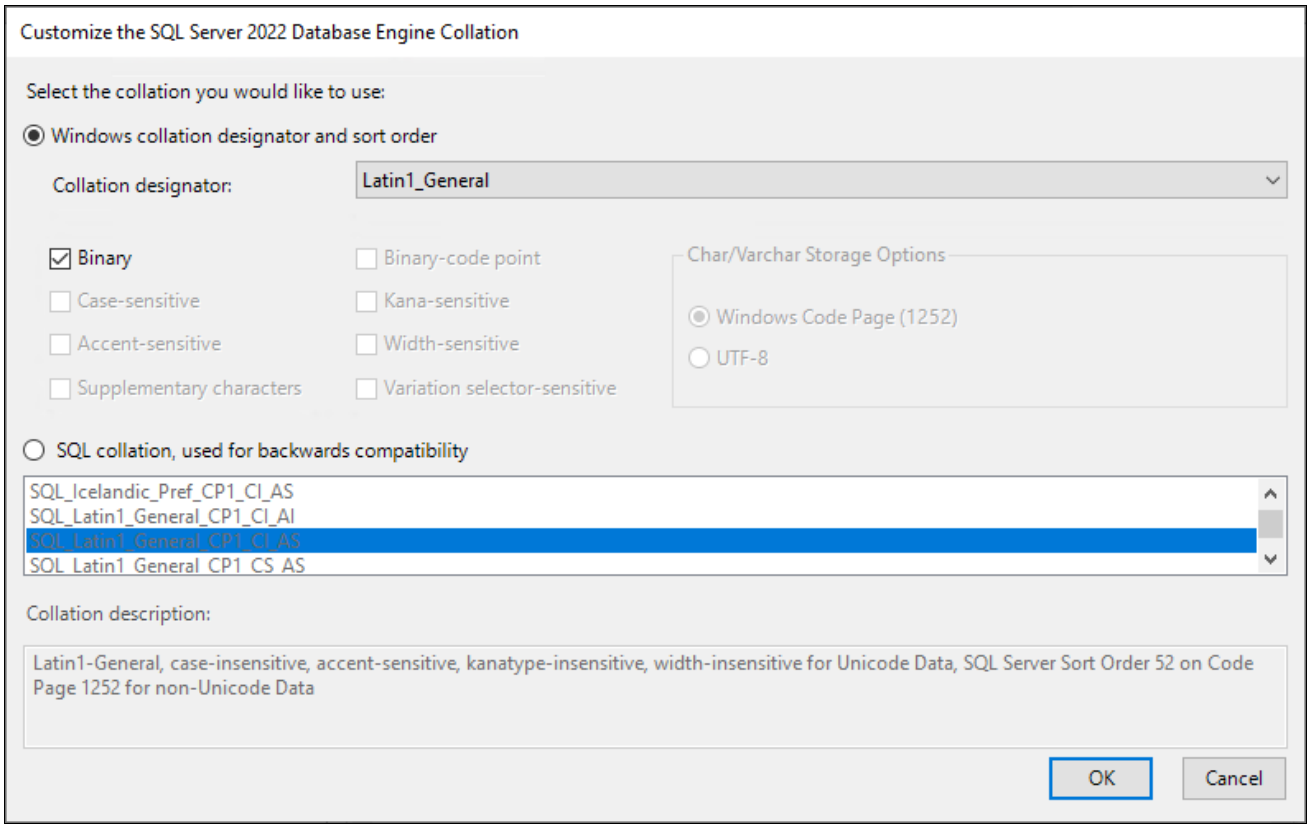


SQL Server 2022 Setup: Server Configuration window, Collation page

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

21. Click Customize to change the collation.

    On the Customize the SQL Server 2022 Database Engine Collation window, select the option Windows collation designator and sort order. Select *Latin1_General* from the Collation designator drop-down list, and select the Binary option, as shown in this example:



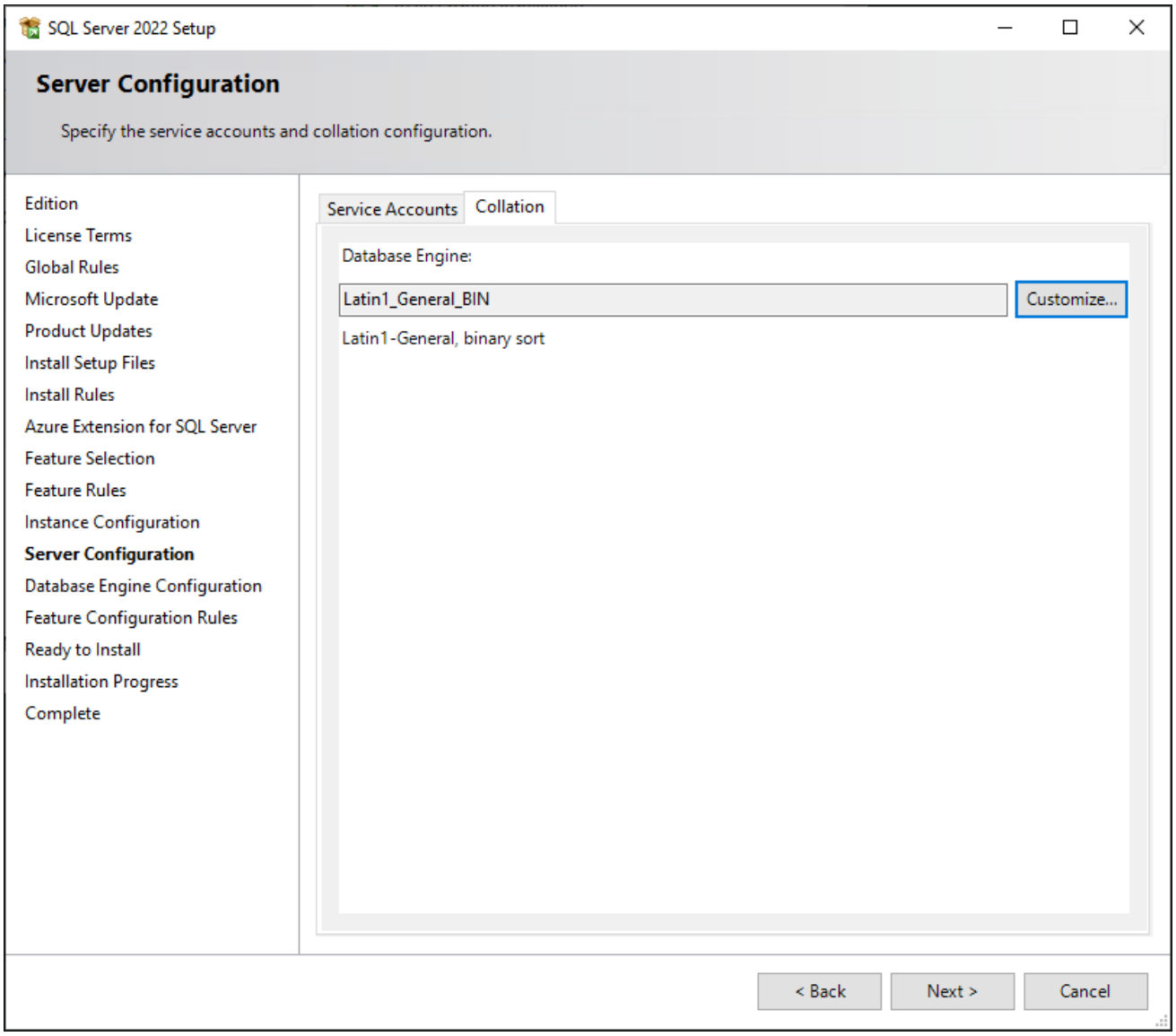
Customize the SQL Server 2022 Database Engine Collation window

Selecting these options changes the collation to Latin1_General_BIN. Your collation designation may vary if you are not using English.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

22. Click OK.

Verify on the Server Configuration Collation page that the collation is Latin1_General_BIN, Latin1-General, binary sort, as shown in this example:

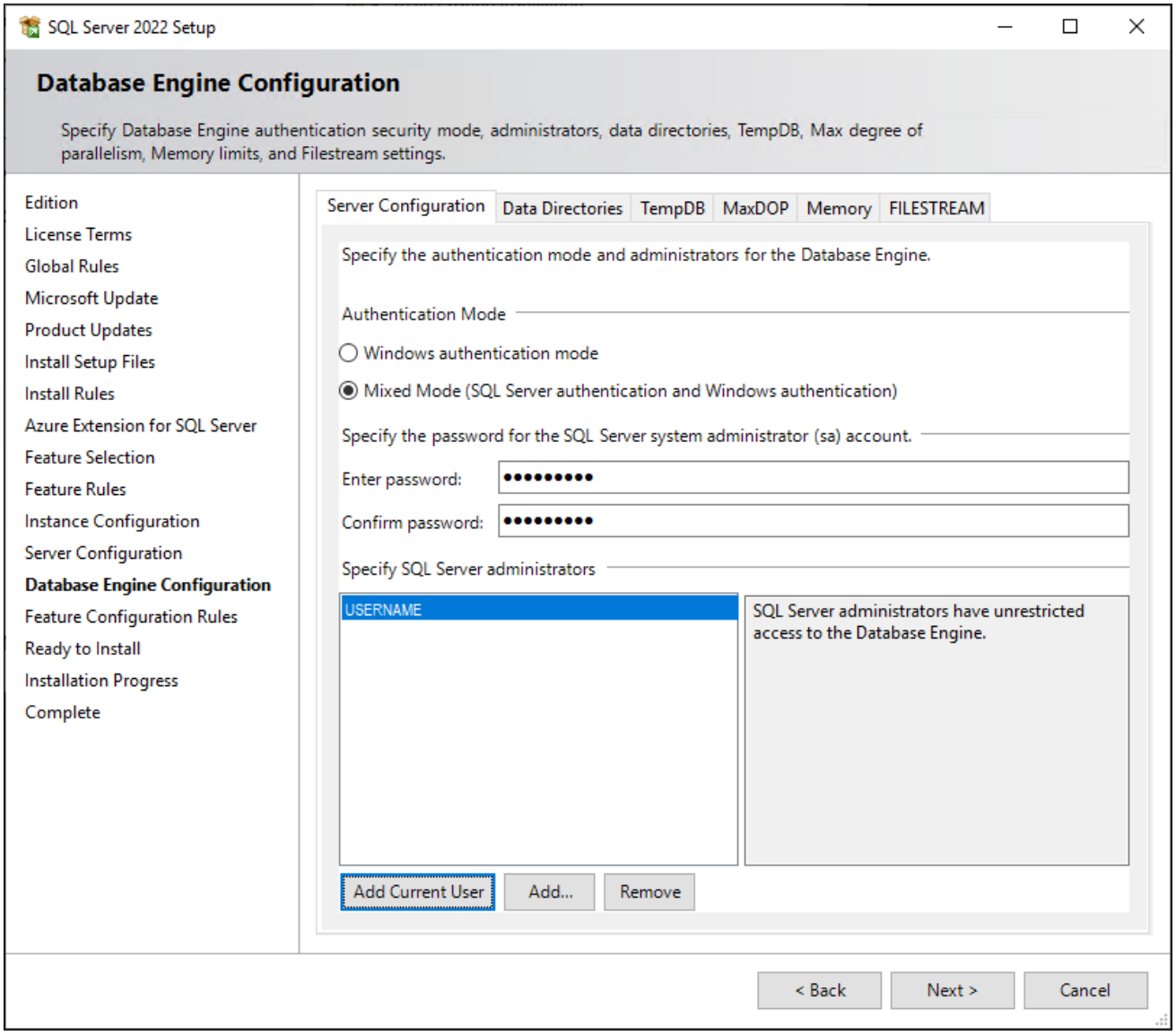


SQL Server 2022 Setup: Server Configuration window, Collation page after updating

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

23. Click Next.

The Database Engine Configuration window appears as shown in this example:



SQL Server 2022 Setup: Database Engine Configuration window

On the Server Configuration page, specify the following:

- Select the Mixed Mode (SQL Server authentication and Windows authentication) option in the Authentication Mode area.
- Enter and confirm a secure Microsoft SQL Server administrator (sa) password.

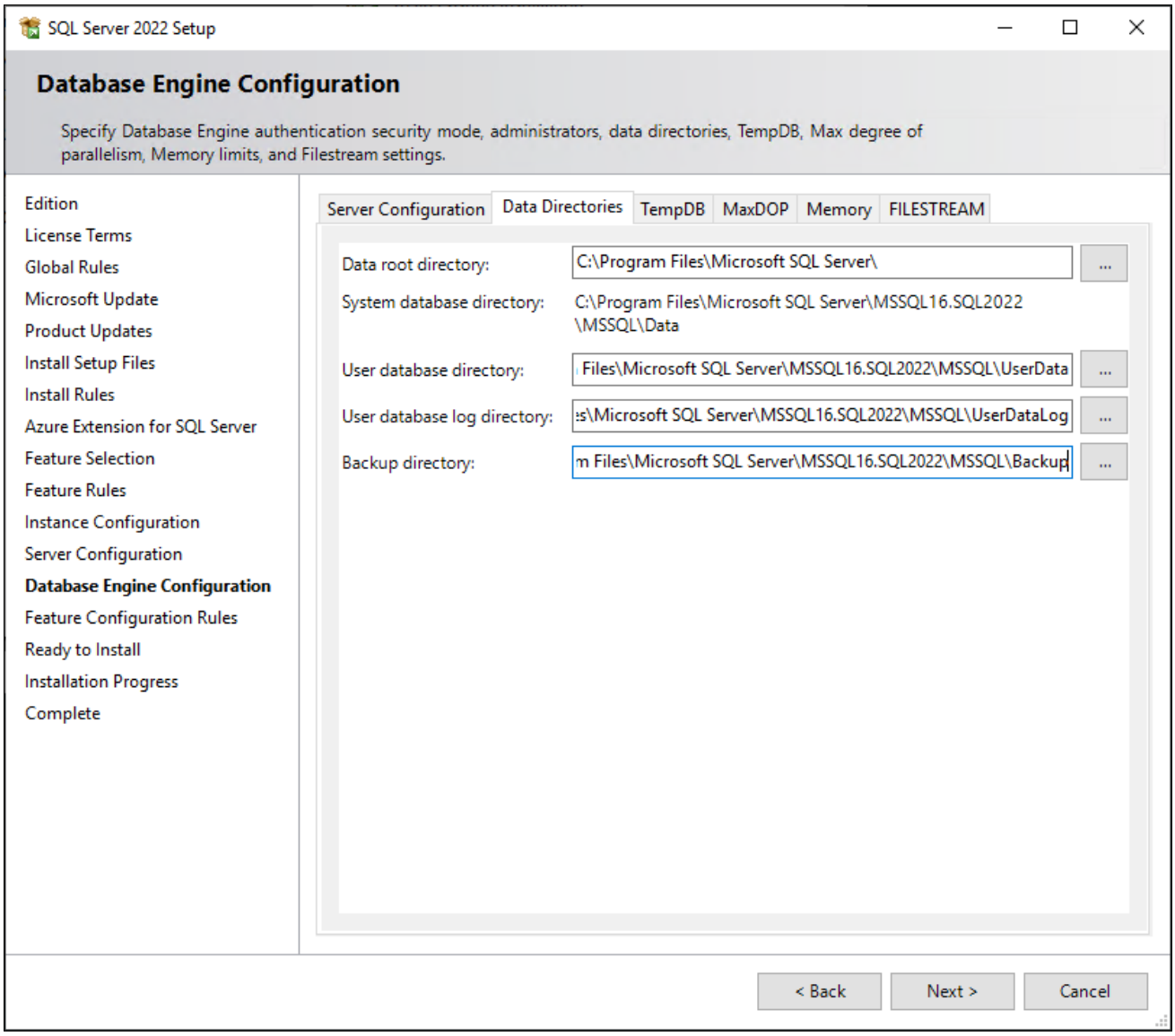
  The password must meet password policy requirements given in the Microsoft documentation for SQL Server 2022.
- Click Add Current User to add the user under whose account the setup is running.

  The current user shown in the example is USERNAME.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

24. Still on the Database Engine Configuration window, select the Data Directories page.

    Microsoft recommends that the directories included on this page reside in different locations. Ensure that the User database directory and the User database log directory are located in separate directories. In addition, the Backup directory should be in a separate location if possible. In this example, the User database directory is UserData, the User database log directory is UserDataLog, and the Backup directory is Backup. These three directories, and the Data directory, reside under C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\MSSQL16.SQL2022\MSSQL.



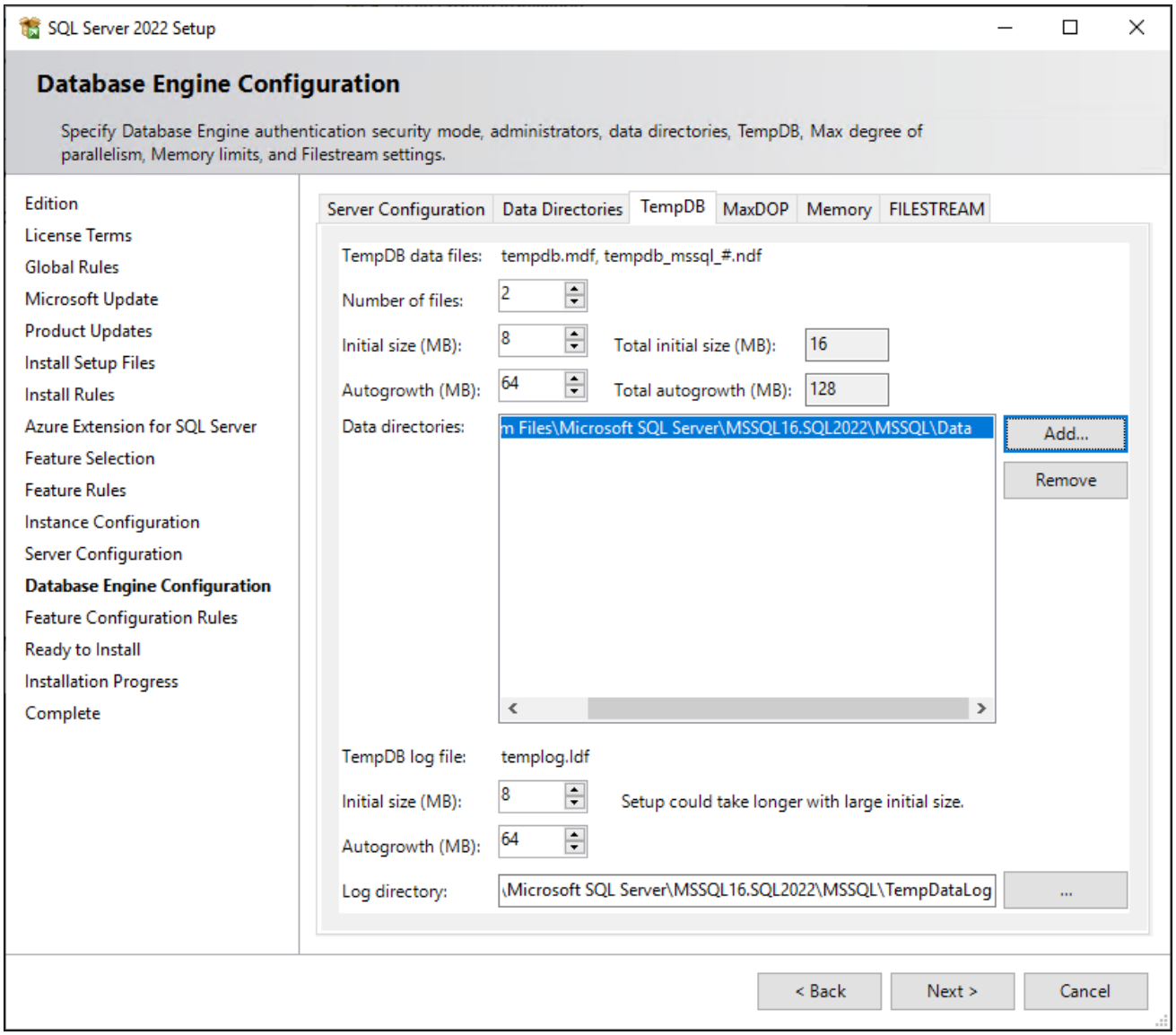
SQL Server 2022 Setup: Database Engine Configuration window, Data Directories page

Consult the Microsoft support site, support.microsoft.com, for recommendations and best practices for the physical layout of database files, transaction log files, and temp DB.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

25. Select the TempDB page.

    Ensure that the temp database data and log files are in separate directories. In this example, the temp database data directory is C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\MSSQL16.SQL2022\MSSQL\Data, and the log directory is C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\MSSQL16.SQL2022\MSSQL\TempDataLog.



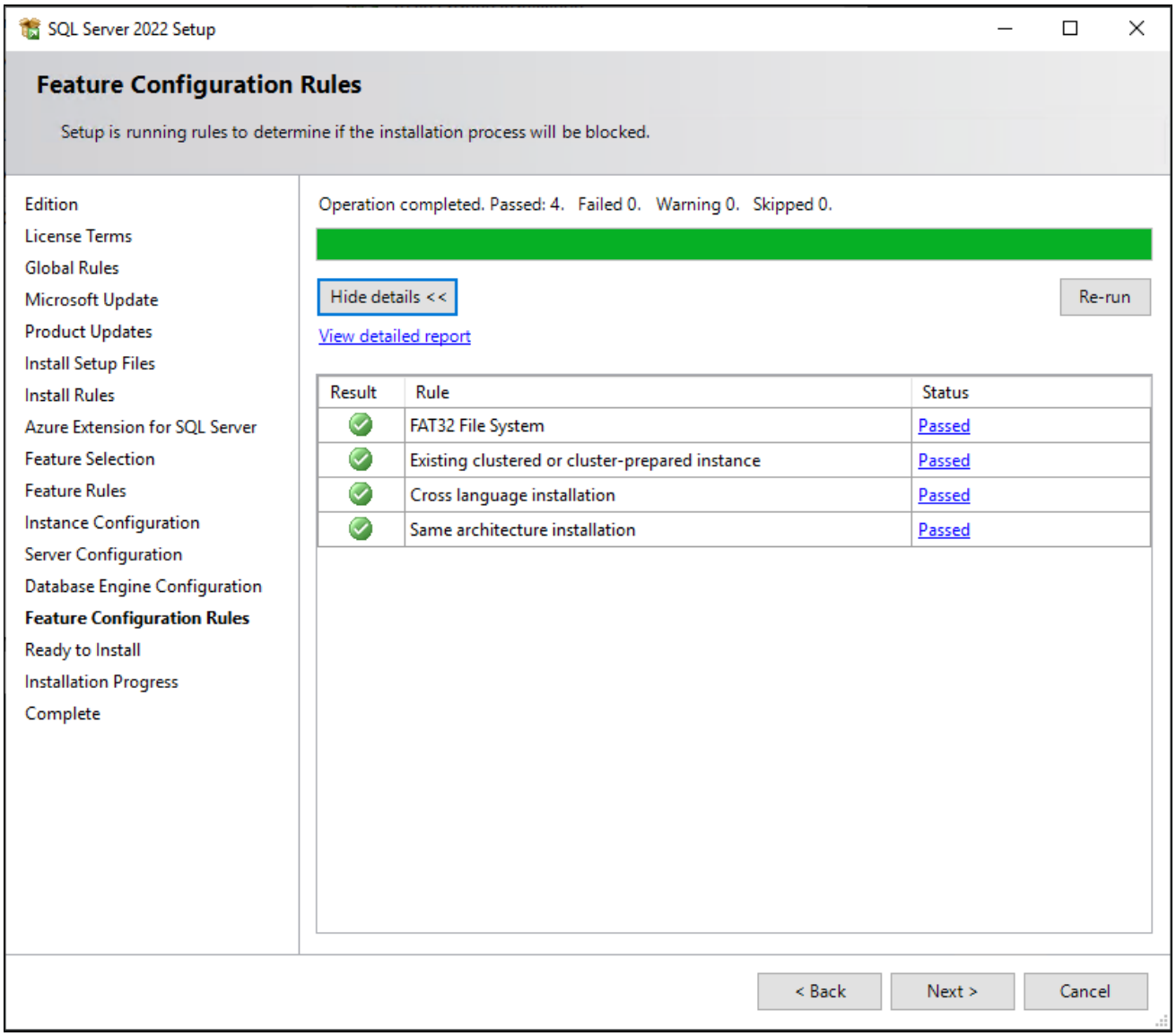
SQL Server 2022 Setup: Database Engine Configuration window, TempDB page

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

26. Click Next.

The Feature Configuration Rules window appears. The setup operation runs rules to determine whether the installation will be blocked. Wait until the operation is complete, and then click Show details. Verify that all of the rules have Passed in the Status column, as shown in this example. If any rule does not pass, click the link in the Status column to check the reason for the failure.

Note. If all of the rules pass, the process may bypass this window. You can click Back if you want to review it.

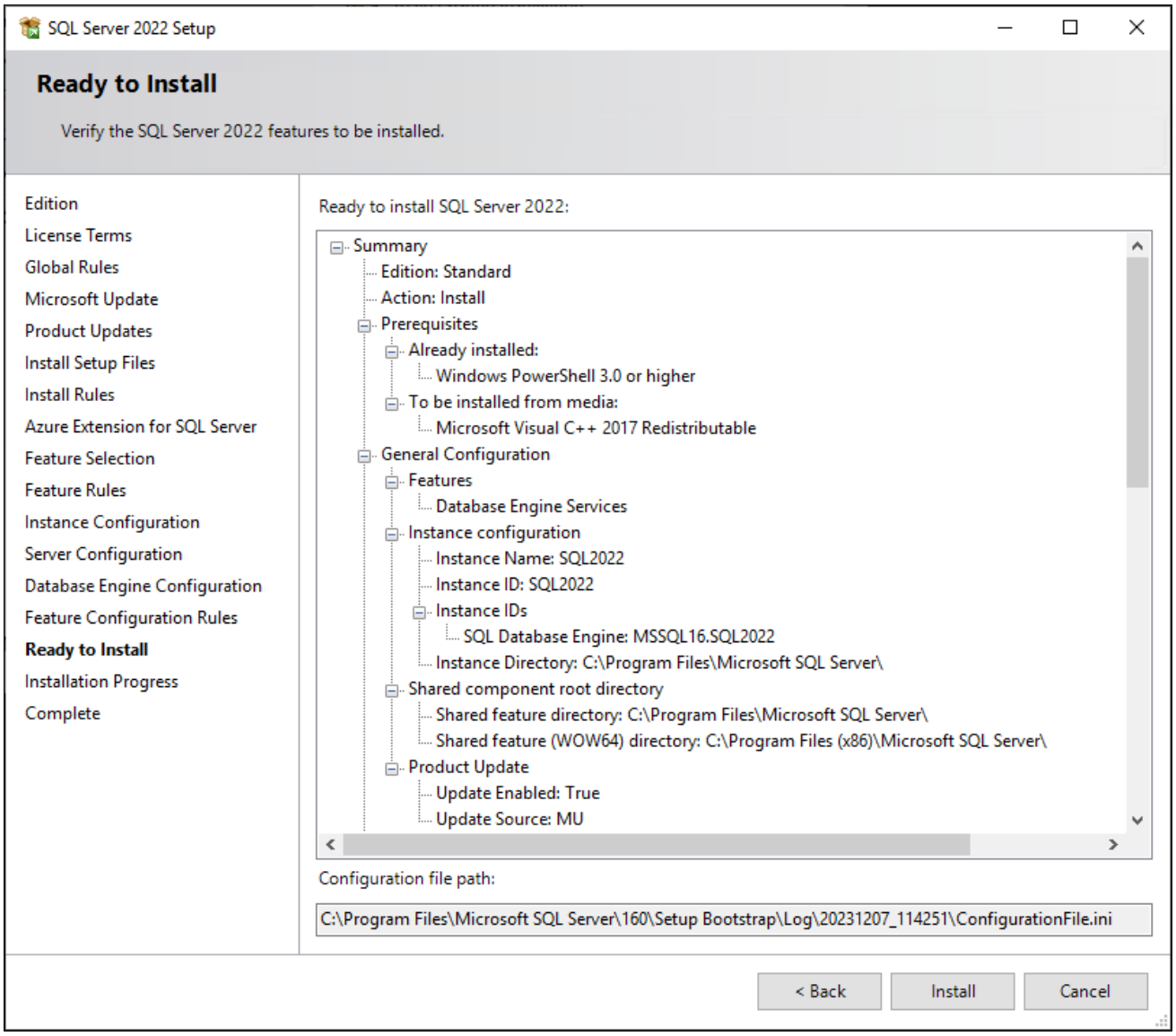


SQL Server 2022 Setup: Feature Configuration Rules window

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

27. Click Next.

The Ready to Install window appears with a summary of the features and settings that you have selected, as shown in this example. Select Install to proceed or Back to go back and correct a setting.



SQL Server 2022 Setup: Ready to Install window

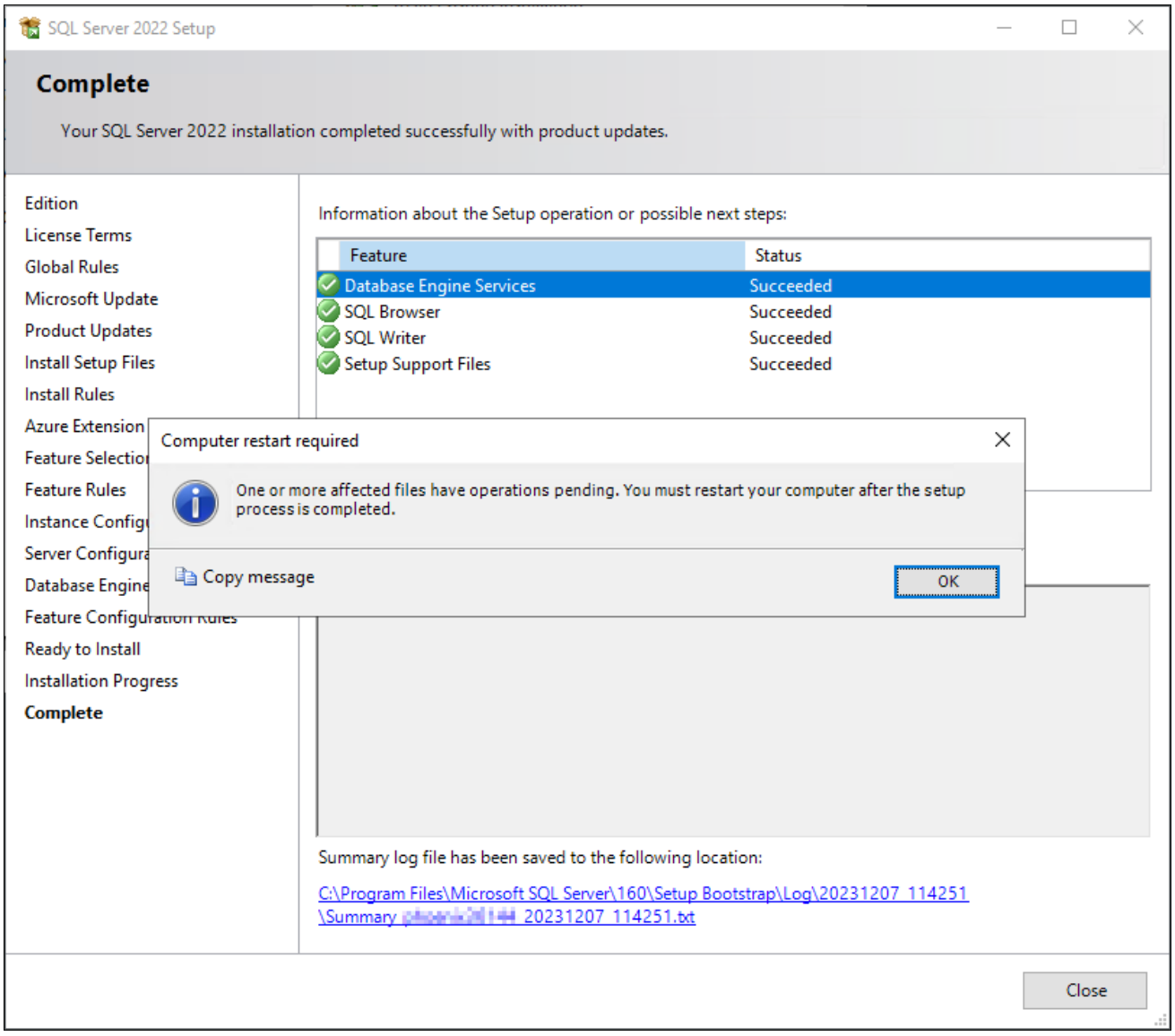
A window appears showing the progress of the installation. The installation requires 10-15 minutes, and may depend upon your system configuration.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

28. Wait for all the components to install successfully.

    All of the components should show a status of Succeeded as shown in this example. If any one of them shows a status of Failed select the status link to check the reason for the failure.

    You may see a message instructing you to restart your computer, as in the example.



SQL Server 2022 Setup: Complete window

The window also includes the location of the setup log files (*<identifier>* is a string including a timestamp): C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\160\Setup Bootstrap\Log*<identifier>*\Summary*<identifier>*.txt

Task 23-2: Starting and Stopping Microsoft SQL Server 2022

To start or stop the server:

1. Locate and select SQL Server 2022 Configuration Manager.

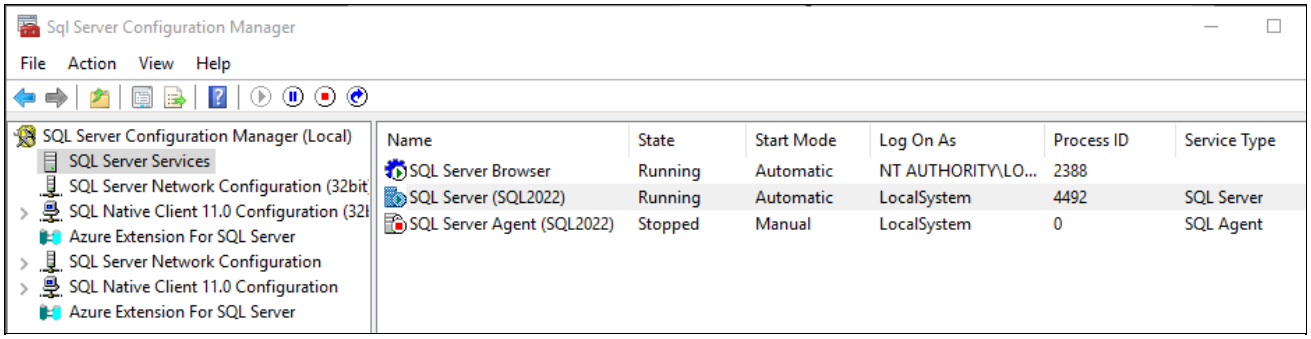
   The SQL Server Configuration Manager window opens. The method you use to locate the program may vary

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

depending upon your operating system. For example, select Start, and scroll through the list of programs.

2. On the left side of the window select SQL Server Services, and on the right side select the server or instance name that you want to start or stop.
3. If the service is running, highlight the service name and click the stop button on the top menu bar.

   In this example the SQL Server service, which is highlighted, is running, and the SQL Server Agent is stopped.



Sql Server Configuration Manager

4. If the service is stopped, highlight the name and click the start button on the top menu bar.

Task 23-3: Configuring the Connection to Use ODBC Driver for Microsoft SQL Server 2022

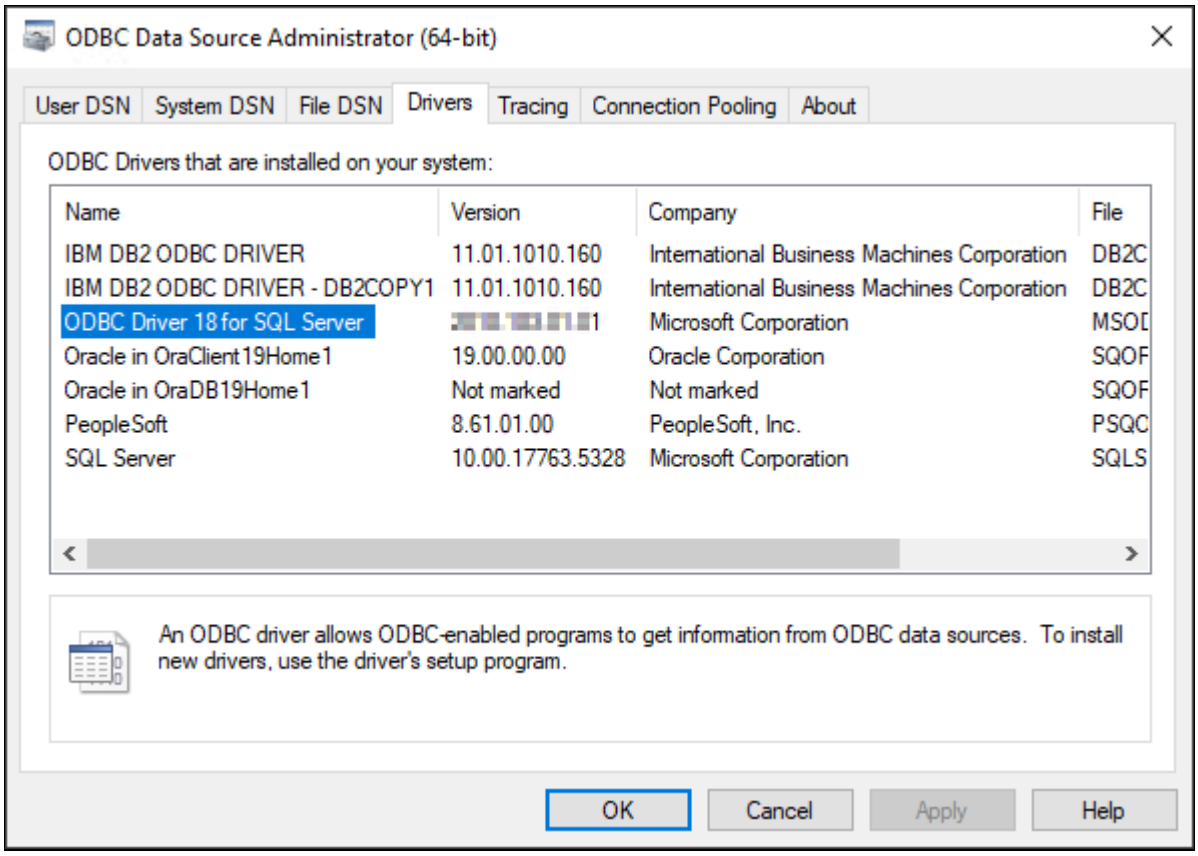
When configuring ODBC to connect to your SQL Server 2022 databases, make sure you use a version that is certified for the current PeopleSoft PeopleTools release to connect to SQL Server 2022. ODBC Driver 17 and ODBC Driver 18 are supported for connection to SQL Server 2022.

To locate the certified versions for the ODBC drivers, go to My Oracle Support, Certifications. Access the certifications for the current PeopleSoft PeopleTools release and expand the Desktop Application, Browsers and Clients area to locate Microsoft SQL Server Client. Select one of the clients to review the notes, which include the ODBC version.

See Understanding ODBC Driver 17 and ODBC Driver 18 Settings in the chapter "Creating a Database Manually" for information on how ODBC Driver 17 and ODBC Driver 18 work with the current PeopleTools release.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

To check the ODBC driver version installed on your system, access the ODBC Data Source Administrator (64-bit) dialog box. For example, select Control Panel, System and Security, Administrative Tools, ODBC Data Sources. Select the Drivers tab. Confirm that the driver is a certified version of ODBC Driver 17 or ODBC Driver 18 for SQL Server.



ODBC Data Source Administrator

See Also

"Creating a Database Manually," Configuring an ODBC Data Source

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Chapter 24

Upgrading to Microsoft SQL Server 2022

This chapter discusses:

- Understanding the Upgrade to Microsoft SQL Server 2022
- Preparing to Migrate
- Upgrading a PeopleSoft Database from Microsoft SQL Server 2019 to Microsoft SQL Server 2022
- Setting Up the Migrated Database

Understanding the Upgrade to Microsoft SQL Server 2022

This chapter provides pointers for migrating a PeopleSoft application database from Microsoft SQL Server 2019 to Microsoft SQL Server 2022. The following instructions are not intended as a replacement to the Microsoft SQL Server online documentation. Make sure you read and understand the migration instructions and process provided in the Microsoft SQL Server online documentation for upgrading SQL Server before attempting any database migration from Microsoft SQL Server 2019 to Microsoft SQL Server 2022. Another tool that may help on your migration efforts is the "Data Migration Assistant" provided by Microsoft.

In addition, please read the chapter "Installing Microsoft SQL Server 2022," which provides information on installing Microsoft SQL Server 2022 for PeopleSoft applications. Also refer to SQL Server 2022 online documentation, support.microsoft.com, or Microsoft support services for further details about Microsoft SQL Server 2022.

See My Oracle Support Certifications for PeopleSoft PeopleTools to determine the PeopleTools releases that support your Microsoft SQL Server versions.

Note. The guidelines given here can also be used for other upgrade paths, such as upgrading from Microsoft SQL Server 2017 to Microsoft SQL Server 2022.

Task 24-1: Preparing to Migrate

Before beginning the migration to Microsoft SQL Server 2022, you must:

- Back up your database files.

  Back up your existing Microsoft SQL Server database. After doing so, ensure that your backup was successful by restoring or loading the database into a "dummy" database. You may also want to back up the instance database files to have them ready to restore if necessary.

- Verify database integrity.

  You need to verify the integrity of your database and repair any problems before attempting a migration. Commands like `DBCC CHECKDB` are available to perform this task.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Task 24-2: Upgrading a PeopleSoft Database from Microsoft SQL Server 2019 to Microsoft SQL Server 2022

If you are currently using Microsoft SQL Server 2019 and would like to upgrade your PeopleSoft database to Microsoft SQL Server 2022 you have several alternatives. Select the one that best suits your environment necessities. The following are only suggestions of possible alternatives to accomplish this task.

- Restore a backup.

  To upgrade a Microsoft SQL Server 2019 database it is possible to back it up and restore it in Microsoft SQL Server 2022. This will automatically upgrade the database to Microsoft SQL Server 2022.

- Detach and attach a database.

  Another way to upgrade your PeopleSoft database and probably the fastest is detaching the database from Microsoft SQL Server 2019 and attaching it to Microsoft SQL Server 2022.

  To accomplish this, run `sp_detach_db` in Microsoft SQL Server 2019, and then `sp_attach_db` in Microsoft SQL Server 2022. This procedure will automatically upgrade your database to Microsoft SQL Server 2022.

- Copy Database Wizard.

  You can also upgrade to Microsoft SQL Server 2022 using Microsoft SQL Server 2022 Copy Database Wizard. Consult the Microsoft online documentation for details on how to use the tool.

- Use PeopleSoft Data Mover.

  Another alternative to migrate your database could be using PeopleTools. You can use Data Mover to migrate data of the entire database. This could be accomplished by exporting all the tables in the database to a Data Mover file. Keep in mind that this could be the slowest procedure of all those mentioned in this section; however, there are specific scenarios where using Data Mover could be the best choice.

  See "Creating a Database Manually."

  See *PeopleTools: Data Management.*

Task 24-3: Setting Up the Migrated Database

No matter which approach you decide to use, read and observe the follow recommendations in your migrated PeopleTools environment.

- Set up the appropriate compatibility level.

  Review the information in the Microsoft SQL Server online documentation concerning compatibility level and how it applies to upgrading. Locate the compatibility level for the Microsoft SQL Server version you are upgrading to.

  It is very important to remember to modify the compatibility level of your PeopleSoft database to the Microsoft recommended level immediately after verifying the database integrity after upgrade. PeopleSoft PeopleTools will not recognize the compatibility level used in your database and it will assume the appropriate compatibility mode was selected. Utilizing a different compatibility mode may cause unexpected behavior in the product.

- Verify database integrity.

  Oracle recommends that you verify the integrity of your database and repair any problems that may occur after migrating your database. Make sure to run `DBCC CHECKDB` at the upgraded database. Immediately after migrating the database the compatibility mode is correct.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Update database statistics.

  The Microsoft SQL Server online documentation recommends updating your database statistics to help optimize query performance. Use the `sp_updatestats` stored procedure to update statistics in user-defined tables in Microsoft SQL Server 2022 databases. Make sure the compatibility mode is set to the Microsoft recommended level before running this command.

  For a more elaborate procedure you can use a script to run the following commands for all tables in your PeopleSoft database:

  ```
  sp_createstats 'indexonly'
  UPDATE STATISTICS <PS_TABLENAME> WITH FULLSCAN
  ```

  For example, the script should be similar to this:

  ```
  exec sp_createstats 'indexonly'
  UPDATE STATISTICS PS_BU_TYPE_INV WITH FULLSCAN;
  UPDATE STATISTICS PSAPMSGARCHPD WITH FULLSCAN;
  ```

- Update usage counters.

  In earlier versions of SQL Server, the values for the table and index row counts and page counts can become incorrect. To correct any row or page counts that are not valid, Microsoft recommends that you run `DBCC UPDATEUSAGE` on all databases following the upgrade.

- Enable READ COMMITTED SNAPSHOT ISOLATION (RCSI).

  By default all PeopleSoft release 9.2 applications running Microsoft SQL Server 2016 will have RCSI enabled. If RCSI is not enabled you must activate the RCSI level for the upgraded database since all the PeopleSoft 9.2 applications will use that isolation level by default.

  - To verify if the database is using RCSI you may run the following SQL command, substituting the name of your database for *DATABASENAME*:

    ```
    select is_read_committed_snapshot_on from sys.databases
    where database_id = db_id ('DATABASENAME')
    ```

    The output must be the number 1 (one), which means, RCSI is enabled.

  - If RCSI is not enabled you must activate now the RCSI level for the upgraded database.
  - To enable RCSI you can use the script labeled `ENABLE_RCSI.SQL` available under *PS_HOME*\scripts for all PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.48 and later. Edit and review the script before running it.

    Make sure there is no database activity and no other connections to the database; otherwise RCSI will not be activated (see Microsoft SQL Server online documentation for further details).

    The script executes the following command:

    ```
    ALTER DATABASE <DBNAME> SET READ_COMMITTED_SNAPSHOT ON
    ```

- Check the login.

  By default login accounts created on Microsoft SQL Server 2022 will inherit the password policies from their operating systems. If the password for the migrated login accounts does not comply with the operating system, you may experience problems signing on with those login names and passwords.

  There are several ways to solve the problem. One simple solution is to disable the feature for each login account or to change its password. However, remember that if you change the password for the login accounts used as CONNECTID or ACCESSID, you must update and encrypt through Data Mover the appropriate security tables (PSSTATUS, PSOPRDEFN, and PSACCESSPROFILE) with the new values to be able to log in again to your PeopleSoft database.

  See *PeopleTools: Security Administration.*

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Appendix A

Deploying PeopleSoft DPKs in Containers

This appendix discusses:

- Understanding Container Support for PeopleSoft DPKs
- Prerequisites for Container Deployment
- Installing PS_HOME for the Container File System

Understanding Container Support for PeopleSoft DPKs

The current PeopleSoft PeopleTools release includes support for deploying PeopleSoft environments in containers. Containers have the advantage of isolating your environment, so that the VM or computer running it does not have to be changed. In addition, containers provide a standard environment, which aids in troubleshooting and support.

The container setup process makes use of the PeopleSoft DPKs, setup script, and silent installation files, along with a new API and container-specific scripts, to enable you to build Podman containers. To carry out the deployment, use the instructions in this appendix to install the container file system, which includes text files with detailed instructions.

See Installing PS_HOME for the Container File System.

The following deployments are currently supported:

- Mid-tier — Deploy an application server, Process Scheduler, and web server (PIA) that connects to an existing PeopleSoft application database.
- Separate mid-tier components — Deploy an Application server, Process Scheduler, or web server (PIA).

  Deploy each component in a separate container.
- Search components — Deploy OpenSearch, OpenSearch Dashboards, and Logstash.

  After building and running search containers, you have the option to run Automated Configuration Management (ACM) plug-ins to integrate OpenSearch with the PeopleSoft environment.
- Mid-tier and Search components — Deploy container images on Oracle Kubernetes Engine.
- Full-tier (PUM) — Deploy the PeopleSoft Update Images to create a PeopleSoft Update Manager (PUM) source for applying updates and fixes.

  The full-tier installation sets up a PeopleSoft application database on Oracle Database Server, application server, Process Scheduler, and web server (PIA).
- Full-tier (FRESH) — Deploy a full-tier PeopleSoft environment with the FRESH installation type.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

If you want to acquire updated components or CPUs for PeopleSoft environments deployed in containers, the recommended approach is to use the latest PeopleSoft DPKs to create new containers. This will create environments with the latest available CPUs for Oracle WebLogic, Oracle Tuxedo, Java, and Oracle Database Client. You can then create container images from the new containers. Be aware that the use of PT-INFRA DPK to apply CPUs on an existing container environment is not supported.

See Also

PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.62 Deployment Packages Installation

PeopleSoft Deployment Packages for Update Images Installation (PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.62)

PeopleSoft 9.2 Application Installation for Oracle (PeopleSoft PeopleTools 8.62)

Prerequisites for Container Deployment

Before beginning the deployment, you must fulfill the following requirements:

- Access to My Oracle Support to download the DPKs
- Access to Oracle Container Registry

  The Oracle Linux 8 image for the installation will be downloaded from this location during the container build process.

  See Oracle Container Registry, https://container-registry.oracle.com.
- An Oracle Linux VM

  The Oracle Linux VM is the host for the container, and must be configured to use Podman as described in this documentation.
- Podman and podman-compose

  Each user that builds and runs containers and the prebuilt container images must be able to run Podman and podman-compose. The task Configuring the Linux VM for Container Deployment includes steps to verify that Podman and podman-compose are available.
- A non-root user with sudo root permission

  To configure the Linux VM, build and run containers, the user must be able to use the sudo command.
- The PeopleSoft container deployment supports these versions:
  - Oracle Linux Server release 8.7
  - Red Hat Enterprise Linux release 8.7 (Ootpa)
  - podman version 4.9
  - podman-compose version 1.0.6 (optional)

Task A-1: Installing PS_HOME for the Container File System

This section discusses:

- Obtaining the DPKs for Mid-tier Deployment
- Obtaining the DPK for Search Components
- Installing PS_HOME

 Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

- Locating the Container Directory and Setting Environment Variable
- Using the README.md Files for Deployment

Task A-1-1: Obtaining the DPKs for Mid-tier Deployment

Obtain the four PeopleSoft PeopleTools DPKs for Native OS Linux from My Oracle Support.

See "Installing the PeopleSoft Homes," Obtaining the PeopleSoft Application Images and PeopleTools DPKs.

Task A-1-2: Obtaining the DPK for Search Components

To deploy containers for search components, you need to obtain the OpenSearch, OpenSearch Dashboards, and Logstash DPK (OSK DPK) for Linux from My Oracle Support.

See *PeopleSoft Deployment Package Installation for Search Components,* "Obtaining the OpenSearch, OpenSearch Dashboards, and Logstash DPK."

You can find the installation guide on the PeopleSoft PeopleTools page on Oracle Help Center.

Task A-1-3: Installing PS_HOME

To use the DPK setup script to install *PS_HOME* only on the Linux VM:

1. Extract the first zip file *(FILENAME*_1of4.zip) in the same directory, *DPK_INSTALL*.

   The extraction creates the *DPK_INSTALL/*setup directory and other files.

   See "Deploying the PeopleSoft Application Deployment Packages," Obtaining the PeopleSoft Update Images, for the DPK file name syntax.
2. Open a terminal window and change directory to *DPK_INSTALL/*setup.
3. Run the script with the options for mid-tier and *PS_HOME* deployment only.

   ```
   psft-dpk-setup.sh --env_type midtier --deploy_only --deploy_type tools_⇒
   home
   ```

4. Answer y (yes) to the following prompt:

   ```
   You are running DPK setup without root/administrator access.
   This is fine as long as the system administrator has performed
   all necessary tasks and all prerequisites have been met.
   Please see the documentation to determine the prerequite tasks
   that need to be performed to successfully run DPK set up
   without root/administrator privilege.
   Would you like to proceed with the setup as a non-root user? [y/n]: y
   ```

5. Wait while the script locates the valid PeopleSoft zip files and extracts them.

   The system displays messages indicating the steps in the setup process. The success or failure of each step is indicated by [OK] or [FAILED].

   ```
   Starting the PeopleSoft Environment Setup Process:
   Validating User Arguments:                                [  OK  ]
   Validating PeopleSoft Supported Platform:                 [  OK  ]
   ```

6. At the following prompt, enter the full path to a location that is accessible to the host to be used as the PeopleSoft base directory.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

The base directory is used to extract the PeopleSoft DPKs as well as for deploying PeopleSoft components.

Note. When entering the path for the base directory, use forward slashes (/). For example, `/cs1/psft`. Do not use a name for the base directory that begins with a number. Do not end the base directory name with a forward slash (for example, do not enter /ds1/psft/).

```
The base directory is used to extract the PeopleSoft DPKs. It is also
used to deploy the PeopleSoft components. This directory should be
accessible, must have write permission and should have enough
free space.

Enter the full path for the PeopleSoft Base Directory [/opt/oracle⇒
/psft]:
Are you happy with your answer? [Y|n|q]:
```

The script validates if there is enough free space available under the specified base directory for the PeopleSoft environment. The PeopleSoft environment setup is aborted if there is not enough free space.

The script creates the following sub-directories under the user provided base directory, *BASE_DIR*:

- *BASE_DIR/*db

  This directory is not used for this deployment.
- *BASE_DIR/*dpk

  The script uses this directory to extract the archives from the PeopleSoft DPKs.
- *BASE_DIR/*psft_puppet_agent

  The script uses this directory to install Puppet software.
- *BASE_DIR/*pt

  The script uses this directory to deploy PeopleSoft PeopleTools.

7. Review the status messages as the script validates the files found in DPK_INSTALL and extracts the archives from the DPKs.

   The script carries out validations for the mid-tier deployment. If any of the validations fail, the PeopleSoft environment setup is aborted.

   Note. The messages have been truncated for brevity.

   ```
   Validating the PeopleSoft DPKs in the directory:
   [...]
   Extracting the DPK Archives in the VM:
   [...]
   ```

8. Review the status messages.

   The script installs Puppet software, verifies if the DPKs are available in *DPK_INSTALL*, and checks for available space. It aborts with the message [FAILED] in case of errors.

   ```
   Installing PSFT Relocatable Puppet Software in the base directory:
   [  OK  ]
   Installing eYAML Hiera Backend on this host:                [  OK  ]
   Checking if PeopleSoft DPKs are Present:                    [  OK  ]
   Checking if the Base Directory has Enough Free Space:       [  OK  ]
   ```

9. Review the status messages as the script sets up the Puppet file system.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

The script sets up Puppet on the host. It then copies the PeopleSoft Puppet modules to the standard location *(BASE_DIR*/dpk) and updates the YAML files to reflect the type of PeopleSoft environment setup.

```
Setting up Puppet on the VM:
Generating eYAML Hiera Backend Encryption Keys:              [  OK  ]
Updating the Puppet Hiera YAML Files in the Linux VM:        [  OK  ]
Updating the Role in Puppet Site File for the Linux VM:      [  OK  ]
```

10. Specify the information for your database platform.
    a. For the database platform, enter ORACLE.

    ```
    Enter the PeopleSoft database platform [ORACLE]:
    ```

    b. Enter *y* (yes) to indicate that the database you are connecting to is a Unicode database.

    Note. All PeopleSoft Update Image databases are required to be Unicode.

    ```
    Is the PeopleSoft database unicode? [Y|n]: y
    ```

11. Enter y to continue with the script.

    ```
    Are you happy with your answers? [y|n]: y
    Updating the Puppet Hiera YAML Files with User Data:      [  OK  ]
    ```

12. Answer *y* (yes) to the following prompt, and continue with the next step.

    ```
    The bootstrap script is ready to deploy and configure the PeopleSoft
    environment using the default configuration defined in the Puppet
    Hiera YAML files. You can proceed by answering 'y' at the following
    prompt. And, if you want to customize the environment by overriding
    the default configuration, you can answer 'n'. If you answer 'n', you
    should follow the instructions in the PeopleSoft Installation Guide
    for creating the Hiera YAML file 'psft_customizations.yaml'
    and running the psft_puppet_apply script to continue with
    the setup of the PeopleSoft environment.

    Do you want to continue with the default initialization process? [y|n]:
    ```

13. Review the status messages as the script runs Puppet profiles to set up the PeopleSoft environment.

    A message of [OK] indicates that the profile has been applied successfully while a message [FAILED] indicates that the profile application failed.

    The script stops and exits the first time a profile application fails, and displays an error message. This example shows the error message after the first step failed:

    ```
    Starting the Default Initialization of PeopleSoft Environment:

    Deploying PeopleTools Components:                            [FAILED]
    The initialization of PeopleSoft environment setup failed. Check the
    log file [/opt/DPK_INSTALL/setup/psft_dpk_setup.log] for the errors.
    After correcting the errors, run the following commands to continue
    with the setup of PeopleSoft environment.

    From the shell, run /opt/oracle/psft/psft_puppet_apply.sh

    Exiting the PeopleSoft environment setup process.
    ```

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Upon successful completion, the DPK setup script displays the following message:

```
Starting the Default Initialization of PeopleSoft Environment:

Deploying PeopleTools Components:                              [  OK  ]
Setting up PeopleSoft OS Users Environment:                    [  OK  ]

The PeopleSoft Environment Setup Process Ended.
```

The complete setup log is written to the file psft_dpk_setup.log in the same location as the DPK setup script.

If you are running as a non-root user, the setup.log is written to the file <*USER_HOME*>/psft_dpk_work/psft_dpk_setup_<*PID*>.log, where <*USER_HOME*> is the home directory for the user running the script, and <PID> is a process ID

Task A-1-4: Locating the Container Directory and Setting Environment Variable

After installing *PS_HOME,* locate the containers directory.

The *PS_HOME*/containers/OraclePeopleTools directory includes text instructions, scripts, and configuration files. Use the instructions to build and run containers.

Note. You can view README.md and FAQ.md in a text editor. The .md extension refers to the Markdown language used for GitHub documents.

Note. You can install *PS_HOME* on a computer and copy the OraclePeopleTools directory to the Linux VM where you want to build and run containers.

Set the CONTAINER_HOME environment variable to the location of the OraclePeopleTools directory that holds the container files in your environment.

```
export CONTAINER_HOME=<Path to Container Code directory OraclePeopleTools>
```

For example, if you installed *PS_HOME* in the directory /opt/oracle/ps_home8.62:

```
export CONTAINER_HOME=/opt/oracle/ps_home8.62/containers/OraclePeopleTools
```

Task A-1-5: Using the README.md Files for Deployment

The *PS_HOME*/containers/OraclePeopleTools directory includes README.md files with up-to-date instructions for various deployments. Note that the file structure and directory names may differ in different PeopleTools releases.

- *PS_HOME*/containers/OraclePeopleTools/README.md **—** Describes the initial setup of Podman on a Linux VM.

  Complete these instructions first for any type of deployment.

- *PS_HOME*/containers/OraclePeopleTools/containerfiles/pt/README.md **—** Describes the procedure to build and deploy PeopleTools mid-tier containers on a Linux VM.
- *PS_HOME*/containers/OraclePeopleTools/containerfiles/osk/README.md **—** Describes the procedure to build and deploy search containers on a Linux VM.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Appendix B

Deploying PeopleSoft Containers on Oracle Kubernetes Engine

This appendix discusses:

- Understanding the Oracle Kubernetes Engine Deployment
- Prerequisites for the OKE Deployment
- Installing PS_HOME and Deploying on OKE

Understanding the Oracle Kubernetes Engine Deployment

Run PeopleSoft containers Oracle Kubernetes Engine (OKE) on Oracle Cloud Infrastructure. OKE uses Kubernetes, which is an open-source system for automating deployment, scaling, and management of containerized applications across clusters of hosts. This process supports the deployment of PeopleTools mid-tier and search components (OpenSearch, OpenSearch Dashboards, Logstash).

See Also

Overview of Kubernetes Engine (OKE) in Oracle Cloud Infrastructure documentation, https://docs.oracle.com/en-us/iaas/Content/ContEng/Concepts/contengoverview.htm

Kubernetes Evolution: Streamlining Deployments with Helm, https://blogs.oracle.com/developers/post/kubernetes-evolution-streamlining-deployments-with-helm

Prerequisites for the OKE Deployment

Before beginning the deployment, you must fulfill the following requirements:

- Access to My Oracle Support to download the DPKs

  Download the four DPKs for PeopleTools mid-tier, and the search components DPK (OpenSearch, OpenSearch Dashboards, and Logstash, or OSK DPK). You will use the DPKs to install *PS_HOME,* to create container images, and to deploy the container images to OKE.

- Oracle Cloud Infrastructure account

  Verify that the Oracle Cloud Account includes subscriptions for Compute, Block Storage, File Storage service, and Oracle Kubernetes Engine (OKE). You will also need a subscription to Database Cloud Service if you host your database on Oracle Cloud Infrastructure.

- Knowledge of OKE administration, Kubernetes clusters, OKE and Kubernetes commands.
- Access to Oracle Container Registry

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

The Oracle Linux 8 platform image for the installation will be downloaded from this location during the container build process. After you create the container image, you upload it to the registry to be used by OKE.

See Oracle Container Registry, https://container-registry.oracle.com.

- An Oracle Linux VM

  The Oracle Linux VM is the host for the container, and must be configured to use Podman as described in this documentation.

- Podman and podman-compose

  Each user that builds and runs containers and the prebuilt container images must be able to run Podman and podman-compose. The file *PS_HOME*/containers/OraclePeopleTools/README.md includes steps to verify that Podman and podman-compose are available.

- A non-root user with sudo root permission

  To configure the Linux VM, build and run containers, the user must be able to use the sudo command.

- Access to Helm and familiarity with Helm commands.

Task B-1: Installing PS_HOME and Deploying on OKE

To deploy PeopleSoft containers on a Kubernetes cluster (OKE):

1. Install *PS_HOME* on a Linux computer or VM.

   See "Deploying Containers" Installing PS_HOME for the Container File System.

2. Follow the instructions in *PS_HOME*/containers/OraclePeopleTools/k8s/README.md.

You also have the option to deploy PeopleSoft containers on a Kubernetes cluster (OKE) with Helm. Helm is a package manager for Kubernetes that helps to manage deployment, scaling, and upgrades.

See Using Helm, https://helm.sh/docs/intro/using_helm.

To deploy PeopleSoft containers on a Kubernetes cluster (OKE) using Helm:

1. Install *PS_HOME* on a Linux computer or VM.

   See "Deploying Containers," Installing PS_HOME for the Container File System.

2. Follow the instructions in *PS_HOME*/containers/OraclePeopletools/helm-charts/oracle-peopletools/README.md.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Appendix C

Encrypting Passwords for Customization Files

Task C-1: Encrypting Passwords for Customization Files on Microsoft Windows

This section describes how to produce an encrypted version of a clear text password and include it in the psft_customizations.yaml file for a customized deployment on Microsoft Windows. This section applies to installations with the Native OS for Windows DPKs.

Note. You can skip this section if you are creating psft_customizations.yaml files for silent mode installations. Use clear text passwords with silent mode installations.

In general, when you run the DPK setup script, you supply several user IDs and passwords, such as the Connect ID password and operator ID password. The script encrypts the passwords that you supply and includes them in the generated YAML files in *BASE_DIR*/dpk/puppet/production/data. When you create a psft_customizations.yaml file, you can copy these encrypted passwords from the generated YAML files and include them in the psft_customizations.yaml file. If you need to encrypt a different password, you can use this procedure.

Note that the successful use of the encrypted password depends on the presence of the public and private keys in the *BASE_DIR*/dpk/puppet directory referred to in the eyaml encrypt command. You cannot save an encrypted password and use it with a deployment with a different *BASE_DIR*.

This procedure assumes that you have carried out the first portion of a customized deployment, and stopped at the question "Do you want to continue with the default initialization?"

See "Completing the DPK Initialization with Customizations."

To encrypt a password:

1. Open the *BASE_DIR*\dpk\puppet\hiera.yaml file and note the full path to the public and private keys:

   ```
   :pkcs7_private_key: BASE_DIR\dpk\puppet\secure\keys\private_⇒
   key.pkcs7.pem
   :pkcs7_public_key:  BASE_DIR\dpk\puppet\secure\keys\public_key.pkcs7.pem
   ```

2. Open a command prompt and run the following command, supplying the full paths from the previous step.

   Enter the command on a single line.

   ```
   <BASE_DIR>\psft_puppet_agent\bin\eyaml encrypt -s "<clear_password>" --⇒
   pkcs7-private-key=<private_key_full_path>\<key_name> --pkcs7-public-⇒
   key=<public_key_full_path>\<key_name> --output=string
   ```

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Note. The double-quotes around the password are required. Be sure to use the correct punctuation for the command. Note that the command uses different punctuation for the keys than the hiera.yaml file.

Note. If your password includes an exclamation mark (!) you must enclose the entire password in double quotes surrounded by single quotes. For example, `'"passw!ord"'`.

For example:

```
C:\psft\psft_puppet_agent\bin\eyaml encrypt -s "password" --pkcs7-⇒
private-key=C:\psft\dpk\puppet\secure\keys\private_key.pkcs7.pem --⇒
pkcs7-public-key=C:\psft\dpk\puppet\secure\keys\public_key.pkcs7.pem --⇒
output=string
```

3. Copy the encrypted password from the output in the command prompt window.

   The encrypted text will be a long single line of letters and numbers. Be sure to copy the text in one unbroken line, with no spaces or line feeds. Here is a truncated representation of an encrypted password:

   ```
   ENC[PKCS7,MIIBeQYJKoZIhvc...................]
   ```

4. Paste the encrypted password in the psft_customizations.yaml file, replacing the text password.

   Again, the encrypted text must be a single line. Also, be sure to retain the indentation in the psft_customizations.yaml file. This is a sample psft_customizations.yaml with an entry for the connect ID:

   ```
   ---
   db_connect_id:      people
   db_connect_pwd:     ENC[PKCS7,MIIBeQYJKoZIhvc...................]
   ```

5. Use the psft_customizations.yaml file for deployment with the psft_puppet_apply script.

   The DPK deployment will automatically decrypt the password from the psft_customizations.yaml and use it for deployment.

Copyright © 2025, Oracle and/or its affiliates.